

---

# **Tutorial: Creating an LLVM Backend for the Cpu0 Architecture**

***Release 3.9.1***

**Chen Chung-Shu**

**Oct 01, 2020**



## CONTENTS

<b>1 About</b>	<b>3</b>
<b>2 Cpu0 architecture and LLVM structure</b>	<b>13</b>
<b>3 Backend structure</b>	<b>65</b>
<b>4 Arithmetic and logic instructions</b>	<b>177</b>
<b>5 Generating object files</b>	<b>215</b>
<b>6 Global variables</b>	<b>245</b>
<b>7 Other data type</b>	<b>277</b>
<b>8 Control flow statements</b>	<b>301</b>
<b>9 Function call</b>	<b>337</b>
<b>10 ELF Support</b>	<b>441</b>
<b>11 Assembler</b>	<b>459</b>
<b>12 C++ support</b>	<b>513</b>
<b>13 Verify backend on Verilog simulator</b>	<b>549</b>
<b>14 Appendix A: Getting Started: Installing LLVM and the Cpu0 example code</b>	<b>573</b>
<b>15 Appendix B: Cpu0 document and test</b>	<b>589</b>
<b>16 Appendix C: The concept of GPU compiler</b>	<b>599</b>
<b>17 Todo List</b>	<b>617</b>
<b>18 Book example code</b>	<b>619</b>
<b>19 Alternate formats</b>	<b>621</b>
<b>20 Presentation files</b>	<b>623</b>
<b>21 Search this website</b>	<b>625</b>



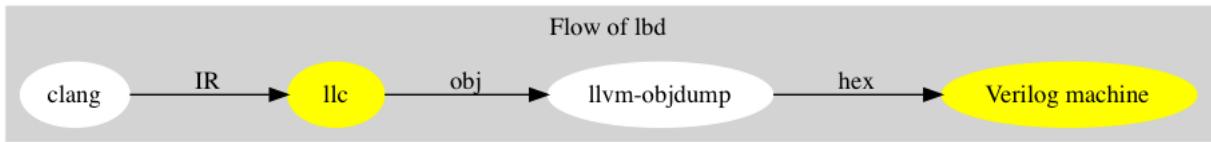


Fig. 1: This book's flow



## ABOUT

- *Authors*
- *Contributors*
- *Acknowledgments*
- *Support*
- *Revision history*
- *Licensing*
- *Motivation*
- *Preface*
- *Prerequisites*
- *Outline of Chapters*

### 1.1 Authors

**Chen Chung-Shu** [gamma\\_chen@yahoo.com.tw](mailto:gamma_chen@yahoo.com.tw)

<http://jonathan2251.github.io/ws/en/index.html>

### 1.2 Contributors

Anoushe Jamshidi, [ajamshidi@gmail.com](mailto:ajamshidi@gmail.com), Chapters 1, 2, 3 English re-writing and Sphinx tool and format setting.

陳鍾樞

Chen Wei-Ren, [chenwj@iis.sinica.edu.tw](mailto:chenwj@iis.sinica.edu.tw), assisted with text and code formatting.

Chen Zhong-Cheng, who is the author of original cpu0 verilog code.

### 1.3 Acknowledgments

We would like to thank Sean Silva, [chisophugis@gmail.com](mailto:chisophugis@gmail.com), for his help, encouragement, and assistance with the Sphinx document generator. Without his help, this book would not have been

finished and published online. We also thank those corrections from readers who make the book more accurate.

## 1.4 Support

We get the kind help from LLVM development mail list, [llvmdev@cs.uiuc.edu](mailto:llvmdev@cs.uiuc.edu), even we don't know them. So, our experience is you are not alone and can get help from the development list members in working with the LLVM project. Some of them are:

Akira Hatanaka <[ahtanak@gmail.com](mailto:ahatanak@gmail.com)> in va\_arg question answer.

Ulrich Weigand <[Ulrich.Weigand@de.ibm.com](mailto:Ulrich.Weigand@de.ibm.com)> in AsmParser question answer.

## 1.5 Revision history

Version 3.9.4, Not release yet.

**Version 3.9.3, Released March 1, 2020.** Add Appendix C: GPU compiler

**Version 3.9.2, Released February 17, 2020.** Add section “Add specific backend intrinsic function”. Add reasons for regression test. More phi node explanation.

**Version 3.9.1, Released May 11, 2018** Fix tailcall bug. Fix return-vector.ll run slowly problem, bug from Cpu0ISelLowering.cpp. Add figure “Tblgen generate files for Cpu0 backend”. Modify section float and double of Chapter Other data type. Move storeRegToStack() and loadRegFromStack() from Chapter9\_1 to Chapter3\_5. Section DSA of chapter Cpu0 architecture and LLVM structure.

**Version 3.9.0, Released November 22, 2016** Porting to llvm 3.9. Correct writing.

**Version 3.7.4, Released December 7, 2016** Change bal instruction from with delay slot to without delay slot.

**Version 3.7.3, Released July 20, 2016** Refine code-block according sphinx lexers. Add search this book.

**Version 3.7.2, Released June 29, 2016** Add Verilog delay slot simulation. Explain “tablegen(” in CMake-Lists.txt. Correct typing. Add lbdex/install\_llvm/\*.sh for installation. Upgrade sphinx to 1.4.4.

**Version 3.7.1, Released November 7, 2015** Remove EM\_CPU0\_EL. Add subsection Caller and callee saved registers. Add IR blockaddress and indirectbr support. Correct tglobaladdr, tblockaddress, tjumpable and tglobaltlsaddr of Cpu0InstrInfo.td. Add stacksave and stackrestore support. Add subsection frameaddress, returnaddress and eh.return support of chapter Function call. Match Mips 3.7 style. Add bswap in Chapter Function call. Add section “Vector type (SIMD) support” of Chapter “Other data type”. Add section “Long branch support” of Chapter “Control flow statements”. Add sub-section “eh.dwarf intrinsic” of Chapter Function call. Change display “ret \$rx” to “jr \$rx” where \$rx is not \$lr. Move sub-section Caller and callee saved registers. Add sub-sections Live in and live out register. Add Phi node. Replace ch3-proepilog.ll with ch3\_largeframe.cpp. Remove DecodeCMPIInstruction(). Re-organize testing ch4\_2\_1.cpp, ch4\_2\_2.cpp and ch9\_4.cpp. Fix dynamic alloca bug. Move Cpu0AnalyzeImmediate.cpp and related functions from Chapter3\_4 to Chapter3\_5. Rename input files.

**Version 3.7.0, Released September 24, 2015** Porting to lld 3.7. Change tricore\_llvm.pdf web link. Add C++ atomic to regression test.

**Version 3.6.4, Released July 15, 2015** Add C++ atomic support.

**Version 3.6.3, Released May 25, 2015** Correct typing.

**Version 3.6.2, Released May 3, 2015** Write Appendix B. Split chapter Appendix B from Appendix A. Move some test from lbt to lbd. Remove warning in build Cpu0 code.

**Version 3.6.1, Released March 22, 2015** Add Cpu0 instructions ROLV and RORV.

**Version 3.6.0, Released March 9, 2015** Update Appendix A for llvm 3.6. Replace cpp with ll for appearing in document. Move chapter lld, optimization, library to <https://github.com/Jonathan2251/lbt.git>.

**Version 3.5.9, Released February 2, 2015** Fix bug of 64 bits shift. Fix global address error by replacing addiu with ori. Change encode of “cmp \$sw, \$3, \$2” from 0x10320000 to 0x10f32000.

**Version 3.5.8, Released December 27, 2014** Correct typing. Fix typing error for update libdex/src/modify/src/ of install.rst. Add libsoftfloat/compiler-rt and libc/avr-libc-1.8.1. Add LLVM-VPO in chapter Optimization.

**Version 3.5.7, Released December 1, 2014** Fix over 16-bits frame prologue/epilogue error from 3.5.3. Call convention ABI S32 is enabled by option. Change from ADD to ADDu in copyPhysReg() of Cpu0SEInstrInfo.cpp. Add asm directive .weak back which exists in 3.5.3.

**Version 3.5.6, Released November 18, 2014** Remove SWI and IRET instructions. Add Cpu0SetChapter.h for ex-build-test.sh. Correct typing. Fix thread variable error come from version 3.5.3 in static mode. Add sub-section “Cpu0 backend machine ID and relocation records” of Chapter 2.

**Version 3.5.5, Released November 11, 2014** Rename SPR to C0R. Add ISR simulation.

**Version 3.5.4, Released November 6, 2014** Adjust chapter 9 sections. Fix .cprestore bug. Re-organize sections. Add sub-section “Why not using ADD instead of SUB?” in chapter 2. Add overflow control option to use ADD and SUB instructions.

**Version 3.5.3, Released October 29, 2014** Merge Cpu0 example code into one copy and it can be config by Cpu0Config.h.

**Version 3.5.2, Released October 3, 2014** Move R\_CPU0\_32 from type of non-relocation record to type of relocation record. Correct logic error for setgt of BrcondPatsSlt of Cpu0InstrInfo.td.

**Version 3.5.1, Released October 1, 2014** Add move alias instruction for addu \$reg, \$zero. Add cpu cycles count in verilog. Fix ISD::SIGN\_EXTEND\_INREG error in other types beside i1. Support DAG op br\_gt and DAG node JumpTable.

**Version 3.5.0, Released September 05, 2014** Issue NOP in delay slot.

**Version 3.4.8, Released August 29, 2014** Add reason that set endian swap in memory module. Add presentation files.

**Version 3.4.7, Released August 22, 2014** Fix wrapper\_pic for cmov.ll. Add shift operations 64 bits support. Fix wrapper\_pic for ch8\_5.cpp. Add section thread of chapter 14. Add section Motivation of chapter about. Support little endian for cpu0 verilog. Move ch8\_5.cpp test from Chapter Run backend to Chapter lld since it need lld linker. Support both big endian and little endian in cpu0 Verilog, elf2hex and lld. Make branch release\_34\_7.

**Version 3.4.6, Released July 26, 2014** Add Chapter 15, optimization. Correct typing. Add Chapter 14, C++. Fix bug of generating cpu032II instruction in dynamic\_linker.cpp.

**Version 3.4.5, Released June 30, 2014** Correct typing.

**Version 3.4.4, Released June 24, 2014** Correct typing. Add the reason of use SSA form. Move sections LLVM Code Generation Sequence, DAG and Instruction Selection from Chapter 3 to Chapter 2.

**Version 3.4.3, Released March 31, 2014** Fix Disassembly bug for GPROut register class. Adjust Chapters. Remove hand copy Table of tblgen in AsmParser.

**Version 3.4.2, Released February 9, 2014** Add ch12\_2.cpp for slt instruction explanation and fix bug in Cpu0InstrInfo.cpp. Correct typing. Move Cpu0 Status Register from Number 20 to Number 10. Fix llc -mcpu option problem. Update example code build shell script. Add condition move instruction. Fix bug of branch pattern match in Cpu0InstrInfo.td.

**Version 3.4.1, Released January 18, 2014** Add ch9\_4.cpp to lld test. Fix the wrong reference in lbd/lib/Target/Cpu0 code. inlineasm. First instruction jmp X, where X changed from \_Z5startv to start. Correct typing.

**Version 3.4.0, Released January 9, 2014** Porting to llvm 3.4 release.

**Version 3.3.14, Released January 4, 2014** lld support on iMac. Correct typing.

**Version 3.3.13, Released December 27, 2013** Update section Install sphinx on install.rst. Add Fig/llvmstructure/cpu0\_arch.odp.

**Version 3.3.12, Released December 25, 2013** Correct typing error. Adjust Example Code. Add section Data operands DAGs of backendstructure.rst. Fix bug in instructions lb and lh of cpu0.v. Fix bug in itoa.cpp. Add ch7\_2\_2.cpp for othertype.rst. Add AsmParser reference web.

**Version 3.3.11, Released December 11, 2013** Add Figure Code generation and execution flow in about.rst. Update backendstructure.rst. Correct otherinst.rst. Decoration. Correct typing error.

**Version 3.3.10, Released December 5, 2013** Correct typing error. Dynamic linker in lld.rst. Correct errors came from old version of example code. lld.rst.

**Version 3.3.9, Released November 22, 2013** Add LLD introduction and Cpu0 static linker document in lld.rst. Fix the plt bug in elf2hex.h for dynamic linker.

**Version 3.3.8, Released November 19, 2013** Fix the reference file missing for make gh-page.

**Version 3.3.7, Released November 17, 2013** lld.rst documentation. Add cpu032I and cpu032II in *llc - mcpu*. Reference only for Chapter12\_2.

**Version 3.3.6, Released November 8, 2013** Move example code from github to dropbox since the name is not work for download example code.

**Version 3.3.5, Released November 7, 2013** Split the elf2hex code from modified llvm-objdump.cpp to elf2hex.h. Fix bug for tail call setting in LowerCall(). Fix bug for LowerCPOLOAD(). Update elf.rst. Fix typing error. Add dynamic linker support. Merge cpu0 Chapter12\_1 and Chapter12\_2 code into one, and identify each of them by -mcpu=cpu0I and -mcpu=cpu0II. cpu0II. Update lld.rst for static linker. Change the name of example code from LLVMBackendTutorialExampleCode to lbdex.

**Version 3.3.4, Released September 21, 2013** Fix Chapter Global variables error for LUi instructions and the material move to Chapter Other data type. Update regression test items.

**Version 3.3.3, Released September 20, 2013** Add Chapter othertype

**Version 3.3.2, Released September 17, 2013** Update example code. Fix bug sext\_inreg. Fix llvm-objdump.cpp bug to support global variable of .data. Update install.rst to run on llvm 3.3.

**Version 3.3.1, Released September 14, 2013** Add load bool type in chapter 6. Fix chapter 4 error. Add interrupt function in cpu0i.v. Fix bug in alloc() support of Chapter 8 by adding code of spill \$fp register. Add JSUB texternalsym for memcpy function call of llvm auto reference. Rename cpu0i.v to cpu0s.v. Modify itoa.cpp. Cpu0 of lld.

**Version 3.3.0, Released July 13, 2013** Add Table: C operator ! corresponding IR of .bc and IR of DAG and Table: C operator ! corresponding IR of Type-legalized selection DAG and Cpu0 instructions. Add explanation in section Full support %. Add Table: Chapter 4 operators. Add Table: Chapter 3 .bc IR instructions. Rewrite Chapter 5 Global variables. Rewrite section Handle \$gp register in PIC addressing mode. Add Large Frame Stack Pointer support. Add dynamic link section in elf.rst. Re-organize Chapter 3. Re-organize Chapter 8. Re-organize Chapter 10. Re-organize Chapter 11. Re-organize Chapter 12. Fix bug that ret not \$lr register. Porting to LLVM 3.3.

**Version 3.2.15, Released June 12, 2013** Porting to llvm 3.3. Rewrite section Support arithmetic instructions of chapter Adding arithmetic and local pointer support with the table adding. Add two sentences

in Preface. Add `llc -debug-pass` in section LLVM Code Generation Sequence. Remove section Adjust cpu0 instructions. Remove section Use cpu0 official LDI instead of ADDiu of Appendix-C.

**Version 3.2.14, Released May 24, 2013** Fix example code disappeared error.

**Version 3.2.13, Released May 23, 2013** Add sub-section “Setup llvm-lit on iMac” of Appendix A. Replace some code-block with literalinclude in \*.rst. Add Fig 9 of chapter Backend structure. Add section Dynamic stack allocation support of chapter Function call. Fix bug of Cpu0DelUselessJMP.cpp. Fix cpu0 instruction table errors.

**Version 3.2.12, Released March 9, 2013** Add section “Type of char and short int” of chapter “Global variables, structs and arrays, other type”.

**Version 3.2.11, Released March 8, 2013** Fix bug in generate elf of chapter “Backend Optimization”.

**Version 3.2.10, Released February 23, 2013** Add chapter “Backend Optimization”.

**Version 3.2.9, Released February 20, 2013** Correct the “Variable number of arguments” such as `sum_i(int amount, ...)` errors.

**Version 3.2.8, Released February 20, 2013** Add section `llvm-objdump -t -r`.

**Version 3.2.7, Released February 14, 2013** Add chapter Run backend. Add Icarus Verilog tool installation in Appendix A.

**Version 3.2.6, Released February 4, 2013** Update CMP instruction implementation. Add `llvm-objdump` section.

**Version 3.2.5, Released January 27, 2013** Add “`LLVMBackendTutorialExampleCode/llvm3.1`”. Add section “Structure type support”. Change reference from Figure title to Figure number.

**Version 3.2.4, Released January 17, 2013** Update for LLVM 3.2. Change title (book name) from “Write An LLVM Backend Tutorial For Cpu0” to “Tutorial: Creating an LLVM Backend for the Cpu0 Architecture”.

**Version 3.2.3, Released January 12, 2013** Add chapter “Porting to LLVM 3.2”.

**Version 3.2.2, Released January 10, 2013** Add section “Full support %” and section “Verify DIV for operator %”.

**Version 3.2.1, Released January 7, 2013** Add Footnote for references. Reorganize chapters (Move bottom part of chapter “Global variable” to chapter “Other instruction”; Move section “Translate into obj file” to new chapter “Generate obj file”). Fix errors in Fig/otherinst/2.png and Fig/otherinst/3.png.

**Version 3.2.0, Released January 1, 2013** Add chapter Function. Move Chapter “Installing LLVM and the Cpu0 example code” from beginning to Appendix A. Add subsection “Install other tools on Linux”. Add chapter ELF.

**Version 3.1.2, Released December 15, 2012** Fix section 6.1 error by add “`def : Pat<(brcond RC:$cond, bb:$dst), (JNEOp (CMPOp RC:$cond, ZEROReg), bb:$dst)>;`” in last pattern. Modify section 5.5 Fix bug `Cpu0InstrInfo.cpp` SW to ST. Correct LW to LD; LB to LDB; SB to STB.

**Version 3.1.1, Released November 28, 2012** Add Revision history. Correct ldi instruction error (replace ldi instruction with addiu from the beginning and in the all example code). Move ldi instruction change from section of “Adjust cpu0 instruction and support type of local variable pointer” to Section “CPU0 processor architecture”. Correct some English & typing errors.

## 1.6 Licensing

<http://llvm.org/docs/DeveloperPolicy.html#license>

## 1.7 Motivation

We all learned computer knowledge from school through the concept of book. The concept is an effective way to know the big view. But once getting into develop a real complicated system, we often feel the concept from school or book is not much or not details enough. Compiler is a very complicated system, so traditionally the students in school learn this knowledge in concept and do the home work via yacc/lex tools to translate part of C or other high level language into immediate representation (IR) or assembly to feel the parsing knowledge and tools application.

On the other hand, the compiler engineers who graduated from school often facing the real market complicated CPUs and specification. Since for market reason, there are a serial of CPUs and ABI (Application Binary Interface) to deal with. Moreover, for speed performance reason, the real compiler backend program is too complicated to be a learning material in compiler backend designing even the market CPU include only one CPU and ABI.

This book develop the compiler backend along with a simple school designed CPU which called Cpu0. It include the implementation of a compiler backend, linker, llvm-objdump, elf2hex as well as Verilog language source code of Cpu0 instruction set. We provide readers full source code to compile C/C++ program and see how the programs run on the Cpu0 machine created by verilog language. Through this school learning purpose CPU, you get the chance to know the whole thing in compiler backend, linker, system tools and CPU design. Usually it is not easy from working in real CPU and compiler since the real job is too complicated to be finished by one single person only.

As my observation, LLVM advocated by some software engineers against gcc with two reasons. One is political with BSD license <sup>1 2</sup>. The other is technical with following the 3 tiers of compiler software structure along with C++ object oriented technology. GCC started with C and adopted C++ after near 20 years later <sup>3</sup>. Maybe gcc adopted C++ just because llvm do that. I learned C++ object oriented programming during studing in school. After “Design Pattern”, “C++/STL” and “object oriented design” books study, I understand the C is easy to trace while C++ is easy to creating reusable software units known as object. If a programmer has well knowledge in “Design Pattern”, then the C++ can supply more reuse ability and rewrite ability. A book of “system language” about software quality that I have ever read , listing these items: read ability, rewrite ability, reuse ability and performance to define the software quality. Object oriented programming exists for solving the big and complex software development. Of course, compiler and OS are complex software without question, why do gcc and linux not using c++ <sup>4</sup>? This is the reason I try to create a backend under llvm rather than gcc.

## 1.8 Preface

The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure provides a versatile structure for creating new backends. Creating a new backend should not be too difficult once you familiarize yourself with this structure. However, the available backend documentation is fairly high level and leaves out many details. This tutorial will provide step-by-step instructions to write a new backend for a new target architecture from scratch.

We will use the Cpu0 architecture as an example to build our new backend. Cpu0 is a simple RISC architecture that has been designed for educational purposes. More information about Cpu0, including its instruction set, is available [here](#). The Cpu0 example code referenced in this book can be found [here](#). As you progress from one chapter to the next, you will incrementally build the backend’s functionality.

Since Cpu0 is a simple RISC CPU for educational purpose, it makes this llvm backend code simple too and easy to learning. In addition, Cpu0 supply the Verilog source code that you can run on your PC or FPGA platform when you go to chapter “Verify backend on Verilog simulator”. To

---

<sup>1</sup> <http://llvm.org/docs/DeveloperPolicy.html#license>

<sup>2</sup> [http://www.phoronix.com/scan.php?page=news\\_item&px=MTU4MjA](http://www.phoronix.com/scan.php?page=news_item&px=MTU4MjA)

<sup>3</sup> [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/GNU\\_Compiler\\_Collection](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/GNU_Compiler_Collection)

<sup>4</sup> <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/C%2B%2B>

explain the backend design, we carefully design C/C++ program for each chapter new added function. Through these example code, readers can understand what IRs (llvm immediate form) the backend transfer from and the C/C++ code corresponding to these IRs.

This tutorial started using the LLVM 3.1 Mips backend as a reference and sync to llvm 3.5 Mips at version 3.5.3. As our experience, reference and sync with a released backend code will help upgrading your backend features and fixing bugs. You can take advantage by compare difference from version to version, and hire llvm development team effort. Since Cpu0 is an educational architecture, and it has missed some key pieces of documentation needed when developing a compiler, such as an Application Binary Interface (ABI). We implement our backend by borrowing information from the Mips ABI as a guide. You may want to familiarize yourself with the relevant parts of the Mips ABI as you progress through this tutorial.

This document can be a tutorial of toolchain development for a new CPU architecture. Many programmer gradutated from school with the knowledges of Compiler as well as Computer architecture but is not an professional engineer in compiler or CPU design. This document is a material to introduce these engineers how to programming a toolchain as well as designing a CPU based on the LLVM infrastructure without pay any money to buy software or hardware. Computer is the only device needed.

Finally, this book is not a compiler book in concept. It is for those readers who are interested in extending compiler toolchain to support a new CPU based on llvm structure. To program on Linux OS, you program a driver without knowing every details in OS. For example in a specific USB device driver program on Linux plateform, he or she will try to understand the USB specification, linux USB subsystem and common device driver working model and API. In the same way, to extend functions from a large software like this llvm umbrella project, you should find a way to reach the goal and ignore the details not on your way. Try to understand in details of every line of source code is not realistic if your project is an extended function from a well defined software structure. It only makes sense in rewriting the whole software structure. Of course, if there are more llvm backend book or documents, then readers have the chance to know more about llvm by reading book or documents.

## 1.9 Prerequisites

Readers should be comfortable with the C++ language and Object-Oriented Programming concepts. LLVM has been developed and implemented in C++, and it is written in a modular way so that various classes can be adapted and reused as often as possible.

Already having conceptual knowledge of how compilers work is a plus, and if you already have implemented compilers in the past you will likely have no trouble following this tutorial. As this tutorial will build up an LLVM backend step-by-step, we will introduce important concepts as necessary.

This tutorial references the following materials. We highly recommend you read these documents to get a deeper understanding of what the tutorial is teaching:

[The Architecture of Open Source Applications Chapter on LLVM](#)

[LLVM's Target-Independent Code Generation documentation](#)

[LLVM's TableGen Fundamentals documentation](#)

[LLVM's Writing an LLVM Compiler Backend documentation](#)

[Description of the Tricore LLVM Backend](#)

[Mips ABI document](#)

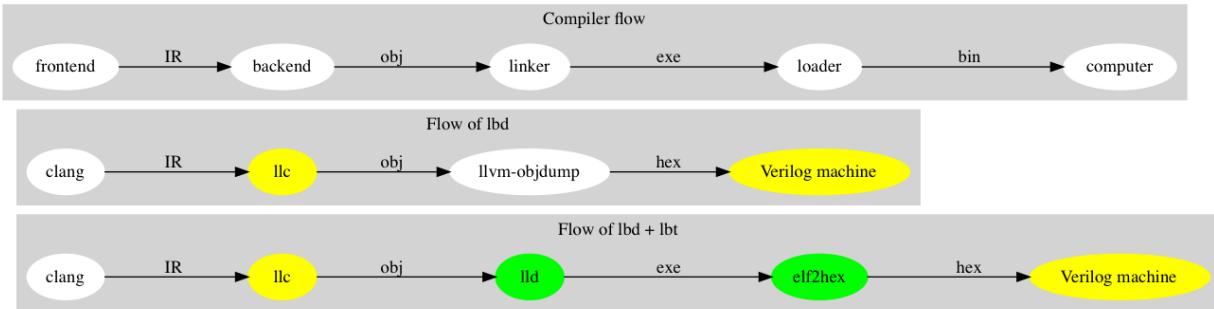


Fig. 1.1: Code generation and execution flow

## 1.10 Outline of Chapters

The top part of Fig. 1.1 is the work flow and software package of a computer program be generated and executed. IR stands for Intermediate Representation. The middle part is this book's work flow. Except clang, the other blocks need to be extended for a new backend development (Many backend extending clang too, but Cpu0 backend has not this need at this point). This book implement the yellow boxes part. The green parts of this figure, lld and elf2hex for Cpu0 backend, can be found on <http://jonathan2251.github.io/lbt/index.html>. The hex is the ascii file format using '0' to '9' and 'a' to 'f' for hexadecimal value representation since the Verilog language machine uses it as input file.

This book include 10,000 lines of source code for

1. Step-by-step, creating an llvm backend for the Cpu0. Chapter 2 to 11.
2. Cpu0 verilog source code. Chapter 12.

With these code, reader can generate Cpu0 machine code through Cpu0 llvm backend compiler, then see how it runs on your computer if the code without global variable or relocation record for handling by linker. The pdf and epub are also available in the web. This is a tutorial for llvm backend developer but not for an expert. It also can be a material for those who have compiler and computer architecture book's knowledges and like to know how to extend the llvm toolchain to support a new CPU.

### *Cpu0 architecture and LLVM structure:*

This chapter introduces the Cpu0 architecture, a high-level view of LLVM, and how Cpu0 will be targeted in in an LLVM backend. This chapter will run you through the initial steps of building the backend, including initial work on the target description (td), setting up cmake and LLVMBuild files, and target registration. Around 750 lines of source code are added by the end of this chapter.

### *Backend structure:*

This chapter highlights the structure of an LLVM backend using by UML graphs, and we continue to build the Cpu0 backend. Thousands of lines of source code are added, most of which are common from one LLVM backends to another, regardless of the target architecture. By the end of this chapter, the Cpu0 LLVM backend will support less than ten instructions to generate some initial assembly output.

### *Arithmetic and logic instructions:*

Over ten C operators and their corresponding LLVM IR instructions are introduced in this chapter. Few hundred lines of source code, mostly in .td Target Description files, are added. With these hundred lines of source code, the backend can now translate the +, -, \*, /, &, |, ^, <<, >>, ! and % C operators into the appropriate Cpu0 assembly code. Usage of the llc debug option and of Graphviz as a debug tool are introduced in this chapter.

### *Generating object files:*

Object file generation support for the Cpu0 backend is added in this chapter, as the Target Registration structure is introduced. Based on llvm structure, the Cpu0 backend can generate big and little endian ELF object files without much effort.

### *Global variables:*

Global variable handling is added in this chapter. Cpu0 supports PIC and static addressing mode, both addressing mode explained as their functionality are implemented.

### *Other data type:*

In addition to type int, other data type such as pointer, char, bool, long long, structure and array are added in this chapter.

### *Control flow statements:*

Support for flow control statements, such as, **if, else, while, for, goto, switch, case** as well as both a simple optimization software pass and hardware instructions for control statement optimization discussed in this chapter.

### *Function call:*

This chapter details the implementation of function calls in the Cpu0 backend. The stack frame, handling incoming & outgoing arguments, and their corresponding standard LLVM functions are introduced.

### *ELF Support:*

This chapter details Cpu0 support for the well-known ELF object file format. The ELF format and binutils tools are not a part of LLVM, but are introduced. This chapter details how to use the ELF tools to verify and analyze the object files created by the Cpu0 backend. The disassemble command `llvm-objdump -d` support for Cpu0 is added in the last section of this chapter.

### *Assembler:*

Support the translation of hand code assembly language into obj under the llvm infrastructure.

### *C++ support:*

Support C++ language features. It's under working.

### *Verify backend on Verilog simulator:*

Create the CPU0 virtual machine with Verilog language of Icarus tool first. With this tool, feeding the hex file which generated by `llvm-objdump` to the Cpu0 virtual machine and seeing the Cpu0 running result on PC computer.

### *Appendix A: Getting Started: Installing LLVM and the Cpu0 example code:*

Details how to set up the LLVM source code, development tools, and environment setting for Mac OS X and Linux platforms.

### *Appendix B: Cpu0 document and test:*

This book uses Sphinx to generate pdf and epub format of document further. Details about how to install tools to and generate these docuemnts and regression test for Cpu0 backend are included.



## CPU0 ARCHITECTURE AND LLVM STRUCTURE

- *Cpu0 Processor Architecture Details*
  - *Brief introduction*
  - *The Cpu0 Instruction Set*
    - \* *Why not using ADD instead of SUB?*
  - *The Status Register*
  - *Cpu0's Stages of Instruction Execution*
  - *Cpu0's Interrupt Vector*
- *LLVM Structure*
  - *Three-phase design*
  - *LLVM's Target Description Files: .td*
  - *LLVM Code Generation Sequence*
  - *SSA form*
  - *DSA form*
  - *DAG (Directed Acyclic Graph)*
  - *Instruction Selection*
  - *Caller and callee saved registers*
  - *Live in and live out register*
- *Create Cpu0 backend*
  - *Cpu0 backend machine ID and relocation records*
  - *Creating the Initial Cpu0 .td Files*
  - *Write cmake file*
  - *Target Registration*
  - *Build libraries and td*

Before you begin this tutorial, you should know that you can always try to develop your own backend by porting code from existing backends. The majority of the code you will want to investigate can be found in the `/lib/Target` directory of your root LLVM installation. As most major RISC instruction sets have some similarities, this may be the avenue you might try if you are an experienced programmer and knowledgeable of compiler backends.

On the other hand, there is a steep learning curve and you may easily get stuck debugging your new backend. You can easily spend a lot of time tracing which methods are callbacks of some function, or which are calling some overridden method deep in the LLVM codebase - and with a codebase as large as LLVM, all of this can easily become difficult to keep track of. This tutorial will help you work through this process while learning the fundamentals of LLVM backend design. It will show you what is necessary to get your first backend functional and complete, and it should help you understand how to debug your backend when it produces incorrect machine code using output provided by the compiler.

This chapter details the Cpu0 instruction set and the structure of LLVM. The LLVM structure information is adapted from Chris Lattner's LLVM chapter of the Architecture of Open Source Applications book<sup>10</sup>. You can read the original article from the AOSA website if you prefer.

At the end of this Chapter, you will begin to create a new LLVM backend by writing register and instruction definitions in the Target Description files which will be used in next chapter.

Finally, there are compiler knowledge like DAG (Directed-Acyclic-Graph) and instruction selection needed in llvm backend design, and they are explained here.

## 2.1 Cpu0 Processor Architecture Details

This section is based on materials available here<sup>1</sup> (Chinese) and here<sup>2</sup> (English).

### 2.1.1 Brief introduction

Cpu0 is a 32-bit architecture. It has 16 general purpose registers (R0, ..., R15), co-processor registers (like Mips), and other special registers. Its structure is illustrated in Fig. 2.1 below.

The registers are used for the following purposes:

Table 2.1: Cpu0 general purpose registers (GPR)

Register	Description
R0	Constant register, value is 0
R1-R10	General-purpose registers
R11	Global Pointer register (GP)
R12	Frame Pointer register (FP)
R13	Stack Pointer register (SP)
R14	Link Register (LR)
R15	Status Word Register (SW)

Table 2.2: Cpu0 co-processor 0 registers (COR)

Register	Description
0	Program Counter (PC)
1	Error Program Counter (EPC)

<sup>10</sup> Chris Lattner, **LLVM**. Published in The Architecture of Open Source Applications. <http://www.aosabook.org/en/llvm.html>

<sup>1</sup> Original Cpu0 architecture and ISA details (Chinese). <http://ccckmit.wikidot.com/ocs:cpu0>

<sup>2</sup> English translation of Cpu0 description. [http://translate.google.com.tw/translate?js=n&prev=\\_t&hl=zh-TW&ie=UTF-8&layout=2&eotf=1&sl=zh-CN&tl=en&u=http://ccckmit.wikidot.com/ocs:cpu0](http://translate.google.com.tw/translate?js=n&prev=_t&hl=zh-TW&ie=UTF-8&layout=2&eotf=1&sl=zh-CN&tl=en&u=http://ccckmit.wikidot.com/ocs:cpu0)

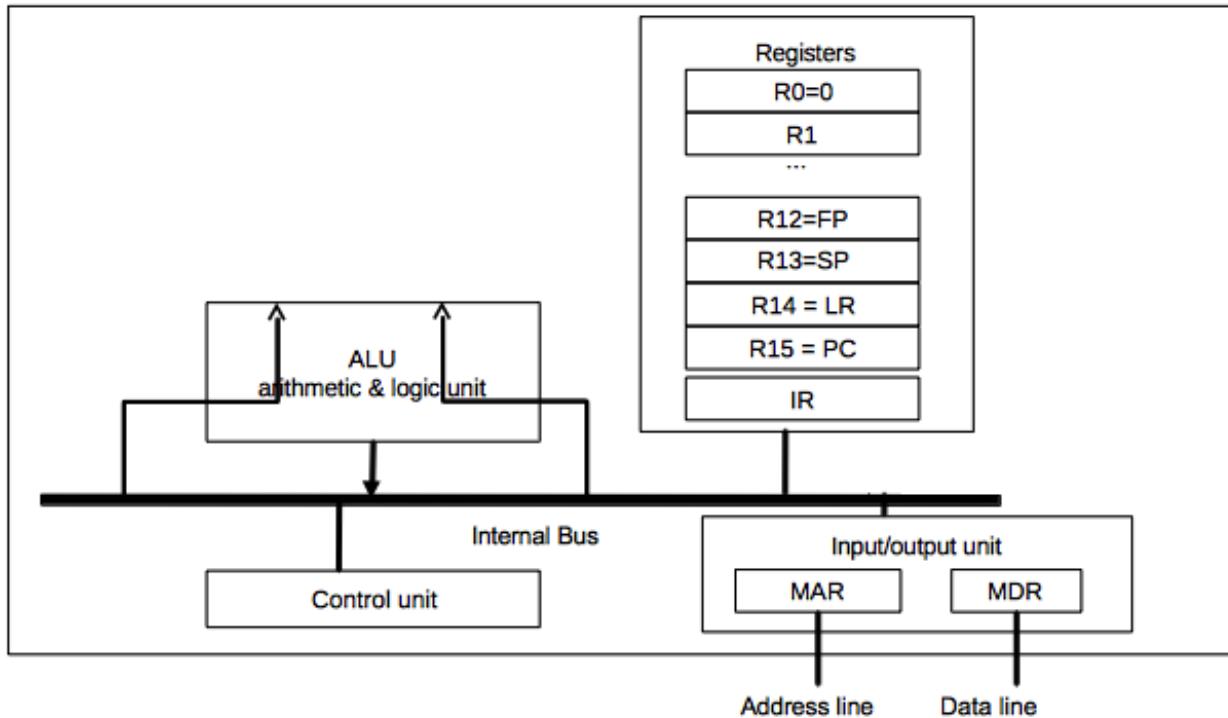


Fig. 2.1: Architectural block diagram of the Cpu0 processor

Table 2.3: Cpu0 other registers

Register	Description
IR	Instruction register
MAR	Memory Address Register (MAR)
MDR	Memory Data Register (MDR)
HI	High part of MULT result
LO	Low part of MULT result

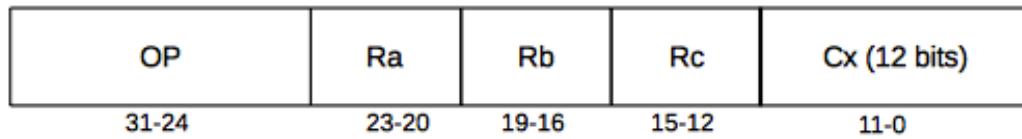
### 2.1.2 The Cpu0 Instruction Set

The Cpu0 instruction set can be divided into three types: L-type instructions, which are generally associated with memory operations, A-type instructions for arithmetic operations, and J-type instructions that are typically used when altering control flow (i.e. jumps). Fig. 2.2 illustrates how the bitfields are broken down for each type of instruction.

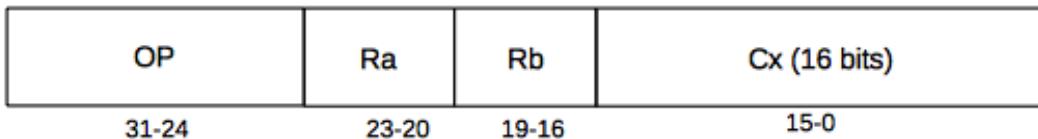
The Cpu0 has two ISA, the first ISA-I is cpu032I which hired CMP instruction from ARM; the second ISA-II is cpu032II which hired SLT instruction from Mips. The cpu032II include all cpu032I instruction set and add SLT, BEQ, ..., instructions. The main purpose to add cpu032II is for instruction set design explanation. As you will see in later chapter (chapter Control flow statements), the SLT instruction will have better performance than CMP old style instruction. The following table details the cpu032I instruction set:

- First column F.: meaning Format.

A 型



L 型



J 型



Fig. 2.2: Cpu0's three instruction formats

Table 2.4: cpu032I Instruction Set

F.	Mnemonic	Opcode	Meaning	Syntax	Operation
L	NOP	00	No Operation		
L	LD	01	Load word	LD Ra, [Rb+Cx]	$Ra \leftarrow [Rb+Cx]$
L	ST	02	Store word	ST Ra, [Rb+Cx]	$[Rb+Cx] \leftarrow Ra$
L	LB	03	Load byte	LB Ra, [Rb+Cx]	$Ra \leftarrow (\text{byte})[Rb+Cx]^3$
L	LBu	04	Load byte unsigned	LBu Ra, [Rb+Cx]	$Ra \leftarrow (\text{byte})[Rb+Cx]^3$
L	SB	05	Store byte	SB Ra, [Rb+Cx]	$[Rb+Cx] \leftarrow (\text{byte})Ra$
L	LH	06	Load half word	LH Ra, [Rb+Cx]	$Ra \leftarrow (\text{2bytes})[Rb+Cx]^3$
L	LHu	07	Load half word unsigned	LHu Ra, [Rb+Cx]	$Ra \leftarrow (\text{2bytes})[Rb+Cx]^3$
L	SH	08	Store half word	SH Ra, [Rb+Cx]	$[Rb+Cx] \leftarrow Ra$
L	ADDiu	09	Add immediate	ADDiu Ra, Rb, Cx	$Ra \leftarrow (Rb + Cx)$
L	ANDi	0C	AND imm	ANDi Ra, Rb, Cx	$Ra \leftarrow (Rb \& Cx)$
L	ORi	0D	OR	ORi Ra, Rb, Cx	$Ra \leftarrow (Rb   Cx)$
L	XORi	0E	XOR	XORi Ra, Rb, Cx	$Ra \leftarrow (Rb ^ Cx)$
L	LUi	0F	Load upper	LUi Ra, Cx	$Ra \leftarrow (Cx \ll 16)$
A	CMP	10	Compare	CMP Ra, Rb	$SW \leftarrow (Ra \text{ cond } Rb)^5$
A	ADDu	11	Add unsigned	ADD Ra, Rb, Rc	$Ra \leftarrow Rb + Rc^4$
A	SUBu	12	Sub unsigned	SUB Ra, Rb, Rc	$Ra \leftarrow Rb - Rc^4$
A	ADD	13	Add	ADD Ra, Rb, Rc	$Ra \leftarrow Rb + Rc^4$
A	SUB	14	Subtract	SUB Ra, Rb, Rc	$Ra \leftarrow Rb - Rc^4$
A	MUL	17	Multiply	MUL Ra, Rb, Rc	$Ra \leftarrow Rb * Rc$
A	AND	18	Bitwise and	AND Ra, Rb, Rc	$Ra \leftarrow Rb \& Rc$
A	OR	19	Bitwise or	OR Ra, Rb, Rc	$Ra \leftarrow Rb   Rc$
A	XOR	1A	Bitwise exclusive or	XOR Ra, Rb, Rc	$Ra \leftarrow Rb ^ Rc$
A	ROL	1B	Rotate left	ROL Ra, Rb, Cx	$Ra \leftarrow Rb \text{ rol } Cx$

Continued on next page

Table 2.4 – continued from previous page

F.	Mnemonic	Opcode	Meaning	Syntax	Operation
A	ROR	1C	Rotate right	ROR Ra, Rb, Cx	Ra <= Rb ror Cx
A	SRA	1D	Shift right	SRA Ra, Rb, Cx	Ra <= Rb ‘>> Cx <sup>6</sup>
A	SHL	1E	Shift left	SHL Ra, Rb, Cx	Ra <= Rb << Cx
A	SHR	1F	Shift right	SHR Ra, Rb, Cx	Ra <= Rb >> Cx
A	SRAV	20	Shift right	SRAV Ra, Rb, Rc	Ra <= Rb ‘>> Rc <sup>6</sup>
A	SHLV	21	Shift left	SHLV Ra, Rb, Rc	Ra <= Rb << Rc
A	SHRV	22	Shift right	SHRV Ra, Rb, Rc	Ra <= Rb >> Rc
A	ROL	23	Rotate left	ROL Ra, Rb, Rc	Ra <= Rb rol Rc
A	ROR	24	Rotate right	ROR Ra, Rb, Rc	Ra <= Rb ror Rc
J	JEQ	30	Jump if equal (==)	JEQ Cx	if SW(==), PC <= PC + Cx
J	JNE	31	Jump if not equal (!=)	JNE Cx	if SW(!=), PC <= PC + Cx
J	JLT	32	Jump if less than (<)	JLT Cx	if SW(<), PC <= PC + Cx
J	JGT	33	Jump if greater than (>)	JGT Cx	if SW(>), PC <= PC + Cx
J	JLE	34	Jump if less than or equals (<=)	JLE Cx	if SW(<=), PC <= PC + Cx
J	JGE	35	Jump if greater than or equals (>=)	JGE Cx	if SW(>=), PC <= PC + Cx
J	JMP	36	Jump (unconditional)	JMP Cx	PC <= PC + Cx
J	JALR	39	Indirect jump	JALR Rb	LR <= PC; PC <= Rb <sup>7</sup>
J	JSUB	3B	Jump to subroutine	JSUB Cx	LR <= PC; PC <= PC + Cx
J	JR/RET	3C	Return from subroutine	JR \$1 or RET LR	PC <= LR <sup>8</sup>
A	MULT	41	Multiply for 64 bits result	MULT Ra, Rb	(HI,LO) <= MULT(Ra,Rb)
A	MULTU	42	MULT for unsigned 64 bits	MULTU Ra, Rb	(HI,LO) <= MULTU(Ra,Rb)
A	DIV	43	Divide	DIV Ra, Rb	HI<=Ra%Rb, LO<=Ra/Rb
A	DIVU	44	Divide unsigned	DIVU Ra, Rb	HI<=Ra%Rb, LO<=Ra/Rb
A	MFHI	46	Move HI to GPR	MFHI Ra	Ra <= HI
A	MFLO	47	Move LO to GPR	MFLO Ra	Ra <= LO
A	MTHI	48	Move GPR to HI	MTHI Ra	HI <= Ra
A	MTLO	49	Move GPR to LO	MTLO Ra	LO <= Ra
A	MFC0	50	Move C0R to GPR	MFC0 Ra, Rb	Ra <= Rb
A	MTC0	51	Move GPR to C0R	MTC0 Ra, Rb	Ra <= Rb
A	C0MOV	52	Move C0R to C0R	C0MOV Ra, Rb	Ra <= Rb

The following table details the cpu032II instruction set added:

<sup>3</sup> The difference between LB and LBu is signed and unsigned byte value expand to a word size. For example, After LB Ra, [Rb+Cx], Ra is 0xffffffff80 (= -128) if byte [Rb+Cx] is 0x80; Ra is 0x0000007f (= 127) if byte [Rb+Cx] is 0x7f. After LBu Ra, [Rb+Cx], Ra is 0x00000080 (= 128) if byte [Rb+Cx] is 0x80; Ra is 0x0000007f (= 127) if byte [Rb+Cx] is 0x7f. Difference between LH and LHu is similar.

<sup>5</sup> Conditions include the following comparisons: >, >=, ==, !=, <, <=. SW is actually set by the subtraction of the two register operands, and the flags indicate which conditions are present.

<sup>4</sup> The only difference between ADDu instruction and the ADD instruction is that the ADDU instruction never causes an Integer Overflow exception. SUBu and SUB is similar.

<sup>6</sup> Rb ‘>> Cx, Rb ‘>> Rc: Shift with signed bit remain. It's equal to ((Rb&’h80000000)|Rb>>Cx) or ((Rb&’h80000000)|Rb>>Rc).

<sup>7</sup> jsub cx is direct call for 24 bits value of cx while jalr \$rb is indirect call for 32 bits value of register \$rb.

<sup>8</sup> Both JR and RET has same opcode (actually they are the same instruction for Cpu0 hardware). When user writes “jr \$t9” meaning it jumps to address of register \$t9; when user writes “jr \$lr” meaning it jump back to the caller function (since \$lr is the return address). For user readability, Cpu0 prints “ret \$lr” instead of “jr \$lr”.

Table 2.5: cpu032II Instruction Set

F.	Mnemonic	Opcode	Meaning	Syntax	Operation
L	SLTi	26	Set less Then	SLTi Ra, Rb, Cx	$Ra \leq (Rb < Cx)$
L	SLTi <sub>u</sub>	27	SLTi unsigned	SLTi <sub>u</sub> Ra, Rb, Cx	$Ra \leq (Rb < Cx)$
A	SLT	28	Set less Then	SLT Ra, Rb, Rc	$Ra \leq (Rb < Rc)$
A	SLTu	29	SLT unsigned	SLTu Ra, Rb, Rc	$Ra \leq (Rb < Rc)$
L	BEQ	37	Branch if equal	BEQ Ra, Rb, Cx	if ( $Ra == Rb$ ), $PC \leq PC + Cx$
L	BNE	38	Branch if not equal	BNE Ra, Rb, Cx	if ( $Ra != Rb$ ), $PC \leq PC + Cx$
J	BAL	3A	Branch and link	BAL Cx	$LR \leq PC; PC \leq PC + Cx$

#### Note: Cpu0 unsigned instructions

Like Mips, except DIVU, the mathematic unsigned instructions such as ADDu and SUBu, are instructions of no overflow exception. The ADDu and SUBu handle both signed and unsigned integers well. For example, (ADDu 1, -2) is -1; (ADDu 0x01, 0xffffffff) is 0xffffffff = (4G - 1). If you treat the result is negative then it is -1. On the other hand, it's (+4G - 1) if you treat the result is positive.

---

#### Why not using ADD instead of SUB?

From text book of computer introduction, we know SUB can be replaced by ADD as follows,

- $(A - B) = (A + (-B))$

Since Mips uses 32 bits to represent int type of C language, if B is the value of -2G, then

- $(A - (-2G)) = (A + (2G))$

But the problem is value -2G can be represented in 32 bits machine while 2G cannot, since the range of 2's complement representation for 32 bits is (-2G .. 2G-1). The 2's complement representation has the merit of fast computation in circuits design, it is widely used in real CPU implementation. That's why almost every CPU create SUB instruction, rather than using ADD instead of.

#### 2.1.3 The Status Register

The Cpu0 status word register (SW) contains the state of the Negative (N), Zero (Z), Carry (C), Overflow (V), Debug (D), Mode (M), and Interrupt (I) flags. The bit layout of the SW register is shown in Fig. 2.3 below.

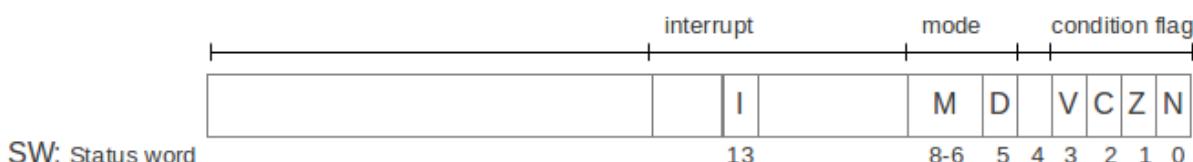


Fig. 2.3: Cpu0 status word (SW) register

When a CMP Ra, Rb instruction executes, the condition flags will change. For example:

- If  $Ra > Rb$ , then  $N = 0, Z = 0$
- If  $Ra < Rb$ , then  $N = 1, Z = 0$

- If Ra = Rb, then N = 0, Z = 1

The direction (i.e. taken/not taken) of the conditional jump instructions JGT, JLT, JGE, JLE, JEQ, JNE is determined by the N and Z flags in the SW register.

## 2.1.4 Cpu0's Stages of Instruction Execution

The Cpu0 architecture has a five-stage pipeline. The stages are instruction fetch (IF), instruction decode (ID), execute (EX), memory access (MEM) and write back (WB). Here is a description of what happens in the processor for each stage:

### 1. Instruction fetch (IF)

- The Cpu0 fetches the instruction pointed to by the Program Counter (PC) into the Instruction Register (IR): IR = [PC].
- The PC is then updated to point to the next instruction: PC = PC + 4.

### 2. Instruction decode (ID)

- The control unit decodes the instruction stored in IR, which routes necessary data stored in registers to the ALU, and sets the ALU's operation mode based on the current instruction's opcode.

### 3. Execute (EX)

- The ALU executes the operation designated by the control unit upon data in registers. Except load and store instructions, the result is stored in the destination register after the ALU is done.

### 4. Memory access (MEM)

- Read data from data cache to pipeline register MEM/WB if it is load instruction; write data from register to data cache if it is strore instruction.

### 5. Write-back (WB)

- Move data from pipeline register MEM/WB to Register if it is load instruction.

## 2.1.5 Cpu0's Interrupt Vector

Table 2.6: Cpu0's Interrupt Vector

Address	type
0x00	Reset
0x04	Error Handle
0x08	Interrupt

## 2.2 LLVM Structure

This section introduces the compiler data structure, algorithm and mechanism that llvm uses.

### 2.2.1 Three-phase design

The text in this and the following sub-section comes from the AOSA chapter on LLVM written by Chris Lattner<sup>10</sup>.

The most popular design for a traditional static compiler (like most C compilers) is the three phase design whose major components are the front end, the optimizer and the back end, as seen in Fig. 2.4. The front end parses source code, checking it for errors, and builds a language-specific Abstract Syntax Tree (AST) to represent the input code. The AST is optionally converted to a new representation for optimization, and the optimizer and back end are run on the code.

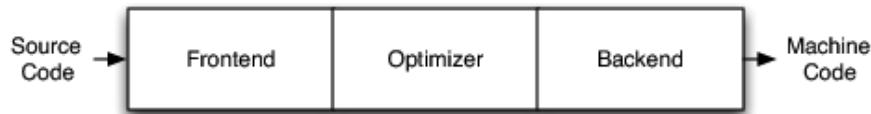


Fig. 2.4: Three Major Components of a Three Phase Compiler

The optimizer is responsible for doing a broad variety of transformations to try to improve the code's running time, such as eliminating redundant computations, and is usually more or less independent of language and target. The back end (also known as the code generator) then maps the code onto the target instruction set. In addition to making correct code, it is responsible for generating good code that takes advantage of unusual features of the supported architecture. Common parts of a compiler back end include instruction selection, register allocation, and instruction scheduling.

This model applies equally well to interpreters and JIT compilers. The Java Virtual Machine (JVM) is also an implementation of this model, which uses Java bytecode as the interface between the front end and optimizer.

The most important win of this classical design comes when a compiler decides to support multiple source languages or target architectures. If the compiler uses a common code representation in its optimizer, then a front end can be written for any language that can compile to it, and a back end can be written for any target that can compile from it, as shown in Fig. 2.5.

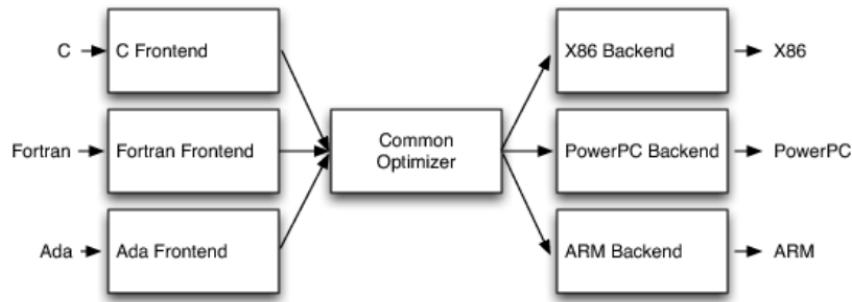


Fig. 2.5: Retargetability

With this design, porting the compiler to support a new source language (e.g., Algol or BASIC) requires implementing a new front end, but the existing optimizer and back end can be reused. If these parts weren't separated, implementing a new source language would require starting over from scratch, so supporting N targets and M source languages would need  $N \times M$  compilers.

Another advantage of the three-phase design (which follows directly from retargetability) is that the compiler serves a broader set of programmers than it would if it only supported one source language and one target. For an open source project, this means that there is a larger community of potential contributors to draw from, which naturally leads to more enhancements and improvements to the compiler. This is the reason why open source compilers that serve many communities (like GCC) tend to generate better optimized machine code than narrower compilers like FreePASCAL. This isn't the case for proprietary compilers, whose quality is directly related to the project's budget. For example, the Intel ICC Compiler is widely known for the quality of code it generates, even though it serves a narrow audience.

A final major win of the three-phase design is that the skills required to implement a front end are different than those required for the optimizer and back end. Separating these makes it easier for a “front-end person” to enhance

and maintain their part of the compiler. While this is a social issue, not a technical one, it matters a lot in practice, particularly for open source projects that want to reduce the barrier to contributing as much as possible.

The most important aspect of its design is the LLVM Intermediate Representation (IR), which is the form it uses to represent code in the compiler. LLVM IR is designed to host mid-level analyses and transformations that you find in the optimizer chapter of a compiler. It was designed with many specific goals in mind, including supporting lightweight runtime optimizations, cross-function/interprocedural optimizations, whole program analysis, and aggressive restructuring transformations, etc. The most important aspect of it, though, is that it is itself defined as a first class language with well-defined semantics. To make this concrete, here is a simple example of a .ll file:

```
define i32 @add1(i32 %a, i32 %b) {
entry:
  %tmp1 = add i32 %a, %b
  ret i32 %tmp1
}
define i32 @add2(i32 %a, i32 %b) {
entry:
  %tmp1 = icmp eq i32 %a, 0
  br i1 %tmp1, label %done, label %recurse
recurse:
  %tmp2 = sub i32 %a, 1
  %tmp3 = add i32 %b, 1
  %tmp4 = call i32 @add2(i32 %tmp2, i32 %tmp3)
  ret i32 %tmp4
done:
  ret i32 %b
}
```

```
// Above LLVM IR corresponds to this C code, which provides two different ways to
// add integers:
unsigned add1(unsigned a, unsigned b) {
    return a+b;
}
// Perhaps not the most efficient way to add two numbers.
unsigned add2(unsigned a, unsigned b) {
    if (a == 0) return b;
    return add2(a-1, b+1);
}
```

As you can see from this example, LLVM IR is a low-level RISC-like virtual instruction set. Like a real RISC instruction set, it supports linear sequences of simple instructions like add, subtract, compare, and branch. These instructions are in three address form, which means that they take some number of inputs and produce a result in a different register. LLVM IR supports labels and generally looks like a weird form of assembly language.

Unlike most RISC instruction sets, LLVM is strongly typed with a simple type system (e.g., i32 is a 32-bit integer, i32\*\* is a pointer to pointer to 32-bit integer) and some details of the machine are abstracted away. For example, the calling convention is abstracted through call and ret instructions and explicit arguments. Another significant difference from machine code is that the LLVM IR doesn't use a fixed set of named registers, it uses an infinite set of temporaries named with a % character.

Beyond being implemented as a language, LLVM IR is actually defined in three isomorphic forms: the textual format above, an in-memory data structure inspected and modified by optimizations themselves, and an efficient and dense on-disk binary “bitcode” format. The LLVM Project also provides tools to convert the on-disk format from text to binary: llvm-as assembles the textual .ll file into a .bc file containing the bitcode goop and llvm-dis turns a .bc file into a .ll file.

The intermediate representation of a compiler is interesting because it can be a “perfect world” for the compiler optimizer: unlike the front end and back end of the compiler, the optimizer isn't constrained by either a specific source

language or a specific target machine. On the other hand, it has to serve both well: it has to be designed to be easy for a front end to generate and be expressive enough to allow important optimizations to be performed for real targets.

## 2.2.2 LLVM's Target Description Files: .td

The “mix and match” approach allows target authors to choose what makes sense for their architecture and permits a large amount of code reuse across different targets. This brings up another challenge: each shared component needs to be able to reason about target specific properties in a generic way. For example, a shared register allocator needs to know the register file of each target and the constraints that exist between instructions and their register operands. LLVM’s solution to this is for each target to provide a target description in a declarative domain-specific language (a set of .td files) processed by the tblgen tool. The (simplified) build process for the x86 target is shown in Fig. 2.6.

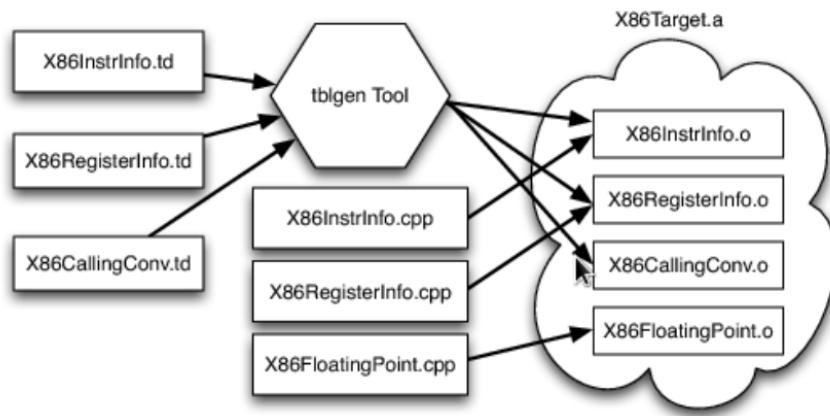


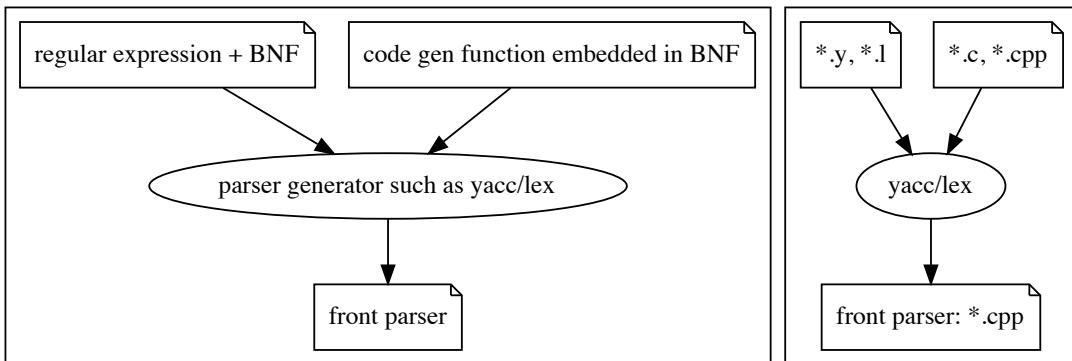
Fig. 2.6: Simplified x86 Target Definition

The different subsystems supported by the .td files allow target authors to build up the different pieces of their target. For example, the x86 back end defines a register class that holds all of its 32-bit registers named “GR32” (in the .td files, target specific definitions are all caps) like this:

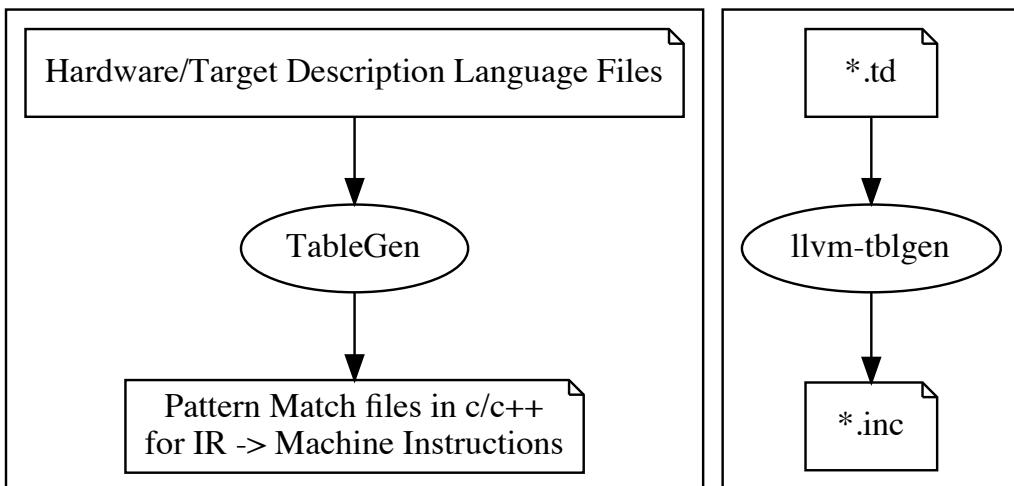
```

def GR32 : RegisterClass<i32>, 32,
[EAX, ECX, EDX, ESI, EDI, EBX, EBP, ESP,
R8D, R9D, R10D, R11D, R14D, R15D, R12D, R13D] > { ... }
  
```

The language used in .td files are Target(Hardware) Description Language that let llvm backend compiler engineers to define the transformation for llvm IR and the machine instructions of their CPUs. In frontend, compiler development tools provide the “Parser Generator” for compiler development; in backend, they provide the “Machine Code Generator” for development, as the following figures.



Front TableGen Flow



llvm TableGen Flow

Since the c++'s grammar is more context-sensitive than context-free, llvm frontend project clang uses handcode parser without BNF generator tools. In backend development, the IR to machine instructions transformation can get great benefits from TableGen tools. Though c++ compiler cannot get benefit from BNF generator tools, many computer languages and script languages are more context-free and can get benefit from the tools.

The following come from wiki:

Java syntax has a context-free grammar that can be parsed by a simple LALR parser. Parsing C++ is more complicated<sup>9</sup>.

The gnu g++ compiler abandoned BNF tools since version 3.x. I think another reason beyond that c++ has more

<sup>9</sup> [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Comparison\\_of\\_Java\\_and\\_C%2B%2B](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Comparison_of_Java_and_C%2B%2B)

context-sensitive grammar is handcode parser can provide better error diagnosis than BNF tool since BNF tool always select the rules from BNF grammar if match.

### 2.2.3 LLVM Code Generation Sequence

Following diagram come from tricore\_llvm.pdf.

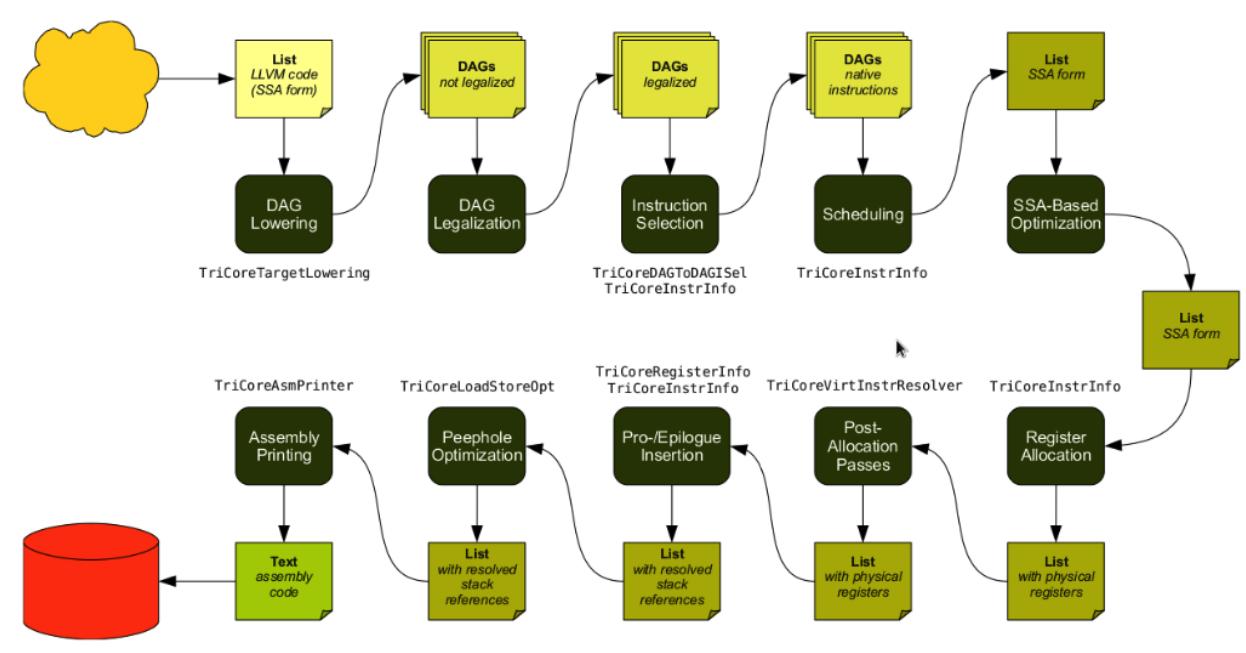


Fig. 2.7: tricore\_llvm.pdf: Code generation sequence. On the path from LLVM code to assembly code, numerous passes are run through and several data structures are used to represent the intermediate results.

LLVM is a Static Single Assignment (SSA) based representation. LLVM provides an infinite virtual registers which can hold values of primitive type (integral, floating point, or pointer values). So, every operand can be saved in different virtual register in llvm SSA representation. Comment is ";" in llvm representation. Following is the llvm SSA instructions.

```

store i32 0, i32* %a ; store i32 type of 0 to virtual register %a, %a is
; pointer type which point to i32 value
store i32 %b, i32* %c ; store %b contents to %c point to, %b is i32 type virtual
; register, %c is pointer type which point to i32 value.
%a1 = load i32* %a ; load the memory value where %a point to and assign the
; memory value to %a1
%a3 = add i32 %a2, 1 ; add %a2 and 1 and save to %a3

```

We explain the code generation process as below. If you don't feel comfortable, please check tricore\_llvm.pdf section 4.2 first. You can read "The LLVM Target-Independent Code Generator" from here <sup>12</sup> and "LLVM Language Reference Manual" from here <sup>13</sup> before go ahead, but we think the section 4.2 of tricore\_llvm.pdf is enough and suggesting you read the web site documents as above only when you are still not quite understand, even if you have read the articles of this section and next two sections for DAG and Instruction Selection.

#### 1. Instruction Selection

<sup>12</sup> <http://llvm.org/docs/CodeGenerator.html>

<sup>13</sup> <http://llvm.org/docs/LangRef.html>

```
// In this stage, transfer the llvm opcode into machine opcode, but the operand
// still is llvm virtual operand.
    store i16 0, i16* %a // store 0 of i16 type to where virtual register %a
                           // point to.
=> st i16 0, i32* %a    // Use Cpu0 backend instruction st instead of IR store.
```

## 2. Scheduling and Formation

```
// In this stage, reorder the instructions sequence for optimization in
// instructions cycle or in register pressure.
    st i32 %a, i16* %b, i16 5 // st %a to *(%b+5)
    st %b, i32* %c, i16 0
    %d = ld i32* %c

// Transfer above instructions order as follows. In RISC CPU of Mips, the ld
// %c uses the result of the previous instruction st %c. So it must waits 1
// cycle. Meaning the ld cannot follow st immediately.
=> st %b, i32* %c, i16 0
    st i32 %a, i16* %b, i16 5
    %d = ld i32* %c, i16 0

// If without reorder instructions, a instruction nop which do nothing must be
// filled, contribute one instruction cycle more than optimization. (Actually,
// Mips is scheduled with hardware dynamically and will insert nop between st
// and ld instructions if compiler didn't insert nop.)
    st i32 %a, i16* %b, i16 5
    st %b, i32* %c, i16 0
    nop
    %d = ld i32* %c, i16 0

// Minimum register pressure
// Suppose %c is alive after the instructions basic block (meaning %c will be
// used after the basic block), %a and %b are not alive after that.
// The following no-reorder-version need 3 registers at least
    %a = add i32 1, i32 0
    %b = add i32 2, i32 0
    st %a, i32* %c, 1
    st %b, i32* %c, 2

// The reorder version needs 2 registers only (by allocate %a and %b in the same
// register)
=> %a = add i32 1, i32 0
    st %a, i32* %c, 1
    %b = add i32 2, i32 0
    st %b, i32* %c, 2
```

## 3. SSA-based Machine Code Optimization

For example, common expression remove, shown in next section DAG.

## 4. Register Allocation

Allocate real register for virtual register.

## 5. Prologue/Epilogue Code Insertion

Explain in section Add Prologue/Epilogue functions

## 6. Late Machine Code Optimizations

Any “last-minute” peephole optimizations of the final machine code can be applied during this phase. For

example, replace  $x = x * 2$  by  $x = x < 1$  for integer operand.

### 7. Code Emission

Finally, the completed machine code is emitted. For static compilation, the end result is an assembly code file; for JIT compilation, the opcodes of the machine instructions are written into memory.

The llc code generation sequence also can be obtained by `llc -debug-pass=Structure` as the following. The first 4 code generation sequences from Fig. 2.7 are in the ‘**DAG->DAG Pattern Instruction Selection**’ of the `llc -debug-pass=Structure` displayed. The order of Peephole Optimizations and Prologue/Epilogue Insertion is inconsistent between Fig. 2.7 and `llc -debug-pass=Structure` (please check the \* in the following). No need to be bothered with this since the the LLVM is under development and changed from time to time.

```
118-165-79-200:input Jonathan$ llc --help-hidden
OVERVIEW: llvm system compiler

USAGE: llc [options] <input bitcode>

OPTIONS:
...
  -debug-pass           - Print PassManager debugging information
  =None                - disable debug output
  =Arguments           - print pass arguments to pass to 'opt'
  =Structure            - print pass structure before run()
  =Executions           - print pass name before it is executed
  =Details              - print pass details when it is executed

118-165-79-200:input Jonathan$ llc -march=mips -debug-pass=Structure ch3.bc
...
Target Library Information
Target Transform Info
Data Layout
Target Pass Configuration
No Alias Analysis (always returns 'may' alias)
Type-Based Alias Analysis
Basic Alias Analysis (stateless AA impl)
Create Garbage Collector Module Metadata
Machine Module Information
Machine Branch Probability Analysis
  ModulePass Manager
    FunctionPass Manager
      Preliminary module verification
      Dominator Tree Construction
      Module Verifier
      Natural Loop Information
      Loop Pass Manager
        Canonicalize natural loops
      Scalar Evolution Analysis
      Loop Pass Manager
        Canonicalize natural loops
        Induction Variable Users
        Loop Strength Reduction
      Lower Garbage Collection Instructions
      Remove unreachable blocks from the CFG
      Exception handling preparation
      Optimize for code generation
      Insert stack protectors
      Preliminary module verification
      Dominator Tree Construction
```

```
Module Verifier
Machine Function Analysis
Natural Loop Information
Branch Probability Analysis
* MIPS DAG->DAG Pattern Instruction Selection
  Expand ISel Pseudo-instructions
  Tail Duplication
  Optimize machine instruction PHIs
  MachineDominator Tree Construction
  Slot index numbering
  Merge disjoint stack slots
  Local Stack Slot Allocation
  Remove dead machine instructions
  MachineDominator Tree Construction
  Machine Natural Loop Construction
  Machine Loop Invariant Code Motion
  Machine Common Subexpression Elimination
  Machine code sinking
* Peephole Optimizations
  Process Implicit Definitions
  Remove unreachable machine basic blocks
  Live Variable Analysis
  Eliminate PHI nodes for register allocation
  Two-Address instruction pass
  Slot index numbering
  Live Interval Analysis
  Debug Variable Analysis
  Simple Register Coalescing
  Live Stack Slot Analysis
  Calculate spill weights
  Virtual Register Map
  Live Register Matrix
  Bundle Machine CFG Edges
  Spill Code Placement Analysis
* Greedy Register Allocator
  Virtual Register Rewriter
  Stack Slot Coloring
  Machine Loop Invariant Code Motion
* Prologue/Epilogue Insertion & Frame Finalization
  Control Flow Optimizer
  Tail Duplication
  Machine Copy Propagation Pass
* Post-RA pseudo instruction expansion pass
  MachineDominator Tree Construction
  Machine Natural Loop Construction
  Post RA top-down list latency scheduler
  Analyze Machine Code For Garbage Collection
  Machine Block Frequency Analysis
  Branch Probability Basic Block Placement
  Mips Delay Slot Filler
  Mips Long Branch
  MachineDominator Tree Construction
  Machine Natural Loop Construction
* Mips Assembly Printer
  Delete Garbage Collector Information
```

## 2.2.4 SSA form

SSA form says that each variable is assigned exactly once. LLVM IR is SSA form which has unbounded virtual registers (each variable is assigned exactly once and is kept in different virtual register). As the result, the optimization steps used in code generation sequence which include stages of **Instruction Selection, Scheduling and Formation** and **Register Allocation**, won't loss any optimization opportunity. For example, if using limited virtual registers instead of unlimited as the following code,

```
%a = add nsw i32 1, i32 0
store i32 %a, i32* %c, align 4
%a = add nsw i32 2, i32 0
store i32 %a, i32* %c, align 4
```

Above using limited virtual registers, so virtual register `%a` used twice. Compiler have to generate the following code since it assigns virtual register `%a` as output at two different statement.

=> `%a = add i32 1, i32 0` st `%a, i32* %c, 1` `%a = add i32 2, i32 0` st `%a, i32* %c, 2`

Above code have to run in sequence. On the other hand, the SSA form as the following can be reordered and run in parallel with the following different version<sup>14</sup>.

```
%a = add nsw i32 1, i32 0
store i32 %a, i32* %c, align 4
%b = add nsw i32 2, i32 0
store i32 %b, i32* %d, align 4

// version 1
=> %a = add i32 1, i32 0
    st %a, i32* %c, 0
    %b = add i32 2, i32 0
    st %b, i32* %d, 0

// version 2
=> %a = add i32 1, i32 0
    %b = add i32 2, i32 0
    st %a, i32* %c, 0
    st %b, i32* %d, 0

// version 3
=> %b = add i32 2, i32 0
    st %b, i32* %d, 0
    %a = add i32 1, i32 0
    st %a, i32* %c, 0
```

## 2.2.5 DSA form

```
for (int i = 0; i < 1000; i++) {
    b[i] = f(g(a[i]));
}
```

For the source program as above, the following are the SSA form in source code level and llvm IR level respectively.

```
for (int i = 0; i < 1000; i++) {
    t = g(a[i]);
```

<sup>14</sup> Refer section 10.2.3 of book Compilers: Principles, Techniques, and Tools (2nd Edition)

```
b[i] = f(t);
}
```

```
%pi = alloca i32
store i32 0, i32* %pi
%i = load i32, i32* %pi
%cmp = icmp slt i32 %i, 1000
br i1 %cmp, label %true, label %end
true:
%a_idx = add i32 %i, i32 %a_addr
%val0 = load i32, i32* %a_idx
%t = call i64 %g(i32 %val0)
%val1 = call i64 %f(i32 %t)
%b_idx = add i32 %i, i32 %b_addr
store i32 %val1, i32* %b_idx
end:
```

The following is the DSA (Dynamic Single Assignment) form.

```
for (int i = 0; i < 1000; i++) {
    t[i] = g(a[i]);
    b[i] = f(t[i]);
}
```

```
%pi = alloca i32
store i32 0, i32* %pi
%i = load i32, i32* %pi
%cmp = icmp slt i32 %i, 1000
br i1 %cmp, label %true, label %end
true:
%a_idx = add i32 %i, i32 %a_addr
%val0 = load i32, i32* %a_idx
%t_idx = add i32 %i, i32 %t_addr
%temp = call i64 %g(i32 %val0)
store i32 %temp, i32* %t_idx
%val1 = call i64 %f(i32 %temp)
%b_idx = add i32 %i, i32 %b_addr
store i32 %val1, i32* %b_idx
end:
```

In some internet video applications and multi-core (SMP) platforms, splitting g() and f() to two different loop have better performance. DSA can split as the following while SSA cannot. Of course, it's possible to do extra analysis on %temp of SSA and reverse it into %t\_idx and %t\_addr as the following DSA. But in compiler discussion, the translation is from high to low level of machine code. Besides, as you see, the llvm ir lose the for loop information already though it can be reconstructed by extra analysis. So, in this book and almost every paper in compiler discuss with this high-to-low premise, otherwise it's talking about reverse engineering in assembler or compiler.

```
for (int i = 0; i < 1000; i++) {
    t[i] = g(a[i]);
}

for (int i = 0; i < 1000; i++) {
    b[i] = f(t[i]);
}
```

```
%pi = alloca i32
store i32 0, i32* %pi
%i = load i32, i32* %pi
%cmp = icmp slt i32 %i, 1000
br i1 %cmp, label %true, label %end
true:
%a_idx = add i32 %i, i32 %a_addr
%val0 = load i32, i32* %a_idx
%t_idx = add i32 %i, i32 %t_addr
%temp = call i32 %g(i32 %val0)
store i32 %temp, i32* %t_idx
end:

%pi = alloca i32
store i32 0, i32* %pi
%i = load i32, i32* %pi
%cmp = icmp slt i32 %i, 1000
br i1 %cmp, label %true, label %end
true:
%t_idx = add i32 %i, i32 %t_addr
%temp = load i32, i32* %t_idx
%val1 = call i32 %f(i32 %temp)
%b_idx = add i32 %i, i32 %b_addr
store i32 %val1, i32* %b_idx
end:
```

Now, the data dependences only exist on  $t[i]$  between “ $t[i] = g(a[i])$ ” and “ $b[i] = f(t[i])$ ” for each  $i = (0..999)$ . The program can be run on many different order, and it provides many parallel processing opportunities for multi-core (SMP) and heterogeneous processors. For instance,  $g(x)$  is run on GPU and  $f(x)$  is run on CPU.

## 2.2.6 DAG (Directed Acyclic Graph)

Many important techniques for local optimization begin by transforming a basic block into DAG<sup>15</sup>. For example, the basic block code and its corresponding DAG as Fig. 2.8.

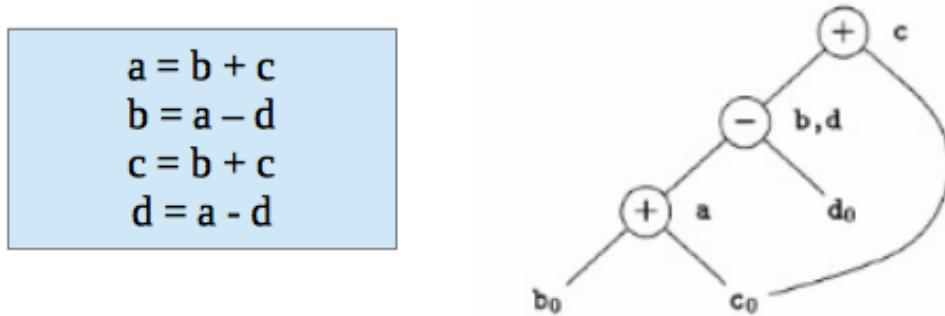


Fig. 2.8: DAG example

If  $b$  is not live on exit from the block, then we can do “common expression remove” as the following table.

---

<sup>15</sup> Refer section 8.5 of book Compilers: Principles, Techniques, and Tools (2nd Edition)

Table 2.7: common expression remove process

Replace node b with node d	Replace $b_0, c_0, d_0$ with b, c, d
$a = b_0 + c_0$	$a = b + c$
$d = a - d_0$	$d = a - d$
$c = d + c$	$c = d + c$

After removing b and traversing the DAGs from bottom to top (traverse binary tree by Depth-first In-order search), the first column of above table will be gotten.

As you can imagine, the “common expression remove” can apply both in IR or machine code.

DAG is like a tree which opcode is the node and operand (register and const/immediate/offset) is leaf. It can also be represented by list as prefix order in tree. For example, (+ b, c), (+ b, 1) is IR DAG representation.

In addition to DAG optimization, the “kill” register has also mentioned in section 8.5.5 of the compiler book <sup>15</sup>. This optimization method also applied in llvm implementation.

## 2.2.7 Instruction Selection

The major function of backend is that translate IR code into machine code at stage of Instruction Selection as Fig. 2.9.

MOV	$r_d = r_s$	ADDI	$r_d = r_s + 0$
MOV	$r_d = r_s$	ADD	$r_d = r_{s1} + r_0$
MOVI	$r_d = c$	ADDI	$r_d = r_0 + c$

Fig. 2.9: IR and it's corresponding machine instruction

For machine instruction selection, the best solution is representing IR and machine instruction by DAG. To simplify in view, the register leaf is skipped in Fig. 2.10. The  $r_j + r_k$  is IR DAG representation (for symbol notation, not llvm SSA form). ADD is machine instruction.

The IR DAG and machine instruction DAG can also be represented as list. For example,  $(+ r_i, r_j)$  and  $(- r_i, 1)$  are lists for IR DAG;  $(ADD r_i, r_j)$  and  $(SUBI r_i, 1)$  are lists for machine instruction DAG.

Now, let's check the ADDiu instruction defined in Cpu0InstrInfo.td as follows,

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter2/Cpu0InstrFormats.td

```
//=====/
// Format L instruction class in Cpu0 : <|opcode|ra|rb|cx|>
//=====/

class FL<bits<8> op, dag outs, dag ins, string asmstr, list<dag> pattern,
           InstrItinClass itin>: Cpu0Inst<outs, ins, asmstr, pattern, itin, FrmL>
{
    bits<4> ra;
    bits<4> rb;
    bits<16> imm16;
```

## Instruction Tree Patterns

Name	Effect	Trees
—	$r_i$	TEMP
ADD	$r_i = r_j + r_k$	
MUL	$r_i = r_j \times r_k$	
SUB	$r_i = r_j - r_k$	
DIV	$r_i = r_j / r_k$	
ADDI	$r_i = r_j + c$	
SUBI	$r_i = r_j - c$	
LOAD	$r_i = M[r_j + c]$	

Fig. 2.10: Instruction DAG representation

```

let Opcode = op;

let Inst{23-20} = ra;
let Inst{19-16} = rb;
let Inst{15-0} = imm16;
}

```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter2/Cpu0InstrInfo.td

```

// Node immediate fits as 16-bit sign extended on target immediate.
// e.g. addi, andi
def immSExt16 : PatLeaf<(imm), [{ return isInt<16>(N->getSExtValue()); }]>;

```

```

// Arithmetic and logical instructions with 2 register operands.
class ArithLogicI<bits<8> op, string instr_asm, SDNode OpNode,
                    Operand Od, PatLeaf imm_type, RegisterClass RC> :
    FL<op, (outs GPROut:$ra), (ins RC:$rb, Od:$imm16),
    !strconcat(instr_asm, "\t$ra, $rb, $imm16"),
    [(set GPROut:$ra, (OpNode RC:$rb, imm_type:$imm16))], IIAlu> {
    let isReMaterializable = 1;
}

```

```

// IR "add" defined in include/llvm/Target/TargetSelectionDAG.td, line 315 (def add).
def ADDiu : ArithLogicI<0x09, "addiu", add, imm16, immSExt16, CPURegs>;

```

Fig. 2.11 shows how the pattern match work in the IR node, `add`, and instruction node, `ADDiu`, which both defined in `Cpu0InstrInfo.td`. In this example, IR node “add %a, 5” will be translated to “addiu \$r1, 5” after %a is allocated to register \$r1 in register allocation stage since the IR pattern[(set RC:\$ra, (OpNode RC:\$rb, imm\_type:\$imm16))] is set in `ADDiu` and the 2nd operand is “signed immediate” which matched “%a, 5”. In addition to pattern match, the .td also sets assembly string “addiu” and op code 0x09. With this information, the LLVM TableGen will generate instruction both in assembly and binary automatically (the binary instruction can be issued in obj file of ELF format which will be explained at later chapter). Similarly, the machine instruction DAG nodes LD and ST can be translated from IR

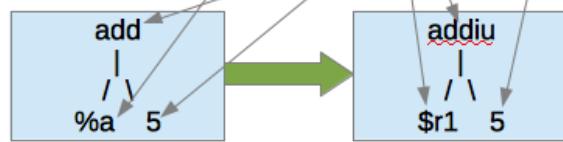
DAG nodes **load** and **store**. Notice that the \$rb in Fig. 2.11 is virtual register name (not machine register). The detail for Fig. 2.11 depicted after it.

```

class ArithLogicI<bits<8> op, string instr_asm, SDNode OpNode,
    Operand Od, PatLeaf imm_type, RegisterClass RC> :
    FL<op, (outs RC:$ra), (ins RC:$rb, Od:$imm16),
        !strconcat(instr_asm, "\t$ra, $rb, $imm16"),
        [(set RC:$ra, (OpNode RC:$rb, imm_type:$imm16))], IIAlu> {
    let isReMaterializable = 1;
}
def ADDiu : ArithLogicI<0x09, "addiu", add, simm16, immSExt16, CPURegs>;

```

## Tree



## List

$$(\text{add } \%a, 5) \rightarrow (\text{addiu } \$r1, 5)$$

Fig. 2.11: Pattern match for ADDiu instruction and IR node add

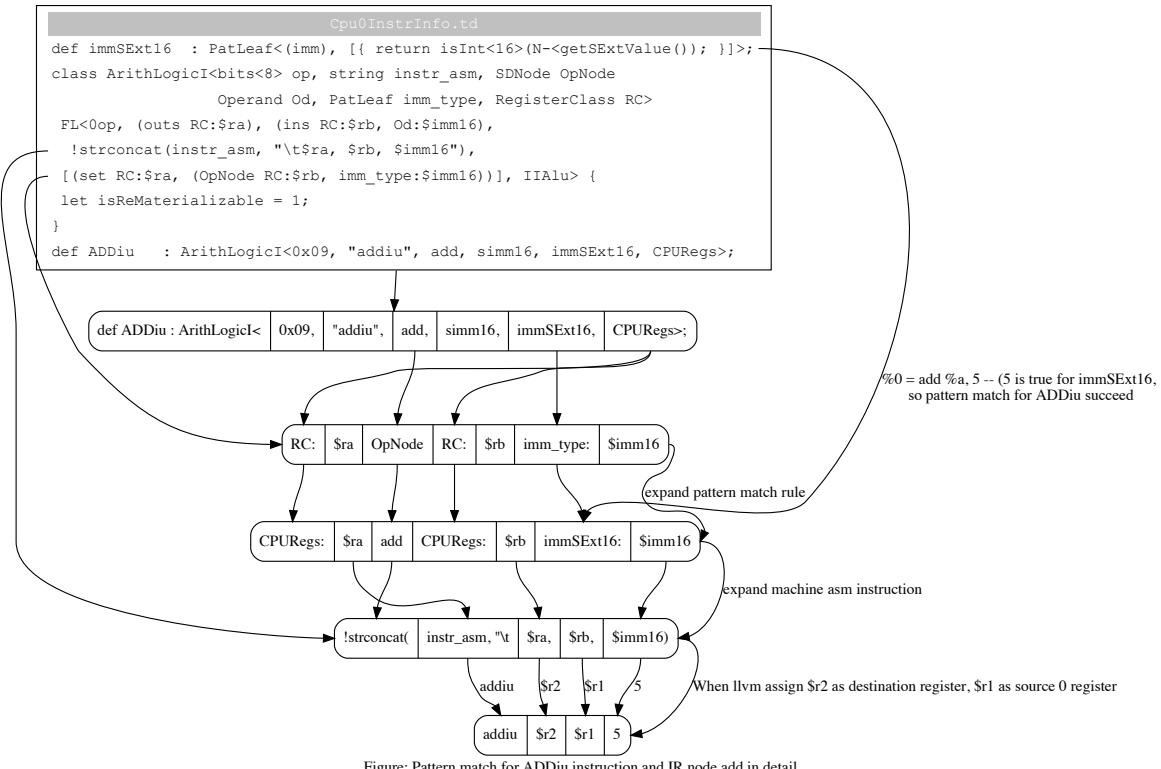


Figure: Pattern match for ADDiu instruction and IR node add in detail

From DAG instruction selection we mentioned, the leaf node must be a Data Node. ADDiu is format L type which the last operand must fits in 16 bits range. So, Cpu0InstrInfo.td define a PatLeaf type of immSExt16 to let llvm system know the PatLeaf range. If the imm16 value is out of this range, “`isInt<16>(N->getSExtValue())`” will return false and this pattern won’t use ADDiu in instruction selection stage.

Some cpu/fpu (floating point processor) has multiply-and-add floating point instruction, fmadd. It can be represented by DAG list (fadd (fmul ra, rc), rb). For this implementation, we can assign fmadd DAG pattern to instruction td as follows,

```
def FMADDS : AForm_1<59, 29,
  (ops F4RC:$FRT, F4RC:$FRA, F4RC:$FRC, F4RC:$FRB),
  "fmadds $FRT, $FRA, $FRC, $FRB",
  [(set F4RC:$FRT, (fadd (fmul F4RC:$FRA, F4RC:$FRC),
  F4RC:$FRB))]>;
```

Similar with ADDiu, [(set F4RC:\$FRT, (fadd (fmul F4RC:\$FRA, F4RC:\$FRC), F4RC:\$FRB))] is the pattern which include nodes **fmul** and **fadd**.

Now, for the following basic block notation IR and llvm SSA IR code,

```
d = a * c
e = d + b
...
```

```
%d = fmul %a, %c
%e = fadd %d, %b
...
```

the Instruction Selection Process will translate this two IR DAG node (fmul %a, %c) (fadd %d, %b) into one machine instruction DAG node (**fmadd** %a, %c, %b), rather than translate them into two machine instruction nodes **fmul** and **fadd** if the FMADDS is appear before FMUL and FADD in your td file.

```
%e = fmadd %a, %c, %b
...
```

As you can see, the IR notation representation is easier to read than llvm SSA IR form. So, this notation form is used in this book sometimes.

For the following basic block code,

```
a = b + c // in notation IR form
d = a - d
%e = fmadd %a, %c, %b // in llvm SSA IR form
```

We can apply Fig. 2.6 Instruction Tree Patterns to get the following machine code,

```
load rb, M(sp+8); // assume b allocate in sp+8, sp is stack point register
load rc, M(sp+16);
add ra, rb, rc;
load rd, M(sp+24);
sub rd, ra, rd;
fmadd re, ra, rc, rb;
```

## 2.2.8 Caller and callee saved registers

[lbdex/input/ch9\\_caller\\_callee\\_save\\_registers.cpp](#)

```
extern int add1(int x);

int callee()
{
    int t1 = 3;
    int result = add1(t1);
    result = result - t1;

    return result;
}
```

Run Mips backend with above input will get the following result.

```
JonathantekiiMac:input Jonathan$ ~/llvm/release/cmake_debug_build/Debug/bin/llc
-O0 -march=mips -relocation-model=static -filetype=asm
ch9_caller_callee_save_registers.bc -o -
.text
.abicalls
.option pic0
.section      .mdebug.abi32,"",@progbits
.nan   legacy
.file   "ch9_caller_callee_save_registers.bc"
.text
.globl _Z6calleev
.align 2
.type  _Z6calleev,@function
.set   nomicromips
.set   nomips16
.ent   _Z6calleev
_Z6callerv:                                # @_Z6callerv
.cfi_startproc
.frame $fp,32,$ra
.mask  0xc0000000,-4
.fmask 0x00000000,0
.set   noreorder
.set   nomacro
.set   noat
# BB#0:
    addiu $sp, $sp, -32
$tmp0:
    .cfi_def_cfa_offset 32
    sw     $ra, 28($sp)          # 4-byte Folded Spill
    sw     $fp, 24($sp)          # 4-byte Folded Spill
$tmp1:
    .cfi_offset 31, -4
$tmp2:
    .cfi_offset 30, -8
    move   $fp, $sp
$tmp3:
    .cfi_def_cfa_register 30
    addiu $1, $zero, 3
    sw     $1, 20($fp)    # store t1 to 20($fp)
    move   $4, $1
```

```

jal      _Z4add1i
nop
sw      $2, 16($fp)    # $2 : the return vaule for fuction add1()
lw      $1, 20($fp)    # load t1 from 20($fp)
subu   $1, $2, $1
sw      $1, 16($fp)
move   $2, $1        # move result to return register $2
move   $sp, $fp
lw      $fp, 24($sp)      # 4-byte Folded Reload
lw      $ra, 28($sp)      # 4-byte Folded Reload
addiu  $sp, $sp, 32
jr      $ra
nop
.set   at
.set   macro
.set   reorder
.end   _Z6calleev
$func_end0:
.size   _Z6calleev, ($func_end0)-_Z6calleev
.cfi_endproc

```

Caller and callee saved registers definition as follows,

- If the caller wants to use caller-saved registers after callee function, it must save caller-saved registers' content to memory for using and restore these registers from memory after function call.
- If the callee wants to use callee-saved registers, it must save its content to memory before using them and restore these registers from memory before return.

As above definition, if a register is not a callee-saved-registers, then it must be caller-saved-registers because the callee doesn't restore it and the value is changed after callee function. So, Mips only define the callee-saved registers in MipsCallingConv.td, and can be found in CSR\_O32\_SaveList of MipsGenRegisterInfo.inc for the default ABI.

As above assembly output, Mips allocates t1 variable to register \$1 and no need to spill \$1 since \$1 is caller saved register. On the other hand, \$ra is callee saved register, so it spills at beginning of the assembly output since jal uses \$ra register. Cpu0 \$lr is the same register as Mips \$ra, so it calls setAliasRegs(MF, SavedRegs, Cpu0::LR) in determineCalleeSaves() of Cpu0SEFrameLowering.cpp when the function has called another function.

## 2.2.9 Live in and live out register

As the example of last sub-section. The \$ra is “live in” register since the return address is decided by caller. The \$2 is “live out” register since the return value of the function is saved in this register, and caller can get the result by read it directly as the comment in above example. Through mark “live in” and “live out” registers, backend provides llvm middle layer information to remove useless instructions in variables access. Of course, llvm applies the DAG analysis mentioned in the previous sub-section to finish it. Since C supports separate compilation for different functions, the “live in” and “out” information from backend provides the optimization opportunity to llvm. LLVM provides function addLiveIn() to mark “live in” register but no function addLiveOut() provided. For the “live out” register, Mips backend marks it by DAG=DAG.getCopyToReg(..., \$2, ...) and return DAG instead, since all local variables are not exist after function exit.

## 2.3 Create Cpu0 backend

From now on, the Cpu0 backend will be created from scratch step by step. To make readers easily understanding the backend structure, Cpu0 example code can be generated chapter by chapter through command here<sup>[11](#)</sup>. Cpu0 example code, lbdex, can be found at near left bottom of this web site. Or here <http://jonathan2251.github.io/lbd/lbdex.tar.gz>.

### 2.3.1 Cpu0 backend machine ID and relocation records

To create a new backend, there are some files in <<llvm root dir>> need to be modified. The added information include both the ID and name of machine, and relocation records. Chapter “ELF Support” include the relocation records introduction. The following files are modified to add Cpu0 backend as follows,

#### Ibdex/src/modify/src/config-ix.cmake

```
...
elseif (LLVM_NATIVE_ARCH MATCHES "cpu0")
  set(LLVM_NATIVE_ARCH Cpu0)
...

```

#### Ibdex/src/modify/src/CMakeLists.txt

```
set(LLVM_ALL_TARGETS
  ...
  Cpu0
  ...
)
```

#### Ibdex/src/modify/src/include/llvm/ADT/Triple.h

```
...
#undef mips
#undef cpu0
...
class Triple {
public:
  enum ArchType {
    ...
    cpu0,           // For Tutorial Backend Cpu0
    cpu0el,
    ...
  };
  ...
}
```

<sup>11</sup> <http://jonathan2251.github.io/lbd/doc.html#generate-cpu0-document>

### Ibdex/src/modify/src/include/llvm/Object/ELFOBJECTFILE.H

```

...
template <class ELFT>
StringRef ELFOBJECTFILE<ELFT>::getFileName() const {
    switch (EF.getHeader()->e_ident[ELF::EI_CLASS]) {
        case ELF::ELFCLASS32:
            switch (EF.getHeader()->e_machine) {
                ...
                case ELF::EM_CPU0:           // llvm-objdump -t -r
                    return "ELF32-cpu0";
                ...
            }
            ...
    }
}

template <class ELFT>
unsigned ELFOBJECTFILE<ELFT>::getArch() const {
    bool IsLittleEndian = ELFT::TargetEndianness == support::little;
    switch (EF.getHeader()->e_machine) {
        ...
        case ELF::EM_CPU0: // llvm-objdump -t -r
            switch (EF.getHeader()->e_ident[ELF::EI_CLASS]) {
                case ELF::ELFCLASS32:
                    return IsLittleEndian ? Triple::cpu0el : Triple::cpu0;
                default:
                    report_fatal_error("Invalid ELFCLASS!");
            }
        ...
    }
}
}

```

### Ibdex/src/modify/src/include/llvm/Support/ELF.H

```

enum {
    ...
    EM_CPU0          = 999 // Document LLVM Backend Tutorial Cpu0
};

...
// Cpu0 Specific e_flags
enum {
    EF_CPU0_NOREORDER = 0x00000001, // Don't reorder instructions
    EF_CPU0_PIC      = 0x00000002, // Position independent code
    EF_CPU0_ARCH_32   = 0x50000000, // CPU032 instruction set per linux not elf.h
    EF_CPU0_ARCH     = 0xf0000000 // Mask for applying EF_CPU0_ARCH_ variant
};

// ELF Relocation types for Mips
enum {
#include "ELFRelocs/Cpu0.def"
};
...

```

**lbdex/src/modify/src/lib/MC/MCSubtargetInfo.cpp**

```

bool Cpu0DisableUnreconginizedMessage = false;

void MCSSubtargetInfo::InitMCProcessorInfo(StringRef CPU, StringRef FS) {
    #if 1 // Disable reconnigized processor message. For Cpu0
    if (TargetTriple.getArch() == llvm::Triple::cpu0 ||
        TargetTriple.getArch() == llvm::Triple::cpu0el)
        Cpu0DisableUnreconginizedMessage = true;
    #endif
    ...
}

...
const MCSchedModel &MCSSubtargetInfo::getSchedModelForCPU(StringRef CPU) const {
    ...
    #if 1 // Disable reconnigized processor message. For Cpu0
    if (TargetTriple.getArch() != llvm::Triple::cpu0 &&
        TargetTriple.getArch() != llvm::Triple::cpu0el)
    #endif
    ...
}
}

```

**lbdex/src/modify/src/lib/MC/SubtargetFeature.cpp**

```

extern bool Cpu0DisableUnreconginizedMessage; // For Cpu0
...
FeatureBitset
SubtargetFeatures::ToggleFeature(FeatureBitset Bits, StringRef Feature,
                                 ArrayRef<SubtargetFeatureKV> FeatureTable) {
    ...
    if (!Cpu0DisableUnreconginizedMessage) // For Cpu0
    ...
}

FeatureBitset
SubtargetFeatures::ApplyFeatureFlag(FeatureBitset Bits, StringRef Feature,
                                    ArrayRef<SubtargetFeatureKV> FeatureTable) {
    ...
    if (!Cpu0DisableUnreconginizedMessage) // For Cpu0
    ...
}

FeatureBitset
SubtargetFeatures::getFeatureBits(StringRef CPU,
                                 ArrayRef<SubtargetFeatureKV> CPUTable,
                                 ArrayRef<SubtargetFeatureKV> FeatureTable) {
    ...
    if (!Cpu0DisableUnreconginizedMessage) // For Cpu0
    ...
}
}

```

### lib/object/ELF.cpp

```
...

StringRef getELFRelocationTypeName(uint32_t Machine, uint32_t Type) {
    switch (Machine) {
        ...
        case ELF::EM_CPU0:
            switch (Type) {
#include "llvm/Support/ELFRelocs/Cpu0.def"
                default:
                    break;
            }
            break;
        ...
    }
}
```

### include/llvm/Support/ELFRelocs/Cpu0.def

```
#ifndef ELF_RELOC
#error "ELF_RELOC must be defined"
#endif

ELF_RELOC(R_CPU0_NONE, 0)
ELF_RELOC(R_CPU0_32, 2)
ELF_RELOC(R_CPU0_HI16, 5)
ELF_RELOC(R_CPU0_LO16, 6)
ELF_RELOC(R_CPU0_GPREL16, 7)
ELF_RELOC(R_CPU0_LITERAL, 8)
ELF_RELOC(R_CPU0_GOT16, 9)
ELF_RELOC(R_CPU0_PC16, 10)
ELF_RELOC(R_CPU0_CALL16, 11)
ELF_RELOC(R_CPU0_GPREL32, 12)
ELF_RELOC(R_CPU0_PC24, 13)
ELF_RELOC(R_CPU0_GOT_HI16, 22)
ELF_RELOC(R_CPU0_GOT_LO16, 23)
ELF_RELOC(R_CPU0_RELGOT, 36)
ELF_RELOC(R_CPU0_TLS_GD, 42)
ELF_RELOC(R_CPU0_TLS_LDM, 43)
ELF_RELOC(R_CPU0_TLS_DTP_HI16, 44)
ELF_RELOC(R_CPU0_TLS_DTP_LO16, 45)
ELF_RELOC(R_CPU0_TLS_GOTTPREL, 46)
ELF_RELOC(R_CPU0_TLS_TPREL32, 47)
ELF_RELOC(R_CPU0_TLS_TP_HI16, 49)
ELF_RELOC(R_CPU0_TLS_TP_LO16, 50)
ELF_RELOC(R_CPU0_GLOB_DAT, 51)
ELF_RELOC(R_CPU0_JUMP_SLOT, 127)
```

### lib/Support/src/Triple.cpp

```
const char *Triple::getArchTypeName(ArchType Kind) {
    switch (Kind) {
```

```

...
case cpu0:           return "cpu0";
case cpu0el:        return "cpu0el";
...
}
...
const char *Triple::getArchTypePrefix(ArchType Kind) {
    switch (Kind) {
    ...
    case cpu0:
    case cpu0el:        return "cpu0";
    ...
}
...
Triple::ArchType Triple::getArchTypeForLLVMName(StringRef Name) {
    return StringSwitch<Triple::ArchType>(Name)
    ...
    .Case("cpu0", cpu0)
    .Case("cpu0el", cpu0el)
    ...
}
...
static Triple::ArchType parseArch(StringRef ArchName) {
    return StringSwitch<Triple::ArchType>(ArchName)
    ...
    .Cases("cpu0", "cpu0eb", "cpu0allegrex", Triple::cpu0)
    .Cases("cpu0el", "cpu0allegrexel", Triple::cpu0el)
    ...
}
...
static Triple::ObjectFormatType getDefaultFormat(const Triple &T) {
    ...
    case Triple::cpu0:
    case Triple::cpu0el:
    ...
}
...
static unsigned getArchPointerBitWidth(llvm::Triple::ArchType Arch) {
    switch (Arch) {
    ...
    case llvm::Triple::cpu0:
    case llvm::Triple::cpu0el:
    ...
        return 32;
    }
}
...
Triple Triple::get32BitArchVariant() const {
    Triple T(*this);
    switch (getArch()) {
    ...
    case Triple::cpu0:
    case Triple::cpu0el:
    ...
        // Already 32-bit.
        break;
    }
}

```

```
    return T;
}
```

### 2.3.2 Creating the Initial Cpu0 .td Files

As it has been discussed in the previous section, LLVM uses target description files (which uses the .td file extension) to describe various components of a target's backend. For example, these .td files may describe a target's register set, instruction set, scheduling information for instructions, and calling conventions. When your backend is being compiled, the tablegen tool that ships with LLVM will translate these .td files into C++ source code written to files that have a .inc extension. Please refer to <sup>21</sup> for more information regarding how to use tablegen.

Every backend has its own .td to define some target information. These files have a similar syntax to C++. For Cpu0, the target description file is called Cpu0Other.td, which is shown below:

#### Index/chapters/Chapter2/Cpu0Other.td

```
===== Cpu0Other.td - Describe the Cpu0 Target Machine ----- tablegen -*-*/
//
//          The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure
//
// This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source
// License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.
//
//-----/
// This is the top level entry point for the Cpu0 target.
//-----/

//-----/
// Target-independent interfaces
//-----/

include "llvm/Target/Target.td"

//-----/
// Target-dependent interfaces
//-----/

include "Cpu0RegisterInfo.td"
include "Cpu0RegisterInfoGPROutForOther.td" // except AsmParser
include "Cpu0.td"
```

Cpu0Other.td and Cpu0.td includes a few other .td files. Cpu0RegisterInfo.td (shown below) describes the Cpu0's set of registers. In this file, we see that each register has been given a name. For example, “**def PC**” indicates that there is a register name as PC. Beside of register information, it also define register class information. You may have multiple register classes such as CPUREgs, SR, C0Regs and GPROut. GPROut defined in Cpu0RegisterInfoGPROutForOther.td which include CPUREgs except SW, so SW won't be allocated as the output registers in register allocation stage.

---

<sup>21</sup> <http://llvm.org/docs/TableGen/index.html>

**Ibdex/chapters/Chapter2/Cpu0RegisterInfo.td**

```

//===== Cpu0RegisterInfo.td - Cpu0 Register defs -----*- tablegen -*==//
//
// The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure
//
// This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source
// License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.
//
//=====

//=====
// Declarations that describe the CPU0 register file
//=====

// We have banks of 16 registers each.

class Cpu0Reg<bits<16> Enc, string n> : Register<n> {
    // For tablegen(... -gen-emitter) in CMakeLists.txt
    let HWEencoding = Enc;

    let Namespace = "Cpu0";
}

// Cpu0 CPU Registers
class Cpu0GPRReg<bits<16> Enc, string n> : Cpu0Reg<Enc, n>;

// Co-processor 0 Registers
class Cpu0C0Reg<bits<16> Enc, string n> : Cpu0Reg<Enc, n>;

//=====

//@Registers
//=====

// The register string, such as "9" or "gp" will show on "llvm-objdump -d"
//@ All registers definition
let Namespace = "Cpu0" in {
    //@ General Purpose Registers
    def ZERO : Cpu0GPRReg<0, "zero">, DwarfRegNum<[0]>;
    def AT : Cpu0GPRReg<1, "1">, DwarfRegNum<[1]>;
    def V0 : Cpu0GPRReg<2, "2">, DwarfRegNum<[2]>;
    def V1 : Cpu0GPRReg<3, "3">, DwarfRegNum<[3]>;
    def A0 : Cpu0GPRReg<4, "4">, DwarfRegNum<[4]>;
    def A1 : Cpu0GPRReg<5, "5">, DwarfRegNum<[5]>;
    def T9 : Cpu0GPRReg<6, "t9">, DwarfRegNum<[6]>;
    def T0 : Cpu0GPRReg<7, "7">, DwarfRegNum<[7]>;
    def T1 : Cpu0GPRReg<8, "8">, DwarfRegNum<[8]>;
    def S0 : Cpu0GPRReg<9, "9">, DwarfRegNum<[9]>;
    def S1 : Cpu0GPRReg<10, "10">, DwarfRegNum<[10]>;
    def GP : Cpu0GPRReg<11, "gp">, DwarfRegNum<[11]>;
    def FP : Cpu0GPRReg<12, "fp">, DwarfRegNum<[12]>;
    def SP : Cpu0GPRReg<13, "sp">, DwarfRegNum<[13]>;
    def LR : Cpu0GPRReg<14, "lr">, DwarfRegNum<[14]>;
    def SW : Cpu0GPRReg<15, "sw">, DwarfRegNum<[15]>;
//  def MAR : Register< 16, "mar">, DwarfRegNum<[16]>;
//  def MDR : Register< 17, "mdr">, DwarfRegNum<[17]>;

    def PC : Cpu0C0Reg<0, "pc">, DwarfRegNum<[20]>;
    def EPC : Cpu0C0Reg<1, "epc">, DwarfRegNum<[21]>;
}

```

```
//=====
//@Register Classes
//=====

def CPUREgs : RegisterClass<"Cpu0", [i32], 32, (add
    // Reserved
    ZERO, AT,
    // Return Values and Arguments
    V0, V1, A0, A1,
    // Not preserved across procedure calls
    T9, T0, T1,
    // Callee save
    S0, S1,
    // Reserved
    GP, FP,
    SP, LR, SW)>;

//@Status Registers class
def SR      : RegisterClass<"Cpu0", [i32], 32, (add SW)>;

//@Co-processor 0 Registers class
def C0Regs : RegisterClass<"Cpu0", [i32], 32, (add PC, EPC)>;
```

### [Index/chapters/Chapter2/Cpu0RegisterInfoGPROutForOther.td](#)

```
//=====
// Register Classes
//=====

def GPROut : RegisterClass<"Cpu0", [i32], 32, (add (sub CPUREgs, SW))>;
```

In C++, class typically provides a structure to lay out some data and functions, while definitions are used to allocate memory for specific instances of a class. For example:

```
class Date { // declare Date
    int year, month, day;
};

Date birthday; // define birthday, an instance of Date
```

The class **Date** has the members **year**, **month**, and **day**, but these do not yet belong to an actual object. By defining an instance of **Date** called **birthday**, you have allocated memory for a specific object, and can set the **year**, **month**, and **day** of this instance of the class.

In .td files, class describes the structure of how data is laid out, while definitions act as the specific instances of the class. If you look back at the Cpu0RegisterInfo.td file, you will see a class called **Cpu0Reg** which is derived from the **Register** class provided by LLVM. **Cpu0Reg** inherits all the fields that exist in the **Register** class. The “let HWEencoding = Enc” which means assign field HWEencoding from parameter Enc. Since Cpu0 reserve 4 bits for 16 registers in instruction format, the assigned value range is from 0 to 15. Once assigning the 0 to 15 to HWEencoding, the backend register number will be got from the function of llvm register class since TableGen will set this number automatically.

The **def** keyword is used to create instances of class. In the following line, the ZERO register is defined as a member of the **Cpu0GPRReg** class:

```
def ZERO : Cpu0GPRReg< 0, "ZERO">, DwarfRegNum<[0]>;
```

The **def ZERO** indicates the name of this register. **<0, “ZERO”>** are the parameters used when creating this specific instance of the **Cpu0GPRReg** class, thus the field **Enc** is set to 0, and the string **n** is set to **ZERO**.

As the register lives in the **Cpu0** namespace, you can refer to the ZERO register in backend C++ code by using **Cpu0::ZERO**.

Notice the use of the **let** expressions: these allow you to override values that are initially defined in a superclass. For example, **let Namespace = “Cpu0”** in the **Cpu0Reg** class will override the default namespace declared in **Register** class. The **Cpu0RegisterInfo.td** also defines that **CPURegs** is an instance of the class **RegisterClass**, which is an built-in LLVM class. A **RegisterClass** is a set of **Register** instances, thus **CPURegs** can be described as a set of registers.

The Cpu0 instructions td is named to **Cpu0InstrInfo.td** which contents as follows,

### **Ibdex/chapters/Chapter2/Cpu0InstrInfo.td**

```
===== Cpu0InstrInfo.td - Target Description for Cpu0 Target -*- tablegen -*-//  
//  
// The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure  
//  
// This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source  
// License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.  
//  
//=====//  
//  
// This file contains the Cpu0 implementation of the TargetInstrInfo class.  
//  
//=====//  
//  
//=====//  
// Cpu0 profiles and nodes  
//=====//  
  
def SDT_Cpu0Ret : SDTypeProfile<0, 1, [SDTCisInt<0>]>;  
  
// Return  
def Cpu0Ret : SDNode<"Cpu0ISD::Ret", SDTNone,  
                  [SDNPHasChain, SDNPOptInGlue, SDNPVariadic]>;  
  
//=====//  
// Instruction format superclass  
//=====//  
  
include "Cpu0InstrFormats.td"  
  
//=====//  
// Cpu0 Operand, Complex Patterns and Transformations Definitions.  
//=====//  
// Instruction operand types  
  
// Signed Operand  
def simm16 : Operand<i32> {
```

```

let DecoderMethod= "DecodeSimm16";
}

// Address operand
def mem : Operand<iPTR> {
    let PrintMethod = "printMemOperand";
    let MIOperandInfo = (ops CPUREgs, simm16);
    let EncoderMethod = "getMemEncoding";
}

// Node immediate fits as 16-bit sign extended on target immediate.
// e.g. addi, andi
def immSExt16 : PatLeaf<(imm), [{ return isInt<16>(N->getSExtValue()); }]>;

// Cpu0 Address Mode! SDNode frameindex could possibly be a match
// since load and store instructions from stack used it.
def addr :
    ComplexPattern<iPTR, 2, "SelectAddr", [frameindex], [SDNPWantParent]>;

//=====
// Pattern fragment for load/store
//=====

class AlignedLoad<PatFrag Node> :
    PatFrag<(ops node:$ptr), (Node node:$ptr), [{{
        LoadSDNode *LD = cast<LoadSDNode>(N);
        return LD->getMemoryVT().getSizeInBits()/8 <= LD->getAlignment();
    }}]>;

class AlignedStore<PatFrag Node> :
    PatFrag<(ops node:$val, node:$ptr), (Node node:$val, node:$ptr), [{{
        StoreSDNode *SD = cast<StoreSDNode>(N);
        return SD->getMemoryVT().getSizeInBits()/8 <= SD->getAlignment();
    }}]>;

// Load/Store PatFrgs.
def load_a          : AlignedLoad<load>;
def store_a         : AlignedStore<store>;

//=====
// Instructions specific format
//=====

// Arithmetic and logical instructions with 2 register operands.
class ArithLogicI<bits<8> op, string instr_asm, SDNode OpNode,
                  Operand Od, PatLeaf imm_type, RegisterClass RC> :
    FL<op, (outs GPROut:$ra), (ins RC:$rb, Od:$imm16),
    !strconcat(instr_asm, "\t$ra, $rb, $imm16"),
    [(set GPROut:$ra, (OpNode RC:$rb, imm_type:$imm16))], IIAlu> {
    let isReMaterializable = 1;
}

class FMem<bits<8> op, dag outs, dag ins, string asmstr, list<dag> pattern,
           InstrItinClass itin>: FL<op, outs, ins, asmstr, pattern, itin> {
    bits<20> addr;
    let Inst{19-16} = addr{19-16};
    let Inst{15-0}  = addr{15-0};
    let DecoderMethod = "DecodeMem";
}

```

```

}

// Memory Load/Store
let canFoldAsLoad = 1 in
class LoadM<bits<8> op, string instr_asm, PatFrag OpNode, RegisterClass RC,
    Operand MemOpnd, bit Pseudo>:
    FMem<op, (outs RC:$ra), (ins MemOpnd:$addr),
        !strconcat(instr_asm, "\t$ra, $addr"),
        [(set RC:$ra, (OpNode addr:$addr))], IIILoad> {
    let isPseudo = Pseudo;
}

class StoreM<bits<8> op, string instr_asm, PatFrag OpNode, RegisterClass RC,
    Operand MemOpnd, bit Pseudo>:
    FMem<op, (outs), (ins RC:$ra, MemOpnd:$addr),
        !strconcat(instr_asm, "\t$ra, $addr"),
        [(OpNode RC:$ra, addr:$addr)], IIIStrStore> {
    let isPseudo = Pseudo;
}

//@ 32-bit load.
multiclass LoadM32<bits<8> op, string instr_asm, PatFrag OpNode,
    bit Pseudo = 0> {
    def #NAME# : LoadM<op, instr_asm, OpNode, GPROut, mem, Pseudo>;
}

// 32-bit store.
multiclass StoreM32<bits<8> op, string instr_asm, PatFrag OpNode,
    bit Pseudo = 0> {
    def #NAME# : StoreM<op, instr_asm, OpNode, CPURegs, mem, Pseudo>;
}

//@JumpFR {
let isBranch=1, isTerminator=1, isBarrier=1, imm16=0, hasDelaySlot = 1,
    isIndirectBranch = 1 in
class JumpFR<bits<8> op, string instr_asm, RegisterClass RC>:
    FL<op, (outs), (ins RC:$ra),
        !strconcat(instr_asm, "\t$ra"), [(brind RC:$ra)], IIBranch> {
    let rb = 0;
    let imm16 = 0;
}
//@JumpFR }

// Return instruction
class RetBase<RegisterClass RC>: JumpFR<0x3c, "ret", RC> {
    let isReturn = 1;
    let isCodeGenOnly = 1;
    let hasCtrlDep = 1;
    let hasExtraSrcRegAllocReq = 1;
}

=====//
// Instruction definition
=====//

=====//
// Cpu0 Instructions

```

```
//=====//  
  
/// Load and Store Instructions  
/// aligned  
defm LD      : LoadM32<0x01, "ld", load_a>;  
defm ST      : StoreM32<0x02, "st", store_a>;  
  
/// Arithmetic Instructions (ALU Immediate)  
// IR "add" defined in include/llvm/Target/TargetSelectionDAG.td, line 315 (def add).  
def ADDiu   : ArithLogicI<0x09, "addiu", add, simm16, immSExt16, CPURegs>;  
  
/// Arithmetic Instructions (3-Operand, R-Type)  
  
/// Shift Instructions  
  
def JR      : JumpFR<0x3c, "jr", GPROut>;  
  
def RET     : RetBase<GPROut>;  
  
/// No operation  
let addr=0 in  
  def NOP   : FJ<0, (outs), (ins), "nop", [], IIAlu>;  
  
//=====//  
// Arbitrary patterns that map to one or more instructions  
//=====//  
  
// Small immediates  
def : Pat<(i32 immSExt16:$in),  
          (ADDiu ZERO, imm:$in)>;
```

The Cpu0InstrFormats.td is included by Cpu0InstInfo.td as follows,

### [Index/chapters/Chapter2/Cpu0InstrFormats.td](#)

```
//===== Cpu0InstrFormats.td - Cpu0 Instruction Formats -----*-- tablegen -*=====//  
//  
//           The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure  
//  
// This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source  
// License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.  
//  
//=====//  
  
//=====//  
// Describe CPU0 instructions format  
//  
// CPU INSTRUCTION FORMATS  
//  
// opcode - operation code.  
// ra    - dst reg, only used on 3 regs instr.  
// rb    - src reg.  
// rc    - src reg (on a 3 reg instr).  
// cx    - immediate  
//
```

```
//=====//  
  
// Format specifies the encoding used by the instruction. This is part of the  
// ad-hoc solution used to emit machine instruction encodings by our machine  
// code emitter.  
class Format<bits<4> val> {  
    bits<4> Value = val;  
}  
  
def Pseudo      : Format<0>;  
def FrmA        : Format<1>;  
def FrmL        : Format<2>;  
def FrmJ        : Format<3>;  
def FrmOther   : Format<4>; // Instruction w/ a custom format  
  
// Generic Cpu0 Format  
class Cpu0Inst<dag outs, dag ins, string asmstr, list<dag> pattern,  
                InstrItinClass itin, Format f>: Instruction  
{  
    // Inst and Size: for tablegen(... -gen-emitter) and  
    // tablegen(... -gen-disassembler) in CMakeLists.txt  
    field bits<32> Inst;  
    Format Form = f;  
  
    let Namespace = "Cpu0";  
  
    let Size = 4;  
  
    bits<8> Opcode = 0;  
  
    // Top 8 bits are the 'opcode' field  
    let Inst{31-24} = Opcode;  
  
    let OutOperandList = outs;  
    let InOperandList = ins;  
  
    let AsmString      = asmstr;  
    let Pattern        = pattern;  
    let Itinerary      = itin;  
  
    //  
    // Attributes specific to Cpu0 instructions...  
    //  
    bits<4> FormBits = Form.Value;  
  
    // TSFlags layout should be kept in sync with Cpu0InstrInfo.h.  
    let TSFlags{3-0} = FormBits;  
  
    let DecoderNamespace = "Cpu0";  
  
    field bits<32> SoftFail = 0;  
}  
  
//=====//  
// Format A instruction class in Cpu0 : <|opcode|ra|rb|rc|cx|>  
//=====//  
  
class FA<bits<8> op, dag outs, dag ins, string asmstr,
```

```

        list<dag> pattern, InstrItinClass itin>:
    Cpu0Inst<outs, ins, asmstr, pattern, itin, FrmA>
{
    bits<4> ra;
    bits<4> rb;
    bits<4> rc;
    bits<12> shamt;

    let Opcode = op;

    let Inst{23-20} = ra;
    let Inst{19-16} = rb;
    let Inst{15-12} = rc;
    let Inst{11-0} = shamt;
}

//@class FL {
//=====
// Format L instruction class in Cpu0 : <|opcode|ra|rb|cx|>
//=====

class FL<bits<8> op, dag outs, dag ins, string asmstr, list<dag> pattern,
           InstrItinClass itin>: Cpu0Inst<outs, ins, asmstr, pattern, itin, FrmL>
{
    bits<4> ra;
    bits<4> rb;
    bits<16> imm16;

    let Opcode = op;

    let Inst{23-20} = ra;
    let Inst{19-16} = rb;
    let Inst{15-0} = imm16;
}
//@class FL }

//=====
// Format J instruction class in Cpu0 : <|opcode|address|>
//=====

class FJ<bits<8> op, dag outs, dag ins, string asmstr, list<dag> pattern,
           InstrItinClass itin>: Cpu0Inst<outs, ins, asmstr, pattern, itin, FrmJ>
{
    bits<24> addr;

    let Opcode = op;

    let Inst{23-0} = addr;
}

```

ADDiu is a instance of class ArithLogicI inherited from FL, it can be expanded and get member value further as follows,

```

def ADDiu    : ArithLogicI<0x09, "addiu", add, simm16, immSExt16, CPUREgs>;
/// Arithmetic and logical instructions with 2 register operands.
class ArithLogicI<bits<8> op, string instr_asm, SDNode OpNode,

```

```

Operand Od, PatLeaf imm_type, RegisterClass RC> :
FL<op, (outs GPROut:$ra), (ins RC:$rb, Od:$imm16),
!strconcat(instr_asm, "\t$ra, $rb, $imm16"),
[(set GPROut:$ra, (OpNode RC:$rb, imm_type:$imm16))], IIAlu> {
let isReMaterializable = 1;
}
    
```

So,

```

op = 0x09
instr_asm = "addiu"
OpNode = add
Od = simm16
imm_type = immSExt16
RC = CPURegs
    
```

To expand the td, some principles are:

- let: meaning override the existed field from parent class.

For instance: let isReMaterializable = 1; override the isReMaterializable from class instruction of Target.td.

- declaration: meaning declare a new field for this class.

For instance: bits<4> ra; declare ra field for class FL.

The details of expanding as the following table:

Table 2.8: ADDiu expand part I

ADDiu	ArithLogicl	FL
0x09	op = 0x09	Opcode = 0x09;
addiu	instr_asm = "addiu"	(outs GPROut:\$ra); !strconcat("addiu", "t\$ra, \$rb, \$imm16");
add	OpNode = add	[(set GPROut:\$ra, (add CPURegs:\$rb, immSExt16:\$imm16))]
simm16	Od = simm16	(ins CPURegs:\$rb, simm16:\$imm16);
imm-SExt16	imm_type = immSExt16	Inst{15-0} = imm16;
CPURegs	RC = CPURegs isReMaterializable=1;	Inst{23-20} = ra; Inst{19-16} = rb;

Table 2.9: ADDiu expand part II

Cpu0Inst	instruction
Namespace = "Cpu0"	Uses = [];
Inst{31-24} = 0x09;	Size = 0;
OutOperandList = GPROut:\$ra;	
InOperandList = CPURegs:\$rb,simm16:\$imm16;	
AsmString = "addiu\$ra, \$rb, \$imm16"	
pattern = [(set GPROut:\$ra, (add RC:\$rb, immSExt16:\$imm16))]	
Itinerary = IIAlu	
TSFlags{3-0} = FrmL.value	
DecoderNamespace = "Cpu0"	

The td expanding is a lousy process. Similarly, LD and ST instruction definition can be expanded in this way. Please notice the Pattern = [(set GPROut:\$ra, (add RC:\$rb, immSExt16:\$imm16))] which include keyword “**add**”. The ADDiu with “**add**” is used in sub-section Instruction Selection of last section.

File Cpu0Schedule.td include the function units and pipeline stages information as follows,

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter2/Cpu0Schedule.td

```
===== Cpu0Schedule.td - Cpu0 Scheduling Definitions -----*- tablegen -*====/
//
// The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure
//
// This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source
// License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.
//
//=====
//=====
// Functional units across Cpu0 chips sets. Based on GCC/Cpu0 backend files.
//=====

def ALU      : FuncUnit;
def IMULDIV : FuncUnit;

//=====
// Instruction Itinerary classes used for Cpu0
//=====
def IIAlu          : InstrItinClass;
def II_CLO         : InstrItinClass;
def II_CLZ         : InstrItinClass;
def II_Load        : InstrItinClass;
def II_Store       : InstrItinClass;
def II_Branch     : InstrItinClass;

def IIPseudo       : InstrItinClass;

//=====
// Cpu0 Generic instruction itineraries.
//=====

//@ http://llvm.org/docs/doxygen/html/structllvm\_1\_1InstrStage.html
def Cpu0GenericItineraries : ProcessorItineraries<[ALU, IMULDIV], [], [
//@
    InstrItinData<IIAlu           , [InstrStage<1,   [ALU]>]>,
    InstrItinData<II_CLO          , [InstrStage<1,   [ALU]>]>,
    InstrItinData<II_CLZ          , [InstrStage<1,   [ALU]>]>,
    InstrItinData<II_Load         , [InstrStage<3,   [ALU]>]>,
    InstrItinData<II_Store        , [InstrStage<1,   [ALU]>]>,
    InstrItinData<II_Branch       , [InstrStage<1,   [ALU]>]>
] >;
```

### 2.3.3 Write cmake file

Target/Cpu0 directory has two files CMakeLists.txt and LLVMBuild.txt, contents as follows,

**Ibdex/chapters/Chapter2/CMakeLists.txt**

```

set(LLVM_TARGET_DEFINITIONS Cpu0Other.td)

# Generate Cpu0GenRegisterInfo.inc and Cpu0GenInstrInfo.inc which included by
# your hand code C++ files.
# Cpu0GenRegisterInfo.inc came from Cpu0RegisterInfo.td, Cpu0GenInstrInfo.inc
# came from Cpu0InstrInfo.td.
tablegen(LLVM Cpu0GenRegisterInfo.inc -gen-register-info)
tablegen(LLVM Cpu0GenInstrInfo.inc -gen-instr-info)
tablegen(LLVM Cpu0GenSubtargetInfo.inc -gen-subtarget)
tablegen(LLVM Cpu0GenMCPseudoLowering.inc -gen-pseudo-lowering)

# Cpu0CommonTableGen must be defined
add_public_tablegen_target(Cpu0CommonTableGen)

# Cpu0CodeGen should match with LLVMBuild.txt Cpu0CodeGen
add_llvm_target(Cpu0CodeGen
    Cpu0TargetMachine.cpp
    )

# Should match with "subdirectories = MCTargetDesc TargetInfo" in LLVMBuild.txt
add_subdirectory(TargetInfo)
add_subdirectory(MCTargetDesc)

```

**Ibdex/chapters/Chapter2/LLVMBuild.txt**

```

;===== ./lib/Target/Cpu0/LLVMBuild.txt -----*-- Conf -*---;;
;
;                               The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure
;
; This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source
; License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.
;
;=====;
;
; This is an LLVMBuild description file for the components in this subdirectory.
;
; For more information on the LLVMBuild system, please see:
;
;     http://llvm.org/docs/LLVMBuild.html
;
;=====;

# Following comments extracted from http://llvm.org/docs/LLVMBuild.html

[common]
subdirectories =
    MCTargetDesc TargetInfo

[component_0]
# TargetGroup components are an extension of LibraryGroups, specifically for
# defining LLVM targets (which are handled specially in a few places).
type = TargetGroup

```

```
# The name of the component should always be the name of the target. (should
# match "def Cpu0 : Target" in Cpu0.td)
name = Cpu0
# Cpu0 component is located in directory Target/
parent = Target
# Whether this target defines an assembly parser, assembly printer, disassembler
# , and supports JIT compilation. They are optional.

[component_1]
# component_1 is a Library type and name is Cpu0CodeGen. After build it will
# in lib/libLLVMCpu0CodeGen.a of your build command directory.
type = Library
name = Cpu0CodeGen
# Cpu0CodeGen component(Library) is located in directory Cpu0/
parent = Cpu0
# If given, a list of the names of Library or LibraryGroup components which
# must also be linked in whenever this library is used. That is, the link time
# dependencies for this component. When tools are built, the build system will
# include the transitive closure of all required_libraries for the components
# the tool needs.
required_libraries =
    CodeGen Core MC
    Cpu0Desc
    Cpu0Info
    SelectionDAG
    Support
    Target
# end of required_libraries

# All LLVMBuild.txt in Target/Cpu0 and subdirectory use 'add_to_library_groups
# = Cpu0'
add_to_library_groups = Cpu0
```

CMakeLists.txt is the make information for cmake and # is comment. File LLVMBuild.txt is written in a simple variant of the INI or configuration file format. Comments are prefixed by # in both files. We explain the setting for these two files in comments. Please read it. The “tablegen(” in above CMakeLists.txt is defined in cmake/modules/TableGen.cmake as below,

### src/cmake/modules/TableGen.cmake

```
function(tablegen project ofn)
...
    add_custom_command(OUTPUT ${CMAKE_CURRENT_BINARY_DIR}/${ofn}.tmp
        # Generate tablegen output in a temporary file.
        COMMAND ${${project}_TABLEGEN_EXE} ${ARGN} -I ${CMAKE_CURRENT_SOURCE_DIR}
    ...
endfunction()

macro(add_tablegen target project)
...
    if(LLVM_USE_HOST_TOOLS)
        if( ${${project}_TABLEGEN} STREQUAL "${target}" )
            if(NOT CMAKE_CONFIGURATION_TYPES)
                set(${project}_TABLEGEN_EXE "${LLVM_NATIVE_BUILD}/bin/${target}")
            else()
```

```

    set(${project}_TABLEGEN_EXE "${LLVM_NATIVE_BUILD}/Release/bin/${target}")
endif()
...
endmacro()

```

### src/utils/TableGen/CMakeLists.txt

```

add_tablegen(llvm-tblgen LLVM
  ...
)

```

Above “add\_tablegen” in src/utils/TableGen/CMakeLists.txt makes the “tablegen(“ written in Cpu0 CMakeLists.txt an alias of llvm-tblgen ( `${project} = LLVM` and  `${project}_TABLEGEN_EXE = llvm-tblgen`). The “tablegen(“, “add\_public\_tablegen\_target(Cpu0CommonTableGen)” in lbdex/chapters/Chapter2/CMakeLists.txt and the following code define a target “Cpu0CommonTableGen” with it’s output files “Cpu0Gen\*.inc” as follows,

### src/cmake/modules/TableGen.cmake

```

function(tablegen project ofn)
  ...
  set(TABLEGEN_OUTPUT ${TABLEGEN_OUTPUT} ${CMAKE_CURRENT_BINARY_DIR}/${ofn} PARENT_
→SCOPE)
  ...
endfunction()

# Creates a target for publicly exporting tablegen dependencies.
function(add_public_tablegen_target target)
  ...
  add_custom_target(${target}
    DEPENDS ${TABLEGEN_OUTPUT})
  ...
endfunction()

```

Since execution file llvm-tblgen is built before compiling any llvm backend source code during building llvm, the llvm-tblgen is always ready for backend’s TableGen request.

This book breaks the whole backend source code by function, add code chapter by chapter. Don’t try to understand everything in the text of book, the code added in each chapter is a reading material too. To understand the computer related knowledge in concept, you can ignore source code, but implementing based on an existed open software cannot. In programming, documentation cannot replace the source code totally. Reading source code is a big opportunity in the open source development.

Both CMakeLists.txt and LLVMBuild.txt coexist in sub-directories **MCTargetDesc** and **TargetInfo**. The contents of MakeLists.txt and LLVMBuild.txt in these two directories instruct llvm generating Cpu0Desc and Cpu0Info libraries, respectively. After building, you will find three libraries: **libLLVMCpu0CodeGen.a**, **libLLVMCpu0Desc.a** and **libLLVMCpu0Info.a** in lib/ of your build directory. For more details please see “Building LLVM with CMake”<sup>16</sup> and “LLVMBuild Guide”<sup>17</sup>.

<sup>16</sup> <http://llvm.org/docs/CMake.html>

<sup>17</sup> <http://llvm.org/docs/LLVMBuild.html>

### 2.3.4 Target Registration

You must also register your target with the TargetRegistry. After registration, llvm tools are able to lookup and use your target at runtime. The TargetRegistry can be used directly, but for most targets there are helper templates which should take care of the work for you.

All targets should declare a global Target object which is used to represent the target during registration. Then, in the target's TargetInfo library, the target should define that object and use the RegisterTarget template to register the target. For example, the file TargetInfo/Cpu0TargetInfo.cpp register TheCpu0Target for big endian and TheCpu0elTarget for little endian, as follows.

#### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter2/Cpu0.h

```
//===== Cpu0.h - Top-level interface for Cpu0 representation ----- C++ -*-==//  
//  
//           The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure  
//  
// This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source  
// License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.  
//  
//=====-----//  
//  
// This file contains the entry points for global functions defined in  
// the LLVM Cpu0 back-end.  
//  
//=====-----//  
  
#ifndef LLVM_LIB_TARGET_CPU0_CPU0_H  
#define LLVM_LIB_TARGET_CPU0_CPU0_H  
  
#include "Cpu0Config.h"  
#include "MCTargetDesc/Cpu0MCTargetDesc.h"  
#include "llvm/Target/TargetMachine.h"  
  
namespace llvm {  
    class Cpu0TargetMachine;  
    class FunctionPass;  
  
} // end namespace llvm;  
  
#endif
```

#### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter2/TargetInfo/Cpu0TargetInfo.cpp

```
//===== Cpu0TargetInfo.cpp - Cpu0 Target Implementation -----//  
//  
//           The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure  
//  
// This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source  
// License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.  
//  
//=====-----//
```

```
#include "Cpu0.h"
#include "llvm/IR/Module.h"
#include "llvm/Support/TargetRegistry.h"
using namespace llvm;

Target llvm::TheCpu0Target, llvm::TheCpu0elTarget;

extern "C" void LLVMInitializeCpu0TargetInfo() {
    RegisterTarget<Triple::cpu0,
        /*HasJIT=*/true> X(TheCpu0Target, "cpu0", "Cpu0");

    RegisterTarget<Triple::cpu0el,
        /*HasJIT=*/true> Y(TheCpu0elTarget, "cpu0el", "Cpu0el");
}
```

### **Index/chapters/Chapter2/TargetInfo/CMakeLists.txt**

```
add_llvm_library(LLVMCpu0Info
    Cpu0TargetInfo.cpp
)
```

### **Index/chapters/Chapter2/TargetInfo/LLVMBuild.txt**

```
;===== ./lib/Target/Cpu0/TargetInfo/LLVMBuild.txt -----*-- Conf -*---=;
;
;                               The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure
;
; This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source
; License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.
;
;=====;
;
; This is an LLVMBuild description file for the components in this subdirectory.
;
; For more information on the LLVMBuild system, please see:
;
;     http://llvm.org/docs/LLVMBuild.html
;
;=====;
;

[component_0]
type = Library
name = Cpu0Info
parent = Cpu0
required_libraries = Support
add_to_library_groups = Cpu0
```

Files Cpu0TargetMachine.cpp and MCTargetDesc/Cpu0MCTargetDesc.cpp just define the empty initialize function since we register nothing for this moment.

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter2/Cpu0TargetMachine.cpp

```
//===== Cpu0TargetMachine.cpp - Define TargetMachine for Cpu0 -----//  
//  
//           The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure  
//  
// This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source  
// License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.  
//  
//=====//  
//  
// Implements the info about Cpu0 target spec.  
//  
//=====//  
  
#include "Cpu0TargetMachine.h"  
#include "Cpu0.h"  
  
#include "llvm/IR/LegacyPassManager.h"  
#include "llvm/CodeGen/Passes.h"  
#include "llvm/CodeGen/TargetPassConfig.h"  
#include "llvm/Support/TargetRegistry.h"  
using namespace llvm;  
  
#define DEBUG_TYPE "cpu0"  
  
extern "C" void LLVMInitializeCpu0Target() {  
}
```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter2/MCTargetDesc/Cpu0MCTargetDesc.h

```
//===== Cpu0MCTargetDesc.h - Cpu0 Target Descriptions ----- C++ -*---//  
//  
//           The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure  
//  
// This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source  
// License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.  
//  
//=====//  
//  
// This file provides Cpu0 specific target descriptions.  
//  
//=====//  
  
#ifndef LLVM_LIB_TARGET_CPU0_MCTARGETDESC_CPU0MCTARGETDESC_H  
#define LLVM_LIB_TARGET_CPU0_MCTARGETDESC_CPU0MCTARGETDESC_H  
  
#include "Cpu0Config.h"  
#include "llvm/Support/DataTypes.h"  
  
namespace llvm {  
class Target;  
class Triple;  
  
extern Target TheCpu0Target;
```

```

extern Target TheCpu0elTarget;

} // End llvm namespace

// Defines symbolic names for Cpu0 registers. This defines a mapping from
// register name to register number.
#define GET_REGINFO_ENUM
#include "Cpu0GenRegisterInfo.inc"

// Defines symbolic names for the Cpu0 instructions.
#define GET_INSTRINFO_ENUM
#include "Cpu0GenInstrInfo.inc"

#define GET_SUBTARGETINFO_ENUM
#include "Cpu0GenSubtargetInfo.inc"

#endif

```

### **Ibdex/chapters/Chapter2/MCTargetDesc/Cpu0MCTargetDesc.cpp**

```

//===== Cpu0MCTargetDesc.cpp - Cpu0 Target Descriptions =====//
//
// The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure
//
// This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source
// License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.
//
//=====
//
// This file provides Cpu0 specific target descriptions.
//
//=====

#include "Cpu0MCTargetDesc.h"
#include "llvm/MC/MachineLocation.h"
#include "llvm/MC/MCELFStreamer.h"
#include "llvm/MC/MCInstrAnalysis.h"
#include "llvm/MC/MCInstPrinter.h"
#include "llvm/MC/MCInstrInfo.h"
#include "llvm/MC/MCRegisterInfo.h"
#include "llvm/MC/MCSubtargetInfo.h"
#include "llvm/MC/MCSymbol.h"
#include "llvm/Support/CommandLine.h"
#include "llvm/Support/ErrorHandling.h"
#include "llvm/Support/FormattedStream.h"
#include "llvm/Support/TargetRegistry.h"

using namespace llvm;

#define GET_INSTRINFO_MC_DESC
#include "Cpu0GenInstrInfo.inc"

#define GET_SUBTARGETINFO_MC_DESC
#include "Cpu0GenSubtargetInfo.inc"

```

```
#define GET_REGINFO_MC_DESC
#include "Cpu0GenRegisterInfo.inc"

//@2 {
extern "C" void LLVMInitializeCpu0TargetMC() {

}
//@2 }
```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter2/MCTargetDesc/CMakeLists.txt

```
# MCTargetDesc/CMakeLists.txt
add_llvm_library(LLVMCpu0Desc
    Cpu0MCTargetDesc.cpp
)
```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter2/MCTargetDesc/LLVMBuild.txt

```
;==== . /lib/Target/Cpu0/MCTargetDesc/LLVMBuild.txt -----*-- Conf -*----;;
;
; The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure
;
; This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source
; License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.
;
;-----;
;
; This is an LLVMBuild description file for the components in this subdirectory.
;
; For more information on the LLVMBuild system, please see:
;
;   http://llvm.org/docs/LLVMBuild.html
;
;-----;

[component_0]
type = Library
name = Cpu0Desc
parent = Cpu0
required_libraries = MC
        Cpu0Info
        Support
add_to_library_groups = Cpu0
```

Please see “Target Registration”<sup>18</sup> for reference.

<sup>18</sup> <http://llvm.org/docs/WritingAnLLVMBbackend.html#target-registration>

### 2.3.5 Build libraries and td

We set llvm source code in /Users/Jonathan/llvm/release/src and have llvm release-build in /Users/Jonathan/llvm/release/cmake\_release\_build. About how to build llvm, please refer here<sup>19</sup>. In appendix A, we made a copy from /Users/Jonathan/llvm/release/src to /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/src for working with my Cpu0 target backend. Sub-directories src is for source code and cmake\_debug\_build is for debug build directory.

Beside directory src/lib/Target/Cpu0, there are a couple of files modified to support cpu0 new Target, which includes both the ID and name of machine and relocation records listed in the early sub-section. You can update your llvm working copy and find the modified files by commands, cp -rf lbdex/src/modify/src/\* <yourllvm/workingcopy/sourcedir>/.

```
118-165-78-230:test Jonathan$ pwd
/Users/Jonathan/test
118-165-78-230:test Jonathan$ cp -rf lbdex/src/modify/src/* ~/llvm/test/src/.
118-165-78-230:test Jonathan$ grep -R "cpu0" ~/llvm/test/src/include
src/cmake/config-ix.cmake:elseif (LLVM_NATIVE_ARCH MATCHES "cpu0")
src/include/llvm/ADT/Triple.h:#undef cpu0
src/include/llvm/ADT/Triple.h:    cpu0,           // For Tutorial Backend Cpu0
src/include/llvm/ADT/Triple.h:    cpu0el,
src/include/llvm/Support/ELF.h:  EF_CPU0_ARCH_32R2 = 0x70000000, // cpu032r2
src/include/llvm/Support/ELF.h:  EF_CPU0_ARCH_64R2 = 0x80000000, // cpu064r2
...
...
```

Next configure the Cpu0 example code to chapter2 as follows,

**~/llvm/test/src/lib/Target/Cpu0/Cpu0SetChapter.h**

```
#define CH          CH2
```

Now, run the cmake command and Xcode to build td (the following cmake command is for my setting),

```
118-165-78-230:cmake_debug_build Jonathan$ cmake -DCMAKE_CXX_COMPILER=clang++
-DCMAKE_C_COMPILER=clang -DCMAKE_BUILD_TYPE=Debug -G "Xcode" ../src/
-- Targeting Cpu0
...
-- Targeting XCore
-- Configuring done
-- Generating done
-- Build files have been written to: /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build

118-165-78-230:cmake_debug_build Jonathan$
```

After build, you can type command llc --version to find the cpu0 backend,

```
118-165-78-230:cmake_debug_build Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/
cmake_debug_build/Debug/bin/llc --version
LLVM (http://llvm.org/):
...
Registered Targets:
arm      - ARM
...
cpp      - C++ backend
cpu0    - Cpu0
```

<sup>19</sup> [http://clang.llvm.org/get\\_started.html](http://clang.llvm.org/get_started.html)

```
cpu0el - Cpu0el  
...
```

The `llc -version` can display Registered Targets “`cpu0`” and “`cpu0el`”, because the code in file `Target-Info/Cpu0TargetInfo.cpp` we made in last sub-section “Target Registration”<sup>20</sup>.

Let’s build `lbdex/chapters/Chapter2` code as follows,

```
118-165-75-57:test Jonathan$ pwd  
/Users/Jonathan/test  
118-165-75-57:test Jonathan$ cp -rf lbdex/Cpu0 ~/llvm/test/src/lib/Target/.  
  
118-165-75-57:test Jonathan$ cd ~/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build  
118-165-75-57:cmake_debug_build Jonathan$ pwd  
/Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build  
118-165-75-57:cmake_debug_build Jonathan$ rm -rf *  
118-165-75-57:cmake_debug_build Jonathan$ cmake -DCMAKE_CXX_COMPILER=clang++  
-DCMAKE_C_COMPILER=clang -DCMAKE_BUILD_TYPE=Debug -DLLVM_TARGETS_TO_BUILD=Cpu0  
-G "Xcode" ../src/  
...  
-- Targeting Cpu0  
...  
-- Configuring done  
-- Generating done  
-- Build files have been written to: /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build
```

In order to save time, we build Cpu0 target only by option `-DLLVM_TARGETS_TO_BUILD=Cpu0`. After `cmake`, please open Xcode and build the Xcode project file as appendix A, or refer appendix A to build it on linux if you work on unix/linux platform. After that, you can find the `*.inc` files in directory `/Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/lib/Target/Cpu0` as follows,

### [cmake\\_debug\\_build/lib/Target/Cpu0/Cpu0GenRegisterInfo.inc](#)

```
namespace Cpu0 {  
enum {  
    NoRegister,  
    AT = 1,  
    EPC = 2,  
    FP = 3,  
    GP = 4,  
    HI = 5,  
    LO = 6,  
    LR = 7,  
    PC = 8,  
    SP = 9,  
    SW = 10,  
    ZERO = 11,  
    A0 = 12,  
    A1 = 13,  
    S0 = 14,  
    S1 = 15,  
    T0 = 16,  
    T1 = 17,  
    T9 = 18,
```

---

<sup>20</sup> <http://jonathan2251.github.io/lbd/llvmstructure.html#target-registration>

```

V0 = 19,
V1 = 20,
NUM_TARGET_REGS // 21
};

}

...

```

These \*.inc are generated by llvm-tblgen at directory cmake\_debug\_build/lib/Target/Cpu0 where their input files are the Cpu0 backend \*.td files. The llvm-tblgen is invoked by **tablegen** of /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/src/lib/Target/Cpu0/CMakeLists.txt. These \*.inc files will be included by Cpu0 backend \*.cpp or \*.h files and compile into \*.o further. TableGen is the important tool illustrated in the early sub-section “.td: LLVM’s Target Description Files” of this chapter. List it again as follows,

“The “mix and match” approach allows target authors to choose what makes sense for their architecture and permits a large amount of code reuse across different targets”.

Details about TableGen are here<sup>21</sup> <sup>22</sup> <sup>23</sup>.

Now try to run command `l1c` to compile input file ch3.cpp as follows,

### **Ibdex/input/ch3.cpp**

```

int main()
{
    return 0;
}

```

First step, compile it with clang and get output ch3.bc as follows,

```

118-165-78-230:input Jonathan$ pwd
/Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/lbdex/input
118-165-78-230:input Jonathan$ clang -target mips-unknown-linux-gnu -c
ch3.cpp -emit-llvm -o ch3.bc

```

As above, compile C to .bc by `clang -target mips-unknown-linux-gnu` because Cpu0 borrows the ABI from Mips. Next step, transfer bitcode .bc to human readable text format as follows,

```

118-165-78-230:test Jonathan$ llvm-dis ch3.bc -o -
// ch3.ll
; ModuleID = 'ch3.bc'
target datalayout = "e-p:64:64:64-i1:8:8-i8:8:8-i16:16:16-i32:32:32-i64:64:64-f3
2:32:32-f64:64:64-v64:64:64-v128:128:128-a0:0:64-s0:64:64-f80:128:128-n8:16:32:6
4-S128"
target triple = "mips-unknown-linux-gnu"

define i32 @main() nounwind uwtable {
    %1 = alloca i32, align 4
    store i32 0, i32* %1
    ret i32 0
}

```

Now, when compiling ch3.bc will get the error message as follows,

<sup>22</sup> <http://llvm.org/docs/TableGen/LangIntro.html>

<sup>23</sup> <http://llvm.org/docs/TableGen/LangRef.html>

```
118-165-78-230:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/
Debug/bin/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm ch3.bc -o
ch3.cpu0.s
...
... Assertion `target.get() && "Could not allocate target machine!"' failed
...
```

At this point, we finish the Target Registration for Cpu0 backend. The backend compiler command `llc` can recognize Cpu0 backend now. Currently we just define target td files (`Cpu0.td`, `Cpu0Other.td`, `Cpu0RegisterInfo.td`, ...). According to LLVM structure, we need to define our target machine and include those td related files. The error message says we didn't define our target machine. This book is a step-by-step backend development. You can review the hundreds lines of Chapter2 example code to see how to do the Target Registration.

## BACKEND STRUCTURE

- *TargetMachine structure*
- *Add AsmPrinter*
- *Add Cpu0DAGToDAGISel class*
- *Handle return register \$lr*
- *Add Prologue/Epilogue functions*
  - *Concept*
  - *Prologue and Epilogue functions*
  - *Handle stack slot for local variables*
  - *Large stack*
- *Data operands DAGs*
- *Summary of this Chapter*

This chapter introduces the backend class inheritance tree and class members first. Next, following the backend structure, adding individual classes implementation in each section. At the end of this chapter, we will have a backend to compile llvm intermediate code into Cpu0 assembly code.

Many lines of code are added in this chapter. They almost are common in every backend except the backend name (Cpu0 or Mips ...). Actually, we copy almost all the code from Mips and replace the name with Cpu0. In addition to knowing the DAGs pattern match in theoretic compiler and realistic llvm code generation phase, please focus on the classes relationship in this backend structure. Once knowing the structure, you can create your backend structure as quickly as we did, even though there are 5000 lines of code around added in this chapter.

### 3.1 TargetMachine structure

[Index/chapters/Chapter3\\_1/Cpu0TargetObjectFile.h](#)

```
//===== llvm/Target/Cpu0TargetObjectFile.h - Cpu0 Object Info ----- C++ -*-=====//  
//  
// The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure  
//  
// This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source  
// License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.
```

```
//  
//===== //  
  
#ifndef LLVM_LIB_TARGET_CPU0_CPU0TARGETOBJECTFILE_H  
#define LLVM_LIB_TARGET_CPU0_CPU0TARGETOBJECTFILE_H  
  
#include "Cpu0Config.h"  
  
#include "Cpu0TargetMachine.h"  
#include "llvm/CodeGen/TargetLoweringObjectFileImpl.h"  
  
namespace llvm {  
class Cpu0TargetMachine;  
class Cpu0TargetObjectFile : public TargetLoweringObjectFileELF {  
    MCSection *SmallDataSection;  
    MCSection *SmallBSSSection;  
    const Cpu0TargetMachine *TM;  
public:  
    void Initialize(MCContext &Ctx, const TargetMachine &TM) override;  
};  
} // end namespace llvm  
  
#endif
```

### Index/chapters/Chapter3\_1/Cpu0TargetObjectFile.cpp

```
===== Cpu0TargetObjectFile.cpp - Cpu0 Object Files =====//  
//  
// The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure  
//  
// This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source  
// License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.  
//  
//===== //  
  
#include "Cpu0TargetObjectFile.h"  
  
#include "Cpu0Subtarget.h"  
#include "Cpu0TargetMachine.h"  
#include "llvm/IR/DataLayout.h"  
#include "llvm/IR/DerivedTypes.h"  
#include "llvm/IR/GlobalVariable.h"  
#include "llvm/MC/MCContext.h"  
#include "llvm/MC/MCSectionELF.h"  
#include "llvm/Support/CommandLine.h"  
#include "llvm/Support/ELF.h"  
#include "llvm/Target/TargetMachine.h"  
using namespace llvm;  
  
static cl::opt<unsigned>  
SSThreshold("cpu0-ssection-threshold", cl::Hidden,  
           cl::desc("Small data and bss section threshold size (default=8)"),  
           cl::init(8));
```

```

void Cpu0TargetObjectFile::Initialize(MCContext &Ctx, const TargetMachine &TM) {
    TargetLoweringObjectFileELF::Initialize(Ctx, TM);
    InitializeELF(TM.Options.UseInitArray);

    SmallDataSection = getContext().getELFSection(
        ".sdata", ELF::SHT_PROGBITS, ELF::SHF_WRITE | ELF::SHF_ALLOC);

    SmallBSSection = getContext().getELFSection(".sbss", ELF::SHT_NOBITS,
                                                ELF::SHF_WRITE | ELF::SHF_ALLOC);
    this->TM = &static_cast<const Cpu0TargetMachine &>(TM);
}

```

## Ibdex/chapters/Chapter3\_1/Cpu0TargetMachine.h

```

//===== Cpu0TargetMachine.h - Define TargetMachine for Cpu0 ----- C++ -*==//
//
//          The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure
//
// This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source
// License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.
//
//=====
// This file declares the Cpu0 specific subclass of TargetMachine.
//
//=====

#ifndef LLVM_LIB_TARGET_CPU0_CPU0TARGETMACHINE_H
#define LLVM_LIB_TARGET_CPU0_CPU0TARGETMACHINE_H

#include "Cpu0Config.h"

#include "MCTargetDesc/Cpu0ABIInfo.h"
#include "Cpu0Subtarget.h"
#include "llvm/CodeGen/Passes.h"
#include "llvm/CodeGen/SelectionDAGISel.h"
#include "llvm/Target/TargetFrameLowering.h"
#include "llvm/Target/TargetMachine.h"

namespace llvm {
class formatted_raw_ostream;
class Cpu0RegisterInfo;

class Cpu0TargetMachine : public LLVMTargetMachine {
    bool isLittle;
    std::unique_ptr<TargetLoweringObjectFile> TLOF;
    // Selected ABI
    Cpu0ABIInfo ABI;
    Cpu0Subtarget DefaultSubtarget;

    mutable StringMap<std::unique_ptr<Cpu0Subtarget>> SubtargetMap;
public:
    Cpu0TargetMachine(const Target &T, const Triple &TT, StringRef CPU,
                      StringRef FS, const TargetOptions &Options,

```

```

        Optional<Reloc::Model> RM, CodeModel::Model CM,
        CodeGenOpt::Level OL, bool isLittle);
~Cpu0TargetMachine() override;

const Cpu0Subtarget *getSubtargetImpl() const {
    return &DefaultSubtarget;
}

const Cpu0Subtarget *getSubtargetImpl(const Function &F) const override;

// Pass Pipeline Configuration
TargetPassConfig *createPassConfig(PassManagerBase &PM) override;

TargetLoweringObjectFile *getObjFileLowering() const override {
    return TLOF.get();
}
bool isLittleEndian() const { return isLittle; }
const Cpu0ABIInfo &getABI() const { return ABI; }
};

/// Cpu0ebTargetMachine - Cpu032 big endian target machine.
///
class Cpu0ebTargetMachine : public Cpu0TargetMachine {
    virtual void anchor();
public:
    Cpu0ebTargetMachine(const Target &T, const Triple &TT, StringRef CPU,
                        StringRef FS, const TargetOptions &Options,
                        Optional<Reloc::Model> RM, CodeModel::Model CM,
                        CodeGenOpt::Level OL);
};

/// Cpu0elTargetMachine - Cpu032 little endian target machine.
///
class Cpu0elTargetMachine : public Cpu0TargetMachine {
    virtual void anchor();
public:
    Cpu0elTargetMachine(const Target &T, const Triple &TT, StringRef CPU,
                        StringRef FS, const TargetOptions &Options,
                        Optional<Reloc::Model> RM, CodeModel::Model CM,
                        CodeGenOpt::Level OL);
};
} // End llvm namespace

#endif

```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter3\_1/Cpu0TargetMachine.cpp

```

//===== Cpu0TargetMachine.cpp - Define TargetMachine for Cpu0 =====//
//
//          The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure
//
// This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source
// License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.
//
//=====

```

```

//  

// Implements the info about Cpu0 target spec.  

//  

//=====//  

#include "Cpu0TargetMachine.h"  

#include "Cpu0.h"  

#include "Cpu0Subtarget.h"  

#include "Cpu0TargetObjectFile.h"  

#include "llvm/IR/LegacyPassManager.h"  

#include "llvm/CodeGen/Passes.h"  

#include "llvm/CodeGen/TargetPassConfig.h"  

#include "llvm/Support/TargetRegistry.h"  

using namespace llvm;  

#define DEBUG_TYPE "cpu0"  

extern "C" void LLVMInitializeCpu0Target() {  

    // Register the target.  

    // Big endian Target Machine  

    RegisterTargetMachine<Cpu0ebTargetMachine> X(TheCpu0Target);  

    // Little endian Target Machine  

    RegisterTargetMachine<Cpu0elTargetMachine> Y(TheCpu0elTarget);  

}  

static std::string computeDataLayout(const Triple &TT, StringRef CPU,  

                                    const TargetOptions &Options,  

                                    bool isLittle) {  

    std::string Ret = "";  

    // There are both little and big endian cpu0.  

    if (isLittle)  

        Ret += "e";  

    else  

        Ret += "E";  

    Ret += "-m:m";  

    // Pointers are 32 bit on some ABIs.  

    Ret += "-p:32:32";  

    // 8 and 16 bit integers only need to have natural alignment, but try to  

    // align them to 32 bits. 64 bit integers have natural alignment.  

    Ret += "-i8:8:32-i16:16:32-i64:64";  

    // 32 bit registers are always available and the stack is at least 64 bit  

    // aligned.  

    Ret += "-n32-S64";  

    return Ret;
}  

static Reloc::Model getEffectiveRelocModel(CodeModel::Model CM,  

                                         Optional<Reloc::Model> RM) {  

    if (!RM.HasValue() || CM == CodeModel::JITDefault)  

        return Reloc::Static;  

    return *RM;
}

```

```
// DataLayout --> Big-endian, 32-bit pointer/ABI/alignment
// The stack is always 8 byte aligned
// On function prologue, the stack is created by decrementing
// its pointer. Once decremented, all references are done with positive
// offset from the stack/frame pointer, using StackGrowsUp enables
// an easier handling.
// Using CodeModel::Large enables different CALL behavior.
Cpu0TargetMachine::Cpu0TargetMachine(const Target &T, const Triple &TT,
                                      StringRef CPU, StringRef FS,
                                      const TargetOptions &Options,
                                      Optional<Reloc::Model> RM,
                                      CodeModel::Model CM, CodeGenOpt::Level OL,
                                      bool isLittle)
    // Default is big endian
    : LLVMTargetMachine(T, computeDataLayout(TT, CPU, Options, isLittle), TT,
                        CPU, FS, Options, getEffectiveRelocModel(CM, RM), CM,
                        OL),
      isLittle(isLittle), TLOF(make_unique<Cpu0TargetObjectFile>()),
      ABI(Cpu0ABIInfo::computeTargetABI()),
      DefaultSubtarget(TT, CPU, FS, isLittle, *this) {
  // initAsmInfo will display features by llc -march=cpu0 -mcpu=help on 3.7 but
  // not on 3.6
  initAsmInfo();
}

Cpu0TargetMachine::~Cpu0TargetMachine() {}

void Cpu0ebTargetMachine::anchor() { }

Cpu0ebTargetMachine::Cpu0ebTargetMachine(const Target &T, const Triple &TT,
                                         StringRef CPU, StringRef FS,
                                         const TargetOptions &Options,
                                         Optional<Reloc::Model> RM,
                                         CodeModel::Model CM,
                                         CodeGenOpt::Level OL)
    : Cpu0TargetMachine(T, TT, CPU, FS, Options, RM, CM, OL, false) {}

void Cpu0elTargetMachine::anchor() { }

Cpu0elTargetMachine::Cpu0elTargetMachine(const Target &T, const Triple &TT,
                                         StringRef CPU, StringRef FS,
                                         const TargetOptions &Options,
                                         Optional<Reloc::Model> RM,
                                         CodeModel::Model CM,
                                         CodeGenOpt::Level OL)
    : Cpu0TargetMachine(T, TT, CPU, FS, Options, RM, CM, OL, true) {}

const Cpu0Subtarget *
Cpu0TargetMachine::getSubtargetImpl(const Function &F) const {
  Attribute CPUAttr = F.getFnAttribute("target-cpu");
  Attribute FSAttr = F.getFnAttribute("target-features");

  std::string CPU = !CPUAttr.hasAttribute(Attribute::None)
                  ? CPUAttr.getValueAsString().str()
                  : TargetCPU;
  std::string FS = !FSAttr.hasAttribute(Attribute::None)
                 ? FSAttr.getValueAsString().str()
```

```

        : TargetFS;

auto &I = SubtargetMap[CPU + FS];
if (!I) {
    // This needs to be done before we create a new subtarget since any
    // creation will depend on the TM and the code generation flags on the
    // function that reside in TargetOptions.
    resetTargetOptions(F);
    I = llvm::make_unique<Cpu0Subtarget>(TargetTriple, CPU, FS, isLittle,
                                         *this);
}
return I.get();
}

namespace {
// @Cpu0PassConfig {
/// Cpu0 Code Generator Pass Configuration Options.
class Cpu0PassConfig : public TargetPassConfig {
public:
    Cpu0PassConfig(Cpu0TargetMachine *TM, PassManagerBase &PM)
        : TargetPassConfig(TM, PM) {}

    Cpu0TargetMachine &getCpu0TargetMachine() const {
        return getTM<Cpu0TargetMachine>();
    }

    const Cpu0Subtarget &getCpu0Subtarget() const {
        return *getCpu0TargetMachine().getSubtargetImpl();
    }
};

} // namespace

TargetPassConfig *Cpu0TargetMachine::createPassConfig(PassManagerBase &PM) {
    return new Cpu0PassConfig(this, PM);
}

```

## include/llvm/Target/TargetInstrInfo.h

```

class TargetInstrInfo : public MCInstrInfo {
    TargetInstrInfo(const TargetInstrInfo &) = delete;
    void operator=(const TargetInstrInfo &) = delete;
public:
    ...
}

class TargetInstrInfoImpl : public TargetInstrInfo {
protected:
    TargetInstrInfoImpl(int CallFrameSetupOpcode = -1,
                        int CallFrameDestroyOpcode = -1)
        : TargetInstrInfo(CallFrameSetupOpcode, CallFrameDestroyOpcode) {}
public:
    ...
}

```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter3\_1/Cpu0.td

```
include "Cpu0CallingConv.td"

// Without this will have error: 'cpu032I' is not a recognized processor for
// this target (ignoring processor)
//=====
// Cpu0 Subtarget features
//=====

def FeatureChapter3_1 : SubtargetFeature<"ch3_1", "HasChapterDummy", "true",
                      "Enable Chapter instructions.">;
def FeatureChapter3_2 : SubtargetFeature<"ch3_2", "HasChapterDummy", "true",
                      "Enable Chapter instructions.">;
def FeatureChapter3_3 : SubtargetFeature<"ch3_3", "HasChapterDummy", "true",
                      "Enable Chapter instructions.">;
def FeatureChapter3_4 : SubtargetFeature<"ch3_4", "HasChapterDummy", "true",
                      "Enable Chapter instructions.">;
def FeatureChapter3_5 : SubtargetFeature<"ch3_5", "HasChapterDummy", "true",
                      "Enable Chapter instructions.">;
def FeatureChapter4_1 : SubtargetFeature<"ch4_1", "HasChapterDummy", "true",
                      "Enable Chapter instructions.">;
def FeatureChapter4_2 : SubtargetFeature<"ch4_2", "HasChapterDummy", "true",
                      "Enable Chapter instructions.">;
def FeatureChapter5_1 : SubtargetFeature<"ch5_1", "HasChapterDummy", "true",
                      "Enable Chapter instructions.">;
def FeatureChapter6_1 : SubtargetFeature<"ch6_1", "HasChapterDummy", "true",
                      "Enable Chapter instructions.">;
def FeatureChapter7_1 : SubtargetFeature<"ch7_1", "HasChapterDummy", "true",
                      "Enable Chapter instructions.">;
def FeatureChapter8_1 : SubtargetFeature<"ch8_1", "HasChapterDummy", "true",
                      "Enable Chapter instructions.">;
def FeatureChapter8_2 : SubtargetFeature<"ch8_2", "HasChapterDummy", "true",
                      "Enable Chapter instructions.">;
def FeatureChapter9_1 : SubtargetFeature<"ch9_1", "HasChapterDummy", "true",
                      "Enable Chapter instructions.">;
def FeatureChapter9_2 : SubtargetFeature<"ch9_2", "HasChapterDummy", "true",
                      "Enable Chapter instructions.">;
def FeatureChapter9_3 : SubtargetFeature<"ch9_3", "HasChapterDummy", "true",
                      "Enable Chapter instructions.">;
def FeatureChapter10_1 : SubtargetFeature<"ch10_1", "HasChapterDummy", "true",
                        "Enable Chapter instructions.">;
def FeatureChapter11_1 : SubtargetFeature<"ch11_1", "HasChapterDummy", "true",
                        "Enable Chapter instructions.">;
def FeatureChapter11_2 : SubtargetFeature<"ch11_2", "HasChapterDummy", "true",
                        "Enable Chapter instructions.">;
def FeatureChapter12_1 : SubtargetFeature<"ch12_1", "HasChapterDummy", "true",
                        "Enable Chapter instructions.">;
def FeatureChapterAll : SubtargetFeature<"chall", "HasChapterDummy", "true",
                      "Enable Chapter instructions.",
                      [FeatureChapter3_1, FeatureChapter3_2,
                       FeatureChapter3_3, FeatureChapter3_4,
                       FeatureChapter3_5,
                       FeatureChapter4_1, FeatureChapter4_2,
                       FeatureChapter5_1, FeatureChapter6_1,
                       FeatureChapter7_1, FeatureChapter8_1,
```

```

        FeatureChapter8_2, FeatureChapter9_1,
        FeatureChapter9_2, FeatureChapter9_3,
        FeatureChapter10_1,
        FeatureChapter11_1, FeatureChapter11_2,
        FeatureChapter12_1]>;

def FeatureCmp      : SubtargetFeature<"cmp", "HasCmp", "true",
                     "Enable 'cmp' instructions.">;
def FeatureSlt      : SubtargetFeature<"slt", "HasSlt", "true",
                     "Enable 'slt' instructions.">;
def FeatureCpu032I   : SubtargetFeature<"cpu032I", "Cpu0ArchVersion",
                     "Cpu032I", "Cpu032I ISA Support",
                     [FeatureCmp, FeatureChapterAll]>;
def FeatureCpu032II  : SubtargetFeature<"cpu032II", "Cpu0ArchVersion",
                     "Cpu032II", "Cpu032II ISA Support (slt)",
                     [FeatureCmp, FeatureSlt, FeatureChapterAll]>;

//=====
// Cpu0 processors supported.
//=====

class Proc<string Name, list<SubtargetFeature> Features>
: Processor<Name, Cpu0GenericItineraries, Features>;

def : Proc<"cpu032I", [FeatureCpu032I]>;
def : Proc<"cpu032II", [FeatureCpu032II]>;
// Above make Cpu0GenSubtargetInfo.inc set feature bit as the following order
// enum {
//     FeatureCmp = 1ULL << 0,
//     FeatureCpu032I = 1ULL << 1,
//     FeatureCpu032II = 1ULL << 2,
//     FeatureSlt = 1ULL << 3
// };

```

## Ibdex/chapters/Chapter3\_1/Cpu0CallingConv.td

```

//===== Cpu0CallingConv.td - Calling Conventions for Cpu0 --- tablegen -*=====/
//
//          The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure
//
// This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source
// License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.
//
//=====
// This describes the calling conventions for Cpu0 architecture.
//=====

/// CCIfSubtarget - Match if the current subtarget has a feature F.
class CCIfSubtarget<string F, CCAction A>:
    CCIf<!strconcat("State.getTarget().getSubtarget<Cpu0Subtarget>()", F), A>;

def CSR_O32 : CalleeSavedRegs<(add LR, FP,
                               (sequence "S%u", 1, 0))>;

```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter3\_1/Cpu0FrameLowering.h

```
===== Cpu0FrameLowering.h - Define frame lowering for Cpu0 ----- C++ -*====//  
//  
// The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure  
//  
// This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source  
// License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.  
//  
//=====-----=====//  
//  
//=====-----=====//  
#ifndef LLVM_LIB_TARGET_CPU0_CPU0FRAMELOWERING_H  
#define LLVM_LIB_TARGET_CPU0_CPU0FRAMELOWERING_H  
  
#include "Cpu0Config.h"  
  
#include "Cpu0.h"  
#include "llvm/Target/TargetFrameLowering.h"  
  
namespace llvm {  
    class Cpu0Subtarget;  
  
    class Cpu0FrameLowering : public TargetFrameLowering {  
protected:  
    const Cpu0Subtarget &STI;  
  
public:  
    explicit Cpu0FrameLowering(const Cpu0Subtarget &sti, unsigned Alignment)  
        : TargetFrameLowering(StackGrowsDown, Alignment, 0, Alignment),  
          STI(sti) {}  
  
    static const Cpu0FrameLowering *create(const Cpu0Subtarget &ST);  
  
    bool hasFP(const MachineFunction &MF) const override;  
};  
  
/// Create Cpu0FrameLowering objects.  
const Cpu0FrameLowering *createCpu0SEFrameLowering(const Cpu0Subtarget &ST);  
  
} // End llvm namespace  
  
#endif
```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter3\_1/Cpu0FrameLowering.cpp

```
===== Cpu0FrameLowering.cpp - Cpu0 Frame Information -----//  
//  
// The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure  
//  
// This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source
```

```

// License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.
//
//=====
// This file contains the Cpu0 implementation of TargetFrameLowering class.
//
//=====

#include "Cpu0FrameLowering.h"

#include "Cpu0InstrInfo.h"
#include "Cpu0MachineFunction.h"
#include "Cpu0Subtarget.h"
#include "llvm/CodeGen/MachineFrameInfo.h"
#include "llvm/CodeGen/MachineFunction.h"
#include "llvm/CodeGen/MachineInstrBuilder.h"
#include "llvm/CodeGen/MachineModuleInfo.h"
#include "llvm/CodeGen/MachineRegisterInfo.h"
#include "llvm/IR/DataLayout.h"
#include "llvm/IR/Function.h"
#include "llvm/Support/CommandLine.h"
#include "llvm/Target/TargetOptions.h"

using namespace llvm;

//-- emitPrologue() and emitEpilogue must exist for main().

//=====
// Stack Frame Processing methods
// +-----+
// The stack is allocated decrementing the stack pointer on
// the first instruction of a function prologue. Once decremented,
// all stack references are done thought a positive offset
// from the stack/frame pointer, so the stack is considering
// to grow up! Otherwise terrible hacks would have to be made
// to get this stack ABI compliant :)
//
// The stack frame required by the ABI (after call):
// Offset
//
// 0           -----
// 4           Args to pass
// .           saved $GP (used in PIC)
// .           Alloca allocations
// .           Local Area
// .           CPU "Callee Saved" Registers
// .           saved FP
// .           saved RA
// .           FPU "Callee Saved" Registers
// StackSize   -----
//
// Offset - offset from sp after stack allocation on function prologue
//
// The sp is the stack pointer subtracted/added from the stack size
// at the Prologue/Epilogue
//

```

```

// References to the previous stack (to obtain arguments) are done
// with offsets that exceeds the stack size: (stacksize+(4*(num_arg-1)))
//
// Examples:
// - reference to the actual stack frame
//   for any local area var there is smt like : FI >= 0, StackOffset: 4
//     st REGX, 4(SP)
//
// - reference to previous stack frame
//   suppose there's a load to the 5th arguments : FI < 0, StackOffset: 16.
//   The emitted instruction will be something like:
//     ld REGX, 16+StackSize(SP)
//
// Since the total stack size is unknown on LowerFormalArguments, all
// stack references (ObjectOffset) created to reference the function
// arguments, are negative numbers. This way, on eliminateFrameIndex it's
// possible to detect those references and the offsets are adjusted to
// their real location.
//
//=====//
const Cpu0FrameLowering *Cpu0FrameLowering::create(const Cpu0Subtarget &ST) {
    return llvm::createCpu0SEFrameLowering(ST);
}

// hasFP - Return true if the specified function should have a dedicated frame
// pointer register. This is true if the function has variable sized allocas,
// if it needs dynamic stack realignment, if frame pointer elimination is
// disabled, or if the frame address is taken.
bool Cpu0FrameLowering::hasFP(const MachineFunction &MF) const {
    const MachineFrameInfo *MFI = MF.getFrameInfo();
    const TargetRegisterInfo *TRI = STI.getRegisterInfo();

    return MF.getTarget().Options.DisableFramePointerElim(MF) ||
        MFI->hasVarSizedObjects() || MFI->isFrameAddressTaken() ||
        TRI->needsStackRealignment(MF);
}

```

### [Index/chapters/Chapter3\\_1/Cpu0SEFrameLowering.h](#)

```

//===== Cpu0SEFrameLowering.h - Cpu032/64 frame lowering -----* C++ -*====//
//
//          The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure
//
// This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source
// License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.
//
//=====//
//
//
//=====//
#ifndef LLVM_LIB_TARGET_CPU0_CPU0SEFRAMELOWERING_H
#define LLVM_LIB_TARGET_CPU0_CPU0SEFRAMELOWERING_H

```

```
#include "Cpu0Config.h"
#include "Cpu0FrameLowering.h"

namespace llvm {

class Cpu0SEFrameLowering : public Cpu0FrameLowering {
public:
    explicit Cpu0SEFrameLowering(const Cpu0Subtarget &STI);

    /// emitProlog/emitEpilog - These methods insert prolog and epilog code into
    /// the function.
    void emitPrologue(MachineFunction &MF, MachineBasicBlock &MBB) const override;
    void emitEpilogue(MachineFunction &MF, MachineBasicBlock &MBB) const override;

};

} // End llvm namespace

#endif
```

**Ibdex/chapters/Chapter3\_1/Cpu0SEFrameLowering.cpp**

```
//===== Cpu0SEFrameLowering.cpp - Cpu0 Frame Information =====//
//
//          The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure
//
// This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source
// License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.
//
//=====
// This file contains the Cpu0 implementation of TargetFrameLowering class.
//
//=====

#include "Cpu0SEFrameLowering.h"

#include "Cpu0MachineFunction.h"
#include "Cpu0SEInstrInfo.h"
#include "Cpu0Subtarget.h"
#include "llvm/CodeGen/MachineFrameInfo.h"
#include "llvm/CodeGen/MachineFunction.h"
#include "llvm/CodeGen/MachineInstrBuilder.h"
#include "llvm/CodeGen/MachineModuleInfo.h"
#include "llvm/CodeGen/MachineRegisterInfo.h"
#include "llvm/CodeGen/RegisterScavenging.h"
#include "llvm/IR/DataLayout.h"
#include "llvm/IR/Function.h"
#include "llvm/Support/CommandLine.h"
#include "llvm/Target/TargetOptions.h"

using namespace llvm;
```

```
Cpu0SEFrameLowering::Cpu0SEFrameLowering(const Cpu0Subtarget &STI)
    : Cpu0FrameLowering(STI, STI.stackAlignment()) {}

//@emitPrologue {
void Cpu0SEFrameLowering::emitPrologue(MachineFunction &MF,
                                         MachineBasicBlock &MBB) const {
}

//}

//@emitEpilogue {
void Cpu0SEFrameLowering::emitEpilogue(MachineFunction &MF,
                                         MachineBasicBlock &MBB) const {
}
//}

const Cpu0FrameLowering *
llvm::createCpu0SEFrameLowering(const Cpu0Subtarget &ST) {
    return new Cpu0SEFrameLowering(ST);
}
```

### Index/chapters/Chapter3\_1/Cpu0InstrInfo.h

```
//===== Cpu0InstrInfo.h - Cpu0 Instruction Information ----- C++ -----//
//
//          The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure
//
// This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source
// License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.
//
//=====
// This file contains the Cpu0 implementation of the TargetInstrInfo class.
//
//=====

#ifndef LLVM_LIB_TARGET_CPU0_CPU0INSTRINFO_H
#define LLVM_LIB_TARGET_CPU0_CPU0INSTRINFO_H

#include "Cpu0Config.h"

#include "Cpu0.h"
#include "Cpu0RegisterInfo.h"
#include "llvm/CodeGen/MachineInstrBuilder.h"
#include "llvm/Target/TargetInstrInfo.h"

#define GET_INSTRINFO_HEADER
#include "Cpu0GenInstrInfo.inc"

namespace llvm {

class Cpu0InstrInfo : public Cpu0GenInstrInfo {
    virtual void anchor();
protected:
    const Cpu0Subtarget &Subtarget;
public:
```

```

explicit Cpu0InstrInfo(const Cpu0Subtarget &STI);

static const Cpu0InstrInfo *create(Cpu0Subtarget &STI);

/// getRegisterInfo - TargetInstrInfo is a superset of MRegister info. As
/// such, whenever a client has an instance of instruction info, it should
/// always be able to get register info as well (through this method).
///
virtual const Cpu0RegisterInfo &getRegisterInfo() const = 0;

/// Return the number of bytes of code the specified instruction may be.
unsigned GetInstSizeInBytes(const MachineInstr &MI) const;

protected:
};

const Cpu0InstrInfo *createCpu0SEInstrInfo(const Cpu0Subtarget &STI);
}

#endif

```

### [Index/chapters/Chapter3\\_1/Cpu0InstrInfo.cpp](#)

```

//===== Cpu0InstrInfo.cpp - Cpu0 Instruction Information =====/
//
//          The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure
//
// This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source
// License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.
//
//=====
// This file contains the Cpu0 implementation of the TargetInstrInfo class.
//
//=====

#include "Cpu0InstrInfo.h"

#include "Cpu0TargetMachine.h"
#include "Cpu0MachineFunction.h"
#include "llvm/ADT/STLExtras.h"
#include "llvm/CodeGen/MachineInstrBuilder.h"
#include "llvm/Support/ErrorHandling.h"
#include "llvm/Support/TargetRegistry.h"

using namespace llvm;

#define GET_INSTRINFOCTOR_DTOR
#include "Cpu0GenInstrInfo.inc"

// Pin the vtable to this file.
void Cpu0InstrInfo::anchor() {}

//@Cpu0InstrInfo {
Cpu0InstrInfo::Cpu0InstrInfo(const Cpu0Subtarget &STI)
:

```

```

Subtarget(STI) {}

const Cpu0InstrInfo *Cpu0InstrInfo::create(Cpu0Subtarget &STI) {
    return llvm::createCpu0SEInstrInfo(STI);
}

//@GetInstSizeInBytes {
/// Return the number of bytes of code the specified instruction may be.
unsigned Cpu0InstrInfo::GetInstSizeInBytes(const MachineInstr &MI) const {
//@GetInstSizeInBytes - body
    switch (MI.getOpcode()) {
    default:
        return MI.getDesc().getSize();
    }
}

```

### [Index/chapters/Chapter3\\_1/Cpu0InstrInfo.td](#)

```

//=====
// Cpu0 Instruction Predicate Definitions.
//=====

def Ch3_1      : Predicate<"Subtarget->hasChapter3_1()">, AssemblerPredicate<"FeatureChapter3_1">;
def Ch3_2      : Predicate<"Subtarget->hasChapter3_2()">, AssemblerPredicate<"FeatureChapter3_2">;
def Ch3_3      : Predicate<"Subtarget->hasChapter3_3()">, AssemblerPredicate<"FeatureChapter3_3">;
def Ch3_4      : Predicate<"Subtarget->hasChapter3_4()">, AssemblerPredicate<"FeatureChapter3_4">;
def Ch3_5      : Predicate<"Subtarget->hasChapter3_5()">, AssemblerPredicate<"FeatureChapter3_5">;
def Ch4_1      : Predicate<"Subtarget->hasChapter4_1()">, AssemblerPredicate<"FeatureChapter4_1">;
def Ch4_2      : Predicate<"Subtarget->hasChapter4_2()">, AssemblerPredicate<"FeatureChapter4_2">;
def Ch5_1      : Predicate<"Subtarget->hasChapter5_1()">, AssemblerPredicate<"FeatureChapter5_1">;
def Ch6_1      : Predicate<"Subtarget->hasChapter6_1()">, AssemblerPredicate<"FeatureChapter6_1">;
def Ch7_1      : Predicate<"Subtarget->hasChapter7_1()">, AssemblerPredicate<"FeatureChapter7_1">;
def Ch8_1      : Predicate<"Subtarget->hasChapter8_1()">, AssemblerPredicate<"FeatureChapter8_1">;
def Ch8_2      : Predicate<"Subtarget->hasChapter8_2()">, AssemblerPredicate<"FeatureChapter8_2">;
def Ch9_1      : Predicate<"Subtarget->hasChapter9_1()">, AssemblerPredicate<"FeatureChapter9_1">;
def Ch9_2      : Predicate<"Subtarget->hasChapter9_2()">, AssemblerPredicate<"FeatureChapter9_2">;
def Ch9_3      : Predicate<"Subtarget->hasChapter9_3()">, AssemblerPredicate<"FeatureChapter9_3">;
def Ch10_1     : Predicate<"Subtarget->hasChapter10_1()">, AssemblerPredicate<"FeatureChapter10_1">;
def Ch11_1     : Predicate<"Subtarget->hasChapter11_1()">,
```

```

def Ch11_2      : AssemblerPredicate<"FeatureChapter11_1">;
def Ch12_1      : Predicate<"Subtarget->hasChapter12_1()">;
def Ch_all       : Predicate<"Subtarget->hasChapterAll()">;
def EnableOverflow : Predicate<"Subtarget->enableOverflow()">;
def DisableOverflow : Predicate<"Subtarget->disableOverflow()">;
def HasCmp       : Predicate<"Subtarget->hasCmp()">;
def HasSlt       : Predicate<"Subtarget->hasSlt()">;

```

**Ibdex/chapters/Chapter3\_1/Cpu0ISelLowering.h**

```

//===== Cpu0ISelLowering.h - Cpu0 DAG Lowering Interface -----*-- C++ -*==//
//
//          The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure
//
// This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source
// License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.
//
//=====
// This file defines the interfaces that Cpu0 uses to lower LLVM code into a
// selection DAG.
//
//=====

#ifndef LLVM_LIB_TARGET_CPU0_CPU0ISELLOWERING_H
#define LLVM_LIB_TARGET_CPU0_CPU0ISELLOWERING_H

#include "Cpu0Config.h"

#include "MCTargetDesc/Cpu0ABIInfo.h"
#include "Cpu0.h"
#include "llvm/CodeGen/CallingConvLower.h"
#include "llvm/CodeGen/SelectionDAG.h"
#include "llvm/IR/Function.h"
#include "llvm/Target/TargetLowering.h"
#include <deque>

namespace llvm {
namespace Cpu0ISD {
enum NodeType {
    // Start the numbering from where ISD::NodeType finishes.
    FIRST_NUMBER = ISD::BUILTIN_OP_END,
    // Jump and link (call)
    JmpLink,
    // Tail call
    TailCall,
    // Get the Higher 16 bits from a 32-bit immediate
}
```

```

// No relation with Cpu0 Hi register
Hi,
// Get the Lower 16 bits from a 32-bit immediate
// No relation with Cpu0 Lo register
Lo,

// Handle gp_rel (small data/bss sections) relocation.
GPRel,

// Thread Pointer
ThreadPointer,

// Return
Ret,

EH_RETURN,

// DivRem(u)
DivRem,
DivRemU,

Wrapper,
DynAlloc,

Sync
};

}

//=====
// TargetLowering Implementation
//=====

class Cpu0FunctionInfo;
class Cpu0Subtarget;

//@class Cpu0TargetLowering
class Cpu0TargetLowering : public TargetLowering {
public:
    explicit Cpu0TargetLowering(const Cpu0TargetMachine &TM,
                                const Cpu0Subtarget &STI);

    static const Cpu0TargetLowering *create(const Cpu0TargetMachine &TM,
                                            const Cpu0Subtarget &STI);

    /// getTargetNodeName - This method returns the name of a target specific
    // DAG node.
    const char *getTargetNodeName(unsigned Opcode) const override;

protected:

    /// ByValArgInfo - Byval argument information.
    struct ByValArgInfo {
        unsigned FirstIdx; // Index of the first register used.
        unsigned NumRegs; // Number of registers used for this argument.
        unsigned Address; // Offset of the stack area used to pass this argument.

        ByValArgInfo() : FirstIdx(0), NumRegs(0), Address(0) {}
    };
}

```

```

protected:
    // Subtarget Info
    const Cpu0Subtarget &Subtarget;
    // Cache the ABI from the TargetMachine, we use it everywhere.
    const Cpu0ABIInfo &ABI;

private:

    // Lower Operand specifics
    SDValue lowerGlobalAddress(SDValue Op, SelectionDAG &DAG) const;

        // must be exist even without function all
    SDValue
    LowerFormalArguments(SDValue Chain,
                         CallingConv::ID CallConv, bool IsVarArg,
                         const SmallVectorImpl<ISD::InputArg> &Ins,
                         const SDLoc &dl, SelectionDAG &DAG,
                         SmallVectorImpl<SDValue> &InVals) const override;

    SDValue LowerReturn(SDValue Chain,
                        CallingConv::ID CallConv, bool IsVarArg,
                        const SmallVectorImpl<ISD::OutputArg> &Outs,
                        const SmallVectorImpl<SDValue> &OutVals,
                        const SDLoc &dl, SelectionDAG &DAG) const override;

};

const Cpu0TargetLowering *
createCpu0SETargetLowering(const Cpu0TargetMachine &TM, const Cpu0Subtarget &STI);
}

#endif // Cpu0ISELLOWERING_H

```

## Ibdex/chapters/Chapter3\_1/Cpu0ISELLowering.cpp

```

//===== Cpu0ISELLowering.cpp - Cpu0 DAG Lowering Implementation =====//
//
//          The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure
//
// This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source
// License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.
//
//=====
//
// This file defines the interfaces that Cpu0 uses to lower LLVM code into a
// selection DAG.
//
//=====
#include "Cpu0ISELLowering.h"

#include "Cpu0MachineFunction.h"
#include "Cpu0TargetMachine.h"
#include "Cpu0TargetObjectFile.h"
#include "Cpu0Subtarget.h"
#include "llvm/ADT/Statistic.h"
#include "llvm/CodeGen/CallingConvLower.h"

```

```

#include "llvm/CodeGen/MachineFrameInfo.h"
#include "llvm/CodeGen/MachineFunction.h"
#include "llvm/CodeGen/MachineInstrBuilder.h"
#include "llvm/CodeGen/MachineRegisterInfo.h"
#include "llvm/CodeGen/SelectionDAG.h"
#include "llvm/CodeGen/ValueTypes.h"
#include "llvm/IR/CallingConv.h"
#include "llvm/IR/DerivedTypes.h"
#include "llvm/IR/GlobalVariable.h"
#include "llvm/Support/CommandLine.h"
#include "llvm/Support/Debug.h"
#include "llvm/Support/ErrorHandling.h"
#include "llvm/Support/raw_ostream.h"

using namespace llvm;

#define DEBUG_TYPE "cpu0-lower"

//@3_1 {
const char *Cpu0TargetLowering::getTargetNodeName(unsigned Opcode) const {
    switch (Opcode) {
        case Cpu0ISD::JmpLink:           return "Cpu0ISD::JmpLink";
        case Cpu0ISD::TailCall:          return "Cpu0ISD::TailCall";
        case Cpu0ISD::Hi:               return "Cpu0ISD::Hi";
        case Cpu0ISD::Lo:               return "Cpu0ISD::Lo";
        case Cpu0ISD::GPRel:            return "Cpu0ISD::GPRel";
        case Cpu0ISD::Ret:              return "Cpu0ISD::Ret";
        case Cpu0ISD::EH_RETURN:         return "Cpu0ISD::EH_RETURN";
        case Cpu0ISD::DivRem:            return "Cpu0ISD::DivRem";
        case Cpu0ISD::DivRemU:           return "Cpu0ISD::DivRemU";
        case Cpu0ISD::Wrapper:           return "Cpu0ISD::Wrapper";
        default:                         return NULL;
    }
}
//@3_1 }

//@Cpu0TargetLowering {
Cpu0TargetLowering::Cpu0TargetLowering(const Cpu0TargetMachine &TM,
                                      const Cpu0Subtarget &STI)
    : TargetLowering(TM), Subtarget(STI), ABI(TM.getABI()) {

}

const Cpu0TargetLowering *Cpu0TargetLowering::create(const Cpu0TargetMachine &TM,
                                                    const Cpu0Subtarget &STI) {
    return llvm::createCpu0SETargetLowering(TM, STI);
}

//=====
// Lower helper functions
//=====

//=====
// Misc Lower Operation implementation
//=====

#include "Cpu0GenCallingConv.inc"

```

```

//=====//=====
//@          Formal Arguments Calling Convention Implementation
//=====//=====

//@LowerFormalArguments {
/// LowerFormalArguments - transform physical registers into virtual registers
/// and generate load operations for arguments places on the stack.
SDValue
Cpu0TargetLowering::LowerFormalArguments(SDValue Chain,
                                         CallingConv::ID CallConv,
                                         bool IsVarArg,
                                         const SmallVectorImpl<ISD::InputArg> &Ins,
                                         const SDLoc &DL, SelectionDAG &DAG,
                                         SmallVectorImpl<SDValue> &InVals)
                                         const {

    return Chain;
}
// @LowerFormalArguments }

//=====//=====
//@          Return Value Calling Convention Implementation
//=====//=====

SDValue
Cpu0TargetLowering::LowerReturn(SDValue Chain,
                                CallingConv::ID CallConv, bool IsVarArg,
                                const SmallVectorImpl<ISD::OutputArg> &Outs,
                                const SmallVectorImpl<SDValue> &OutVals,
                                const SDLoc &DL, SelectionDAG &DAG) const {
    return DAG.getNode(Cpu0ISD::Ret, DL, MVT::Other,
                        Chain, DAG.getRegister(Cpu0::LR, MVT::i32));
}

```

## Index/chapters/Chapter3\_1/Cpu0SEISelLowering.h

```

//===== Cpu0ISEISelLowering.h - Cpu0ISE DAG Lowering Interface ----- C++ -*====//
//          The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure
//
// This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source
// License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.
//
//=====//=====
//
// Subclass of Cpu0ITargetLowering specialized for cpu032/64.
//
//=====//=====

#ifndef LLVM_LIB_TARGET_CPU0_CPU0SEISELLOWERING_H
#define LLVM_LIB_TARGET_CPU0_CPU0SEISELLOWERING_H

#include "Cpu0Config.h"

#include "Cpu0ISELowering.h"

```

```
#include "Cpu0RegisterInfo.h"

namespace llvm {
    class Cpu0SEITargetLowering : public Cpu0TargetLowering {
public:
    explicit Cpu0SEITargetLowering(const Cpu0TargetMachine &TM,
                                   const Cpu0Subtarget &STI);

    SDValue LowerOperation(SDValue Op, SelectionDAG &DAG) const override;
private:
    };
}

#endif // Cpu0ISEISELLOWERING_H
```

### Index/chapters/Chapter3\_1/Cpu0SEISellowering.cpp

```
===== Cpu0SEISellowering.cpp - Cpu0SE DAG Lowering Interface --- C++ -*====/
//
//          The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure
//
// This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source
// License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.
//
//=====
// Subclass of Cpu0TargetLowering specialized for cpu032.
//
//=====
#include "Cpu0MachineFunction.h"
#include "Cpu0SEISellowering.h"

#include "Cpu0RegisterInfo.h"
#include "Cpu0TargetMachine.h"
#include "llvm/CodeGen/MachineInstrBuilder.h"
#include "llvm/CodeGen/MachineRegisterInfo.h"
#include "llvm/IR/Intrinsics.h"
#include "llvm/Support/CommandLine.h"
#include "llvm/Support/Debug.h"
#include "llvm/Support/raw_ostream.h"
#include "llvm/Target/TargetInstrInfo.h"

using namespace llvm;

#define DEBUG_TYPE "cpu0-isel"

static cl::opt<bool>
EnableCpu0TailCalls("enable-cpu0-tail-calls", cl::Hidden,
                    cl::desc("CPU0: Enable tail calls."), cl::init(false));

//@Cpu0SEITargetLowering {
Cpu0SEITargetLowering::Cpu0SEITargetLowering(const Cpu0TargetMachine &TM,
                                             const Cpu0Subtarget &STI)
    : Cpu0TargetLowering(TM, STI) {
//@Cpu0SEITargetLowering body {
```

```

// Set up the register classes
addRegisterClass(MVT::i32, &Cpu0::CPURegsRegClass);

// must, computeRegisterProperties - Once all of the register classes are
// added, this allows us to compute derived properties we expose.
computeRegisterProperties(Subtarget.getRegisterInfo());
}

SDValue Cpu0SETargetLowering::LowerOperation(SDValue Op,
                                             SelectionDAG &DAG) const {

    return Cpu0TargetLowering::LowerOperation(Op, DAG);
}

const Cpu0TargetLowering *
llvm::createCpu0SETargetLowering(const Cpu0TargetMachine &TM,
                                 const Cpu0Subtarget &STI) {
    return new Cpu0SETargetLowering(TM, STI);
}

```

### **Index/chapters/Chapter3\_1/Cpu0MachineFunction.h**

```

//===== Cpu0MachineFunctionInfo.h - Private data used for Cpu0 ----- C++ -*- //
//
//          The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure
//
// This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source
// License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.
//
//=====
// This file declares the Cpu0 specific subclass of MachineFunctionInfo.
//
//=====

#ifndef LLVM_LIB_TARGET_CPU0_CPU0MACHINEFUNCTION_H
#define LLVM_LIB_TARGET_CPU0_CPU0MACHINEFUNCTION_H

#include "Cpu0Config.h"

#include "llvm/CodeGen/MachineFrameInfo.h"
#include "llvm/CodeGen/MachineFunction.h"
#include "llvm/CodeGen/MachineMemOperand.h"
#include "llvm/CodeGen/PseudoSourceValue.h"
#include "llvm/Target/TargetFrameLowering.h"
#include "llvm/Target/TargetMachine.h"
#include <map>

namespace llvm {

//@1 {
/// Cpu0FunctionInfo - This class is derived from MachineFunction private
/// Cpu0 target-specific information for each MachineFunction.
class Cpu0FunctionInfo : public MachineFunctionInfo {
public:

```

```
Cpu0FunctionInfo(MachineFunction& MF)
: MF(MF),
  VarArgsFrameIndex(0),
  MaxCallFrameSize(0)
{ }

~Cpu0FunctionInfo();

int getVarArgsFrameIndex() const { return VarArgsFrameIndex; }
void setVarArgsFrameIndex(int Index) { VarArgsFrameIndex = Index; }

private:
  virtual void anchor();

  MachineFunction& MF;

  /// VarArgsFrameIndex - FrameIndex for start of varargs area.
  int VarArgsFrameIndex;

  unsigned MaxCallFrameSize;
};

//@1 }

} // end of namespace llvm

#endif // CPU0_MACHINE_FUNCTION_INFO_H
```

### Index/chapters/Chapter3\_1/Cpu0MachineFunction.cpp

```
===== Cpu0MachineFunction.cpp - Private data used for Cpu0 =====/
//
//          The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure
//
// This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source
// License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.
//=====

#include "Cpu0MachineFunction.h"

#include "Cpu0InstrInfo.h"
#include "Cpu0Subtarget.h"
#include "llvm/IR/Function.h"
#include "llvm/CodeGen/MachineInstrBuilder.h"
#include "llvm/CodeGen/MachineRegisterInfo.h"

using namespace llvm;

bool FixGlobalBaseReg;

Cpu0FunctionInfo::~Cpu0FunctionInfo() {}

void Cpu0FunctionInfo::anchor() {}
```

**Ibdex/chapters/Chapter3\_1/MCTargetDesc/Cpu0ABIInfo.h**

```

//===== Cpu0ABIInfo.h - Information about CPU0 ABI's =====//
//
// The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure
//
// This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source
// License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.
//
//=====

#ifndef LLVM_LIB_TARGET_CPU0_MCTARGETDESC_CPU0ABIINFO_H
#define LLVM_LIB_TARGET_CPU0_MCTARGETDESC_CPU0ABIINFO_H

#include "Cpu0Config.h"

#include "llvm/ADT/ArrayRef.h"
#include "llvm/ADT/Triple.h"
#include "llvm/IR/CallingConv.h"
#include "llvm/MC/MCRegisterInfo.h"

namespace llvm {

class MCTargetOptions;
class StringRef;
class TargetRegisterClass;

class Cpu0ABIInfo {
public:
    enum class ABI { Unknown, O32, S32 };

protected:
    ABI ThisABI;

public:
    Cpu0ABIInfo(ABI ThisABI) : ThisABI(ThisABI) {}

    static Cpu0ABIInfo Unknown() { return Cpu0ABIInfo(ABI::Unknown); }
    static Cpu0ABIInfo O32() { return Cpu0ABIInfo(ABI::O32); }
    static Cpu0ABIInfo S32() { return Cpu0ABIInfo(ABI::S32); }
    static Cpu0ABIInfo computeTargetABI();

    bool IsKnown() const { return ThisABI != ABI::Unknown; }
    bool IsO32() const { return ThisABI == ABI::O32; }
    bool IsS32() const { return ThisABI == ABI::S32; }
    ABI GetEnumValue() const { return ThisABI; }

    /// The registers to use for byval arguments.
    const ArrayRef<MCPhysReg> GetByValArgRegs() const;

    /// The registers to use for the variable argument list.
    const ArrayRef<MCPhysReg> GetVarArgRegs() const;

    /// Obtain the size of the area allocated by the callee for arguments.
    /// CallingConv::FastCall affects the value for O32.
    unsigned GetCalleeAllocdArgSizeInBytes(CallingConv::ID CC) const;

    /// Ordering of ABI's
}

```

```
/// Cpu0GenSubtargetInfo.inc will use this to resolve conflicts when given
/// multiple ABI options.
bool operator<(const Cpu0ABIInfo Other) const {
    return ThisABI < Other.GetEnumValue();
}

unsigned GetStackPtr() const;
unsigned GetFramePtr() const;
unsigned GetNullPtr() const;

unsigned GetEhDataReg(unsigned I) const;
int EhDataRegSize() const;
};

}

#endif
```

### [Index/chapters/Chapter3\\_1/MCTargetDesc/Cpu0ABIInfo.cpp](#)

```
//===== Cpu0ABIInfo.cpp - Information about CPU0 ABI's =====//
//
//          The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure
//
// This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source
// License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.
//
//=====

#include "Cpu0Config.h"

#include "Cpu0ABIInfo.h"
#include "Cpu0RegisterInfo.h"
#include "llvm/ADT/StringRef.h"
#include "llvm/ADT/StringSwitch.h"
#include "llvm/MC/MCTargetOptions.h"
#include "llvm/Support/CommandLine.h"

using namespace llvm;

static cl::opt<bool>
EnableCpu0S32Calls("cpu0-s32-calls", cl::Hidden,
                    cl::desc("CPU0 S32 call: use stack only to pass arguments.\n"),
                    cl::init(false));

namespace {
static const MCPhysReg O32IntRegs[4] = {Cpu0::A0, Cpu0::A1};
static const MCPhysReg S32IntRegs = {};
}

const ArrayRef<MCPhysReg> Cpu0ABIInfo::GetByValArgRegs() const {
    if (IsO32())
        return makeArrayRef(O32IntRegs);
    if (IsS32())
        return makeArrayRef(S32IntRegs);
    llvm_unreachable("Unhandled ABI");
```

```

}

const ArrayRef<MCPhysReg> Cpu0ABIInfo::GetVarArgRegs() const {
    if (IsO32())
        return makeArrayRef(O32IntRegs);
    if (IsS32())
        return makeArrayRef(S32IntRegs);
    llvm_unreachable("Unhandled ABI");
}

unsigned Cpu0ABIInfo::GetCalleeAllocdArgSizeInBytes(CallingConv::ID CC) const {
    if (IsO32())
        return CC != 0;
    if (IsS32())
        return 0;
    llvm_unreachable("Unhandled ABI");
}

Cpu0ABIInfo Cpu0ABIInfo::computeTargetABI() {
    Cpu0ABIInfo abi(ABI::Unknown);

    if (EnableCpu0S32Calls)
        abi = ABI::S32;
    else
        abi = ABI::O32;
    // Assert exactly one ABI was chosen.
    assert(abi.ThisABI != ABI::Unknown);

    return abi;
}

unsigned Cpu0ABIInfo::GetStackPtr() const {
    return Cpu0::SP;
}

unsigned Cpu0ABIInfo::GetFramePtr() const {
    return Cpu0::FP;
}

unsigned Cpu0ABIInfo::GetNullPtr() const {
    return Cpu0::ZERO;
}

unsigned Cpu0ABIInfo::GetEhDataReg(unsigned I) const {
    static const unsigned EhDataReg[] = {
        Cpu0::A0, Cpu0::A1
    };

    return EhDataReg[I];
}

int Cpu0ABIInfo::EhDataRegSize() const {
    if (ThisABI == ABI::S32)
        return 0;
    else
        return 2;
}

```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter3\_1/Cpu0Subtarget.h

```
#include "Cpu0FrameLowering.h"
#include "Cpu0ISelLowering.h"
#include "Cpu0InstrInfo.h"
#include "llvm/CodeGen/SelectionDAGTargetInfo.h"
#include "llvm/IR/DataLayout.h"
#include "llvm/MC/MCInstrItineraries.h"
#include "llvm/Target/TargetSubtargetInfo.h"
#include <string>

#define GET_SUBTARGETINFO_HEADER
#include "Cpu0GenSubtargetInfo.inc"
```

```
namespace llvm {
class StringRef;

class Cpu0TargetMachine;

class Cpu0Subtarget : public Cpu0GenSubtargetInfo {
    virtual void anchor();

public:

    bool HasChapterDummy;
    bool HasChapterAll;

    bool hasChapter3_1() const {
#if CH >= CH3_1
        return true;
#else
        return false;
#endif
    }

    bool hasChapter3_2() const {
#if CH >= CH3_2
        return true;
#else
        return false;
#endif
    }

    bool hasChapter3_3() const {
#if CH >= CH3_3
        return true;
#else
        return false;
#endif
    }

    bool hasChapter3_4() const {
#if CH >= CH3_4
        return true;
#else

```

```

    return false;
#endif
}

bool hasChapter3_5() const {
#if CH >= CH3_5
    return true;
#else
    return false;
#endif
}

bool hasChapter4_1() const {
#if CH >= CH4_1
    return true;
#else
    return false;
#endif
}

bool hasChapter4_2() const {
#if CH >= CH4_2
    return true;
#else
    return false;
#endif
}

bool hasChapter5_1() const {
#if CH >= CH5_1
    return true;
#else
    return false;
#endif
}

bool hasChapter6_1() const {
#if CH >= CH6_1
    return true;
#else
    return false;
#endif
}

bool hasChapter7_1() const {
#if CH >= CH7_1
    return true;
#else
    return false;
#endif
}

bool hasChapter8_1() const {
#if CH >= CH8_1
    return true;
#else
    return false;
#endif
}

```

```
}

bool hasChapter8_2() const {
#if CH >= CH8_2
    return true;
#else
    return false;
#endif
}

bool hasChapter9_1() const {
#if CH >= CH9_1
    return true;
#else
    return false;
#endif
}

bool hasChapter9_2() const {
#if CH >= CH9_2
    return true;
#else
    return false;
#endif
}

bool hasChapter9_3() const {
#if CH >= CH9_3
    return true;
#else
    return false;
#endif
}

bool hasChapter10_1() const {
#if CH >= CH10_1
    return true;
#else
    return false;
#endif
}

bool hasChapter11_1() const {
#if CH >= CH11_1
    return true;
#else
    return false;
#endif
}

bool hasChapter11_2() const {
#if CH >= CH11_2
    return true;
#else
    return false;
#endif
}
```

```

    bool hasChapter12_1() const {
#ifndef CH
#define CH12_1
        return true;
#else
        return false;
#endif
    }

protected:
    enum Cpu0ArchEnum {
        Cpu032I,
        Cpu032II
    };

    // Cpu0 architecture version
    Cpu0ArchEnum Cpu0ArchVersion;

    // IsLittle - The target is Little Endian
    bool IsLittle;

    bool EnableOverflow;

    // HasCmp - cmp instructions.
    bool HasCmp;

    // HasSlt - slt instructions.
    bool HasSlt;

    InstrItineraryData InstrItins;

```

```

const Cpu0TargetMachine &TM;

Triple TargetTriple;

const SelectionDAGTargetInfo TSIInfo;

std::unique_ptr<const Cpu0InstrInfo> InstrInfo;
std::unique_ptr<const Cpu0FrameLowering> FrameLowering;
std::unique_ptr<const Cpu0TargetLowering> TLInfo;

public:
    bool isPositionIndependent() const;
    const Cpu0ABIInfo &getABI() const;

    /// This constructor initializes the data members to match that
    /// of the specified triple.
    Cpu0Subtarget(const Triple &TT, const std::string &CPU, const std::string &FS,
                  bool little, const Cpu0TargetMachine &_TM);

    // Virtual function, must have
    /// ParseSubtargetFeatures - Parses features string setting specified
    /// subtarget options. Definition of function is auto generated by tblgen.
    void ParseSubtargetFeatures(StringRef CPU, StringRef FS);

    bool isLittle() const { return IsLittle; }
    bool hasCpu032I() const { return Cpu0ArchVersion >= Cpu032I; }

```

```
bool isCpu032I() const { return Cpu0ArchVersion == Cpu032I; }
bool hasCpu032II() const { return Cpu0ArchVersion >= Cpu032II; }
bool isCpu032III() const { return Cpu0ArchVersion == Cpu032III; }

/// Features related to the presence of specific instructions.
bool enableOverflow() const { return EnableOverflow; }
bool disableOverflow() const { return !EnableOverflow; }
bool hasCmp() const { return HasCmp; }
bool hasSlt() const { return HasSlt; }
```

```
bool abiUsesSoftFloat() const;

bool enableLongBranchPass() const {
    return hasCpu032II();
}

unsigned stackAlignment() const { return 8; }

Cpu0Subtarget &initializeSubtargetDependencies(StringRef CPU, StringRef FS,
                                              const TargetMachine &TM);

const SelectionDAGTargetInfo *getSelectionDAGInfo() const override {
    return &TSInfo;
}
const Cpu0InstrInfo *getInstrInfo() const override { return InstrInfo.get(); }
const TargetFrameLowering *getFrameLowering() const override {
    return FrameLowering.get();
}
const Cpu0RegisterInfo *getRegisterInfo() const override {
    return &InstrInfo->getRegisterInfo();
}
const Cpu0TargetLowering *getTargetLowering() const override {
    return TLInfo.get();
}
const InstrItineraryData *getInstrItineraryData() const override {
    return &InstrItins;
}
};

} // End llvm namespace

#endif
```

### Index/chapters/Chapter3\_1/Cpu0Subtarget.cpp

```
//===== Cpu0Subtarget.cpp - Cpu0 Subtarget Information =====//
//  
//  
//  
// This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source  
// License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.  
//  
//=====
```

```

// This file implements the Cpu0 specific subclass of TargetSubtargetInfo.
// =====
#include "Cpu0Subtarget.h"

#include "Cpu0MachineFunction.h"
#include "Cpu0.h"
#include "Cpu0RegisterInfo.h"

#include "Cpu0TargetMachine.h"
#include "llvm/IR/Attributes.h"
#include "llvm/IR/Function.h"
#include "llvm/Support/CommandLine.h"
#include "llvm/Support/ErrorHandling.h"
#include "llvm/Support/TargetRegistry.h"

using namespace llvm;

#define DEBUG_TYPE "cpu0-subtarget"

#define GET_SUBTARGETINFO_TARGET_DESC
#define GET_SUBTARGETINFOCTOR
#include "Cpu0GenSubtargetInfo.inc"

extern bool FixGlobalBaseReg;

void Cpu0Subtarget::anchor() { }

//@1 {
Cpu0Subtarget::Cpu0Subtarget(const Triple &TT, const std::string &CPU,
                           const std::string &FS, bool little,
                           const Cpu0TargetMachine &_TM) :
//@1 }
    // Cpu0GenSubtargetInfo will display features by llc -march=cpu0 -mcpu=help
    Cpu0GenSubtargetInfo(TT, CPU, FS),
    IsLittle(little), TM(_TM), TargetTriple(TT), TSInfo(),
    InstrInfo(
        Cpu0InstrInfo::create(initializeSubtargetDependencies(CPU, FS, TM))),
    FrameLowering(Cpu0FrameLowering::create(*this)),
    TLInfo(Cpu0TargetLowering::create(TM, *this)) {

}

bool Cpu0Subtarget::isPositionIndependent() const {
    return TM.isPositionIndependent();
}

Cpu0Subtarget &
Cpu0Subtarget::initializeSubtargetDependencies(StringRef CPU, StringRef FS,
                                              const TargetMachine &TM) {
    if (TargetTriple.getArch() == Triple::cpu0 || TargetTriple.getArch() == Triple::cpu0el) {
        if (CPU.empty() || CPU == "generic") {
            CPU = "cpu032II";
        }
        else if (CPU == "help") {

```

```

        CPU = "";
        return *this;
    }
    else if (CPU != "cpu032I" && CPU != "cpu032II") {
        CPU = "cpu032II";
    }
}
else {
    errs() << "!!!Error, TargetTriple.getArch() = " << TargetTriple.getArch()
        << "CPU = " << CPU << "\n";
    exit(0);
}

if (CPU == "cpu032I")
    Cpu0ArchVersion = Cpu032I;
else if (CPU == "cpu032II")
    Cpu0ArchVersion = Cpu032II;

if (isCpu032I()) {
    HasCmp = true;
    HasSlt = false;
}
else if (isCpu032II()) {
    HasCmp = true;
    HasSlt = true;
}
else {
    errs() << "-mcpu must be empty(default:cpu032II), cpu032I or cpu032II" << "\n";
}

// Parse features string.
ParseSubtargetFeatures(CPU, FS);
// Initialize scheduling itinerary for the specified CPU.
InstrItins = getInstrItineraryForCPU(CPU);

return *this;
}

bool Cpu0Subtarget::abiUsesSoftFloat() const {
//    return TM->Options.UseSoftFloat;
    return true;
}

const Cpu0ABIInfo &Cpu0Subtarget::getABI() const { return TM.getABI(); }

```

## Ibdex/chapters/Chapter3\_1/Cpu0RegisterInfo.h

```

//===== Cpu0RegisterInfo.h - Cpu0 Register Information Impl -----*-- C++ -*==//
//
//                               The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure
//
// This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source
// License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.
//
//=====-----=====

```

```

// This file contains the Cpu0 implementation of the TargetRegisterInfo class.
// =====

#ifndef LLVM_LIB_TARGET_CPU0_CPU0REGISTERINFO_H
#define LLVM_LIB_TARGET_CPU0_CPU0REGISTERINFO_H

#include "Cpu0Config.h"

#include "Cpu0.h"
#include "llvm/Target/TargetRegisterInfo.h"

#define GET_REGINFO_HEADER
#include "Cpu0GenRegisterInfo.inc"

namespace llvm {
class Cpu0Subtarget;
class TargetInstrInfo;
class Type;

class Cpu0RegisterInfo : public Cpu0GenRegisterInfo {
protected:
    const Cpu0Subtarget &Subtarget;

public:
    Cpu0RegisterInfo(const Cpu0Subtarget &Subtarget);

    const MCPhysReg *getCalleeSavedRegs(const MachineFunction *MF) const override;
    const uint32_t *getCallPreservedMask(const MachineFunction &MF,
                                         CallingConv::ID) const override;
    BitVector getReservedRegs(const MachineFunction &MF) const override;
    bool requiresRegisterScavenging(const MachineFunction &MF) const override;
    bool trackLivenessAfterRegAlloc(const MachineFunction &MF) const override;
    /// Stack Frame Processing Methods
    void eliminateFrameIndex(MachineBasicBlock::iterator II,
                             int SPAdj, unsigned FIOperandNum,
                             RegScavenger *RS = nullptr) const override;
    /// Debug information queries.
    unsigned getFrameRegister(const MachineFunction &MF) const override;
    /// \brief Return GPR register class.
    virtual const TargetRegisterClass *intRegClass(unsigned Size) const = 0;
};

} // end namespace llvm

#endif

```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter3\_1/Cpu0RegisterInfo.cpp

```
===== Cpu0RegisterInfo.cpp - CPU0 Register Information === =====
//
// The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure
//
// This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source
// License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.
//
//=====
// This file contains the CPU0 implementation of the TargetRegisterInfo class.
//
//=====

#define DEBUG_TYPE "cpu0-reg-info"

#include "Cpu0RegisterInfo.h"

#include "Cpu0.h"
#include "Cpu0Subtarget.h"
#include "Cpu0MachineFunction.h"
#include "llvm/IR/Function.h"
#include "llvm/IR/Type.h"
#include "llvm/Support/CommandLine.h"
#include "llvm/Support/Debug.h"
#include "llvm/Support/ErrorHandling.h"
#include "llvm/Support/raw_ostream.h"

#define GET_REGINFO_TARGET_DESC
#include "Cpu0GenRegisterInfo.inc"

using namespace llvm;

Cpu0RegisterInfo::Cpu0RegisterInfo(const Cpu0Subtarget &ST)
    : Cpu0GenRegisterInfo(Cpu0::LR), Subtarget(ST) {}

//=====
// Callee Saved Registers methods
//=====

/// Cpu0 Callee Saved Registers
// In Cpu0CallConv.td,
// def CSR_O32 : CalleeSavedRegs<(add LR, FP,
//                                (sequence "$%u", 2, 0))>;
// llc create CSR_O32_SaveList and CSR_O32_RegMask from above defined.
const MCPhysReg *
Cpu0RegisterInfo::getCalleeSavedRegs(const MachineFunction *MF) const {
    return CSR_O32_SaveList;
}

const uint32_t *
Cpu0RegisterInfo::getCallPreservedMask(const MachineFunction &MF,
                                      CallingConv::ID) const {
    return CSR_O32_RegMask;
}

// pure virtual method
// @getReservedRegs {
```

```

BitVector Cpu0RegisterInfo::  

getReservedRegs(const MachineFunction &MF) const {  

//@getReservedRegs body {  

    static const uint16_t ReservedCPURegs[] = {  

        Cpu0::ZERO, Cpu0::AT, Cpu0::SP, Cpu0::LR, Cpu0::PC  

    };  

    BitVector Reserved(getNumRegs());  
  

    for (unsigned I = 0; I < array_lengthof(ReservedCPURegs); ++I)  

        Reserved.set(ReservedCPURegs[I]);  
  

    return Reserved;  

}  
  

//@eliminateFrameIndex {  

// - If no eliminateFrameIndex(), it will hang on run.  

// pure virtual method  

// FrameIndex represent objects inside a abstract stack.  

// We must replace FrameIndex with an stack/frame pointer  

// direct reference.  

void Cpu0RegisterInfo::  

eliminateFrameIndex(MachineBasicBlock::iterator II, int SPAdj,  

                    unsigned FIOperandNum, RegScavenger *RS) const {  

}  

//}  
  

bool  

Cpu0RegisterInfo::requiresRegisterScavenging(const MachineFunction &MF) const {  

    return true;  

}  
  

bool  

Cpu0RegisterInfo::trackLivenessAfterRegAlloc(const MachineFunction &MF) const {  

    return true;  

}  
  

// pure virtual method  

unsigned Cpu0RegisterInfo::  

getFrameRegister(const MachineFunction &MF) const {  

    const TargetFrameLowering *TFI = MF.getSubtarget().getFrameLowering();  

    return TFI->hasFP(MF) ? (Cpu0::FP) :  

                      (Cpu0::SP);  

}

```

## [Index/chapters/Chapter3\\_1/Cpu0SERegisterInfo.h](#)

```

//===== Cpu0SERegisterInfo.h - Cpu032 Register Information ----- C++ -*====//  

//  

// The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure  

//  

// This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source  

// License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.  

//  

//===== //  

//
```

```
// This file contains the Cpu032/64 implementation of the TargetRegisterInfo
// class.
//
//=====//  
  
#ifndef LLVM_LIB_TARGET_CPU0_CPU0SEREGISTERINFO_H
#define LLVM_LIB_TARGET_CPU0_CPU0SEREGISTERINFO_H  
  
#include "Cpu0Config.h"  
  
#include "Cpu0RegisterInfo.h"  
  
namespace llvm {  
class Cpu0SEInstrInfo;  
  
class Cpu0SERegisterInfo : public Cpu0RegisterInfo {  
public:  
    Cpu0SERegisterInfo(const Cpu0Subtarget &Subtarget);  
  
    const TargetRegisterClass *intRegClass(unsigned Size) const override;  
};  
  
} // end namespace llvm  
  
#endif
```

### Index/chapters/Chapter3\_1/Cpu0SERegisterInfo.cpp

```
===== Cpu0SERegisterInfo.cpp - CPU0 Register Information ===== //
//  
//          The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure  
//  
// This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source  
// License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.  
//  
//=====//  
//  
// This file contains the CPU0 implementation of the TargetRegisterInfo  
// class.  
//  
//=====//  
  
#include "Cpu0SERegisterInfo.h"  
  
using namespace llvm;  
  
#define DEBUG_TYPE "cpu0-reg-info"  
  
Cpu0SERegisterInfo::Cpu0SERegisterInfo(const Cpu0Subtarget &ST)
    : Cpu0RegisterInfo(ST) {}  
  
const TargetRegisterClass *
Cpu0SERegisterInfo::intRegClass(unsigned Size) const {
    return &Cpu0::CPURegsRegClass;
}
```

### cmake\_debug\_build/lib/Target/Cpu0/Cpu0GenInstInfo.inc

```
//- Cpu0GenInstInfo.inc which generate from Cpu0InstrInfo.td
#ifndef GET_INSTRINFO_HEADER
#define GET_INSTRINFO_HEADER
namespace llvm {
struct Cpu0GenInstrInfo : public TargetInstrInfoImpl {
    explicit Cpu0GenInstrInfo(int SO = -1, int DO = -1);
};

} // End llvm namespace
#endif // GET_INSTRINFO_HEADER

#define GET_INSTRINFO_HEADER
#include "Cpu0GenInstrInfo.inc"
//- Cpu0InstInfo.h
class Cpu0InstrInfo : public Cpu0GenInstrInfo {
    Cpu0TargetMachine &TM;
public:
    explicit Cpu0InstrInfo(Cpu0TargetMachine &TM);
};


```

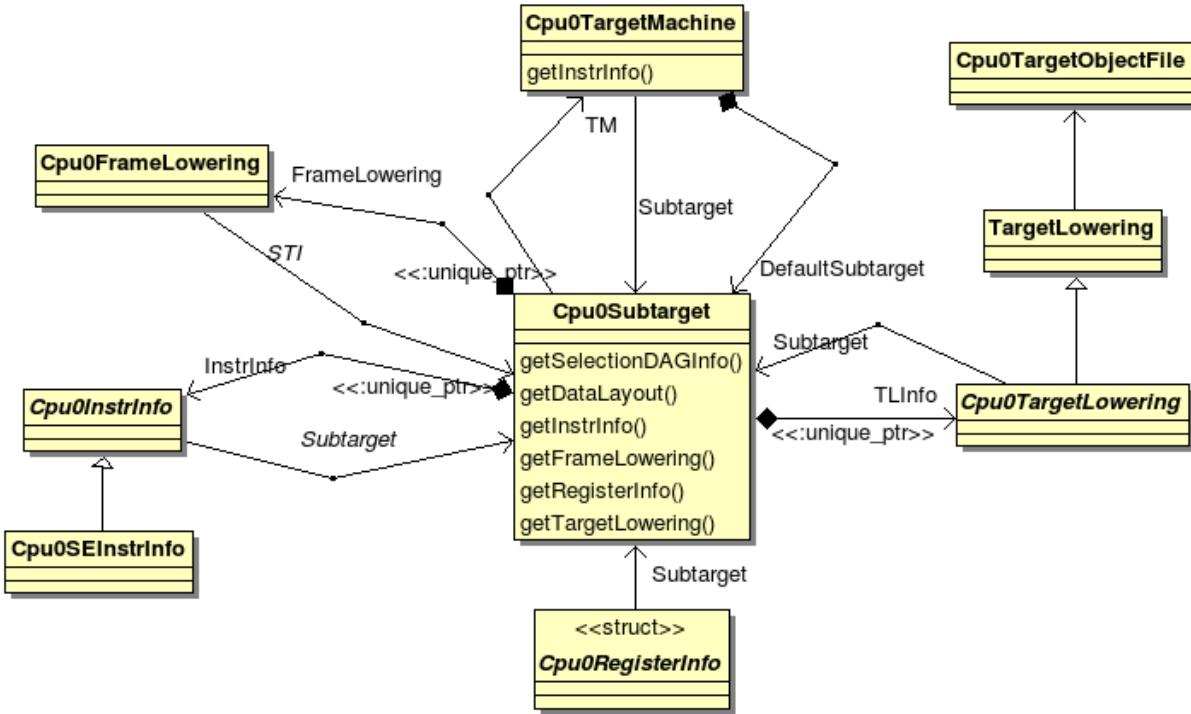


Fig. 3.1: Cpu0 backend class access link

Chapter3\_1 add most Cpu0 backend classes. The code of Chapter3\_1 can be summarized as Fig. 3.1. Class **Cpu0Subtarget** provides the interfaces **getInstrInfo()**, **getFrameLowering()**, ..., to get other Cpu0 classes. Most classes (like **Cpu0InstrInfo**, **Cpu0RegisterInfo**, ...) have **Subtarget** reference member to allowing them access other classes through the **Cpu0Subtarget** interface. If the backend module hasn't the **Subtarget** reference, these classes still can

access Subtarget class through Cpu0TargetMachine (usually use TM as symbol) by static\_cast<Cpu0TargetMachine &>(TM).getSubtargetImpl(). Once getting Subtarget class, the backend code can access other classes through it. For those name of Cpu0SExx classes, they mean the standard 32 bits class. This arrangement follows llvm 3.5 Mips backend style. Mips backend uses Mips16, MipsSE and Mips64 files/classes name to define classes for 16, 32 and 64 bits architecture, respectively. Since Cpu0Subtarget creates Cpu0InstrInfo, Cpu0RegisterInfo, ..., at constructor function, it can provide the class reference through the interfaces shown in Fig. 3.1.

Below Fig. 3.2 shows Cpu0 TableGen inheritance relationship. Last chapter mentioned that backend class can include the TableGen generated classes and inherited from it. All the TableGen generated classes of Cpu0 backend are in cmake\_debug\_build/lib/Target/Cpu0/\*.inc. Through C++ inheritance mechanism, TableGen provides backend programmers a flexible way to use its generated code. Programmers have chance to override this function if they need to.

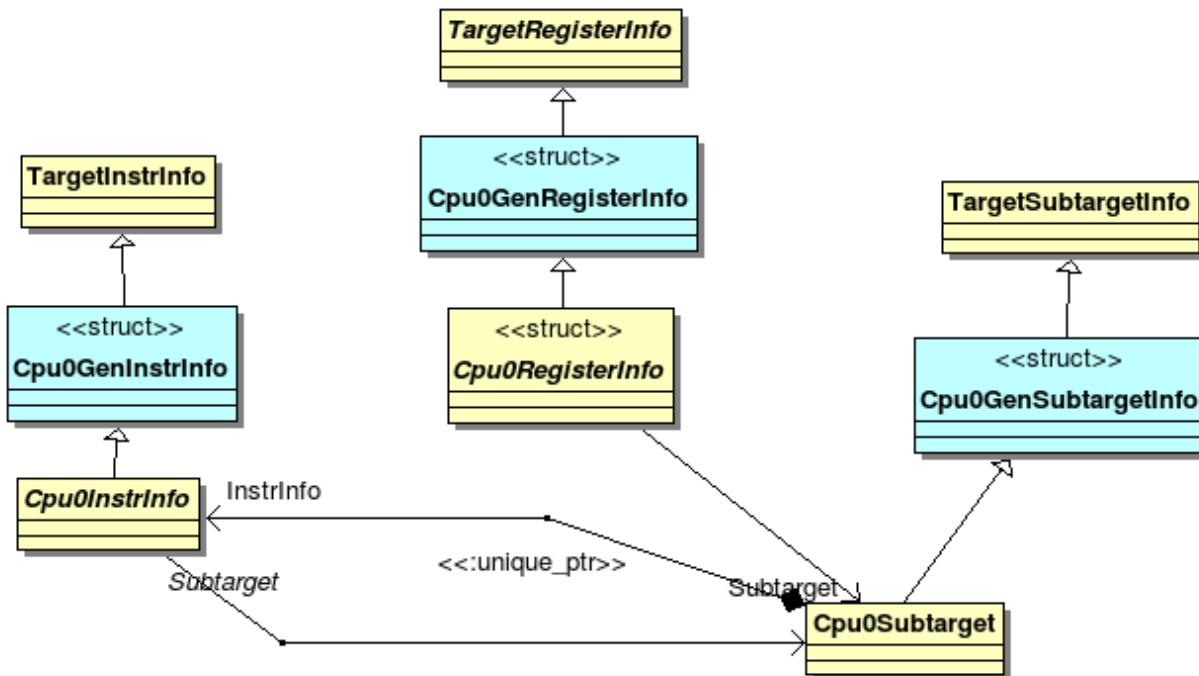


Fig. 3.2: Cpu0 classes inherited from TableGen generated files

Since llvm has deep inheritance tree, they are not digged here. Benefit from the inheritance tree structure, not much code needed to be implemented in classes of instruction, frame/stack and select DAG, since much code are implemented by their parent classes. The llvm-tblgen generate Cpu0GenInstrInfo.inc based on information from Cpu0InstrInfo.td. Cpu0InstrInfo.h extract those code it needs from Cpu0GenInstrInfo.inc by define "#define GET\_INSTRINFO\_HEADER". With TabelGen, the code size in backend is reduced again through the pattern match theory of compiler developemnt. This is explained in both sections of "DAG" and "Instruction Selection" in last chapter. Following is the code fragment from Cpu0GenInstrInfo.inc. Code between "#if def GET\_INSTRINFO\_HEADER" and "#endif // GET\_INSTRINFO\_HEADER"" will be extracted to Cpu0InstrInfo.h.

#### `cmake_debug_build/lib/Target/Cpu0/Cpu0GenInstrInfo.inc`

```
//- Cpu0GenInstInfo.inc which generate from Cpu0InstrInfo.td
#ifndef GET_INSTRINFO_HEADER
#define GET_INSTRINFO_HEADER
#endif // GET_INSTRINFO_HEADER
```

```

namespace llvm {
struct Cpu0GenInstrInfo : public TargetInstrInfoImpl {
    explicit Cpu0GenInstrInfo(int SO = -1, int DO = -1);
};

} // End llvm namespace
#endif // GET_INSTRINFO_HEADER

```

Reference web sites are here <sup>1</sup> <sup>2</sup>.

Chapter3\_1/CMakeLists.txt is modified with these new added \*.cpp as follows,

### **Index/chapters/Chapter3\_1/CMakeLists.txt**

```

tablegen(LLVM Cpu0GenDAGISel.inc -gen-dag-isel)
tablegen(LLVM Cpu0GenCallingConv.inc -gen-callingconv)

```

```
Cpu0FrameLowering.cpp
```

Please take a look for Chapter3\_1 code. After that, building Chapter3\_1 by “#define CH CH3\_1” in Cpu0Config.h as follows, and do building with Xcode on iMac or make on linux again.

### **~/llvm/test/src/lib/Target/Cpu0SetChapter.h**

```
#define CH      CH3_1
```

```

118-165-78-230:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/
Debug/bin/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm ch3.bc -o
ch3.cpu0.s
... Assertion `AsmInfo && "MCAsmInfo not initialized. "
...
```

With Chapter3\_1 implementation, the Chapter2 error message “Could not allocate target machine!” has gone. The new error say that we have not Target AsmPrinter. We will add it in next section.

Chapter3\_1 create FeatureCpu032I and FeatureCpu032II for CPU cpu032I and cpu032II, repectively. Beyond that, it defines two more features, FeatureCmp and FeatureSlt. In order to demostrate the “instruction set designing choice” to readers, this book creates two CPU. Readers will realize why Mips CPU uses instruction SLT instead of CMP after they have read later Chapter “Control flow statement”. With the added code of supporting cpu032I and cpu32II in Cpu0.td and Cpu0InstrInfo.td of Chapter3\_1, the command llc -march=cpu0 -mc当地=help can display messages as follows,

```

JonathantekiiMac:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/
cmake_debug_build/Debug/bin/llc -march=cpu0 -mc当地=help
Available CPUs for this target:

cpu032I - Select the cpu032I processor.
cpu032II - Select the cpu032II processor.

Available features for this target:

ch10_1 - Enable Chapter instructions..

```

<sup>1</sup> <http://llvm.org/docs/WritingAnLLVMBBackend.html#target-machine>

<sup>2</sup> <http://llvm.org/docs/LangRef.html#data-layout>

```

ch11_1      - Enable Chapter instructions..
ch11_2      - Enable Chapter instructions..
ch14_1      - Enable Chapter instructions..
ch3_1       - Enable Chapter instructions..
ch3_2       - Enable Chapter instructions..
ch3_3       - Enable Chapter instructions..
ch3_4       - Enable Chapter instructions..
ch3_5       - Enable Chapter instructions..
ch4_1       - Enable Chapter instructions..
ch4_2       - Enable Chapter instructions..
ch5_1       - Enable Chapter instructions..
ch6_1       - Enable Chapter instructions..
ch7_1       - Enable Chapter instructions..
ch8_1       - Enable Chapter instructions..
ch8_2       - Enable Chapter instructions..
ch9_1       - Enable Chapter instructions..
ch9_2       - Enable Chapter instructions..
ch9_3       - Enable Chapter instructions..
chall       - Enable Chapter instructions..
cmp        - Enable 'cmp' instructions..
cpu032I    - Cpu032I ISA Support.
cpu032II   - Cpu032II ISA Support (slt).
o32        - Enable o32 ABI.
s32        - Enable s32 ABI.
slt         - Enable 'slt' instructions..

```

Use `+feature` to enable a feature, or `-feature` to disable it.

For example, `llc -mcpu=mycpu -mattr=+feature1,-feature2`

...

When user input `-mcpu(cpu032I)`, the variable `IsCpu032I` from `Cpu0InstrInfo.td` will be true since the function `isCpu032I()` defined in `Cpu0Subtarget.h` is true (set `Cpu0ArchVersion` to `cpu032I` in `initializeSubtargetDependencies()` called in constructor function, the variable `CPU` in constructor function is “`cpu032I`” when user input `-mcpu(cpu032I)`). Please notice variable `Cpu0ArchVersion` must be initialized in `Cpu0Subtarget.cpp`, otherwise variable `Cpu0ArchVersion` can be any value and functions `isCpu032I()` and `isCpu032II()` which support `llc -mcpu(cpu032I)` and `llc -mcpu(cpu032II)`, respectively, will have trouble. The value of variables `HasCmp` and `HasSlt` are set depend on `Cpu0ArchVersion`. Instructions `slt` and `beq`, ... are supported only in case of `HasSlt` is true, and furthermore, `HasSlt` is true only when `Cpu0ArchVersion` is `Cpu032II`. Similiarly, `Ch4_1`, `Ch4_2`, ..., are used in controlling the enable or disable of instruction definition. Through `Subtarget->hasChapter4_1()` which exists both in `Cpu0.td` and `Cpu0Subtarget.h`, the Predicate, such as `Ch4_1`, defined in `Cpu0InstrInfo.td` can be enabled or disabled. For example, the shift-rotate instructions can be enabled by define `CH` to greater than or equal to `CH4_1` as follows,

### Ibdex/Cpu0/Cpu0InstrInfo.td

```

let Predicates = [Ch4_1] in {
class shift_rotate_reg<bits<8> op, bits<4> isRotate, string instr_asm,
                     SDNode OpNode, RegisterClass RC>:
  FA<op, (outs GPROut:$ra), (ins RC:$rb, RC:$rc),
  !strconcat(instr_asm, "\t$ra, $rb, $rc"),
  [(set GPROut:$ra, (OpNode RC:$rb, RC:$rc))], IIAlu> {
  let shamrt = 0;
}
}

```

~/llvm/test/src/lib/Target/Cpu0SetChapter.h

```
#define CH        CH4_1
```

On the contrary, it can be disabled by define it to less than CH4\_1, for instance CH3\_5, as follows,

~/llvm/test/src/lib/Target/Cpu0SetChapter.h

```
#define CH        CH3_5
```

## 3.2 Add AsmPrinter

Chapter3\_2/ contains the Cpu0AsmPrinter definition.

**Ibdex/chapters/Chapter2/Cpu0.td**

```
def Cpu0InstrInfo : InstrInfo;

// Will generate Cpu0GenAsmWrite.inc included by Cpu0InstPrinter.cpp, contents
// as follows,
// void Cpu0InstPrinter::printInstruction(const MCInst *MI, raw_ostream &O) {...}
// const char *Cpu0InstPrinter::getRegisterName(unsigned RegNo) {...}
def Cpu0 : Target {
// def Cpu0InstrInfo : InstrInfo as before.
let InstructionSet = Cpu0InstrInfo;
}
```

As above comments of Chapter2/Cpu0.td indicate, it will generate Cpu0GenAsmWrite.inc which is included by Cpu0InstPrinter.cpp as follows,

**Ibdex/chapters/Chapter3\_2/InstPrinter/Cpu0InstPrinter.h**

```
===== Cpu0InstPrinter.h - Convert Cpu0 MCInst to assembly syntax -*- C++ -*-=====
//
//          The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure
//
// This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source
// License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.
//
//=====
// This class prints a Cpu0 MCInst to a .s file.
//
//=====

#ifndef LLVM_LIB_TARGET_CPU0_INSTPRINTER_CPU0INSTPRINTER_H
#define LLVM_LIB_TARGET_CPU0_INSTPRINTER_CPU0INSTPRINTER_H

#include "Cpu0Config.h"
```

```
#include "llvm/MC/MCInstPrinter.h"

namespace llvm {
// These enumeration declarations were originally in Cpu0InstrInfo.h but
// had to be moved here to avoid circular dependencies between
// LLVMCpu0CodeGen and LLVMCpu0AsmPrinter.

class TargetMachine;

class Cpu0InstPrinter : public MCInstPrinter {
public:
    Cpu0InstPrinter(const MCAsmInfo &MAI, const MCInstrInfo &MII,
                    const MCRegisterInfo &MRI)
        : MCInstPrinter(MAI, MII, MRI) {}

    // Autogenerated by tblgen.
    void printInstruction(const MCInst *MI, raw_ostream &O);
    static const char *getRegisterName(unsigned RegNo);

    void printRegName(raw_ostream &OS, unsigned RegNo) const override;
    void printInst(const MCInst *MI, raw_ostream &O, StringRef Annot,
                  const MCSubtargetInfo &STI) override;

    bool printAliasInstr(const MCInst *MI, raw_ostream &OS);
    void printCustomAliasOperand(const MCInst *MI, unsigned OpIdx,
                                unsigned PrintMethodIdx, raw_ostream &O);

private:
    void printOperand(const MCInst *MI, unsigned OpNo, raw_ostream &O);
    void printUnsignedImm(const MCInst *MI, int opNum, raw_ostream &O);
    void printMemOperand(const MCInst *MI, int opNum, raw_ostream &O);
//#if CH >= CH7_1
    void printMemOperandEA(const MCInst *MI, int opNum, raw_ostream &O);
//#endif
};

} // end namespace llvm

#endif
```

### Index/chapters/Chapter3\_2/InstPrinter/Cpu0InstPrinter.cpp

```
===== Cpu0InstPrinter.cpp - Convert Cpu0 MCInst to assembly syntax =====/
//
// The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure
//
// This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source
// License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.
//
//=====
// This class prints an Cpu0 MCInst to a .s file.
//
//=====

#include "Cpu0InstPrinter.h"
```

```

#include "Cpu0InstrInfo.h"
#include "llvm/ADT/StringExtras.h"
#include "llvm/MC/MCEexpr.h"
#include "llvm/MC/MCInst.h"
#include "llvm/MC/MCInstrInfo.h"
#include "llvm/MC/MCSymbol.h"
#include "llvm/Support/ErrorHandling.h"
#include "llvm/Support/raw_ostream.h"
using namespace llvm;

#define DEBUG_TYPE "asm-printer"

#define PRINT_ALIAS_INSTR
#include "Cpu0GenAsmWriter.inc"

void Cpu0InstPrinter::printRegName(raw_ostream &OS, unsigned RegNo) const {
// - getRegisterName(RegNo) defined in Cpu0GenAsmWriter.inc which indicate in
//   Cpu0.td.
    OS << '$' << StringRef(getRegisterName(RegNo)).lower();
}

//@1 {
void Cpu0InstPrinter::printInst(const MCInst *MI, raw_ostream &O,
                               StringRef Annot, const MCSubtargetInfo &STI) {
    // Try to print any aliases first.
    if (!printAliasInstr(MI, O))
//@1 }
    // - printInstruction(MI, O) defined in Cpu0GenAsmWriter.inc which came from
    //   Cpu0.td indicate.
    printInstruction(MI, O);
    printAnnotation(O, Annot);
}

void Cpu0InstPrinter::printOperand(const MCInst *MI, unsigned OpNo,
                                   raw_ostream &O) {
    const MCOperand &Op = MI->getOperand(OpNo);
    if (Op.isReg()) {
        printRegName(O, Op.getReg());
        return;
    }

    if (Op.isImm()) {
        O << Op.getImm();
        return;
    }

    assert(Op.isExpr() && "unknown operand kind in printOperand");
    Op.getExpr()->print(O, &MAI, true);
}

void Cpu0InstPrinter::printUnsignedImm(const MCInst *MI, int opNum,
                                      raw_ostream &O) {
    const MCOperand &MO = MI->getOperand(opNum);
    if (MO.isImm())
        O << (unsigned short int)MO.getImm();
    else
        printOperand(MI, opNum, O);
}

```

```
}

void Cpu0InstPrinter::  
printMemOperand(const MCInst *MI, int opNum, raw_ostream &O) {  
    // Load/Store memory operands -- imm($reg)  
    // If PIC target the target is loaded as the  
    // pattern ld $t9,%call16($gp)  
    printOperand(MI, opNum+1, O);  
    O << "(";  
    printOperand(MI, opNum, O);  
    O << ")";  
}  
  
//##if CH >= CH7_1  
// The DAG data node, mem_ea of Cpu0InstrInfo.td, cannot be disabled by  
// ch7_1, only opcode node can be disabled.  
void Cpu0InstPrinter::  
printMemOperandEA(const MCInst *MI, int opNum, raw_ostream &O) {  
    // when using stack locations for not load/store instructions  
    // print the same way as all normal 3 operand instructions.  
    printOperand(MI, opNum, O);  
    O << ", ";  
    printOperand(MI, opNum+1, O);  
    return;  
}  
//##endif
```

### Index/chapters/Chapter3\_2/InstPrinter/CMakeLists.txt

```
add_llvm_library(LLVMCpu0AsmPrinter  
    Cpu0InstPrinter.cpp  
)
```

### Index/chapters/Chapter3\_2/InstPrinter/LLVMBuild.txt

```
;===== ./lib/Target/Cpu0/InstPrinter/LLVMBuild.txt -----*-- Conf -*---=;  
;  
; The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure  
;  
; This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source  
; License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.  
;  
;=====-----=;  
;  
; This is an LLVMBuild description file for the components in this subdirectory.  
;  
; For more information on the LLVMBuild system, please see:  
;  
;     http://llvm.org/docs/LLVMBuild.html  
;  
;=====-----=;
```

```
[component_0]
type = Library
name = Cpu0AsmPrinter
parent = Cpu0
required_libraries = MC Support
add_to_library_groups = Cpu0
```

Cpu0GenAsmWrite.inc has the implementations of Cpu0InstPrinter::printInstruction() and Cpu0InstPrinter::getRegisterName(). Both of these functions can be auto-generated from the information we defined in Cpu0InstrInfo.td and Cpu0RegisterInfo.td. To let these two functions work in our code, the only thing needed is adding a class Cpu0InstPrinter and include them as did in Chapter3\_2.

File Chapter3\_2/Cpu0/InstPrinter/Cpu0InstPrinter.cpp include Cpu0GenAsmWrite.inc and call the auto-generated functions from TableGen.

Function Cpu0InstPrinter::printMemOperand() defined in Chapter3\_2/InstPrinter/Cpu0InstPrinter.cpp as above. It will be triggered since Cpu0InstrInfo.td defined ‘**let PrintMethod = “printMemOperand”;**’ as follows,

### **Index/chapters/Chapter2/Cpu0InstrInfo.td**

```
// Address operand
def mem : Operand<i32> {
    let PrintMethod = "printMemOperand";
    let MIOperandInfo = (ops CPUREgs, simm16);
    let EncoderMethod = "getMemEncoding";
}
...
// 32-bit load.
multiclass LoadM32<bits<8> op, string instr_asm, PatFrag OpNode,
    bit Pseudo = 0> {
    def #NAME# : LoadM<op, instr_asm, OpNode, GPROut, mem, Pseudo>;
}

// 32-bit store.
multiclass StoreM32<bits<8> op, string instr_asm, PatFrag OpNode,
    bit Pseudo = 0> {
    def #NAME# : StoreM<op, instr_asm, OpNode, CPUREgs, mem, Pseudo>;
}

defm LD      : LoadM32<0x01, "ld", load_a>;
defm ST      : StoreM32<0x02, "st", store_a>;
```

Cpu0InstPrinter::printMemOperand() will print backend operands for “local variable access”, which is like the following,

```
ld    $2, 16($fp)
st    $2, 8($fp)
```

Next, add Cpu0MCInstLower (Cpu0MCInstLower.h, Cpu0MCInstLower.cpp) as well as Cpu0BaseInfo.h, Cpu0FixupKinds.h and Cpu0MCAsmInfo (Cpu0MCAsmInfo.h, Cpu0MCAsmInfo.cpp) in sub-directory MCTarget-Desc as follows,

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter3\_2/Cpu0MCInstLower.h

```
===== Cpu0MCInstLower.h - Lower MachineInstr to MCInst -----*-- C++ -*-----//  
//  
//          The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure  
//  
// This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source  
// License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.  
//  
=====//  
  
#ifndef LLVM_LIB_TARGET_CPU0_CPU0MCINSTLOWER_H  
#define LLVM_LIB_TARGET_CPU0_CPU0MCINSTLOWER_H  
  
#include "Cpu0Config.h"  
  
#include "llvm/ADT/SmallVector.h"  
#include "llvm/CodeGen/MachineOperand.h"  
#include "llvm/Support/Compiler.h"  
  
namespace llvm {  
    class MCContext;  
    class MCInst;  
    class MCOperand;  
    class MachineInstr;  
    class MachineFunction;  
    class Cpu0AsmPrinter;  
  
    //@1 {  
    /// This class is used to lower an MachineInstr into an MCInst.  
    class LLVM_LIBRARY_VISIBILITY Cpu0MCInstLower {  
        //@2  
        typedef MachineOperand::MachineOperandType MachineOperandType;  
        MCContext *Ctx;  
        Cpu0AsmPrinter &AsmPrinter;  
    public:  
        Cpu0MCInstLower(Cpu0AsmPrinter &asmprinter);  
        void Initialize(MCContext* C);  
        void Lower(const MachineInstr *MI, MCInst &OutMI) const;  
        MCOperand LowerOperand(const MachineOperand& MO, unsigned offset = 0) const;  
    };  
    }  
  
    #endif
```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter3\_2/Cpu0MCInstLower.cpp

```
===== Cpu0MCInstLower.cpp - Convert Cpu0 MachineInstr to MCInst =====//  
//  
//          The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure  
//  
// This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source  
// License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.  
//  
=====//
```

```

// This file contains code to lower Cpu0 MachineInstrs to their corresponding
// MCInst records.
// -----
//=====

#include "Cpu0MCInstLower.h"

#include "Cpu0AsmPrinter.h"
#include "Cpu0InstrInfo.h"
#include "MCTargetDesc/Cpu0BaseInfo.h"
#include "llvm/CodeGen/MachineFunction.h"
#include "llvm/CodeGen/MachineInstr.h"
#include "llvm/CodeGen/MachineOperand.h"
#include "llvm/IR/Mangler.h"
#include "llvm/MC/MCContext.h"
#include "llvm/MC/MCE Expr.h"
#include "llvm/MC/MCInst.h"

using namespace llvm;

Cpu0MCInstLower::Cpu0MCInstLower(Cpu0AsmPrinter &asmprinter)
    : AsmPrinter(asmprinter) {}

void Cpu0MCInstLower::Initialize(MCContext* C) {
    Ctx = C;
}

static void CreateMCInst(MCInst& Inst, unsigned Opc, const MCOperand& Opnd0,
                        const MCOperand& Opnd1,
                        const MCOperand& Opnd2 = MCOperand()) {
    Inst.setOpcode(Opc);
    Inst.addOperand(Opnd0);
    Inst.addOperand(Opnd1);
    if (Opnd2.isValid())
        Inst.addOperand(Opnd2);
}

// @LowerOperand {
MCOperand Cpu0MCInstLower::LowerOperand(const MachineOperand& MO,
                                         unsigned offset) const {
    MachineOperandType MOTy = MO.getType();

    switch (MOTy) {
    // @2
    default: llvm_unreachable("unknown operand type");
    case MachineOperand::MO_Register:
        // Ignore all implicit register operands.
        if (MO.isImplicit()) break;
        return MCOperand::createReg(MO.getReg());
    case MachineOperand::MO_Immediate:
        return MCOperand::createImm(MO.getImm() + offset);
    case MachineOperand::MO_RegisterMask:
        break;
    }

    return MCOperand();
}

```

```
void Cpu0MCInstLower::Lower(const MachineInstr *MI, MCInst &OutMI) const {
    OutMI.setOpcode(MI->getOpcode());

    for (unsigned i = 0, e = MI->getNumOperands(); i != e; ++i) {
        const MachineOperand &MO = MI->getOperand(i);
        MCOperand MCOp = LowerOperand(MO);

        if (MCOp.isValid())
            OutMI.addOperand(MCOp);
    }
}
```

### [lbdex/chapters/Chapter3\\_2/MCTargetDesc/Cpu0BaseInfo.h](#)

```
===== Cpu0BaseInfo.h - Top level definitions for CPU0 MC ===== C++ -*==//
//                                     The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure
//
// This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source
// License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.
//
//=====
// This file contains small standalone helper functions and enum definitions for
// the Cpu0 target useful for the compiler back-end and the MC libraries.
//
//=====
#ifndef LLVM_LIB_TARGET_CPU0_MCTARGETDESC_CPU0BASEINFO_H
#define LLVM_LIB_TARGET_CPU0_MCTARGETDESC_CPU0BASEINFO_H

#include "Cpu0Config.h"

#include "Cpu0MCTargetDesc.h"
#include "llvm/MC/MCE Expr.h"
#include "llvm/Support/DataTypes.h"
#include "llvm/Support/ErrorHandling.h"

namespace llvm {

/// Cpu0II - This namespace holds all of the target specific flags that
/// instruction info tracks.
// @Cpu0II
namespace Cpu0II {
    /// Target Operand Flag enum.
    enum TOF {
        //=====
        // Cpu0 Specific MachineOperand flags.

        MO_NO_FLAG,

        /// MO_GOT_CALL - Represents the offset into the global offset table at
        /// which the address of a call site relocation entry symbol resides
        /// during execution. This is different from the above since this flag
        /// can only be present in call instructions.
    };
}
```

```

MO_GOT_CALL,
/// MO_GPREL - Represents the offset from the current gp value to be used
/// for the relocatable object file being produced.
MO_GPREL,
/// MO_ABS_HI/LO - Represents the hi or low part of an absolute symbol
/// address.
MO_ABS_HI,
MO_ABS_LO,
/// MO_GOT_HI16/LO16 - Relocations used for large GOTs.
MO_GOT_HI16,
MO_GOT_LO16
}; // enum TOF {

enum {
//=====
// Instruction encodings. These are the standard/most common forms for
// Cpu0 instructions.
//

// Pseudo - This represents an instruction that is a pseudo instruction
// or one that has not been implemented yet. It is illegal to code generate
// it, but tolerated for intermediate implementation stages.
Pseudo = 0,
// FrmR - This form is for instructions of the format R.
FrmR = 1,
// FrmI - This form is for instructions of the format I.
FrmI = 2,
// FrmJ - This form is for instructions of the format J.
FrmJ = 3,
// FrmOther - This form is for instructions that have no specific format.
FrmOther = 4,
FormMask = 15
};
}

#endif

```

**Ibdex/chapters/Chapter3\_2/Cpu0MCAsmInfo.h**

```

//===== Cpu0MCAsmInfo.h - Cpu0 Asm Info -----*-- C++ -*****//
//
// The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure
//
// This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source
// License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.
//=====
//=====
//
```

```
// This file contains the declaration of the Cpu0MCAsmInfo class.  
//  
//=====//  
  
#ifndef LLVM_LIB_TARGET_CPU0_MCTARGETDESC_CPU0MCASMINFO_H  
#define LLVM_LIB_TARGET_CPU0_MCTARGETDESC_CPU0MCASMINFO_H  
  
#include "Cpu0Config.h"  
#if CH >= CH3_2  
  
#include "llvm/MC/MCAsmInfoELF.h"  
  
namespace llvm {  
    class Triple;  
  
    class Cpu0MCAsmInfo : public MCAsmInfoELF {  
        void anchor() override;  
    public:  
        explicit Cpu0MCAsmInfo(const Triple &TheTriple);  
    };  
  
} // namespace llvm  
  
#endif // #if CH >= CH3_2  
  
#endif
```

### Index/chapters/Chapter3\_2/Cpu0MCAsmInfo.cpp

```
===== Cpu0MCAsmInfo.cpp - Cpu0 Asm Properties =====//  
//  
//          The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure  
//  
// This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source  
// License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.  
//  
//=====//  
//  
// This file contains the declarations of the Cpu0MCAsmInfo properties.  
//  
//=====//  
  
#include "Cpu0MCAsmInfo.h"  
#if CH >= CH3_2  
  
#include "llvm/ADT/Triple.h"  
  
using namespace llvm;  
  
void Cpu0MCAsmInfo::anchor() { }  
  
Cpu0MCAsmInfo::Cpu0MCAsmInfo(const Triple &TheTriple) {  
    if ((TheTriple.getArch() == Triple::cpu0))  
        IsLittleEndian = false; // the default of IsLittleEndian is true  
  
    AlignmentIsInBytes      = false;
```

```

Data16bitsDirective      = "\t.2byte\t";
Data32bitsDirective     = "\t.4byte\t";
Data64bitsDirective     = "\t.8byte\t";
PrivateGlobalPrefix      = "$";
// PrivateLabelPrefix: display $BB for the labels of basic block
PrivateLabelPrefix       = "$";
CommentString             = "#";
ZeroDirective              = "\t.space\t";
GPRel32Directive         = "\t.gpword\t";
GPRel64Directive         = "\t.gpdword\t";
WeakRefDirective          = "\t.weak\t";
UseAssignmentForEHBegin = true;

SupportsDebugInformation = true;
ExceptionsType = ExceptionHandling::DwarfCFI;
DwarfRegNumForCFI = true;
}

#endif // #if CH >= CH3_2

```

Finally, add code in Cpu0MCTargetDesc.cpp to register Cpu0InstPrinter as below. It also registers other classes (register, instruction and subtarget) which defined in Chapter3\_1 at this point.

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter3\_2/MCTargetDesc/Cpu0MCTargetDesc.h

```

namespace llvm {
class MCAsmBackend;
class MCCodeEmitter;
class MCContext;
class MCInstrInfo;
class MCObjectWriter;
class MCRegisterInfo;
class MCSubtargetInfo;
class StringRef;
...
class raw_ostream;
...
}

```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter3\_2/MCTargetDesc/Cpu0MCTargetDesc.cpp

```

#include "InstPrinter/Cpu0InstPrinter.h"
#include "Cpu0MCAsmInfo.h"

```

```

/// Select the Cpu0 Architecture Feature for the given triple and cpu name.
/// The function will be called at command 'llvm-objdump -d' for Cpu0 elf input.
static std::string selectCpu0ArchFeature(const Triple &TT, StringRef CPU) {
    std::string Cpu0ArchFeature;
    if (CPU.empty() || CPU == "generic") {
        if (TT.getArch() == Triple::cpu0 || TT.getArch() == Triple::cpu0el) {
            if (CPU.empty() || CPU == "cpu032II") {
                Cpu0ArchFeature = "+cpu032II";
            }
        }
    }
}

```

```

        else {
            if (CPU == "cpu032I") {
                Cpu0ArchFeature = "+cpu032I";
            }
        }
    }
}

return Cpu0ArchFeature;
}
//@1 }

static MCInstrInfo *createCpu0MCInstrInfo() {
    MCInstrInfo *X = new MCInstrInfo();
    InitCpu0MCInstrInfo(X); // defined in Cpu0GenInstrInfo.inc
    return X;
}

static MCRegisterInfo *createCpu0MCRegisterInfo(const Triple &TT) {
    MCRegisterInfo *X = new MCRegisterInfo();
    InitCpu0MCRegisterInfo(X, Cpu0::SW); // defined in Cpu0GenRegisterInfo.inc
    return X;
}

static MCSubtargetInfo *createCpu0MCSubtargetInfo(const Triple &TT,
                                                StringRef CPU, StringRef FS) {
    std::string ArchFS = selectCpu0ArchFeature(TT, CPU);
    if (!FS.empty()) {
        if (!ArchFS.empty())
            ArchFS = ArchFS + "," + FS.str();
        else
            ArchFS = FS;
    }
    return createCpu0MCSubtargetInfoImpl(TT, CPU, ArchFS);
// createCpu0MCSubtargetInfoImpl defined in Cpu0GenSubtargetInfo.inc
}

static MCAsmInfo *createCpu0MCAsmInfo(const MCRegisterInfo &MRI,
                                       const Triple &TT) {
    MCAsmInfo *MAI = new Cpu0MCAsmInfo(TT);

    unsigned SP = MRI.getDwarfRegNum(Cpu0::SP, true);
    MCCFIInstruction Inst = MCCFIInstruction::createDefCfa(nullptr, SP, 0);
    MAI->addInitialFrameState(Inst);

    return MAI;
}

static MCInstPrinter *createCpu0MCInstPrinter(const Triple &T,
                                              unsigned SyntaxVariant,
                                              const MCAsmInfo &MAI,
                                              const MCInstrInfo &MII,
                                              const MCRegisterInfo &MRI) {
    return new Cpu0InstPrinter(MAI, MII, MRI);
}

namespace {

class Cpu0MCInstrAnalysis : public MCInstrAnalysis {

```

```

public:
    Cpu0MCInstrAnalysis(const MCInstrInfo *Info) : MCInstrAnalysis(Info) {}
};

}

static MCInstrAnalysis *createCpu0MCInstrAnalysis(const MCInstrInfo *Info) {
    return new Cpu0MCInstrAnalysis(Info);
}

//@2 {
extern "C" void LLVMInitializeCpu0TargetMC() {
    for (Target *T : {&TheCpu0Target, &TheCpu0elTarget}) {
        // Register the MC asm info.
        RegisterMCAsmInfoFn X(*T, createCpu0MCAsmInfo);

        // Register the MC instruction info.
        TargetRegistry::RegisterMCInstrInfo(*T, createCpu0MCInstrInfo);

        // Register the MC register info.
        TargetRegistry::RegisterMCRegInfo(*T, createCpu0MCRegisterInfo);

        // Register the MC subtarget info.
        TargetRegistry::RegisterMCSubtargetInfo(*T,
                                               createCpu0MCSubtargetInfo);
        // Register the MC instruction analyzer.
        TargetRegistry::RegisterMCInstrAnalysis(*T, createCpu0MCInstrAnalysis);
        // Register the MCInstPrinter.
        TargetRegistry::RegisterMCInstPrinter(*T,
                                              createCpu0MCInstPrinter);
    }
}
//@2 }

```

## Ibdex/chapters/Chapter3\_2/MCTargetDesc/CMakeLists.txt

```
Cpu0MCAsmInfo.cpp
```

## Ibdex/chapters/Chapter3\_2/MCTargetDesc/LLVMBuild.txt

```
Cpu0AsmPrinter
```

To make the registration clearly, summary as the following diagram, Fig. 3.3.

Above createCpu0MCAsmInfo() registering the object of class Cpu0MCAsmInfo for target TheCpu0Target and TheCpu0elTarget. TheCpu0Target is for big endian and TheCpu0elTarget is for little endian. Cpu0MCAsmInfo is derived from MCAsmInfo which is an llvm built-in class. Most code is implemented in it's parent, backend reuses those code by inheritance.

Above createCpu0MCInstrInfo() instancing MCInstrInfo object X, and initialize it by InitCpu0MCInstrInfo(X). Since InitCpu0MCInstrInfo(X) is defined in Cpu0GenInstrInfo.inc, this function will add the information from Cpu0InstrInfo.td we specified.

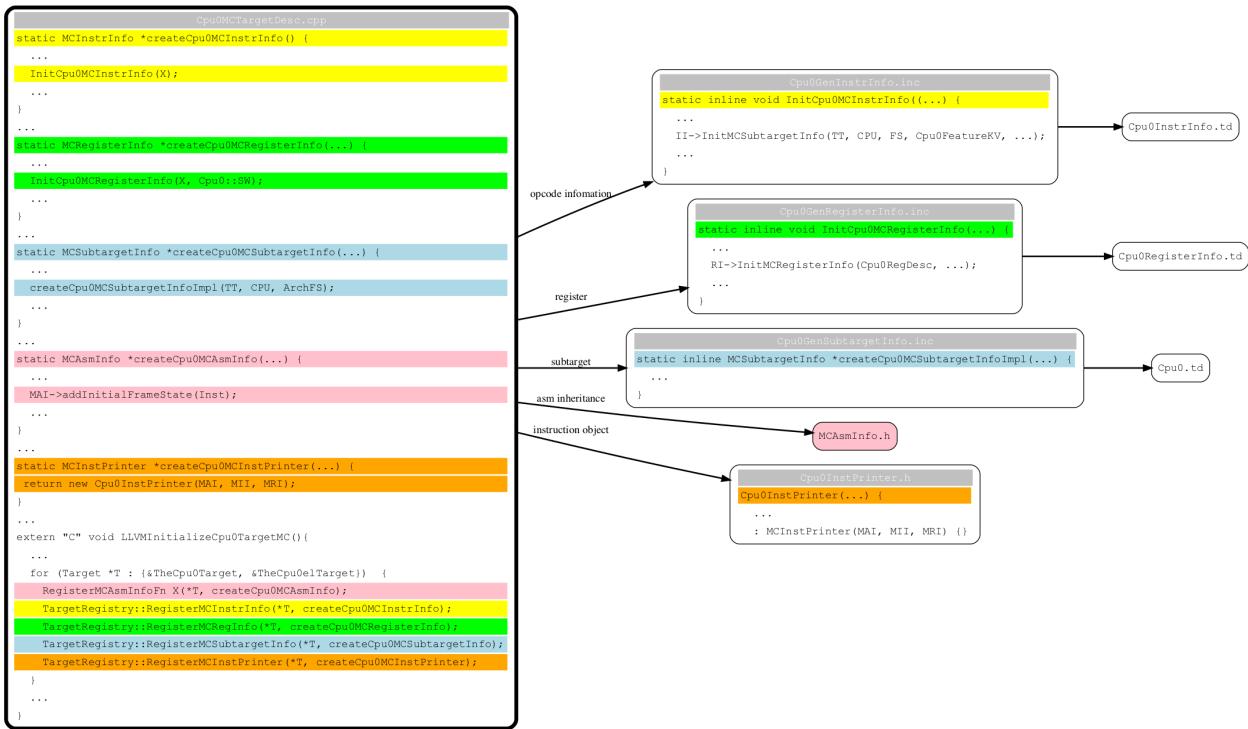


Fig. 3.3: Tblgen generate files for Cpu0 backend

Above createCpu0MCInstPrinter() instancing Cpu0InstPrinter to take care printing function for instructions.

Above createCpu0MCRegisterInfo() is similar to “Register function of MC instruction info”, but it initializes the register information specified in Cpu0RegisterInfo.td. They share some values from instruction/register td description, so no need to specify them again in Initialize routine if they are consistent with td description files.

Above createCpu0MCSubtargetInfo() instancing MCSubtargetInfo object and initialize with Cpu0.td information.

According “section Target Registration”<sup>3</sup>, we can register Cpu0 backend classes at LLVMInitializeCpu0TargetMC() on demand by the dynamic register mechanism as the above function, LLVMInitializeCpu0TargetMC().

Now, it’s time to work with AsmPrinter as follows,

### Index/chapters/Chapter3\_2/Cpu0AsmPrinter.h

```

//===== Cpu0AsmPrinter.h - Cpu0 LLVM Assembly Printer -----* C++ -----// 
// 
//          The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure
// 
// This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source
// License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.
// 
//===== // 
// 
// Cpu0 Assembly printer class.
// 
//===== //

```

<sup>3</sup> <http://jonathan2251.github.io/lbd/llvmsstructure.html#target-registration>

```

#ifndef LLVM_LIB_TARGET_CPU0_CPU0ASMPINTER_H
#define LLVM_LIB_TARGET_CPU0_CPU0ASMPINTER_H

#include "Cpu0Config.h"

#include "Cpu0MachineFunction.h"
#include "Cpu0MCInstLower.h"
#include "Cpu0Subtarget.h"
#include "Cpu0TargetMachine.h"
#include "llvm/CodeGen/AsmPrinter.h"
#include "llvm/MC/MCStreamer.h"
#include "llvm/Support/Compiler.h"
#include "llvm/Target/TargetMachine.h"

namespace llvm {
class MCStreamer;
class MachineInstr;
class MachineBasicBlock;
class Module;
class raw_ostream;

class LLVM_LIBRARY_VISIBILITY Cpu0AsmPrinter : public AsmPrinter {

    void EmitInstrWithMacroNoAT(const MachineInstr *MI);

private:

    // lowerOperand - Convert a MachineOperand into the equivalent MCOperand.
    bool lowerOperand(const MachineOperand &MO, MCOperand &MCO);

public:

    const Cpu0Subtarget *Subtarget;
    const Cpu0FunctionInfo *Cpu0FI;
    Cpu0MCInstLower MCInstLowering;

    explicit Cpu0AsmPrinter(TargetMachine &TM,
                           std::unique_ptr<MCStreamer> Streamer)
        : AsmPrinter(TM, std::move(Streamer)),
          MCInstLowering(*this) {
        Subtarget = static_cast<Cpu0TargetMachine &>(TM).getSubtargetImpl();
    }

    virtual const char *getPassName() const override {
        return "Cpu0 Assembly Printer";
    }

    virtual bool runOnMachineFunction(MachineFunction &MF) override;

    // - EmitInstruction() must exists or will have run time error.
    void EmitInstruction(const MachineInstr *MI) override;
    void printSavedRegsBitmask(raw_ostream &O);
    void printHex32(unsigned int Value, raw_ostream &O);
    void emitFrameDirective();
    const char *getCurrentABIString() const;
    void EmitFunctionEntryLabel() override;
    void EmitFunctionBodyStart() override;
    void EmitFunctionBodyEnd() override;
}
}

```

```
void EmitStartOfAsmFile(Module &M) override;
void PrintDebugValueComment(const MachineInstr *MI, raw_ostream &OS);
};

}

#endif
```

### Index/chapters/Chapter3\_2/Cpu0AsmPrinter.cpp

```
===== Cpu0AsmPrinter.cpp - Cpu0 LLVM Assembly Printer =====
//
// The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure
//
// This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source
// License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.
//
//=====
//
// This file contains a printer that converts from our internal representation
// of machine-dependent LLVM code to GAS-format CPU0 assembly language.
//
//=====

#include "Cpu0AsmPrinter.h"

#include "InstPrinter/Cpu0InstPrinter.h"
#include "MCTargetDesc/Cpu0BaseInfo.h"
#include "Cpu0.h"
#include "Cpu0InstrInfo.h"
#include "llvm/ADT/SmallString.h"
#include "llvm/ADT/StringExtras.h"
#include "llvm/ADT/Twine.h"
#include "llvm/CodeGen/MachineConstantPool.h"
#include "llvm/CodeGen/MachineFunctionPass.h"
#include "llvm/CodeGen/MachineFrameInfo.h"
#include "llvm/CodeGen/MachineInstr.h"
#include "llvm/CodeGen/MachineMemOperand.h"
#include "llvm/IR/BasicBlock.h"
#include "llvm/IR/Instructions.h"
#include "llvm/IR/Mangler.h"
#include "llvm/MC/MCAsmInfo.h"
#include "llvm/MC/MCInst.h"
#include "llvm/MC/MCStreamer.h"
#include "llvm/MC/MCSymbol.h"
#include "llvm/Support/raw_ostream.h"
#include "llvm/Support/TargetRegistry.h"
#include "llvm/Target/TargetLoweringObjectFile.h"
#include "llvm/Target/TargetOptions.h"

using namespace llvm;

#define DEBUG_TYPE "cpu0-assembler"

bool Cpu0AsmPrinter::runOnMachineFunction(MachineFunction &MF) {
    Cpu0FI = MF.getInfo<Cpu0FunctionInfo>();
```

```

AsmPrinter::runOnMachineFunction(MF);
    return true;
}

//@EmitInstruction {
//- EmitInstruction() must exists or will have run time error.
void Cpu0AsmPrinter::EmitInstruction(const MachineInstr *MI) {
//@EmitInstruction body {
if (MI->isDebugValue()) {
    SmallString<128> Str;
    raw_svector_ostream OS(Str);

    PrintDebugValueComment(MI, OS);
    return;
}

//@print out instruction:
// Print out both ordinary instruction and boudle instruction
MachineBasicBlock::const_instr_iterator I = MI->getIterator();
MachineBasicBlock::const_instr_iterator E = MI->getParent()->instr_end();

do {

    if (I->isPseudo())
        llvm_unreachable("Pseudo opcode found in EmitInstruction()");

    MCInst TmpInst0;
    MCInstLowering.Lower(&*I, TmpInst0);
    OutStreamer->EmitInstruction(TmpInst0, getSubtargetInfo());
} while ((++I != E) && I->isInsideBundle()); // Delay slot check
}
//@EmitInstruction }

=====//
// Cpu0 Asm Directives
//
// -- Frame directive "frame Stackpointer, Stacksize, RARegister"
// Describe the stack frame.
//
// -- Mask directives "(f)mask bitmask, offset"
// Tells the assembler which registers are saved and where.
// bitmask - contain a little endian bitset indicating which registers are
//           saved on function prologue (e.g. with a 0x80000000 mask, the
//           assembler knows the register 31 (RA) is saved at prologue.
// offset - the position before stack pointer subtraction indicating where
//           the first saved register on prologue is located. (e.g. with a
//
// Consider the following function prologue:
//
//     .frame $fp,48,$ra
//     .mask 0xc0000000,-8
//     addiu $sp, $sp, -48
//     st $ra, 40($sp)
//     st $fp, 36($sp)
//
//     With a 0xc0000000 mask, the assembler knows the register 31 (RA) and
//     30 (FP) are saved at prologue. As the save order on prologue is from

```

```

//      left to right, RA is saved first. A -8 offset means that after the
//      stack pointer subtraction, the first register in the mask (RA) will be
//      saved at address 48-8=40.
//
//=====//
//=====//
// Mask directives
//=====
//      .frame      $sp,8,$lr
//->      .mask      0x00000000,0
//      .set       noreorder
//      .set       nomacro

// Create a bitmask with all callee saved registers for CPU or Floating Point
// registers. For CPU registers consider LR, GP and FP for saving if necessary.
void Cpu0AsmPrinter::printSavedRegsBitmask(raw_ostream &O) {
    // CPU and FPU Saved Registers Bitmasks
    unsigned CPUBitmask = 0;
    int CPUTopSavedRegOff;

    // Set the CPU and FPU Bitmasks
    const MachineFrameInfo *MFI = MF->getFrameInfo();
    const TargetRegisterInfo *TRI = MF->getSubtarget().getRegisterInfo();
    const std::vector<CalleeSavedInfo> &CSI = MFI->getCalleeSavedInfo();
    // size of stack area to which FP callee-saved regs are saved.
    unsigned CPURegSize = Cpu0::CPUREgsRegClass.getSize();
    unsigned i = 0, e = CSI.size();

    // Set CPU Bitmask.
    for (; i != e; ++i) {
        unsigned Reg = CSI[i].getReg();
        unsigned RegNum = TRI->getEncodingValue(Reg);
        CPUBitmask |= (1 << RegNum);
    }

    CPUTopSavedRegOff = CPUBitmask ? -CPURegSize : 0;

    // Print CPUBitmask
    O << "\t.mask \t"; printHex32(CPUBitmask, O);
    O << ',' << CPUTopSavedRegOff << '\n';
}

// Print a 32 bit hex number with all numbers.
void Cpu0AsmPrinter::printHex32(unsigned Value, raw_ostream &O) {
    O << "0x";
    for (int i = 7; i >= 0; i--)
        O.write_hex((Value & (0xF << (i*4))) >> (i*4));
}

//=====//
// Frame and Set directives
//=====
//->      .frame      $sp,8,$lr
//      .mask      0x00000000,0
//      .set       noreorder
//      .set       nomacro
/// Frame Directive

```

```

void Cpu0AsmPrinter::emitFrameDirective() {
    const TargetRegisterInfo &RI = *MF->getSubtarget().getRegisterInfo();

    unsigned stackReg = RI.getFrameRegister(*MF);
    unsigned returnReg = RI.getRARegister();
    unsigned stackSize = MF->getFrameInfo()->getStackSize();

    if (OutStreamer->hasRawTextSupport())
        OutStreamer->EmitRawText("\t.frame\t$" +
            StringRef(Cpu0InstPrinter::getRegisterName(stackReg)).lower() +
            "," + Twine(stackSize) + ",$" +
            StringRef(Cpu0InstPrinter::getRegisterName(returnReg)).lower());
}

/// Emit Set directives.
const char *Cpu0AsmPrinter::getCurrentABIString() const {
    switch (static_cast<Cpu0TargetMachine &>(TM).getABI().GetEnumValue()) {
    case Cpu0ABIInfo::ABI::O32: return "abiO32";
    case Cpu0ABIInfo::ABI::S32: return "abis32";
    default: llvm_unreachable("Unknown Cpu0 ABI");
    }
}

//          .type      main,@function
//->          .ent       main                      # @main
//      main:
void Cpu0AsmPrinter::EmitFunctionEntryLabel() {
    if (OutStreamer->hasRawTextSupport())
        OutStreamer->EmitRawText("\t.ent\t" + Twine(CurrentFnSym->getName()));
    OutStreamer->EmitLabel(CurrentFnSym);
}

//  .frame  $sp,$pc
//  .mask   0x00000000,0
//->  .set    noreorder
//@-> .set    nomacro
/// EmitFunctionBodyStart - Targets can override this to emit stuff before
/// the first basic block in the function.
void Cpu0AsmPrinter::EmitFunctionBodyStart() {
    MCInstLowering.Initialize(&MF->getContext());

    emitFrameDirective();

    if (OutStreamer->hasRawTextSupport()) {
        SmallString<128> Str;
        raw_svector_ostream OS(Str);
        printSavedRegsBitmask(OS);
        OutStreamer->EmitRawText(OS.str());
        OutStreamer->EmitRawText(StringRef("\t.set\tnoreorder"));
        OutStreamer->EmitRawText(StringRef("\t.set\tnomacro"));
        if (Cpu0FI->get.EmitNOAT())
            OutStreamer->EmitRawText(StringRef("\t.set\tnoat"));
    }
}

//->  .set    macro
//->  .set    reorder
//->  .end    main

```

```

/// EmitFunctionBodyEnd - Targets can override this to emit stuff after
/// the last basic block in the function.
void Cpu0AsmPrinter::EmitFunctionBodyEnd() {
    // There are instruction for this macros, but they must
    // always be at the function end, and we can't emit and
    // break with BB logic.
    if (OutStreamer->hasRawTextSupport()) {
        if (Cpu0FI->get.EmitNOAT())
            OutStreamer->EmitRawText(StringRef("\t.set\tat"));
        OutStreamer->EmitRawText(StringRef("\t.set\tmacro"));
        OutStreamer->EmitRawText(StringRef("\t.set\treorder"));
        OutStreamer->EmitRawText("\t.end\t" + Twine(CurrentFnSym->getName()));
    }
}

//      .section .mdebug.abi32
//      .previous
void Cpu0AsmPrinter::EmitStartOfAsmFile(Module &M) {
    // FIXME: Use SwitchSection.

    // Tell the assembler which ABI we are using
    if (OutStreamer->hasRawTextSupport())
        OutStreamer->EmitRawText("\t.section .mdebug." +
                               Twine(getCurrentABIString()));

    // return to previous section
    if (OutStreamer->hasRawTextSupport())
        OutStreamer->EmitRawText(StringRef("\t.previous"));
}

void Cpu0AsmPrinter::PrintDebugValueComment(const MachineInstr *MI,
                                             raw_ostream &OS) {
    // TODO: implement
    OS << "PrintDebugValueComment ()";
}

// Force static initialization.
extern "C" void LLVMInitializeCpu0AsmPrinter() {
    RegisterAsmPrinter<Cpu0AsmPrinter> X(TheCpu0Target);
    RegisterAsmPrinter<Cpu0AsmPrinter> Y(TheCpu0elTarget);
}

```

When instruction is ready to print, function Cpu0AsmPrinter::EmitInstruction() will be triggered first. And then it will call OutStreamer.EmitInstruction() to print OP code and register name according the information from Cpu0GenInstrInfo.inc and Cpu0GenRegisterInfo.inc both registered at dynamic register function, LLVMInitializeCpu0TargetMC(). Notice, file Cpu0InstPrinter.cpp only print operand while the OP code information come from Cpu0InstrInfo.td.

Add the following code to Cpu0ISelLowering.cpp.

### [Index/chapters/Chapter3\\_2/Cpu0ISelLowering.cpp](#)

```

Cpu0TargetLowering::
Cpu0TargetLowering(Cpu0TargetMachine &TM)
    : TargetLowering(TM, new Cpu0TargetObjectFile()),

```

```

Subtarget(&TM.getSubtarget<Cpu0Subtarget>()) {
    // Set .align 2
    // It will emit .align 2 later
    setMinFunctionAlignment(2);

    // must, computeRegisterProperties - Once all of the register classes are
    // added, this allows us to compute derived properties we expose.
    computeRegisterProperties();
}

```

Add the following code to Cpu0MachineFunction.h since the Cpu0AsmPrinter.cpp will call getEmitNOAT().

### **Index/chapters/Chapter3\_2/Cpu0MachineFunction.h**

```

class Cpu0FunctionInfo : public MachineFunctionInfo {
public:
    Cpu0FunctionInfo(MachineFunction& MF)
    : ...
    , EmitNOAT(false)
    {}

    ...
    bool getEmitNOAT() const { return EmitNOAT; }
    void setEmitNOAT() { EmitNOAT = true; }
private:
    ...
    bool EmitNOAT;
};

```

Beyond adding these new .cpp files to CMakeLists.txt, please remember to add subdirectory InstPrinter, enable asm-printer, adding libraries AsmPrinter and Cpu0AsmPrinter to LLVMBuild.txt as follows,

### **Index/chapters/Chapter3\_2/CMakeLists.txt**

```

tablegen(LLVM Cpu0GenCodeEmitter.inc -gen-emitter)
tablegen(LLVM Cpu0GenMCCodeEmitter.inc -gen-emitter)

tablegen(LLVM Cpu0GenAsmWriter.inc -gen-asm-writer)

```

```

...
add_llvm_target(Cpu0CodeGen

```

```

Cpu0AsmPrinter.cpp
Cpu0MCInstLower.cpp

```

```

...
)
...
```

```

add_subdirectory(InstPrinter)

```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter3\_2/LLVMBuild.txt

```
// LLVMBuild.txt
[common]
subdirectories =
    InstPrinter
    ...
[component_0]
...
# Please enable asmprinter
has_asmprinter = 1
...
[component_1]
required_libraries =
    AsmPrinter
    ...
    Cpu0AsmPrinter
    ...
```

Now, run Chapter3\_2/Cpu0 for AsmPrinter support, will get new error message as follows,

```
118-165-78-230:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/
Debug/bin/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm ch3.bc -o
ch3.cpu0.s
/Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/Debug/bin/llc: target does not
support generation of this file type!
```

The llc fails to compile IR code into machine code since we don't implement class Cpu0DAGToDAGISel.

### 3.3 Add Cpu0DAGToDAGISel class

The IR DAG to machine instruction DAG transformation is introduced in the previous chapter. Now, let's check what IR DAG nodes the file ch3.ll has. List ch3.ll as follows,

```
// ch3.ll
define i32 @_main() nounwind uwtable {
%1 = alloca i32, align 4
store i32 0, i32* %1
ret i32 0
}
```

As above, ch3.ll uses the IR DAG node **store**, **ret**. So, the definitions in Cpu0InstrInfo.td as below is enough. The ADDiu used for stack adjustment which will be needed in later section "Add Prologue/Epilogue functions" of this chapter. IR DAG is defined in file include/llvm/Target/TargetSelectionDAG.td.

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter2/Cpu0InstrInfo.td

```
=====//
/// Load and Store Instructions
/// aligned
```

```

defm LD      : LoadM32<0x01, "ld", load_a>;
defm ST      : StoreM32<0x02, "st", store_a>;

/// Arithmetic Instructions (ALU Immediate)
// IR "add" defined in include/llvm/Target/TargetSelectionDAG.td, line 315 (def add).
def ADDiu    : ArithLogicI<0x09, "addiu", add, simm16, immSExt16, CPURegs>;

let isReturn=1, isTerminator=1, hasDelaySlot=1, isBarrier=1, hasCtrlDep=1 in
def RetLR   : Cpu0Pseudo<(outs), (ins), "", [(Cpu0Ret)]>;

def RET      : RetBase<GPROut>;

```

Add class Cpu0DAGToDAGISel (Cpu0ISelDAGToDAG.cpp) to CMakeLists.txt, and add the following fragment to Cpu0TargetMachine.cpp,

### **Ibdex/chapters/Chapter3\_3/CMakeLists.txt**

```

add_llvm_target(
  ...
)
```

```

  Cpu0ISelDAGToDAG.cpp
  Cpu0SEISelDAGToDAG.cpp
)
```

The following code in Cpu0TargetMachine.cpp will create a pass in instruction selection stage.

### **Ibdex/chapters/Chapter3\_3/Cpu0TargetMachine.cpp**

```

#include "Cpu0SEISelDAGToDAG.h"

...
class Cpu0PassConfig : public TargetPassConfig {
public:
  ...

  bool addInstSelector() override;

};

// Install an instruction selector pass using
// the ISelDag to gen Cpu0 code.
bool Cpu0PassConfig::addInstSelector() {
  addPass(createCpu0SEISelDag(getCpu0TargetMachine(), getOptLevel()));
  return false;
}

```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter3\_3/Cpu0ISelDAGToDAG.h

```
//===== Cpu0ISelDAGToDAG.h - A Dag to Dag Inst Selector for Cpu0 =====//
//
// The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure
//
// This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source
// License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.
//
//===== //
//
// This file defines an instruction selector for the CPU0 target.
//
//===== //
//
#ifndef LLVM_LIB_TARGET_CPU0_CPU0ISELDAGTODAG_H
#define LLVM_LIB_TARGET_CPU0_CPU0ISELDAGTODAG_H

#include "Cpu0Config.h"

#include "Cpu0.h"
#include "Cpu0Subtarget.h"
#include "Cpu0TargetMachine.h"
#include "llvm/CodeGen/SelectionDAGISel.h"
#include "llvm/IR/Type.h"
#include "llvm/Support/Debug.h"

//=====
// Instruction Selector Implementation
//===== //

//=====
// Cpu0DAGToDAGISel - CPU0 specific code to select CPU0 machine
// instructions for SelectionDAG operations.
//===== //
namespace llvm {

class Cpu0DAGToDAGISel : public SelectionDAGISel {
public:
    explicit Cpu0DAGToDAGISel(Cpu0TargetMachine &TM, CodeGenOpt::Level OL)
        : SelectionDAGISel(TM, OL), Subtarget(nullptr) {}

    // Pass Name
    const char *getPassName() const override {
        return "CPU0 DAG->DAG Pattern Instruction Selection";
    }

    bool runOnMachineFunction(MachineFunction &MF) override;

protected:
    /// Keep a pointer to the Cpu0Subtarget around so that we can make the right
    /// decision when generating code for different targets.
    const Cpu0Subtarget *Subtarget;

private:
    // Include the pieces autogenerated from the target description.
    #include "Cpu0GenDAGISel.inc"
}
```

```

/// getTargetMachine - Return a reference to the TargetMachine, casted
/// to the target-specific type.
const Cpu0TargetMachine &getTargetMachine() {
    return static_cast<const Cpu0TargetMachine &>(TM);
}

void Select(SDNode *N) override;

virtual bool trySelect(SDNode *Node) = 0;

// Complex Pattern.
bool SelectAddr(SDNode *Parent, SDValue N, SDValue &Base, SDValue &Offset);

// getImm - Return a target constant with the specified value.
inline SDValue getImm(const SDNode *Node, unsigned Imm) {
    return CurDAG->getTargetConstant(Imm, SDLoc(Node), Node->getValueType(0));
}

virtual void processFunctionAfterISel(MachineFunction &MF) = 0;

};

}

#endif

```

### [Index/chapters/Chapter3\\_3/Cpu0ISelDAGToDAG.cpp](#)

```

===== Cpu0ISelDAGToDAG.cpp - A Dag to Dag Inst Selector for Cpu0 =====/
//
//          The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure
//
// This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source
// License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.
//
=====/
//
// This file defines an instruction selector for the CPU0 target.
//
=====/

#include "Cpu0ISelDAGToDAG.h"
#include "Cpu0.h"

#include "Cpu0MachineFunction.h"
#include "Cpu0RegisterInfo.h"
#include "Cpu0SEISelDAGToDAG.h"
#include "Cpu0TargetMachine.h"
#include "llvm/CodeGen/MachineConstantPool.h"
#include "llvm/CodeGen/MachineFrameInfo.h"
#include "llvm/CodeGen/MachineFunction.h"
#include "llvm/CodeGen/MachineInstrBuilder.h"
#include "llvm/CodeGen/MachineRegisterInfo.h"
#include "llvm/CodeGen/SelectionDAGISel.h"

```

```
#include "llvm/CodeGen/SelectionDAGNodes.h"
#include "llvm/IR/CFG.h"
#include "llvm/IR/GlobalValue.h"
#include "llvm/IR/Instructions.h"
#include "llvm/IR/Intrinsics.h"
#include "llvm/IR/Type.h"
#include "llvm/Support/Debug.h"
#include "llvm/Support/ErrorHandling.h"
#include "llvm/Support/raw_ostream.h"
#include "llvm/Target/TargetMachine.h"
using namespace llvm;

#define DEBUG_TYPE "cpu0-isel"

//=====
// Instruction Selector Implementation
//=====

//=====
// Cpu0DAGToDAGISel - CPU0 specific code to select CPU0 machine
// instructions for SelectionDAG operations.
//=====

bool Cpu0DAGToDAGISel::runOnMachineFunction(MachineFunction &MF) {
    bool Ret = SelectionDAGISel::runOnMachineFunction(MF);

    return Ret;
}

//@SelectAddr {
/// ComplexPattern used on Cpu0InstrInfo
/// Used on Cpu0 Load/Store instructions
bool Cpu0DAGToDAGISel::
SelectAddr(SDNode *Parent, SDValue Addr, SDValue &Base, SDValue &Offset) {
//@SelectAddr }
    EVT ValTy = Addr.getValueType();
    SDLoc DL(Addr);

    // If Parent is an unaligned f32 load or store, select a (base + index)
    // floating point load/store instruction (luxcl or suxcl).
    const LSBaseSDNode* LS = 0;

    if (Parent && (LS = dyn_cast<LSBaseSDNode>(Parent))) {
        EVT VT = LS->getMemoryVT();

        if (VT.getSizeInBits() / 8 > LS->getAlignment()) {
            assert("Unaligned loads/stores not supported for this type.");
            if (VT == MVT::f32)
                return false;
        }
    }

    // if Address is FI, get the TargetFrameIndex.
    if (FrameIndexSDNode *FIN = dyn_cast<FrameIndexSDNode>(Addr)) {
        Base   = CurDAG->getTargetFrameIndex(FIN->getIndex(), ValTy);
        Offset = CurDAG->getTargetConstant(0, DL, ValTy);
        return true;
    }
}
```

```

Base    = Addr;
Offset = CurDAG->getTargetConstant(0, DL, ValTy);
return true;
}

//@Select {
/// Select instructions not customized! Used for
/// expanded, promoted and normal instructions
void Cpu0DAGToDAGISel::Select(SDNode *Node) {
//@Select }
unsigned Opcode = Node->getOpcode();

// Dump information about the Node being selected
DEBUG(errs() << "Selecting: "; Node->dump(CurDAG); errs() << "\n");

// If we have a custom node, we already have selected!
if (Node->isMachineOpcode()) {
DEBUG(errs() << "== "; Node->dump(CurDAG); errs() << "\n");
Node->setNodeId(-1);
return;
}

// See if subclasses can handle this node.
if (trySelect(Node))
return;

switch(Opcode) {
default: break;

}

// Select the default instruction
SelectCode(Node);
}

```

### [Index/chapters/Chapter3\\_3/Cpu0SEISelDAGToDAG.h](#)

```

//===== Cpu0SEISelDAGToDAG.h - A Dag to Dag Inst Selector for Cpu0SE =====/
//
//          The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure
//
// This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source
// License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.
//
//=====
// Subclass of Cpu0DAGToDAGISel specialized for cpu032.
//
//=====

#ifndef LLVM_LIB_TARGET_CPU0_CPU0SEISELDAGTODAG_H
#define LLVM_LIB_TARGET_CPU0_CPU0SEISELDAGTODAG_H

#include "Cpu0Config.h"

```

```
#include "Cpu0ISelDAGToDAG.h"

namespace llvm {

class Cpu0SEIDAGToDAGISel : public Cpu0DAGToDAGISel {

public:
    explicit Cpu0SEIDAGToDAGISel(Cpu0TargetMachine &TM, CodeGenOpt::Level OL)
        : Cpu0DAGToDAGISel(TM, OL) {}

private:
    bool runOnMachineFunction(MachineFunction &MF) override;
    bool trySelect(SDNode *Node) override;
    void processFunctionAfterISel(MachineFunction &MF) override;
    // Insert instructions to initialize the global base register in the
    // first MBB of the function.
    // void initGlobalBaseReg(MachineFunction &MF);
};

FunctionPass *createCpu0SEISelDag(Cpu0TargetMachine &TM,
                                   CodeGenOpt::Level OptLevel);

}

#endif
```

### **Index/chapters/Chapter3\_3/Cpu0ISelDAGToDAG.cpp**

```
//===== Cpu0SEISelDAGToDAG.cpp - A Dag to Dag Inst Selector for Cpu0SE =====//
//  

//  

//  

// This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source  

// License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.  

//  

//=====  

//  

// Subclass of Cpu0DAGToDAGISel specialized for cpu032.  

//  

//=====

#include "Cpu0SEISelDAGToDAG.h"

#include "MCTargetDesc/Cpu0BaseInfo.h"
#include "Cpu0.h"
#include "Cpu0MachineFunction.h"
#include "Cpu0RegisterInfo.h"
#include "llvm/CodeGen/MachineConstantPool.h"
#include "llvm/CodeGen/MachineFrameInfo.h"
```

```

#include "llvm/CodeGen/MachineFunction.h"
#include "llvm/CodeGen/MachineInstrBuilder.h"
#include "llvm/CodeGen/MachineRegisterInfo.h"
#include "llvm/CodeGen/SelectionDAGNodes.h"
#include "llvm/IR/CFG.h"
#include "llvm/IR/GlobalValue.h"
#include "llvm/IR/Instructions.h"
#include "llvm/IR/Intrinsics.h"
#include "llvm/IR/Type.h"
#include "llvm/Support/Debug.h"
#include "llvm/Support/ErrorHandling.h"
#include "llvm/Support/raw_ostream.h"
#include "llvm/Target/TargetMachine.h"
using namespace llvm;

#define DEBUG_TYPE "cpu0-isel"

bool Cpu0SEDAGToDAGISel::runOnMachineFunction(MachineFunction &MF) {
    Subtarget = &static_cast<const Cpu0Subtarget &>(MF.getSubtarget());
    return Cpu0DAGToDAGISel::runOnMachineFunction(MF);
}

void Cpu0SEDAGToDAGISel::processFunctionAfterISel(MachineFunction &MF) {
}

// @selectNode
bool Cpu0SEDAGToDAGISel::trySelect(SDNode *Node) {
    unsigned Opcode = Node->getOpcode();
    SDLoc DL(Node);

    /**
     // Instruction Selection not handled by the auto-generated
     // tablegen selection should be handled here.
     **/

    /**
     // Instruction Selection not handled by the auto-generated
     // tablegen selection should be handled here.
     **/

    EVT NodeTy = Node->getValueType(0);
    unsigned MultOpc;

    switch(Opcode) {
    default: break;
    }

    return false;
}

FunctionPass *llvm::createCpu0SEISelDag(Cpu0TargetMachine &TM,
                                         CodeGenOpt::Level OptLevel) {
    return new Cpu0SEDAGToDAGISel(TM, OptLevel);
}

```

Function Cpu0DAGToDAGISel::Select() of Cpu0ISelDAGToDAG.cpp is for the selection of “OP code DAG node” while Cpu0DAGToDAGISel::SelectAddr() is for the selection of “DATA DAG node with **addr** type” which defined in

Chapter2/Cpu0InstrInfo.td. This method's name corresponding to Chapter2/Cpu0InstrInfo.td as follows,

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter2/Cpu0InstrInfo.td

```
def addr : ComplexPattern<iPTR, 2, "SelectAddr", [frameindex], [SDNPWantParent]>;
```

The iPTR, ComplexPattern, frameindex and SDNPWantParent defined as follows,

### src/include/llvm/Target/TargetSelection.td

```
def SDNPWantParent : SDNodeProperty; // ComplexPattern gets the parent
...
def frameindex : SDNode<"ISD::FrameIndex",
                     SDTPtrLeaf, [],
                     "FrameIndexSDNode">;
...
// Complex patterns, e.g. X86 addressing mode, requires pattern matching code
// in C++. NumOperands is the number of operands returned by the select function;
// SelectFunc is the name of the function used to pattern match the max. pattern;
// RootNodes are the list of possible root nodes of the sub-dags to match.
// e.g. X86 addressing mode - def addr : ComplexPattern<4, "SelectAddr", [add]>;
//
class ComplexPattern<ValueType ty, int numops, string fn,
                     list<SDNode> roots = [], list<SDNodeProperty> props = []> {
    ValueType Ty = ty;
    int NumOperands = numops;
    string SelectFunc = fn;
    list<SDNode> RootNodes = roots;
    list<SDNodeProperty> Properties = props;
}
```

### src/include/llvm/CodeGen/ValueTypes.td

```
// Pseudo valuetype mapped to the current pointer size.
def iPTR : Valuetype<0, 255>;
```

Build Chapter3\_3 and run with it, finding the error message of Chapter3\_2 is gone. The new error message for Chapter3\_3 as follows,

```
118-165-78-230:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/
Debug/bin/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm ch3.bc -o
ch3.cpu0.s
...
LLVM ERROR: Cannot select: 0x24834b8: ch = Cpu0ISD::Ret 0x24832a8, 0x24833b0 [ORD=4] ↴
  ↪ [ID=6]
  0x24833b0: i32 = Register %LR [ID=4]
...
  0x7f80f182d210: i32 = Register %LR [ID=4]
```

Above can display the error message DAG node “Cpu0ISD::Ret” because the following code added in Chapter3\_1/Cpu0ISelLowering.cpp.

**Ibdex/chapters/Chapter3\_1/Cpu0ISelLowering.cpp**

```

const char *Cpu0TargetLowering::getTargetNodeName(unsigned Opcode) const {
    switch (Opcode) {
        case Cpu0ISD::JmpLink:           return "Cpu0ISD::JmpLink";
        case Cpu0ISD::TailCall:          return "Cpu0ISD::TailCall";
        case Cpu0ISD::Hi:                return "Cpu0ISD::Hi";
        case Cpu0ISD::Lo:                return "Cpu0ISD::Lo";
        case Cpu0ISD::GPRel:             return "Cpu0ISD::GPRel";
        case Cpu0ISD::Ret:               return "Cpu0ISD::Ret";
        case Cpu0ISD::EH_RETURN:         return "Cpu0ISD::EH_RETURN";
        case Cpu0ISD::DivRem:            return "Cpu0ISD::DivRem";
        case Cpu0ISD::DivRemU:           return "Cpu0ISD::DivRemU";
        case Cpu0ISD::Wrapper:           return "Cpu0ISD::Wrapper";
    }

    default:                      return NULL;
}
}

```

### 3.4 Handle return register \$lr

The following code is the result of running Mips backend with ch3.cpp.

```

JonathantekiiMac:input Jonathan$ ~/llvm/release/cmake_debug_build/Debug/bin/llc
-march=mips -relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm ch3.bc -o -
.text
.abicalls
.section .mdebug.abi32,"",@progbits
.nan legacy
.file "ch3.bc"
.text
.globl main
.align 2
.type main,@function
.set nomicromips
.set nomips16
.ent main
main:                                # @main
.frame $fp,8,$ra
.mask 0x40000000,-4
.fmask 0x00000000,0
.set noreorder
.set nomacro
.set noat
# BB#0:
addiu $sp, $sp, -8
sw $fp, 4($sp)                      # 4-byte Folded Spill
move $fp, $sp
sw $zero, 0($fp)
addiu $2, $zero, 0
move $sp, $fp
lw $fp, 4($sp)                      # 4-byte Folded Reload
jr $ra
addiu $sp, $sp, 8
.set at

```

```
.set macro
.set reorder
.end main
$func_end0:
.size main, ($func_end0)-main
```

As you can see, Mips return to the caller by using “jr \$ra” where \$ra is a specific register which keeps the caller’s next instruction address. And it saves the return value in register \$2. If we only create DAGs directly, then will having the following two problems.

1. LLVM can allocate any register for return value, for instance \$3, rather than keeps it in \$2.
2. LLVM will allocate a register randomly to “jr” since jr needs one operand. For instance, it generate “jr \$8” rather than “jr \$ra”.

If Backend uses the “jal sub-routine” and “jr”, and put the return address in the specific register \$ra, then no the second problem. But in Mips, it allows programmer uses “jal \$rx, sub-routine” and “jr \$rx” whereas \$rx is not \$ra. Allowing programmer uses other register but \$ra providing more flexibility in programming of high level language such as C with assembly. File ch8\_2\_longbranch.cpp in the following is an example, it uses jr \$1 without spill \$ra register. This will save a lot of time if it is in a hot function.

### Ibdex/input/ch8\_2\_longbranch.cpp

```
int test_longbranch()
{
    volatile int a = 2;
    volatile int b = 1;
    int result = 0;

    if (a < b)
        result = 1;
    return result;
}
```

```
JonathantekiiMac:input Jonathan$ clang -target mips-unknown-linux-gnu -c
ch8_2_longbranch.cpp -emit-llvm -o ch8_2_longbranch.bc
JonathantekiiMac:input Jonathan$ ~/llvm/release/cmake_debug_build/Debug/bin/llc
-march=mips -relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm -force-mips-long-branch
ch8_2_longbranch.bc -o -
...
.ent _Z15test_longbranchv
_Z15test_longbranchv:           # @_Z15test_longbranchv
.frame $fp,16,$ra
.mask 0x40000000,-4
.fmask 0x00000000,0
.set noreorder
.set nomacro
.set noat
# BB#0:
addiu $sp, $sp, -16
sw $fp, 12($sp)           # 4-byte Folded Spill
move $fp, $sp
addiu $1, $zero, 2
sw $1, 8($fp)
addiu $2, $zero, 1
```

```

    sw  $2, 4($fp)
    sw  $zero, 0($fp)
    lw  $1, 8($fp)
    lw  $3, 4($fp)
    slt $1, $1, $3
    bnez $1, $BB0_3
    nop
# BB#1:
    addiu $sp, $sp, -8
    sw  $ra, 0($sp)
    lui $1, %hi(($BB0_4)-($BB0_2))
    bal $BB0_2
    addiu $1, $1, %lo(($BB0_4)-($BB0_2))
$BB0_2:
    addu $1, $ra, $1
    lw  $ra, 0($sp)
    jr  $1
    addiu $sp, $sp, 8
$BB0_3:
    sw  $2, 0($fp)
$BB0_4:
    lw  $2, 0($fp)
    move  $sp, $fp
    lw  $fp, 12($sp)           # 4-byte Folded Reload
    jr  $ra
    addiu $sp, $sp, 16
    .set at
    .set macro
    .set reorder
    .end _Z15test_longbranchv
$func_end0:
    .size _Z15test_longbranchv, ($func_end0)-_Z15test_longbranchv

```

The following code handle the return register \$lr.

### [Ibdex/chapters/Chapter3\\_4/Cpu0CallingConv.td](#)

```

def RetCC_Cpu0EABI : CallingConv<[
    // i32 are returned in registers V0, V1, A0, A1
    CCIfType<i32>, CCAssignToReg<[V0, V1, A0, A1]>>
] >;

```

```

def RetCC_Cpu0 : CallingConv<[
    CCDelegateTo<RetCC_Cpu0EABI>
] >;

```

### [Ibdex/chapters/Chapter3\\_4/Cpu0InstrFormats.td](#)

```

// Cpu0 Pseudo Instructions Format
class Cpu0Pseudo<dag outs, dag ins, string asmstr, list<dag> pattern>:
    Cpu0Inst<outs, ins, asmstr, pattern, IIPseudo, Pseudo> {
        let isCodeGenOnly = 1;
        let isPseudo = 1;
    }

```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter3\_4/Cpu0InstrInfo.td

```
let Predicates = [Ch3_4] in {
let isReturn=1, isTerminator=1, hasDelaySlot=1, isBarrier=1, hasCtrlDep=1 in
  def RetLR : Cpu0Pseudo<(outs), (ins), "", [(Cpu0Ret)]>;
}
```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter3\_4/Cpu0ISelLowering.h

```
/// Cpu0CC - This class provides methods used to analyze formal and call
/// arguments and inquire about calling convention information.
class Cpu0CC {
public:
  enum SpecialCallingConvType {
    NoSpecialCallingConv
  };

  Cpu0CC(CallingConv::ID CallConv, bool IsO32, CCState &Info,
         SpecialCallingConvType SpecialCallingConv = NoSpecialCallingConv);

  void analyzeCallResult(const SmallVectorImpl<ISD::InputArg> &Ins,
                        bool IsSoftFloat, const SDNode *CallNode,
                        const Type *RetTy) const;

  void analyzeReturn(const SmallVectorImpl<ISD::OutputArg> &Outs,
                    bool IsSoftFloat, const Type *RetTy) const;

  const CCState &getCCInfo() const { return CCInfo; }

  /// hasByValArg - Returns true if function has byval arguments.
  bool hasByValArg() const { return !ByValArgs.empty(); }

  /// reservedArgArea - The size of the area the caller reserves for
  /// register arguments. This is 16-byte if ABI is O32.
  unsigned reservedArgArea() const;

  typedef SmallVectorImpl<ByValArgInfo>::const_iterator byval_iterator;
  byval_iterator byval_begin() const { return ByValArgs.begin(); }
  byval_iterator byval_end() const { return ByValArgs.end(); }

private:
  /// Return the type of the register which is used to pass an argument or
  /// return a value. This function returns f64 if the argument is an i64
  /// value which has been generated as a result of softening an f128 value.
  /// Otherwise, it just returns VT.
  MVT getRegVT(MVT VT, const Type *OrigTy, const SDNode *CallNode,
                bool IsSoftFloat) const;

  template<typename Ty>
  void analyzeReturn(const SmallVectorImpl<Ty> &RetVals, bool IsSoftFloat,
                    const SDNode *CallNode, const Type *RetTy) const;
```

```

    CCState &CCInfo;
    CallingConv::ID CallConv;
    bool IsO32;
    SmallVector<ByValArgInfo, 2> ByValArgs;
} ;

```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter3\_4/Cpu0ISelLowering.cpp

```

SDValue
Cpu0TargetLowering::LowerReturn(SDValue Chain,
                                 CallingConv::ID CallConv, bool IsVarArg,
                                 const SmallVectorImpl<ISD::OutputArg> &Outs,
                                 const SmallVectorImpl<SDValue> &OutVals,
                                 const SDLoc &DL, SelectionDAG &DAG) const {

// CCValAssign - represent the assignment of
// the return value to a location
SmallVector<CCValAssign, 16> RVLocs;
MachineFunction &MF = DAG.getMachineFunction();

// CCState - Info about the registers and stack slot.
CCState CCInfo(CallConv, IsVarArg, MF, RVLocs,
               *DAG.getContext());
Cpu0CC Cpu0CCInfo(CallConv, ABI.IsO32(),
                   CCInfo);

// Analyze return values.
Cpu0CCInfo.analyzeReturn(Outs, Subtarget.abiUsesSoftFloat(),
                        MF.getFunction()->getReturnType());

SDValue Flag;
SmallVector<SDValue, 4> RetOps(1, Chain);

// Copy the result values into the output registers.
for (unsigned i = 0; i != RVLocs.size(); ++i) {
    SDValue Val = OutVals[i];
    CCValAssign &VA = RVLocs[i];
    assert(VA.isRegLoc() && "Can only return in registers!");

    if (RVLocs[i].getValVT() != RVLocs[i].getLocVT())
        Val = DAG.getNode(ISD::BITCAST, DL, RVLocs[i].getLocVT(), Val);

    Chain = DAG.getCopyToReg(Chain, DL, VA.getLocReg(), Val, Flag);

    // Guarantee that all emitted copies are stuck together with flags.
    Flag = Chain.getValue(1);
    RetOps.push_back(DAG.getRegister(VA.getLocReg(), VA.getLocVT()));
}

// Ordinary struct type: 2 {
// The cpu0 ABIs for returning structs by value requires that we copy
// the sret argument into $v0 for the return. We saved the argument into
// a virtual register in the entry block, so now we copy the value out
// and into $v0.
if (MF.getFunction()->hasStructRetAttr()) {

```

```

Cpu0FunctionInfo *Cpu0FI = MF.getInfo<Cpu0FunctionInfo>();
unsigned Reg = Cpu0FI->getSRetReturnReg();

if (!Reg)
    llvm_unreachable("sret virtual register not created in the entry block");
SDValue Val =
    DAG.getCopyFromReg(Chain, DL, Reg, getPointerTy(DAG.getDataLayout()));
unsigned V0 = Cpu0::V0;

Chain = DAG.getCopyToReg(Chain, DL, V0, Val, Flag);
Flag = Chain.getValue(1);
RetOps.push_back(DAG.getRegister(V0, getPointerTy(DAG.getDataLayout())));
}
//@Ordinary struct type: 2 }

RetOps[0] = Chain; // Update chain.

// Add the flag if we have it.
if (Flag.getNode())
    RetOps.push_back(Flag);

// Return on Cpu0 is always a "ret $lr"
return DAG.getNode(Cpu0ISD::Ret, DL, MVT::Other, RetOps);
}

```

```

template<typename Ty>
void Cpu0TargetLowering::Cpu0CC::
analyzeReturn(const SmallVectorImpl<Ty> &RetVals, bool IsSoftFloat,
             const SDNode *CallNode, const Type *RetTy) const {
    CCAssignFn *Fn;

    Fn = RetCC_Cpu0;

    for (unsigned I = 0, E = RetVals.size(); I < E; ++I) {
        MVT VT = RetVals[I].VT;
        ISD::ArgFlagsTy Flags = RetVals[I].Flags;
        MVT RegVT = this->getRegVT(VT, RetTy, CallNode, IsSoftFloat);

        if (Fn(I, VT, RegVT, CCValAssign::Full, Flags, this->CCInfo)) {
#ifndef NDEBUG
            dbgs() << "Call result #" << I << " has unhandled type "
                << EVT(VT).getEVTString() << '\n';
#endif
            llvm_unreachable(nullptr);
        }
    }
}

void Cpu0TargetLowering::Cpu0CC::
analyzeCallResult(const SmallVectorImpl<ISD::InputArg> &Ins, bool IsSoftFloat,
                  const SDNode *CallNode, const Type *RetTy) const {
    analyzeReturn(Ins, IsSoftFloat, CallNode, RetTy);
}

void Cpu0TargetLowering::Cpu0CC::
analyzeReturn(const SmallVectorImpl<ISD::OutputArg> &Outs, bool IsSoftFloat,

```

```
    const Type *RetTy) const {
analyzeReturn(Outs, IsSoftFloat, nullptr, RetTy);
}
```

```
unsigned Cpu0TargetLowering::Cpu0CC::reservedArgArea() const {
    return (IsO32 && (CallConv != CallingConv::Fast)) ? 8 : 0;
}
```

```
MVT Cpu0TargetLowering::Cpu0CC::getRegVT(MVT VT, const Type *OrigTy,
                                         const SDNode *CallNode,
                                         bool IsSoftFloat) const {
if (IsSoftFloat || IsO32)
    return VT;

return VT;
}
```

### [Index/chapters/Chapter3\\_4/Cpu0MachineFunction.h](#)

```
/// Cpu0FunctionInfo - This class is derived from MachineFunction private
/// Cpu0 target-specific information for each MachineFunction.
class Cpu0FunctionInfo : public MachineFunctionInfo {
```

```
    SRetReturnReg(0), CallsEhReturn(false), CallsEhDwarf(false),
```

```
    unsigned getSRetReturnReg() const { return SRetReturnReg; }
    void setSRetReturnReg(unsigned Reg) { SRetReturnReg = Reg; }
```

```
    bool hasByvalArg() const { return HasByvalArg; }
    void setFormalArgInfo(unsigned Size, bool HasByval) {
        IncomingArgSize = Size;
        HasByvalArg = HasByval;
    }
```

```
/// SRetReturnReg - Some subtargets require that sret lowering includes
/// returning the value of the returned struct in a register. This field
/// holds the virtual register into which the sret argument is passed.
unsigned SRetReturnReg;
```

```
/// True if function has a byval argument.
bool HasByvalArg;

/// Size of incoming argument area.
unsigned IncomingArgSize;

/// CallsEhReturn - Whether the function calls llvm.eh.return.
bool CallsEhReturn;

/// CallsEhDwarf - Whether the function calls llvm.eh.dwarf.
bool CallsEhDwarf;

/// Frame objects for spilling eh data registers.
int EhDataRegFI[2];
```

```
}
```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter3\_4/Cpu0SEInstrInfo.h

```
//@expandPostRAPpseudo
bool expandPostRAPpseudo(MachineInstr &MI) const override;

private:
    void expandRetLR(MachineBasicBlock &MBB, MachineBasicBlock::iterator I) const;
```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter3\_4/Cpu0SEInstrInfo.cpp

```
//@expandPostRAPpseudo
/// Expand Pseudo instructions into real backend instructions
bool Cpu0SEInstrInfo::expandPostRAPpseudo(MachineInstr &MI) const {
//@expandPostRAPpseudo-body
    MachineBasicBlock &MBB = *MI.getParent();

    switch (MI.getDesc().getOpcode()) {
    default:
        return false;
    case Cpu0::RetLR:
        expandRetLR(MBB, MI);
        break;

    }

    MBB.erase(MI);
    return true;
}

void Cpu0SEInstrInfo::expandRetLR(MachineBasicBlock &MBB,
                                  MachineBasicBlock::iterator I) const {
    BuildMI(MBB, I, I->getDebugLoc(), get(Cpu0::RET)).addReg(Cpu0::LR);
}
```

Build Chapter3\_4 and run with it, finding the error message in Chapter3\_3 is gone. The compile result will hang on and please press “ctrl+C” to abort as follows,

```
118-165-78-230:input Jonathan$ clang -target mips-unknown-linux-gnu -c
ch3.cpp -emit-llvm -o ch3.bc
118-165-78-230:input Jonathan$ ~/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/Debug/bin/llvm-dis
ch3.bc -o -
...
define i32 @main() #0 {
    %1 = alloca i32, align 4
    store i32 0, i32* %1
    ret i32 0
}

118-165-78-230:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/
Debug/bin/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm ch3.bc -o -
```

```
...
.text
.section .mdebug.abi032
.previous
.file "ch3.bc"
^C
```

It hangs on because Cpu0 backend has not handled stack slot for local variables. Instruction “store i32 0, i32\* %1” in above IR need Cpu0 allocate a stack slot and save to the stack slot. However, the ch3.cpp can be run with option clang -O2 as follows,

```
118-165-78-230:input Jonathan$ clang -O2 -target mips-unknown-linux-gnu -c
ch3.cpp -emit-llvm -o ch3.bc
118-165-78-230:input Jonathan$ ~/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/Debug/bin/llvm-dis
ch3.bc -o -
...
define i32 @main() #0 {
    ret i32 0
}

118-165-78-230:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/
Debug/bin/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm ch3.bc -o -
.text
.section .mdebug.abi032
.previous
.file "ch3.bc"
.globl main
.align 2
.type main,@function
.ent main           # @main
main:
.frame $sp,$lr
.mask 0x00000000,0
.set noreorder
.set nomacro
# BB#0:
addiu $2, $zero, 0
ret $lr
.set macro
.set reorder
.end main
$func_end0:
.size main, ($func_end0)-main
```

To see how the ‘**DAG->DAG Pattern Instruction Selection**’ work in llc, let’s compile with llc -print-before-all -print-after-all option and get the following result. The DAGs which before and after instruction selection stage are shown as follows,

```
118-165-78-230:input Jonathan$ clang -O2 -target mips-unknown-linux-gnu -c
ch3.cpp -emit-llvm -o ch3.bc
118-165-78-12:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/
Debug/bin/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm
-print-before-all -print-after-all ch3.bc -o -
...
*** IR Dump After Module Verifier ***
; Function Attrs: nounwind readnone
define i32 @main() #0 {
    ret i32 0
```

```

}

...
Initial selection DAG: BB#0 'main:'
SelectionDAG has 5 nodes:
    t0: ch = EntryToken
    t3: ch,glue = CopyToReg t0, Register:i32 %V0, Constant:i32<0>
    t4: ch = Cpu0ISD::Ret t3, Register:i32 %V0, t3:1
...
===== Instruction selection begins: BB#0 ''
Selecting: t4: ch = Cpu0ISD::Ret t3, Register:i32 %V0, t3:1

ISEL: Starting pattern match on root node: t4: ch = Cpu0ISD::Ret t3, Register:i32
→%V0, t3:1

Morphed node: t4: ch = RetLR Register:i32 %V0, t3, t3:1

ISEL: Match complete!
Selecting: t3: ch,glue = CopyToReg t0, Register:i32 %V0, Constant:i32<0>

Selecting: t2: i32 = Register %V0

Selecting: t1: i32 = Constant<0>

ISEL: Starting pattern match on root node: t1: i32 = Constant<0>

    Initial Opcode index to 3158
    Morphed node: t1: i32 = ADDiu Register:i32 %ZERO, TargetConstant:i32<0>

ISEL: Match complete!
Selecting: t0: ch = EntryToken

===== Instruction selection ends:
Selected selection DAG: BB#0 'main:'
SelectionDAG has 7 nodes:
    t0: ch = EntryToken
    t1: i32 = ADDiu Register:i32 %ZERO, TargetConstant:i32<0>
    t3: ch,glue = CopyToReg t0, Register:i32 %V0, t1
    t4: ch = RetLR Register:i32 %V0, t3, t3:1
...
***** REWRITE VIRTUAL REGISTERS *****
***** Function: main
***** REGISTER MAP *****
[%vreg0 -> %V0] GPROut

0B  BB#0: derived from LLVM BB %0
16B  %vreg0<def> = ADDiu %ZERO, 0; GPROut:%vreg0
32B  %V0<def> = COPY %vreg0<kill>; GPROut:%vreg0
48B  RetLR %V0<imp-use>
> %V0<def> = ADDiu %ZERO, 0
> %V0<def> = COPY %V0<kill>
Identity copy: %V0<def> = COPY %V0<kill>
    deleted.
> RetLR %V0<imp-use>
# *** IR Dump After Virtual Register Rewriter ***:
# Machine code for function main: Properties: <Post SSA, tracking liveness, ↵
    AllVRegsAllocated>

0B  BB#0: derived from LLVM BB %0

```

```

16B    %V0<def> = ADDiu %ZERO, 0
48B    RetLR %V0<imp-use>
...
*****
***** EXPANDING POST-RA PSEUDO INSTRS *****
***** Function: main
# *** IR Dump After Post-RA pseudo instruction expansion pass ***
# Machine code for function main: Properties: <Post SSA, tracking liveness, ↳
→AllVRegsAllocated>

BB#0: derived from LLVM BB %0
%V0<def> = ADDiu %ZERO, 0
RET %LR
...

.globl main
.p2align 2
.type main,@function
.ent main           # @main
main:
.frame $sp,0,$lr
.mask 0x00000000,0
.set noreorder
.set nomacro
# BB#0:
addiu $2, $zero, 0
ret $lr
.set macro
.set reorder
.end main
$func_end0:
.size main, ($func_end0)-main

.ident "Apple LLVM version 7.0.0 (clang-700.1.76)"
.section ".note.GNU-stack","",@progbits

```

Summary above translation into Table: Chapter 3 .bc IR instructions.

Table 3.1: Chapter 3 .bc IR instructions

.bc	Lower	ISel	RVR	Post-RA	AsmP
constant 0	constant 0	ADDiu	ADDiu	ADDiu	addiu
ret	Cpu0ISD::Ret	CopyToReg,RetLR	RetLR	RET	ret

- Lower: Initial selection DAG (Cpu0ISelLowering.cpp, LowerReturn(...))
- ISel: Instruction selection
- RVR: REWRITE VIRTUAL REGISTERS, remove CopyToReg
- AsmP: Cpu0 Asm Printer
- Post-RA: Post-RA pseudo instruction expansion pass

From above llc -print-before-all -print-after-all display, we see **ret** is translated into **Cpu0ISD::Ret** in stage Optimized legalized selection DAG, and then translated into Cpu0 instructions **ret** finally. Since ret use **constant 0** (**ret i32 0** in this example), the constant 0 will be translated into “**addiu \$2, \$zero, 0**” via the following pattern defined in Cpu0InstrInfo.td.

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter2/Cpu0InstrInfo.td

```
// Small immediates
def : Pat<(i32 immSExt16:$in),
      (ADDiu ZERO, imm:$in);
```

In order to handle IR ret, these codes in Cpu0InstrInfo.td do things as below.

1. Declare a pseudo node Cpu0::RetLR to takes care the IR Cpu0ISD::Ret by the following code,

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter3\_4/Cpu0InstrInfo.td

```
// Return
def Cpu0Ret : SDNode<"Cpu0ISD::Ret", SDTNone,
                  [SDNPHasChain, SDNPOptInGlue, SDNPVariadic]>;
```

```
let Predicates = [Ch3_4] in {
let isReturn=1, isTerminator=1, hasDelaySlot=1, isBarrier=1, hasCtrlDep=1 in
  def RetLR : Cpu0Pseudo<(outs), (ins), "", [(Cpu0Ret)]>;
}
```

2. Create Cpu0ISD::Ret node in LowerReturn() of Cpu0ISelLowering.cpp, which is called when meets keyword of return in C. Remind, In LowerReturn() put return value in register \$2 (\$v0).
3. After instruction selection, the Cpu0ISD::Ret is replaced by Cpu0::RetLR as below. This effect come from “def RetLR” as step 1.

```
===== Instruction selection begins: BB#0 'entry'
Selecting: 0x1ea4050: ch = Cpu0ISD::Ret 0x1ea3f50, 0x1ea3e50,
0x1ea3f50:1 [ID=27]

ISEL: Starting pattern match on root node: 0x1ea4050: ch = Cpu0ISD::Ret
0x1ea3f50, 0x1ea3e50, 0x1ea3f50:1 [ID=27]

Morphed node: 0x1ea4050: ch = RetLR 0x1ea3e50, 0x1ea3f50, 0x1ea3f50:1
...
ISEL: Match complete!
=> 0x1ea4050: ch = RetLR 0x1ea3e50, 0x1ea3f50, 0x1ea3f50:1
...
===== Instruction selection ends:
Selected selection DAG: BB#0 'main:entry'
SelectionDAG has 28 nodes:
...
  0x1ea3e50: <multiple use>
  0x1ea3f50: <multiple use>
  0x1ea3f50: <multiple use>
0x1ea4050: ch = RetLR 0x1ea3e50, 0x1ea3f50, 0x1ea3f50:1
```

4. Expand the Cpu0ISD::RetLR into instruction Cpu0::RET \$lr in “Post-RA pseudo instruction expansion pass” stage by the code in Chapter3\_4/Cpu0SEInstrInfo.cpp as above. This stage come after the register allocation, so we can replace the V0 (\$r2) by LR (\$lr) without any side effect.
5. Print assembly or obj according the information of \*.inc generated by TableGen from \*.td as the following at “Cpu0 Assembly Print” stage.

**Ibdex/chapters/Chapter2/Cpu0InstrInfo.td**

```
//@JumpFR {
let isBranch=1, isTerminator=1, isBarrier=1, imm16=0, hasDelaySlot = 1,
    isIndirectBranch = 1 in
class JumpFR<bits<8> op, string instr_asm, RegisterClass RC>:
    FL<op, (outs), (ins RC:$ra),
        !strconcat(instr_asm, "\t$ra"), [(brind RC:$ra)], IIBranch> {
    let rb = 0;
    let imm16 = 0;

}

def RET      : RetBase<GPROut>;
```

Table 3.2: Handle return register lr

Stage	Function
Write Code	Declare a pseudo node Cpu0::RetLR
•	for IR Cpu0::Ret;
Before CPU0 DAG->DAG Pattern Instruction Selection	Create Cpu0ISD::Ret DAG
Instruction selection	Cpu0::Ret is replaced by Cpu0::RetLR
Post-RA pseudo instruction expansion pass	Cpu0::RetLR -> Cpu0::RET \$lr
Cpu0 Assembly Printer	Print according “def RET”

Function LowerReturn() of Cpu0ISelLowering.cpp handle return variable correctly. Chapter3\_4/Cpu0ISelLowering.cpp create Cpu0ISD::Ret node in LowerReturn() which is called by llvm system when it meets C's keyword of return. More specifically, it creates DAGs (Cpu0ISD::Ret (CopyToReg %X, %V0, %Y), %V0, Flag). Since the the V0 register is assigned in CopyToReg and Cpu0ISD::Ret use V0, the CopyToReg with V0 register will live out and won't be removed at any later optimization steps. Remember, if use “return DAG.getNode(Cpu0ISD::Ret, DL, MVT::Other, Chain, DAG.getRegister(Cpu0::LR, MVT::i32));” instead of “return DAG.getNode (Cpu0ISD::Ret, DL, MVT::Other, &RetOps[0], RetOps.size());” then the V0 register won't be live out, and the previous DAG (CopyToReg %X, %V0, %Y) will be removed at later optimization steps. It ending with the return value is error.

## 3.5 Add Prologue/Epilogue functions

### 3.5.1 Concept

Following come from tricore\_llvm.pdf section “4.4.2 Non-static Register Information”.

For some target architectures, some aspects of the target architecture's register set are dependent upon variable factors and have to be determined at runtime. As a consequence, they cannot be generated statically from a TableGen description – although that would be possible for the bulk of them in the case of the TriCore backend. Among them are the following points:

- Callee-saved registers. Normally, the ABI specifies a set of registers that a function must save on entry and restore on return if their contents are possibly modified during execution.
- Reserved registers. Although the set of unavailable registers is already defined in the TableGen file, TriCoreRegisterInfo contains a method that marks all non-allocatable register numbers in a bit vector.

The following methods are implemented:

- `emitPrologue()` inserts prologue code at the beginning of a function. Thanks to TriCore's context model, this is a trivial task as it is not required to save any registers manually. The only thing that has to be done is reserving space for the function's stack frame by decrementing the stack pointer. In addition, if the function needs a frame pointer, the frame register `%a14` is set to the old value of the stack pointer beforehand.
- `emitEpilogue()` is intended to emit instructions to destroy the stack frame and restore all previously saved registers before returning from a function. However, as `%a10` (stack pointer), `%a11` (return address), and `%a14` (frame pointer, if any) are all part of the upper context, no epilogue code is needed at all. All cleanup operations are performed implicitly by the `ret` instruction.
- `eliminateFrameIndex()` is called for each instruction that references a word of data in a stack slot. All previous passes of the code generator have been addressing stack slots through an abstract frame index and an immediate offset. The purpose of this function is to translate such a reference into a register-offset pair. Depending on whether the machine function that contains the instruction has a fixed or a variable stack frame, either the stack pointer `%a10` or the frame pointer `%a14` is used as the base register. The offset is computed accordingly. Fig. 3.4 demonstrates for both cases how a stack slot is addressed.

If the addressing mode of the affected instruction cannot handle the address because the offset is too large (the offset field has 10 bits for the BO addressing mode and 16 bits for the BOL mode), a sequence of instructions is emitted that explicitly computes the effective address. Interim results are put into an unused address register. If none is available, an already occupied address register is scavenged. For this purpose, LLVM's framework offers a class named `RegScavenger` that takes care of all the details.

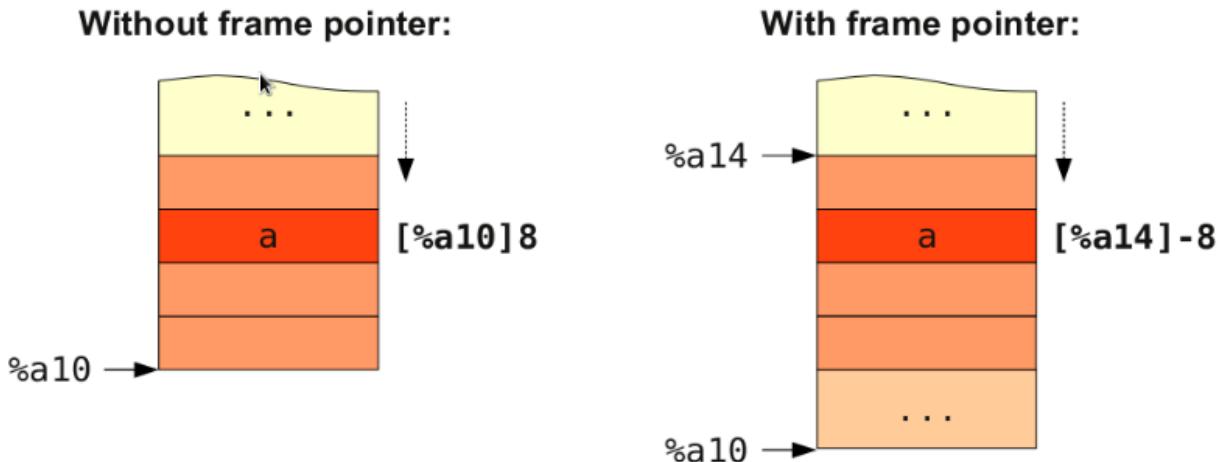


Fig. 3.4: Addressing of a variable `a` located on the stack. If the stack frame has a variable size, slot must be addressed relative to the frame pointer

### 3.5.2 Prologue and Epilogue functions

The Prologue and Epilogue functions as follows,

[Index/chapters/Chapter3\\_5/Cpu0SEFrameLowering.cpp](#)

```

void Cpu0SEFrameLowering::emitPrologue(MachineFunction &MF,
                                       MachineBasicBlock &MBB) const {
    assert(&MF.front() == &MBB && "Shrink-wrapping not yet supported");
    MachineFrameInfo *MFI = MF.getFrameInfo();
    Cpu0FunctionInfo *Cpu0FI = MF.getInfo<Cpu0FunctionInfo>();

    const Cpu0SEInstrInfo &TII =
        *static_cast<const Cpu0SEInstrInfo*>(STI.getInstrInfo());
    const Cpu0RegisterInfo &RegInfo =
        *static_cast<const Cpu0RegisterInfo *>(STI.getRegisterInfo());

    MachineBasicBlock::iterator MBBI = MBB.begin();
    DebugLoc dl = MBBI != MBB.end() ? MBBI->getDebugLoc() : DebugLoc();
    Cpu0ABIInfo ABI = STI.getABI();
    unsigned SP = Cpu0::SP;
    const TargetRegisterClass *RC = &Cpu0::GPROutRegClass;

    // First, compute final stack size.
    uint64_t StackSize = MFI->getStackSize();

    // No need to allocate space on the stack.
    if (StackSize == 0 && !MFI->adjustsStack()) return;

    MachineModuleInfo &MMI = MF.getMMI();
    const MCRegisterInfo *MRI = MMI.getContext().getRegisterInfo();
    MachineLocation DstML, SrcML;

    // Adjust stack.
    TII.adjustStackPtr(SP, -StackSize, MBB, MBBI);

    // emit ".cfi_def_cfa_offset StackSize"
    unsigned CFIIndex = MMI.addFrameInst(
        MCCFIInstruction::createDefCfaOffset(nullptr, -StackSize));
    BuildMI(MBB, MBBI, dl, TII.get(TargetOpcode::CFI_INSTRUCTION))
        .addCFIIndex(CFIIndex);

    const std::vector<CalleeSavedInfo> &CSI = MFI->getCalleeSavedInfo();

    if (CSI.size()) {
        // Find the instruction past the last instruction that saves a callee-saved
        // register to the stack.
        for (unsigned i = 0; i < CSI.size(); ++i)
            ++MBBI;

        // Iterate over list of callee-saved registers and emit .cfi_offset
        // directives.
        for (std::vector<CalleeSavedInfo>::const_iterator I = CSI.begin(),
             E = CSI.end(); I != E; ++I) {
            int64_t Offset = MFI->getObjectOffset(I->getFrameIdx());
            unsigned Reg = I->getReg();
            {
                // Reg is in CPURegs.
                unsigned CFIIndex = MMI.addFrameInst(MCCFIInstruction::createOffset(
                    nullptr, MRI->getDwarfRegNum(Reg, 1), Offset));
                BuildMI(MBB, MBBI, dl, TII.get(TargetOpcode::CFI_INSTRUCTION))
                    .addCFIIndex(CFIIndex);
            }
        }
    }
}

```

```
}
```

```
void Cpu0SEFrameLowering::emitEpilogue(MachineFunction &MF,
                                         MachineBasicBlock &MBB) const {
    MachineBasicBlock::iterator MBBI = MBB.getLastNonDebugInstr();
    MachineFrameInfo *MFI = MF.getFrameInfo();
    Cpu0FunctionInfo *Cpu0FI = MF.getInfo<Cpu0FunctionInfo>();

    const Cpu0SEInstrInfo &TII =
        *static_cast<const Cpu0SEInstrInfo *>(STI.getInstrInfo());
    const Cpu0RegisterInfo &RegInfo =
        *static_cast<const Cpu0RegisterInfo *>(STI.getRegisterInfo());

    DebugLoc dl = MBBI->getDebugLoc();
    Cpu0ABIInfo ABI = STI.getABI();
    unsigned SP = Cpu0::SP;

    // Get the number of bytes from FrameInfo
    uint64_t StackSize = MFI->getStackSize();

    if (!StackSize)
        return;

    // Adjust stack.
    TII.adjustStackPtr(SP, StackSize, MBB, MBBI);
}
```

```
bool
Cpu0SEFrameLowering::hasReservedCallFrame(const MachineFunction &MF) const {
    const MachineFrameInfo *MFI = MF.getFrameInfo();

    // Reserve call frame if the size of the maximum call frame fits into 16-bit
    // immediate field and there are no variable sized objects on the stack.
    // Make sure the second register scavenger spill slot can be accessed with one
    // instruction.
    return isInt<16>(MFI->getMaxCallFrameSize() + getStackAlignment()) &&
        !MFI->hasVarSizedObjects();
}
```

### [Index/chapters/Chapter3\\_5/Cpu0MachineFunction.h](#)

```
unsigned getIncomingArgSize() const { return IncomingArgSize; }

bool callsEhReturn() const { return CallsEhReturn; }
void setCallsEhReturn() { CallsEhReturn = true; }

bool callsEhDwarf() const { return CallsEhDwarf; }
void setCallsEhDwarf() { CallsEhDwarf = true; }

void createEhDataRegsFI();
int getEhDataRegFI(unsigned Reg) const { return EhDataRegFI[Reg]; }

unsigned getMaxCallFrameSize() const { return MaxCallFrameSize; }
```

```
void setMaxCallFrameSize(unsigned S) { MaxCallFrameSize = S; }
```

Now we explain the Prologue and Epilogue further by example code. For the following llvm IR code of ch3.cpp, Chapter3\_5 of Cpu0 backend will emit the corresponding machine instructions as follows,

```
118-165-78-230:input Jonathan$ clang -target mips-unknown-linux-gnu -c
ch3.cpp -emit-llvm -o ch3.bc
118-165-78-230:input Jonathan$ ~/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/Debug/bin/llvm-dis
ch3.bc -o -
...
define i32 @main() #0 {
    %1 = alloca i32, align 4
    store i32 0, i32* %1
    ret i32 0
}

118-165-78-230:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/
Debug/bin/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm ch3.bc -o -
...
.section .mdebug.abi32
.previous
.file "ch3.bc"
.text
.globl main//static void expandLargeImm\n
.align 2
.type main,@function
.ent main                      # @main
main:
.cfi_startproc
.frame $sp,8,$lr
.mask 0x00000000,0
.set noreorder
.set nomacro
# BB#0:
.addiu $sp, $sp, -8
$tmp1:
.cfi_def_cfa_offset 8
.addiu $2, $zero, 0
.st $2, 4($sp)
.addiu $sp, $sp, 8
.ret $lr
.set macro
.set reorder
.end main
$tmp2:
.size main, ($tmp2)-main
.cfi_endproc
```

LLVM get the stack size by counting how many virtual registers is assigned to local variables. After that, it calls `emitPrologue()`.

```
virtual void adjustStackPtr(unsigned SP, int64_t Amount,
                           MachineBasicBlock &MBB,
                           MachineBasicBlock::iterator I) const = 0;
```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter3\_5/Cpu0SEInstrInfo.h

```

/// Adjust SP by Amount bytes.
void adjustStackPtr(unsigned SP, int64_t Amount, MachineBasicBlock &MBB,
                     MachineBasicBlock::iterator I) const override;

/// Emit a series of instructions to load an immediate. If NewImm is a
/// non-NULL parameter, the last instruction is not emitted, but instead
/// its immediate operand is returned in NewImm.
unsigned loadImmediate(int64_t Imm, MachineBasicBlock &MBB,
                      MachineBasicBlock::iterator II, const DebugLoc &DL,
                      unsigned *NewImm) const;

```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter3\_5/Cpu0SEInstrInfo.cpp

```

/// Adjust SP by Amount bytes.
void Cpu0SEInstrInfo::adjustStackPtr(unsigned SP, int64_t Amount,
                                      MachineBasicBlock &MBB,
                                      MachineBasicBlock::iterator I) const {
    DebugLoc DL = I != MBB.end() ? I->getDebugLoc() : DebugLoc();
    unsigned ADDu = Cpu0::ADDu;
    unsigned ADDiu = Cpu0::ADDiu;

    if (isInt<16>(Amount)) {
        // addiu sp, sp, amount
        BuildMI(MBB, I, DL, get(ADDiu), SP).addReg(SP).addImm(Amount);
    } else { // Expand immediate that doesn't fit in 16-bit.
        unsigned Reg = loadImmediate(Amount, MBB, I, DL, nullptr);
        BuildMI(MBB, I, DL, get(ADDu), SP).addReg(SP).addReg(Reg, RegState::Kill);
    }
}

/// This function generates the sequence of instructions needed to get the
/// result of adding register REG and immediate IMM.
unsigned
Cpu0SEInstrInfo::loadImmediate(int64_t Imm, MachineBasicBlock &MBB,
                               MachineBasicBlock::iterator II,
                               const DebugLoc &DL,
                               unsigned *NewImm) const {
    Cpu0AnalyzeImmediate AnalyzeImm;
    unsigned Size = 32;
    unsigned LUI = Cpu0::LUI;
    unsigned ZEROReg = Cpu0::ZERO;
    unsigned ATReg = Cpu0::AT;
    bool LastInstrIsADDiu = NewImm;

    const Cpu0AnalyzeImmediate::InstSeq &Seq =
        AnalyzeImm.Analyze(Imm, Size, LastInstrIsADDiu);
    Cpu0AnalyzeImmediate::InstSeq::const_iterator Inst = Seq.begin();

    assert(Seq.size() && (!LastInstrIsADDiu || (Seq.size() > 1)));

    // The first instruction can be a LUI, which is different from other
    // instructions (ADDiu, ORI and SLL) in that it does not have a register
    // operand.

```

```

if (Inst->Opc == LUi)
    BuildMI(MBB, II, DL, get(LUi), ATReg).addImm(SignExtend64<16>(Inst->ImmOpnd));
else
    BuildMI(MBB, II, DL, get(Inst->Opc), ATReg).addReg(ZEROReg)
        .addImm(SignExtend64<16>(Inst->ImmOpnd));

// Build the remaining instructions in Seq.
for (++Inst; Inst != Seq.end() - LastInstrIsADDiu; ++Inst)
    BuildMI(MBB, II, DL, get(Inst->Opc), ATReg).addReg(ATReg)
        .addImm(SignExtend64<16>(Inst->ImmOpnd));

if (LastInstrIsADDiu)
    *NewImm = Inst->ImmOpnd;

return ATReg;
}

```

In emitPrologue(), it emits machine instructions to adjust sp (stack pointer register) for local variables. For our example, it will emit the instruction,

```
addiu $sp, $sp, -8
```

The emitEpilogue() will emit “addiu \$sp, \$sp, 8”, where 8 is the stack size.

In above ch3.cpp assembly output, it generates “addiu \$2, \$zero, 0” rather than “ori \$2, \$zero, 0” because ADDiu defined before ORi as following, so it takes the priority. Of course, if the ORi is defined first, the it will translate into “ori” instruction.

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter2/Cpu0InstrInfo.td

```

// Small immediates
def : Pat<(i32 immSExt16:$in),
        (ADDiu ZERO, imm:$in)>;

```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter3\_5/Cpu0InstrInfo.td

```

let Predicates = [Ch3_5] in {
def : Pat<(i32 immZExt16:$in),
        (ORi ZERO, imm:$in)>;
def : Pat<(i32 immLow16Zero:$in),
        (LUI (HI16 imm:$in))>;

// Arbitrary immediates
def : Pat<(i32 imm:$imm),
        (ORi (LUI (HI16 imm:$imm)), (LO16 imm:$imm))>;
} // let Predicates = [Ch3_4]

```

### 3.5.3 Handle stack slot for local variables

The following code handle the stack slot for local variables.

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter3\_5/Cpu0RegisterInfo.cpp

```
//- If no eliminateFrameIndex(), it will hang on run.
// pure virtual method
// FrameIndex represent objects inside a abstract stack.
// We must replace FrameIndex with an stack/frame pointer
// direct reference.
void Cpu0RegisterInfo::  
eliminateFrameIndex(MachineBasicBlock::iterator II, int SPAdj,  
                    unsigned FIOperandNum, RegScavenger *RS) const {  
    MachineInstr &MI = *II;  
    MachineFunction &MF = *MI.getParent()->getParent();  
    MachineFrameInfo *MFI = MF.getFrameInfo();  
    Cpu0FunctionInfo *Cpu0FI = MF.getInfo<Cpu0FunctionInfo>();  
  
    unsigned i = 0;  
    while (!MI.getOperand(i).isFI()) {  
        ++i;  
        assert(i < MI.getNumOperands() &&  
               "Instr doesn't have FrameIndex operand!");  
    }  
  
    DEBUG(errs() << "\nFunction : " << MF.getFunction()->getName() << "\n";  
          errs() << "<----->\n" << MI);  
  
    int FrameIndex = MI.getOperand(i).getIndex();  
    uint64_t stackSize = MF.getFrameInfo()->getStackSize();  
    int64_t spOffset = MF.getFrameInfo()->getObjectOffset(FrameIndex);  
  
    DEBUG(errs() << "FrameIndex : " << FrameIndex << "\n"  
          << "spOffset : " << spOffset << "\n"  
          << "stackSize : " << stackSize << "\n");  
  
    const std::vector<CalleeSavedInfo> &CSI = MFI->getCalleeSavedInfo();  
    int MinCSFI = 0;  
    int MaxCSFI = -1;  
  
    if (CSI.size()) {  
        MinCSFI = CSI[0].getFrameIdx();  
        MaxCSFI = CSI[CSI.size() - 1].getFrameIdx();  
    }  
  
    // The following stack frame objects are always referenced relative to $sp:  
    // 1. Outgoing arguments.  
    // 2. Pointer to dynamically allocated stack space.  
    // 3. Locations for callee-saved registers.  
    // Everything else is referenced relative to whatever register  
    // getFrameRegister() returns.  
    unsigned FrameReg;  
  
    FrameReg = Cpu0::SP;  
  
    // Calculate final offset.  
    // - There is no need to change the offset if the frame object is one of the  
    //   following: an outgoing argument, pointer to a dynamically allocated  
    //   stack space or a $gp restore location,  
    // - If the frame object is any of the following, its offset must be adjusted  
    //   by adding the size of the stack:
```

```

// incoming argument, callee-saved register location or local variable.
int64_t Offset;
    Offset = spOffset + (int64_t)stackSize;

Offset     += MI.getOperand(i+1).getImm();

DEBUG(errs() << "Offset      : " << Offset << "\n" << "----->\n");

// If MI is not a debug value, make sure Offset fits in the 16-bit immediate
// field.
if (!MI.isDebugValue() && !isInt<16>(Offset)) {
    assert("(!MI.isDebugValue() && !isInt<16>(Offset))");
}

MI.getOperand(i).ChangeToRegister(FrameReg, false);
MI.getOperand(i+1).ChangeToImmediate(Offset);
}

```

The eliminateFrameIndex() of Cpu0RegisterInfo.cpp is called after stages “instruction selection” and “registers allocated”. It translates frame index to correct offset of stack pointer by “spOffset = MF.getFrameInfo()->getObjectOffset(FrameIndex);”. For instance of ch3.cpp, displaying the offset calculating as follows,

```

Spilling live registers at end of block.
BB#0: derived from LLVM BB %0
    %V0<def> = ADDiu %ZERO, 0
    ST %V0, <fi#0>, 0; mem:ST4[%1]
    RetLR %V0<imp-use,kill>
alloc FI(0) at SP[-4]

Function : main
<----->
ST %V0, <fi#0>, 0; mem:ST4[%1]
FrameIndex : 0
spOffset   : -4
stackSize  : 8
Offset     : 4
<----->
...
.file "ch3.bc"
...
.frame $sp,8,$lr
...
# BB#0:
addiu $sp, $sp, -8
$tmp1:
.cfi_def_cfa_offset 8
addiu $2, $zero, 0
st $2, 4($sp)
...

```

## [Index/chapters/Chapter3\\_5/Cpu0SEFrameLowering.cpp](#)

```

// This method is called immediately before PrologEpilogInserter scans the
// physical registers used to determine what callee saved registers should be
// spilled. This method is optional.
void Cpu0SEFrameLowering::determineCalleeSaves(MachineFunction &MF,

```

```

        BitVector &SavedRegs,
        RegScavenger *RS) const {
//@determineCalleeSaves-body
    TargetFrameLowering::determineCalleeSaves(MF, SavedRegs, RS);
    Cpu0FunctionInfo *Cpu0FI = MF.getInfo<Cpu0FunctionInfo>();
    MachineRegisterInfo& MRI = MF.getRegInfo();

    if (MF.getFrameInfo()->hasCalls())
        setAliasRegs(MF, SavedRegs, Cpu0::LR);

    return;
}

```

The determineCalleeSaves() of Cpu0SEFrameLowering.cpp as above determine the spill registers. Once the spill registers are determined, the function SpillCalleeSavedRegisters() will save/restore registers to/from stack slots via the following code.

### [Index/chapters/Chapter3\\_5/Cpu0InstrInfo.h](#)

```

void storeRegToStackSlot(MachineBasicBlock &MBB,
                         MachineBasicBlock::iterator MBBI,
                         unsigned SrcReg, bool isKill, int FrameIndex,
                         const TargetRegisterClass *RC,
                         const TargetRegisterInfo *TRI) const override {
    storeRegToStack(MBB, MBBI, SrcReg, isKill, FrameIndex, RC, TRI, 0);
}

void loadRegFromStackSlot(MachineBasicBlock &MBB,
                          MachineBasicBlock::iterator MBBI,
                          unsigned DestReg, int FrameIndex,
                          const TargetRegisterClass *RC,
                          const TargetRegisterInfo *TRI) const override {
    loadRegFromStack(MBB, MBBI, DestReg, FrameIndex, RC, TRI, 0);
}

virtual void storeRegToStack(MachineBasicBlock &MBB,
                            MachineBasicBlock::iterator MI,
                            unsigned SrcReg, bool isKill, int FrameIndex,
                            const TargetRegisterClass *RC,
                            const TargetRegisterInfo *TRI,
                            int64_t Offset) const = 0;

virtual void loadRegFromStack(MachineBasicBlock &MBB,
                            MachineBasicBlock::iterator MI,
                            unsigned DestReg, int FrameIndex,
                            const TargetRegisterClass *RC,
                            const TargetRegisterInfo *TRI,
                            int64_t Offset) const = 0;

```

```

MachineMemOperand *GetMemOperand(MachineBasicBlock &MBB, int FI,
                                 MachineMemOperand::Flags Flags) const;

```

**Ibdex/chapters/Chapter3\_5/Cpu0InstrInfo.cpp**

```

MachineMemOperand *
Cpu0InstrInfo::GetMemOperand(MachineBasicBlock &MBB, int FI,
                             MachineMemOperand::Flags Flags) const {

    MachineFunction &MF = *MBB.getParent();
    MachineFrameInfo &MFI = *MF.getFrameInfo();
    unsigned Align = MFI.getObjectAlignment(FI);

    return MF.getMachineMemOperand(MachinePointerInfo::getFixedStack(MF, FI),
                                    Flags, MFI.getObjectSize(FI), Align);
}

```

**Ibdex/chapters/Chapter3\_5/Cpu0SEInstrInfo.h**

```

void storeRegToStack(MachineBasicBlock &MBB,
                     MachineBasicBlock::iterator MI,
                     unsigned SrcReg, bool isKill, int FrameIndex,
                     const TargetRegisterClass *RC,
                     const TargetRegisterInfo *TRI,
                     int64_t Offset) const override;

void loadRegFromStack(MachineBasicBlock &MBB,
                      MachineBasicBlock::iterator MI,
                      unsigned DestReg, int FrameIndex,
                      const TargetRegisterClass *RC,
                      const TargetRegisterInfo *TRI,
                      int64_t Offset) const override;

```

**Ibdex/chapters/Chapter3\_5/Cpu0SEInstrInfo.cpp**

```

void Cpu0SEInstrInfo::
storeRegToStack(MachineBasicBlock &MBB, MachineBasicBlock::iterator I,
                unsigned SrcReg, bool isKill, int FI,
                const TargetRegisterClass *RC, const TargetRegisterInfo *TRI,
                int64_t Offset) const {
    DebugLoc DL;
    MachineMemOperand *MMO = GetMemOperand(MBB, FI, MachineMemOperand::MOStore);

    unsigned Opc = 0;

    Opc = Cpu0::ST;
    assert(Opc && "Register class not handled!");
    BuildMI(MBB, I, DL, get(Opc)).addReg(SrcReg, getKillRegState(isKill))
        .addFrameIndex(FI).addImm(Offset).addMemOperand(MMO);
}

void Cpu0SEInstrInfo::
loadRegFromStack(MachineBasicBlock &MBB, MachineBasicBlock::iterator I,
                 unsigned DestReg, int FI, const TargetRegisterClass *RC,
                 const TargetRegisterInfo *TRI, int64_t Offset) const {
    DebugLoc DL;
}

```

```

if (I != MBB.end()) DL = I->getDebugLoc();
MachineMemOperand *MMO = GetMemOperand(MBB, FI, MachineMemOperand::MOLoad);
unsigned Opc = 0;

Opc = Cpu0::LD;
assert(Opc && "Register class not handled!");
BuildMI(MBB, I, DL, get(Opc), DestReg).addFrameIndex(FI).addImm(Offset)
    .addMemOperand(MMO);
}

```

Functions storeRegToStack() Cpu0SEInstrInfo.cpp and storeRegToStackSlot() of Cpu0InstrInfo.cpp handle the registers spilling during register allocation process. Since each local variable connecting to a frame index, code ".addFrameIndex(FI). addImm(Offset).addMemOperand(MMO);" in storeRegToStack() where Offset is 0 is added for each virtual register. The loadRegFromStackSlot() and loadRegFromStack() will be used when it needs reload from stack slot.

If adding V0 to Cpu0CallingConv.td as the following and without both storeRegToStack() and storeRegToStackSlot() in Cpu0SEInstrInfo.cpp, Cpu0SEInstrInfo.h and Cpu0InstrInfo.h it will get the belowing error.

### Ibdex/Cpu0/Cpu0CallingConv.td

```

def CSR_O32 : CalleeSavedRegs<(add LR, FP, V0,
                                sequence "S%u", 1, 0)>;

```

```

114-43-191-19:input Jonathan$ ~/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/Debug/bin/llc
-march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm ch3.bc -o -
.text
.section .mdebug.abi032
.previous
.file "ch3.bc"
Target didn't implement TargetInstrInfo::storeRegToStackSlot!
...
Stack dump:
...
Abort trap: 6

```

Table 3.3: Backend functions called in PrologEpilogInserter.cpp

Stage	Function
Prologue/Epilogue Insertion & Frame Finalization	
• Determine spill callee saved registers	• Cpu0SEFrameLowering::determineCalleeSaves
• Spill callee saved registers	• Cpu0SEFrameLowering::spillCalleeSavedRegisters
• Prolog	• Cpu0SEFrameLowering::emitPrologue
• Epilog	• Cpu0SEFrameLowering::emitEpilogue
• Handle stack slot for local variables	• Cpu0RegisterInfo::eliminateFrameIndex

File PrologEpilogInserter.cpp includes the calling of backend functions spillCalleeSavedRegisters(), emitProlog(), emitEpilog() and eliminateFrameIndex() as follows,

### lib/CodeGen/PrologEpilogInserter.cpp

```

class PEI : public MachineFunctionPass {
public:
    static char ID;
    explicit PEI(const TargetMachine *TM = nullptr) : MachineFunctionPass(ID) {
        initializePEIPass(*PassRegistry::getPassRegistry());
    }

    if (TM && (!TM->usesPhysRegsForPEI())) {
        ...
    } else {
        SpillCalleeSavedRegisters = doSpillCalleeSavedRegs;
        ...
    }
}
...
}

/// insertCSRSpillsAndRestores - Insert spill and restore code for
/// callee saved registers used in the function.
///
static void insertCSRSpillsAndRestores(MachineFunction &Fn,
                                         const MBBVector &SaveBlocks,
                                         const MBBVector &RestoreBlocks) {
    ...
    // Spill using target interface.
    for (MachineBasicBlock *SaveBlock : SaveBlocks) {
        ...
        if (!TFI->spillCalleeSavedRegisters(*SaveBlock, I, CSI, TRI)) {
            for (unsigned i = 0, e = CSI.size(); i != e; ++i) {
                // Insert the spill to the stack frame.
                ...
                TII.storeRegToStackSlot(*SaveBlock, I, Reg, true, CSI[i].getFrameIdx(),
                                       RC, TRI);
            }
        }
        ...
    }

    // Restore using target interface.
    for (MachineBasicBlock *MBB : RestoreBlocks) {
        ...
        // Restore all registers immediately before the return and any
        // terminators that precede it.
        if (!TFI->restoreCalleeSavedRegisters(*MBB, I, CSI, TRI)) {
            for (unsigned i = 0, e = CSI.size(); i != e; ++i) {
                ...
                TII.loadRegFromStackSlot(*MBB, I, Reg, CSI[i].getFrameIdx(), RC, TRI);
                ...
            }
        }
        ...
    }
}

```

```

static void doSpillCalleeSavedRegs(MachineFunction &Fn, RegScavenger *RS,
                                    unsigned &MinCSFrameIndex,
                                    unsigned &MaxCSFrameIndex,
                                    const MBBVector &SaveBlocks,
                                    const MBBVector &RestoreBlocks) {
    const Function *F = Fn.getFunction();
    const TargetFrameLowering *TFI = Fn.getSubtarget().getFrameLowering();
    MinCSFrameIndex = std::numeric_limits<unsigned>::max();
    MaxCSFrameIndex = 0;

    // Determine which of the registers in the callee save list should be saved.
    BitVector SavedRegs;
    TFI->determineCalleeSaves(Fn, SavedRegs, RS);

    // Assign stack slots for any callee-saved registers that must be spilled.
    assignCalleeSavedSpillSlots(Fn, SavedRegs, MinCSFrameIndex, MaxCSFrameIndex);

    // Add the code to save and restore the callee saved registers.
    if (!F->hasFnAttribute(Attribute::Naked))
        insertCSRSpillsAndRestores(Fn, SaveBlocks, RestoreBlocks);
}

void PEI::insertPrologEpilogCode(MachineFunction &Fn) {
    const TargetFrameLowering &TFI = *Fn.getSubtarget().getFrameLowering();

    // Add prologue to the function...
    for (MachineBasicBlock *SaveBlock : SaveBlocks)
        TFI.emitPrologue(Fn, *SaveBlock);

    // Add epilogue to restore the callee-save registers in each exiting block.
    for (MachineBasicBlock *RestoreBlock : RestoreBlocks)
        TFI.emitEpilogue(Fn, *RestoreBlock);
    ...
}

void PEI::replaceFrameIndices(MachineBasicBlock *BB, MachineFunction &Fn,
                               int &SPAdj) {
    ...
    for (unsigned i = 0, e = MI.getNumOperands(); i != e; ++i) {
        ...
        // If this instruction has a FrameIndex operand, we need to
        // use that target machine register info object to eliminate
        // it.
        TRI.eliminateFrameIndex(MI, SPAdj, i,
                               FrameIndexVirtualScavenging ? nullptr : RS);
        ...
    }
    ...
}

/// replaceFrameIndices - Replace all MO_FrameIndex operands with physical
/// register references and actual offsets.
///
void PEI::replaceFrameIndices(MachineFunction &Fn) {
    ...
    // Iterate over the reachable blocks in DFS order.
    for (auto DFI = df_ext_begin(&Fn, Reachable), DFE = df_ext_end(&Fn, Reachable);

```

```

DFI != DFE; ++DFI) {
...
replaceFrameIndices(BB, Fn, SPAdj);
...
}

// Handle the unreachable blocks.
for (auto &BB : Fn) {
...
replaceFrameIndices(&BB, Fn, SPAdj);
}
}

bool PEI::runOnMachineFunction(MachineFunction &Fn) {
const TargetFrameLowering &TFI = *Fn.getSubtarget().getFrameLowering();
...
FrameIndexVirtualScavenging = TRI->requiresFrameIndexScavenging(Fn);
...
// Handle CSR spilling and restoring, for targets that need it.
SpillCalleeSavedRegisters(Fn, RS, MinCSFrameIndex, MaxCSFrameIndex,
                           SaveBlocks, RestoreBlocks);
...
// Calculate actual frame offsets for all abstract stack objects...
calculateFrameObjectOffsets(Fn);

// Add prolog and epilog code to the function. This function is required
// to align the stack frame as necessary for any stack variables or
// called functions. Because of this, calculateCalleeSavedRegisters()
// must be called before this function in order to set the AdjustsStack
// and MaxCallFrameSize variables.
if (!F->hasFnAttribute(Attribute::Naked))
    insertPrologEpilogCode(Fn);

// Replace all MO_FrameIndex operands with physical register references
// and actual offsets.
//
replaceFrameIndices(Fn);

// If register scavenging is needed, as we've enabled doing it as a
// post-pass, scavenge the virtual registers that frame index elimination
// inserted.
if (TRI->requiresRegisterScavenging(Fn) && FrameIndexVirtualScavenging) {
    ScavengeFrameVirtualRegs(Fn, RS);

    // Clear any vregs created by virtual scavenging.
    Fn.getRegInfo().clearVirtRegs();
}
...
}
}

```

### 3.5.4 Large stack

At this point, we have translated the very simple main() function with “return 0;” single instruction. The Cpu0AnalyzeImmediate.cpp and the Cpu0InstrInfo.td instructions defined in Chapter3\_5 as the following, which take care the 32 bits stack size adjustments.

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter3\_5/CMakeLists.txt

```
add_llvm_target(  
    ...
```

```
    Cpu0AnalyzeImmediate.cpp
```

```
    ...  
)
```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter3\_5/Cpu0AnalyzeImmediate.h

```
===== Cpu0AnalyzeImmediate.h - Analyze Immediates -----*-- C++ --=====//  
//  
//          The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure  
//  
// This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source  
// License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.  
//  
//=====-----=====//  
#ifndef CPU0_ANALYZE_IMMEDIATE_H  
#define CPU0_ANALYZE_IMMEDIATE_H  
  
#include "Cpu0Config.h"  
#if CH >= CH3_5  
  
#include "llvm/ADT/SmallVector.h"  
#include "llvm/Support/DataTypes.h"  
  
namespace llvm {  
  
    class Cpu0AnalyzeImmediate {  
public:  
    struct Inst {  
        unsigned Opc, ImmOpnd;  
        Inst(unsigned Opc, unsigned ImmOpnd);  
    };  
    typedef SmallVector<Inst, 7> InstSeq;  
  
    /// Analyze - Get an instruction sequence to load immediate Imm. The last  
    /// instruction in the sequence must be an ADDiu if LastInstrIsADDiu is  
    /// true;  
    const InstSeq &Analyze(uint64_t Imm, unsigned Size, bool LastInstrIsADDiu);  
private:  
    typedef SmallVector<InstSeq, 5> InstSeqLs;  
  
    /// AddInstr - Add I to all instruction sequences in SeqLs.  
    void AddInstr(InstSeqLs &SeqLs, const Inst &I);  
  
    /// GetInstSeqLsADDiu - Get instruction sequences which end with an ADDiu to  
    /// load immediate Imm  
    void GetInstSeqLsADDiu(uint64_t Imm, unsigned RemSize, InstSeqLs &SeqLs);  
  
    /// GetInstSeqLsORi - Get instruction sequences which end with an ORi to  
    /// load immediate Imm
```

```

void GetInstSeqLsORi(uint64_t Imm, unsigned RemSize, InstSeqLs &SeqLs);

/// GetInstSeqLsSHL - Get instruction sequences which end with a SHL to
/// load immediate Imm
void GetInstSeqLsSHL(uint64_t Imm, unsigned RemSize, InstSeqLs &SeqLs);

/// GetInstSeqLs - Get instruction sequences to load immediate Imm.
void GetInstSeqLs(uint64_t Imm, unsigned RemSize, InstSeqLs &SeqLs);

/// ReplaceADDiuSHLWithLUI - Replace an ADDiu & SHL pair with a LUI.
void ReplaceADDiuSHLWithLUI(InstSeq &Seq);

/// GetShortestSeq - Find the shortest instruction sequence in SeqLs and
/// return it in Insts.
void GetShortestSeq(InstSeqLs &SeqLs, InstSeq &Insts);

unsigned Size;
unsigned ADDiu, ORi, SHL, LUI;
InstSeq Insts;
};

}

#endif // #if CH >= CH3_5

#endif

```

### **Index/chapters/Chapter3\_5/Cpu0AnalyzeImmediate.cpp**

```

===== Cpu0AnalyzeImmediate.cpp - Analyze Immediates =====
//
// The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure
//
// This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source
// License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.
//
=====

#include "Cpu0AnalyzeImmediate.h"
#include "Cpu0.h"
#if CH >= CH3_5

#include "llvm/Support/MathExtras.h"

using namespace llvm;

Cpu0AnalyzeImmediate::Inst::Inst(unsigned O, unsigned I) : Opc(O), ImmOpnd(I) {}

// Add I to the instruction sequences.
void Cpu0AnalyzeImmediate::AddInstr(InstSeqLs &SeqLs, const Inst &I) {
    // Add an instruction sequence consisting of just I.
    if (SeqLs.empty()) {
        SeqLs.push_back(InstSeq(1, I));
        return;
    }

    for (InstSeqLs::iterator Iter = SeqLs.begin(); Iter != SeqLs.end(); ++Iter)
        Iter->push_back(I);
}

```

```
}

void Cpu0AnalyzeImmediate::GetInstSeqLsADDiu(uint64_t Imm, unsigned RemSize,
                                              InstSeqLs &SeqLs) {
    GetInstSeqLs((Imm + 0x8000ULL) & 0xfffffffffffff0000ULL, RemSize, SeqLs);
    AddInstr(SeqLs, Inst(ADDiu, Imm & 0xffffFULL));
}

void Cpu0AnalyzeImmediate::GetInstSeqLsORi(uint64_t Imm, unsigned RemSize,
                                             InstSeqLs &SeqLs) {
    GetInstSeqLs(Imm & 0xfffffffffffff0000ULL, RemSize, SeqLs);
    AddInstr(SeqLs, Inst(ORi, Imm & 0xffffULL));
}

void Cpu0AnalyzeImmediate::GetInstSeqLsSHL(uint64_t Imm, unsigned RemSize,
                                             InstSeqLs &SeqLs) {
    unsigned Shamt = countTrailingZeros(Imm);
    GetInstSeqLs(Imm >> Shamt, RemSize - Shamt, SeqLs);
    AddInstr(SeqLs, Inst(SHL, Shamt));
}

void Cpu0AnalyzeImmediate::GetInstSeqLs(uint64_t Imm, unsigned RemSize,
                                         InstSeqLs &SeqLs) {
    uint64_t MaskedImm = Imm & (0xfffffffffffff000ULL >> (64 - Size));

    // Do nothing if Imm is 0.
    if (!MaskedImm)
        return;

    // A single ADDiu will do if RemSize <= 16.
    if (RemSize <= 16) {
        AddInstr(SeqLs, Inst(ADDiu, MaskedImm));
        return;
    }

    // Shift if the lower 16-bit is cleared.
    if (!(Imm & 0xffff)) {
        GetInstSeqLsSHL(Imm, RemSize, SeqLs);
        return;
    }

    GetInstSeqLsADDiu(Imm, RemSize, SeqLs);

    // If bit 15 is cleared, it doesn't make a difference whether the last
    // instruction is an ADDiu or ORi. In that case, do not call GetInstSeqLsORi.
    if (Imm & 0x8000) {
        InstSeqLs SeqLsORi;
        GetInstSeqLsORi(Imm, RemSize, SeqLsORi);
        SeqLs.insert(SeqLs.end(), SeqLsORi.begin(), SeqLsORi.end());
    }
}

// Replace a ADDiu & SHL pair with a LUi.
// e.g. the following two instructions
// ADDiu 0x0111
// SHL 18
// are replaced with
// LUi 0x444
```

```

void Cpu0AnalyzeImmediate::ReplaceADDiuSHLWithLUi(InstSeq &Seq) {
    // Check if the first two instructions are ADDiu and SHL and the shift amount
    // is at least 16.
    if ((Seq.size() < 2) || (Seq[0].Opc != ADDiu) ||
        (Seq[1].Opc != SHL) || (Seq[1].ImmOpnd < 16))
        return;

    // Sign-extend and shift operand of ADDiu and see if it still fits in 16-bit.
    int64_t Imm = SignExtend64<16>(Seq[0].ImmOpnd);
    int64_t ShiftedImm = (uint64_t)Imm << (Seq[1].ImmOpnd - 16);

    if (!isInt<16>(ShiftedImm))
        return;

    // Replace the first instruction and erase the second.
    Seq[0].Opc = LUi;
    Seq[0].ImmOpnd = (unsigned)(ShiftedImm & 0xffff);
    Seq.erase(Seq.begin() + 1);
}

void Cpu0AnalyzeImmediate::GetShortestSeq(InstSeqLs &SeqLs, InstSeq &Insts) {
    InstSeqLs::iterator ShortestSeq = SeqLs.end();
    // The length of an instruction sequence is at most 7.
    unsigned ShortestLength = 8;

    for (InstSeqLs::iterator S = SeqLs.begin(); S != SeqLs.end(); ++S) {
        ReplaceADDiuSHLWithLUi(*S);
        assert(S->size() <= 7);

        if (S->size() < ShortestLength) {
            ShortestSeq = S;
            ShortestLength = S->size();
        }
    }

    Insts.clear();
    Insts.append(ShortestSeq->begin(), ShortestSeq->end());
}

const Cpu0AnalyzeImmediate::InstSeq
&Cpu0AnalyzeImmediate::Analyze(uint64_t Imm, unsigned Size,
                                bool LastInstrIsADDiu) {
    this->Size = Size;

    ADDiu = Cpu0::ADDiu;
    ORi = Cpu0::ORi;
    SHL = Cpu0::SHL;
    LUi = Cpu0::LUi;

    InstSeqLs SeqLs;

    // Get the list of instruction sequences.
    if (LastInstrIsADDiu | !Imm)
        GetInstSeqLsADDiu(Imm, Size, SeqLs);
    else
        GetInstSeqLs(Imm, Size, SeqLs);

    // Set Insts to the shortest instruction sequence.
}

```

```

    GetShortestSeq(SeqLs, Insts);

    return Insts;
}

#endif

```

## Ibdex/chapters/Chapter3\_5/Cpu0InstrInfo.h

```
#include "Cpu0AnalyzeImmediate.h"
```

## Ibdex/chapters/Chapter3\_5/Cpu0InstrInfo.td

```
class Cpu0InstAlias<string Asm, dag Result, bit Emit = 0b1> :
    InstAlias<Asm, Result, Emit>;
```

```
def shamt      : Operand<i32>;

// Unsigned Operand
def uimm16     : Operand<i32> {
    let PrintMethod = "printUnsignedImm";
}
```

```
// Transformation Function - get the lower 16 bits.
def LO16 : SDNodeXForm<imm, [<
    return getImm(N, N->getZExtValue() & 0xffff);
]>;

// Transformation Function - get the higher 16 bits.
def HI16 : SDNodeXForm<imm, [<
    return getImm(N, (N->getZExtValue() >> 16) & 0xffff);
]>;
```

```
// Node immediate fits as 16-bit zero extended on target immediate.
// The LO16 param means that only the lower 16 bits of the node
// immediate are caught.
// e.g. addiu, sltiu
def immZExt16 : PatLeaf<(imm), [<
    if (N->getValueType(0) == MVT::i32)
        return (uint32_t)N->getZExtValue() == (unsigned short)N->getZExtValue();
    else
        return (uint64_t)N->getZExtValue() == (unsigned short)N->getZExtValue();
], LO16>;

// Immediate can be loaded with LUi (32-bit int with lower 16-bit cleared).
def immLow16Zero : PatLeaf<(imm), [<
    int64_t Val = N->getSExtValue();
    return isInt<32>(Val) && !(Val & 0xffff);
]>;

// shamt field must fit in 5 bits.
def immZExt5 : ImmLeaf<i32, [<{return Imm == (Imm & 0x1f);}>];
```

```

let Predicates = [Ch3_5] in {
// Arithmetic and logical instructions with 3 register operands.
class ArithLogicR<bits<8> op, string instr_asm, SDNode OpNode,
           InstrItinClass itin, RegisterClass RC, bit isComm = 0>:
    FA<op, (outs GPROut:$ra), (ins RC:$rb, RC:$rc),
      !strconcat(instr_asm, "\t$ra, $rb, $rc"),
      [(set GPROut:$ra, (OpNode RC:$rb, RC:$rc))], itin> {
        let shamrt = 0;
        let isCommutable = isComm;           // e.g. add rb rc = add rc rb
        let isReMaterializable = 1;
    }
}

```

```

let Predicates = [Ch3_5] in {
// Shifts
class shift_rotate_imm<bits<8> op, bits<4> isRotate, string instr_asm,
           SDNode OpNode, PatFrag PF, Operand ImmOpnd,
           RegisterClass RC>:
    FA<op, (outs GPROut:$ra), (ins RC:$rb, ImmOpnd:$shamt),
      !strconcat(instr_asm, "\t$ra, $rb, $shamt"),
      [(set GPROut:$ra, (OpNode RC:$rb, PF:$shamt))], IIAlu> {
        let rc = 0;
    }

// 32-bit shift instructions.
class shift_rotate_imm32<bits<8> op, bits<4> isRotate, string instr_asm,
           SDNode OpNode>:
    shift_rotate_imm<op, isRotate, instr_asm, OpNode, immZExt5, shamrt, CPURegs>;
}

```

```

let Predicates = [Ch3_5] in {
// Load Upper Immediate
class LoadUpper<bits<8> op, string instr_asm, RegisterClass RC, Operand Imm>:
    FL<op, (outs RC:$ra), (ins Imm:$imm16),
      !strconcat(instr_asm, "\t$ra, $imm16"), [], IIAlu> {
        let rb = 0;
        let isReMaterializable = 1;
    }
}

```

```

let Predicates = [Ch3_5] in {
def ORi      : ArithLogicI<0x0d, "ori", or, uimm16, immZExt16, CPURegs>;
}

```

```

let Predicates = [Ch3_5] in {
def LUI      : LoadUpper<0x0f, "lui", GPROut, uimm16>;
}

```

```

let Predicates = [Ch3_5] in {
let Predicates = [DisableOverflow] in {
def ADDu     : ArithLogicR<0x11, "addu", add, IIAlu, CPURegs, 1>;
}
}

```

```
let Predicates = [Ch3_5] in {
def SHL      : shift_rotate_imm32<0x1e, 0x00, "shl", shl>;
}
```

```
let Predicates = [Ch3_5] in {
//=====
// Instruction aliases
//=====
def : Cpu0InstAlias<"move $dst, $src",
           (ADDu GPROut:$dst, GPROut:$src,ZERO), 1>;
}
```

```
let Predicates = [Ch3_5] in {
def : Pat<(i32 immZExt16:$in),
      (ORi ZERO, imm:$in)>;
def : Pat<(i32 immLow16Zero:$in),
      (LUi (HI16 imm:$in))>;

// Arbitrary immediates
def : Pat<(i32 imm:$imm),
      (ORi (LUI (HI16 imm:$imm)), (LO16 imm:$imm))>;
} // let Predicates = [Ch3_4]
```

The Cpu0AnalyzeImmediate.cpp written in recursive with a little complicate in logic. However, the recursive skills is used in the front end compile book, you should familiar with it. Instead of tracking the code, listing the stack size and the instructions generated in “Table: Cpu0 stack adjustment instructions before replace addiu and shl with lui instruction” as follows and “Table: Cpu0 stack adjustment instructions after replace addiu and shl with lui instruction” at next,

Table 3.4: Cpu0 stack adjustment instructions before replace addiu and shl with lui instruction

stack size range	ex. stack size	Cpu0 Prologue instructions	Cpu0 Epilogue instructions
0 ~ 0x7ff8	• 0x7ff8	• addiu \$sp, \$sp, -32760;	• addiu \$sp, \$sp, 32760;
0x8000 ~ 0xffff8	• 0x8000	• addiu \$sp, \$sp, -32768;	• addiu \$1, \$zero, 1; • shl \$1, \$1, 16; • addiu \$1, \$1, -32768; • addu \$sp, \$sp, \$1;
x10000 ~ 0xffffffff8	• 0x7fffffff8	• addiu \$1, \$zero, 8; • shl \$1, \$1, 28; • addiu \$1, \$1, 8; • addu \$sp, \$sp, \$1;	• addiu \$1, \$zero, 8; • shl \$1, \$1, 28; • addiu \$1, \$1, -8; • addu \$sp, \$sp, \$1;
x10000 ~ 0xfffffffff8	• 0x90008000	• addiu \$1, \$zero, -9; • shl \$1, \$1, 28; • addiu \$1, \$1, -32768; • addu \$sp, \$sp, \$1;	• addiu \$1, \$zero, -28671; • shl \$1, \$1, 16 • addiu \$1, \$1, -32768; • addu \$sp, \$sp, \$1;

Since the Cpu0 stack is 8 bytes alignment, addresses from 0x7ff9 to 0x7fff are impossible existing.

Assume sp = 0xa0008000 and stack size = 0x90008000, then (0xa0008000 - 0x90008000) => 0x10000000. Verify with the Cpu0 Prologue instructions as follows,

1. “addiu \$1, \$zero, -9” => (\$1 = 0 + 0xffffffff7) => \$1 = 0xffffffff7.
2. “shl \$1, \$1, 28;” => \$1 = 0x70000000.
3. “addiu \$1, \$1, -32768” => \$1 = (0x70000000 + 0xffff8000) => \$1 = 0x6fff8000.
4. “addu \$sp, \$sp, \$1” => \$sp = (0xa0008000 + 0x6fff8000) => \$sp = 0x10000000.

Verify with the Cpu0 Epilogue instructions with sp = 0x10000000 and stack size = 0x90008000 as follows,

1. “addiu \$1, \$zero, -28671” => (\$1 = 0 + 0xffff9001) => \$1 = 0xffff9001.
2. “shl \$1, \$1, 16;” => \$1 = 0x90010000.
3. “addiu \$1, \$1, -32768” => \$1 = (0x90010000 + 0xffff8000) => \$1 = 0x90008000.
4. “addu \$sp, \$sp, \$1” => \$sp = (0x10000000 + 0x90008000) => \$sp = 0xa0008000.

The Cpu0AnalyzeImmediate::GetShortestSeq() will call Cpu0AnalyzeImmediate:: ReplaceADDiuSHLWithLUI() to replace addiu and shl with single instruction lui only. The effect as the following table.

Table 3.5: Cpu0 stack adjustment instructions after replace addiu and shl with lui instruction

stack size range	ex. stack size	Cpu0 Prologue instructions	Cpu0 Epilogue instructions
0x8000 ~ 0xffff8	• 0x8000	• addiu \$sp, \$sp, -32768;	• ori \$1, \$zero, 32768; • addu \$sp, \$sp, \$1;
0x10000 ~ 0xfffffff8	• 0x7fffffff8	• lui \$1, 32768; • addiu \$1, \$1, 8; • addu \$sp, \$sp, \$1;	• lui \$1, 32767; • ori \$1, \$1, 65528 • addu \$sp, \$sp, \$1;
0x10000 ~ 0xffffffff8	• 0x90008000	• lui \$1, 28671; • ori \$1, \$1, 32768; • addu \$sp, \$sp, \$1;	• lui \$1, 36865; • addiu \$1, \$1, -32768; • addu \$sp, \$sp, \$1;

Assume sp = 0xa0008000 and stack size = 0x90008000, then (0xa0008000 - 0x90008000) => 0x10000000. Verify with the Cpu0 Prologue instructions as follows,

1. “lui \$1, 28671” => \$1 = 0x6fff0000.
2. “ori \$1, \$1, 32768” => \$1 = (0x6fff0000 + 0x00008000) => \$1 = 0x6fff8000.
3. “addu \$sp, \$sp, \$1” => \$sp = (0xa0008000 + 0x6fff8000) => \$sp = 0x10000000.

Verify with the Cpu0 Epilogue instructions with sp = 0x10000000 and stack size = 0x90008000 as follows,

1. “lui \$1, 36865” => \$1 = 0x90010000.
2. “addiu \$1, \$1, -32768” => \$1 = (0x90010000 + 0xffff8000) => \$1 = 0x90008000.
3. “addu \$sp, \$sp, \$1” => \$sp = (0x10000000 + 0x90008000) => \$sp = 0xa0008000.

File ch3\_largeframe.cpp include the large frame test.

Run Chapter3\_5 with ch3\_largeframe.cpp will get the following result.

**Ibdex/input/ch3\_largeframe.cpp**

```
int test_largeframe() {
    int a[469753856];

    return 0;
}
```

```
118-165-78-12:input Jonathan$ clang -target mips-unknown-linux-gnu -c
ch3_largeframe.cpp -emit-llvm -o ch3_largeframe.bc
118-165-78-12:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/
Debug/bin/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm
ch3_largeframe.bc.bc -o -
...
.section .mdebug.abi032
.previous
.file "ch3_largeframe.bc"
.globl _Z16test_largeframev
.align 2
.type _Z16test_largeframev,@function
.ent _Z16test_largeframev # @_Z16test_largeframev
_Z16test_largeframev:
.frame $fp,1879015424,$lr
.mask 0x00000000,0
.set noreorder
.set nomacro
.set noat
# BB#0:
    lui $1, 36865
    addiu $1, $1, -32768
    addu $sp, $sp, $1
    addiu $2, $zero, 0
    lui $1, 28672
    addiu $1, $1, -32768
    addu $sp, $sp, $1
    ret $lr
.set at
.set macro
.set reorder
.end _Z16test_largeframev
$func_end0:
.size _Z16test_largeframev, ($func_end0)-_Z16test_largeframev
```

## 3.6 Data operands DAGs

From above or compiler book, you can see all the OP code are the internal nodes in DAGs graph, and operands are the leaves of DAGs. To develop your backend, you can copy the related data operands DAGs node from other backend since the IR data nodes are take cared by all the backend. About the data DAGs nodes, you can understand some of them through the Cpu0InstrInfo.td and find them by command, grep -R "<datadag>" 'find src/include/llvm', with spending a little more time to think or guess about it. Some data DAGs we know more, some we know a little and some remains unknown but it's OK for us. List some of data DAGs we understand and occurred until now as follows,

### include/llvm/Target/TargetSelectionDAG.td

```
// PatLeaf's are pattern fragments that have no operands. This is just a helper
// to define immediates and other common things concisely.
class PatLeaf<dag frag, code pred = {}, SDNodeXForm xform = NOOP_SDNodeXForm>
: PatFrag<(ops), frag, pred, xform>;

// ImmLeaf is a pattern fragment with a constraint on the immediate. The
// constraint is a function that is run on the immediate (always with the value
// sign extended out to an int64_t) as Imm. For example:
//
// def immSExt8 : ImmLeaf<i16, [{ return (char)Imm == Imm; }]>;
//
// this is a more convenient form to match 'imm' nodes in than PatLeaf and also
// is preferred over using PatLeaf because it allows the code generator to
// reason more about the constraint.
//
// If FastIsel should ignore all instructions that have an operand of this type,
// the FastIselShouldIgnore flag can be set. This is an optimization to reduce
// the code size of the generated fast instruction selector.
class ImmLeaf<ValueType vt, code pred, SDNodeXForm xform = NOOP_SDNodeXForm>
: PatFrag<(ops), (vt imm), {}, xform> {
let ImmediateCode = pred;
bit FastIselShouldIgnore = 0;
}
```

### libdex/chapters/Chapter3\_5/Cpu0InstrInfo.td

```
// Signed Operand
def simm16      : Operand<i32> {
let DecoderMethod= "DecodeSimm16";
}

def shamt       : Operand<i32>;

// Unsigned Operand
def uimm16      : Operand<i32> {
let PrintMethod = "printUnsignedImm";
}

// Address operand
def mem : Operand<iPTR> {
let PrintMethod = "printMemOperand";
let MIOperandInfo = (ops CPURegs, simm16);
let EncoderMethod = "getMemEncoding";
}

// Transformation Function - get the lower 16 bits.
def LO16 : SDNodeXForm<imm, [
return getImm(N, N->getZExtValue() & 0xffff);
]>;

// Transformation Function - get the higher 16 bits.
```

```
def HI16 : SDNodeXForm<imm, [{  
    return getImm(N, (N->getZExtValue() >> 16) & 0xffff);  
}]>;
```

```
// Node immediate fits as 16-bit sign extended on target immediate.  
// e.g. addi, andi  
def immSExt16 : PatLeaf<(imm), [{ return isInt<16>(N->getSExtValue()); }]>;
```

```
// Node immediate fits as 16-bit zero extended on target immediate.  
// The LO16 param means that only the lower 16 bits of the node  
// immediate are caught.  
// e.g. addiu, sltiu  
def immZExt16 : PatLeaf<(imm), [{  
    if (N->getValueType(0) == MVT::i32)  
        return (uint32_t)N->getZExtValue() == (unsigned short)N->getZExtValue();  
    else  
        return (uint64_t)N->getZExtValue() == (unsigned short)N->getZExtValue();  
}, LO16>;  
  
// Immediate can be loaded with LUi (32-bit int with lower 16-bit cleared).  
def immLow16Zero : PatLeaf<(imm), [{  
    int64_t Val = N->getSExtValue();  
    return isInt<32>(Val) && !(Val & 0xffff);  
}]>;  
  
// shamt field must fit in 5 bits.  
def immZExt5 : ImmLeaf<i32, [{return Imm == (Imm & 0x1f);}]>;
```

```
// Cpu0 Address Mode! SDNode frameindex could possibly be a match  
// since load and store instructions from stack used it.  
def addr :  
    ComplexPattern<iPTR, 2, "SelectAddr", [frameindex], [SDNPWantParent]>;  
  
//=====//  
// Pattern fragment for load/store  
//=====//  
  
class AlignedLoad<PatFrag Node> :  
    PatFrag<(ops node:$ptr), (Node node:$ptr), [{  
        LoadSDNode *LD = cast<LoadSDNode>(N);  
        return LD->getMemoryVT().getSizeInBits()/8 <= LD->getAlignment();  
}]>;  
  
class AlignedStore<PatFrag Node> :  
    PatFrag<(ops node:$val, node:$ptr), (Node node:$val, node:$ptr), [{  
        StoreSDNode *SD = cast<StoreSDNode>(N);  
        return SD->getMemoryVT().getSizeInBits()/8 <= SD->getAlignment();  
}]>;
```

```
def load_a      : AlignedLoad<load>;
```

```
def store_a     : AlignedStore<store>;
```

As mentioned in sub-section “instruction selection” of last chapter, immSExt16 is a data leaf DAG node and it will return true if its value is in the range of signed 16 bits integer. The load\_a, store\_a and others are similar but they check with alignment.

The mem is explained in chapter3\_2 for print operand; addr is explained in chapter3\_3 for data DAG selection. The imm16, ..., inherited from Operand*<i32>* because Cpu0 is 32 bits. It may over 16 bits, so immSExt16 pattern leaf is used to control it as example ADDiu mention in last chapter. PatLeaf immZExt16, immLow16Zero and ImmLeaf immZExt5 are similar to immSExt16.

## 3.7 Summary of this Chapter

Summary the functions for llvm backend stages as the following table.

```
118-165-79-200:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/
Debug/bin/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm ch3.bc
-debug-pass=Structure -o -
...
Machine Branch Probability Analysis
ModulePass Manager
FunctionPass Manager
...
CPU0 DAG->DAG Pattern Instruction Selection
Initial selection DAG
Optimized lowered selection DAG
Type-legalized selection DAG
Optimized type-legalized selection DAG
Legalized selection DAG
Optimized legalized selection DAG
Instruction selection
Selected selection DAG
Scheduling
...
Greedy Register Allocator
...
Prologue/Epilogue Insertion & Frame Finalization
...
Post-RA pseudo instruction expansion pass
...
Cpu0 Assembly Printer
```

Table 3.6: Functions for llvm backend stages

Stage	Function
Before CPU0 DAG->DAG Pattern Instruction Selection	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Cpu0TargetLowering::LowerFormalArguments</li> <li>• Cpu0TargetLowering::LowerReturn</li> </ul>
Instruction selection	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Cpu0DAGToDAGISel::Select</li> </ul>
Prologue/Epilogue Insertion & Frame Finalization	
• Determine spill callee saved registers	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Cpu0SEFrameLowering::determineCalleeSaves</li> </ul>
• Spill callee saved registers	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Cpu0SEFrameLowering::spillCalleeSavedRegisters</li> </ul>
• Prolog	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Cpu0SEFrameLowering::emitPrologue</li> </ul>
• Epilog	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Cpu0SEFrameLowering::emitEpilogue</li> </ul>
• Handle stack slot for local variables	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Cpu0RegisterInfo::eliminateFrameIndex</li> </ul>
Post-RA pseudo instruction expansion pass	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Cpu0SEInstrInfo::expandPostRAPseudo</li> </ul>
Cpu0 Assembly Printer	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Cpu0AsmPrinter.cpp, Cpu0MCInstLower.cpp</li> <li>• Cpu0InstPrinter.cpp</li> </ul>

We add a pass in Instruction Section stage in section “Add Cpu0DAGToDAGISel class”. You can embed your code into other passes like that. Please check CodeGen/Passes.h for the information. Remember the pass is called according the function unit as the `llc -debug-pass=Structure` indicated.

We have finished a simple compiler for cpu0 which only supports **ld, st, addiu, ori, lui, addu, shl** and **ret** 8 instructions.

We are satisfied with this result. But you may think “After so much code we program, and just get these 8 instructions!”. The point is we have created a frame work for Cpu0 target machine (please look back the llvm backend structure class inheritance tree early in this chapter). Until now, we have over 3000 lines of source code with comments which include files \*.cpp, \*.h, \*.td, CMakeLists.txt and LLVMBuild.txt. It can be counted by command `wc `find dir -name *.cpp`` for files \*.cpp, \*.h, \*.td, \*.txt. LLVM front end tutorial have 700 lines of source code without comments in total. Don’t feel down with this result. In reality, writing a backend is warm up slowly but run fastly. Clang has over 500,000 lines of source code with comments in clang/lib directory which include C++ and Obj C support. Mips backend of llvm 3.1 has only 15,000 lines with comments. Even the complicate X86 CPU which CISC outside and RISC inside (micro instruction), has only 45,000 lines in llvm 3.1 with comments. In next chapter, we will show you that add a new instruction support is as easy as 123.

## ARITHMETIC AND LOGIC INSTRUCTIONS

- *Arithmetic*
  - +, -, \*, <<, and >>
  - *Display llvm IR nodes with Graphviz*
  - *Operator % and /*
    - \* *The DAG of %*
    - \* *Arm solution*
    - \* *Mips solution*
    - \* *Full support %, and /*
  - *Rotate instructions*
- *Logic*
- *Summary*

This chapter adds more Cpu0 arithmetic instructions support first. The section *Display llvm IR nodes with Graphviz* will show you the steps of DAG optimization and their corresponding `llc` display options. These DAGs translation existed in some steps of optimization can be displayed by the graphic tool of Graphviz which supply useful information in graphic view. Logic instructions support will come after arithmetic section. In spite of that llvm backend handle the IR only, we get the IR from the corresponding C operators with designed C example code. Through compiling with C code, readers can know exactly what kind of C statements are handled by each chapter's appending code. Instead of focusing on classes relationship in this backend structure of last chapter, readers should focus on the mapping of C operators and llvm IR and how to define the mapping relationship of IR and instructions in `td`. HILO and C0 register class are defined in this chapter. Readers will know how to handle other register classes beside general purpose register class, and why they are needed, from this chapter.

### 4.1 Arithmetic

The code added in Chapter4\_1/ to support arithmetic instructions as follows,

#### **lbdex/chapters/Chapter4\_1/Cpu0Subtarget.cpp**

```
static cl::opt<bool> EnableOverflowOpt
    ("cpu0-enable-overflow", cl::Hidden, cl::init(false),
```

```
cl::desc("Use trigger overflow instructions add and sub \
instead of non-overflow instructions addu and subu"));
```

```
Cpu0Subtarget::Cpu0Subtarget(const Triple &TT, const std::string &CPU,
                           const std::string &FS, bool little,
                           const Cpu0TargetMachine &_TM) :
```

```
...
```

```
EnableOverflow = EnableOverflowOpt;
```

```
...
```

## Ibdex/chapters/Chapter4\_1/Cpu0InstrInfo.td

```
// Only op DAG can be disabled by ch4_1, data DAG cannot.
def SDT_Cpu0DivRem : SDTypeProfile<0, 2,
                           [SDTCisInt<0>,
                            SDTCisSameAs<0, 1>]>;
```

```
// DivRem(u) nodes
def Cpu0DivRem : SDNode<"Cpu0ISD::DivRem", SDT_Cpu0DivRem,
                    [SDNPOutGlue]>;
def Cpu0DivRemU : SDNode<"Cpu0ISD::DivRemU", SDT_Cpu0DivRem,
                    [SDNPOutGlue]>;
```

```
let Predicates = [Ch4_1] in {
class shift_rotate_reg<bits<8> op, bits<4> isRotate, string instr_asm,
                     SDNode OpNode, RegisterClass RC>:
    FA<op, (outs GPROut:$ra), (ins RC:$rb, RC:$rc),
        !strconcat(instr_asm, "\t$ra, $rb, $rc"),
        [(set GPROut:$ra, (OpNode RC:$rb, RC:$rc))], IIAlu> {
        let shamt = 0;
    }
}
```

```
let Predicates = [Ch4_1] in {
// Mul, Div
class Mult<bits<8> op, string instr_asm, InstrItinClass itin,
            RegisterClass RC, list<Register> DefRegs>:
    FA<op, (outs), (ins RC:$ra, RC:$rb),
        !strconcat(instr_asm, "\t$ra, $rb"), [], itin> {
    let rc = 0;
    let shamt = 0;
    let isCommutable = 1;
    let Defs = DefRegs;
    let hasSideEffects = 0;
}

class Mult32<bits<8> op, string instr_asm, InstrItinClass itin>:
    Mult<op, instr_asm, itin, CPURegs, [HI, LO]>;
```

```

class Div<SDNode opNode, bits<8> op, string instr_asm, InstrItinClass itin,
           RegisterClass RC, list<Register> DefRegs>:
  FA<op, (outs), (ins RC:$ra, RC:$rb),
    !strconcat(instr_asm, "\t$ra, $rb"),
    [(opNode RC:$ra, RC:$rb)], itin> {
  let rc = 0;
  let shamt = 0;
  let Defs = DefRegs;
}

class Div32<SDNode opNode, bits<8> op, string instr_asm, InstrItinClass itin>:
  Div<opNode, op, instr_asm, itin, CPURegs, [HI, LO]>

// Move from Lo/Hi
class MoveFromLOHI<bits<8> op, string instr_asm, RegisterClass RC,
                     list<Register> UseRegs>:
  FA<op, (outs RC:$ra), (ins),
    !strconcat(instr_asm, "\t$ra"), [], IIHiLo> {
  let rb = 0;
  let rc = 0;
  let shamt = 0;
  let Uses = UseRegs;
  let hasSideEffects = 0;
}

// Move to Lo/Hi
class MoveToLOHI<bits<8> op, string instr_asm, RegisterClass RC,
                     list<Register> DefRegs>:
  FA<op, (outs), (ins RC:$ra),
    !strconcat(instr_asm, "\t$ra"), [], IIHiLo> {
  let rb = 0;
  let rc = 0;
  let shamt = 0;
  let Defs = DefRegs;
  let hasSideEffects = 0;
}

// Move from C0 (co-processor 0) Register
class MoveFromC0<bits<8> op, string instr_asm, RegisterClass RC>:
  FA<op, (outs), (ins RC:$ra, C0Regs:$rb),
    !strconcat(instr_asm, "\t$ra, $rb"), [], IIAlu> {
  let rc = 0;
  let shamt = 0;
  let hasSideEffects = 0;
}

// Move to C0 Register
class MoveToC0<bits<8> op, string instr_asm, RegisterClass RC>:
  FA<op, (outs C0Regs:$ra), (ins RC:$rb),
    !strconcat(instr_asm, "\t$ra, $rb"), [], IIAlu> {
  let rc = 0;
  let shamt = 0;
  let hasSideEffects = 0;
}

// Move from C0 register to C0 register
class C0Move<bits<8> op, string instr_asm>:
  FA<op, (outs C0Regs:$ra), (ins C0Regs:$rb),

```

```

!strconcat(instr_asm, "\t$ra, $rb"), [], IIAlu> {
let rc = 0;
let shamt = 0;
let hasSideEffects = 0;
}
} // let Predicates = [Ch4_1]

```

```

let Predicates = [Ch4_1] in {
let Predicates = [DisableOverflow] in {
def SUBu      : ArithLogicR<0x12, "subu", sub, IIAlu, CPURegs>;
}
let Predicates = [EnableOverflow] in {
def ADD       : ArithLogicR<0x13, "add", add, IIAlu, CPURegs, 1>;
def SUB       : ArithLogicR<0x14, "sub", sub, IIAlu, CPURegs>;
}
def MUL       : ArithLogicR<0x17, "mul", mul, IIImul, CPURegs, 1>;
}

```

```

let Predicates = [Ch4_1] in {
// sra is IR node for ashv llvm IR instruction of .bc
def ROL      : shift_rotate_imm32<0x1b, 0x01, "rol", rotl>;
def ROR      : shift_rotate_imm32<0x1c, 0x01, "ror", rotr>;
def SRA      : shift_rotate_imm32<0x1d, 0x00, "sra", sra>;
}

```

```

let Predicates = [Ch4_1] in {
// srl is IR node for lshv llvm IR instruction of .bc
def SHR      : shift_rotate_imm32<0x1f, 0x00, "shr", srl>;
def SRAV     : shift_rotate_reg<0x20, 0x00, "sra", sra, CPURegs>;
def SHLV     : shift_rotate_reg<0x21, 0x00, "shlv", shl, CPURegs>;
def SHRV     : shift_rotate_reg<0x22, 0x00, "shrv", srl, CPURegs>;
def ROLV     : shift_rotate_reg<0x23, 0x01, "rolv", rotl, CPURegs>;
def RORV     : shift_rotate_reg<0x24, 0x01, "rorv", rotr, CPURegs>;
}

```

```

let Predicates = [Ch4_1] in {
/// Multiply and Divide Instructions.
def MULT     : Mult32<0x41, "mult", IIImul>;
def MULTu    : Mult32<0x42, "multu", IIImul>;
def SDIV     : Div32<Cpu0DivRem, 0x43, "div", IIIdiv>;
def UDIV     : Div32<Cpu0DivRemU, 0x44, "divu", IIIdiv>;

def MFHI     : MoveFromLOHI<0x46, "mfhi", CPURegs, [HI]>;
def MFLO     : MoveFromLOHI<0x47, "mflo", CPURegs, [LO]>;
def MTHI     : MoveToLOHI<0x48, "mthi", CPURegs, [HI]>;
def MTLO     : MoveToLOHI<0x49, "mtlo", CPURegs, [LO]>;

def MFC0     : MoveFromC0<0x50, "mfc0", CPURegs>;
def MTC0     : MoveToC0<0x51, "mtc0", CPURegs>;

def C0MOVE   : C0Move<0x52, "c0mov">;
}

```

## Ibdex/chapters/Chapter4\_1/Cpu0ISelLowering.h

```
SDValue PerformDAGCombine(SDNode *N, DAGCombinerInfo &DCI) const override;
```

## Ibdex/chapters/Chapter4\_1/Cpu0ISelLowering.cpp

```
Cpu0TargetLowering::Cpu0TargetLowering(const Cpu0TargetMachine &TM,
                                       const Cpu0Subtarget &STI)
    : TargetLowering(TM), Subtarget(STI), ABI(TM.getABI()) {
```

```
    setOperationAction(ISD::SDIV, MVT::i32, Expand);
    setOperationAction(ISD::SREM, MVT::i32, Expand);
    setOperationAction(ISD::UDIV, MVT::i32, Expand);
    setOperationAction(ISD::UREM, MVT::i32, Expand);
```

```
    setTargetDAGCombine(ISD::SDIVREM);
    setTargetDAGCombine(ISD::UDIVREM);
```

```
    ...
}
```

```
static SDValue performDivRemCombine(SDNode *N, SelectionDAG& DAG,
                                    TargetLowering::DAGCombinerInfo &DCI,
                                    const Cpu0Subtarget &Subtarget) {
    if (DCI.isBeforeLegalizeOps())
        return SDValue();

    EVT Ty = N->getValueType(0);
    unsigned LO = Cpu0::LO;
    unsigned HI = Cpu0::HI;
    unsigned Opc = N->getOpcode() == ISD::SDIVREM ? Cpu0ISD::DivRem :
                                                       Cpu0ISD::DivRemU;
    SDLoc DL(N);

    SDValue DivRem = DAG.getNode(Opc, DL, MVT::Glue,
                                 N->getOperand(0), N->getOperand(1));
    SDValue InChain = DAG.getEntryNode();
    SDValue InGlue = DivRem;

    // insert MFLO
    if (N->hasAnyUseOfValue(0)) {
        SDValue CopyFromLo = DAG.getCopyFromReg(InChain, DL, LO, Ty,
                                                InGlue);
        DAG.ReplaceAllUsesOfValueWith(SDValue(N, 0), CopyFromLo);
        InChain = CopyFromLo.getValue(1);
        InGlue = CopyFromLo.getValue(2);
    }

    // insert MFHI
    if (N->hasAnyUseOfValue(1)) {
        SDValue CopyFromHi = DAG.getCopyFromReg(InChain, DL,
                                                HI, Ty, InGlue);
```

```

        DAG.ReplaceAllUsesOfValueWith(SDValue(N, 1), CopyFromHi);
    }

    return SDValue();
}

SDValue Cpu0TargetLowering::PerformDAGCombine(SDNode *N, DAGCombinerInfo &DCI)
{
    const {
        SelectionDAG &DAG = DCI.DAG;
        unsigned Opc = N->getOpcode();

        switch (Opc) {
        default: break;
        case ISD::SDIVREM:
        case ISD::UDIVREM:
            return performDivRemCombine(N, DAG, DCI, Subtarget);
        }

        return SDValue();
}

```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter4\_1/Cpu0RegisterInfo.td

```

let Namespace = "Cpu0" in {

// Hi/Lo registers number and name
def HI   : Cpu0Reg<0, "ac0">, DwarfRegNum<[18]>;
def LO   : Cpu0Reg<0, "ac0">, DwarfRegNum<[19]>;

}

...

// Hi/Lo Registers class
def HILO : RegisterClass<"Cpu0", [i32], 32, (add HI, LO)>;

```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter4\_1/Cpu0Schedule.td

```

def IIIHiLo      : InstrItinClass;
def IIImul       : InstrItinClass;
def IIIdiv        : InstrItinClass;

def Cpu0GenericItineraries : ProcessorItineraries<[ALU, IMULDIV], [], [
    InstrItinData<IIIHiLo           , [InstrStage<1, [IMULDIV]>]>,
    InstrItinData<IIImul            , [InstrStage<17, [IMULDIV]>]>,
    InstrItinData<IIIdiv             , [InstrStage<38, [IMULDIV]>]>,
]>;

```

**Ibdex/chapters/Chapter4\_1/Cpu0SEISelDAGToDAG.h**

```
std::pair<SDNode *, SDNode *> selectMULT(SDNode *N, unsigned Opc,
                                             const SDLoc &DL, EVT Ty, bool HasLo,
                                             bool HasHi);
```

**Ibdex/chapters/Chapter4\_1/Cpu0SEISelDAGToDAG.cpp**

```
/// Select multiply instructions.
std::pair<SDNode *, SDNode *>
Cpu0SEISelDAGToDAG::selectMULT(SDNode *N, unsigned Opc, const SDLoc &DL, EVT Ty,
                                 bool HasLo, bool HasHi) {
    SDNode *Lo = 0, *Hi = 0;
    SDNode *Mul = CurDAG->getMachineNode(Opc, DL, MVT::Glue, N->getOperand(0),
                                           N->getOperand(1));
    SDValue InFlag = SDValue(Mul, 0);

    if (HasLo) {
        Lo = CurDAG->getMachineNode(Cpu0::MFLO, DL,
                                       Ty, MVT::Glue, InFlag);
        InFlag = SDValue(Lo, 1);
    }
    if (HasHi)
        Hi = CurDAG->getMachineNode(Cpu0::MFHI, DL,
                                       Ty, InFlag);

    return std::make_pair(Lo, Hi);
}
```

```
bool Cpu0SEISelDAGToDAG::trySelect(SDNode *Node) {
    unsigned Opcode = Node->getOpcode();
    SDLoc DL(Node);

    /**
     // Instruction Selection not handled by the auto-generated
     // tablegen selection should be handled here.
     **/

    /**
     // Instruction Selection not handled by the auto-generated
     // tablegen selection should be handled here.
     **/

    EVT NodeTy = Node->getValueType(0);
    unsigned MultOpc;

    switch(Opcode) {
    default: break;
```

```
case ISD::MULHS:
case ISD::MULHU: {
    MultOpc = (Opcode == ISD::MULHU ? Cpu0::MULTu : Cpu0::MULT);
    auto LoHi = selectMULT(Node, MultOpc, DL, NodeTy, false, true);
    ReplaceNode(Node, LoHi.second);
    return true;
}
```

```
}

case ISD::Constant: {
    const ConstantSDNode *CN = dyn_cast<ConstantSDNode>(Node);
    unsigned Size = CN->getValueSizeInBits(0);

    if (Size == 32)
        break;

    return true;
}
```

```
}
...
}
```

### [Index](#)/[chapters](#)/[Chapter4\\_1](#)/[Cpu0SEInstrInfo.h](#)

```
void copyPhysReg(MachineBasicBlock &MBB, MachineBasicBlock::iterator MI,
                  const DebugLoc &DL, unsigned DestReg, unsigned SrcReg,
                  bool KillSrc) const override;
```

### [Index](#)/[chapters](#)/[Chapter4\\_1](#)/[Cpu0SEInstrInfo.cpp](#)

```
void Cpu0SEInstrInfo::copyPhysReg(MachineBasicBlock &MBB,
                                   MachineBasicBlock::iterator I,
                                   const DebugLoc &DL, unsigned DestReg,
                                   unsigned SrcReg, bool KillSrc) const {
    unsigned Opc = 0, ZeroReg = 0;

    if (Cpu0::CPURegsRegClass.contains(DestReg)) { // Copy to CPU Reg.
        if (Cpu0::CPURegsRegClass.contains(SrcReg))
            Opc = Cpu0::ADDu, ZeroReg = Cpu0::ZERO;
        else if (SrcReg == Cpu0::HI)
            Opc = Cpu0::MFHI, SrcReg = 0;
        else if (SrcReg == Cpu0::LO)
            Opc = Cpu0::MFLO, SrcReg = 0;
    }
    else if (Cpu0::CPURegsRegClass.contains(SrcReg)) { // Copy from CPU Reg.
        if (DestReg == Cpu0::HI)
            Opc = Cpu0::MTHI, DestReg = 0;
        else if (DestReg == Cpu0::LO)
            Opc = Cpu0::MTLO, DestReg = 0;
    }

    assert(Opc && "Cannot copy registers");

    MachineInstrBuilder MIB = BuildMI(MBB, I, DL, get(Opc));

    if (DestReg)
        MIB.addReg(DestReg, RegState::Define);

    if (ZeroReg)
```

```

MIB.addReg(ZeroReg);

if (SrcReg)
    MIB.addReg(SrcReg, getKillRegState(KillSrc));
}

```

#### 4.1.1 +, -, \*, <<, and >>

The ADDu, ADD, SUBu, SUB and MUL defined in Chapter4\_1/Cpu0InstrInfo.td are for operators +, -, \*. SHL (defined before) and SHLV are for <<. SRA, SRAV, SHR and SHRV are for >>.

In RISC CPU, such as Mips, the multiply/divide function unit and add/sub/logic unit are designed from two different hardware circuits, and more, their data path are separate. Cpu0 is same, so these two function units can be executed at same time (instruction level parallelism). Reference <sup>1</sup> for instruction itineraries.

Chapter4\_1/ can handle +, -, \*, <<, and >> operators in C language. The corresponding llvm IR instructions are **add**, **sub**, **mul**, **shl**, **ashr**. The ‘**ashr**’ instruction (arithmetic shift right) returns the first operand shifted to the right a specified number of bits with sign extension. In brief, we call **ashr** is “shift with sign extension fill”.

##### Note: ash

**Example:** <result> = ash i32 4, 1 ; yields {i32}:result = 2

<result> = ash i8 -2, 1 ; yields {i8}:result = -1

<result> = ash i32 1, 32 ; undefined

The semantic of C operator >> for negative operand is dependent on implementation. Most compilers translate it into “shift with sign extension fill”, and Mips **sra** is this instruction. Following is the Microsoft web site’s explanation,

##### Note: >>, Microsoft Specific

The result of a right shift of a signed negative quantity is implementation dependent. Although Microsoft C++ propagates the most-significant bit to fill vacated bit positions, there is no guarantee that other implementations will do likewise.

In addition to **ashr**, the other instruction “shift with zero filled” **lshr** in llvm (Mips implement lshr with instruction **srl**) has the following meaning.

##### Note: lshr

**Example:** <result> = lshr i8 -2, 1 ; yields {i8}:result = 0x7FFFFFFF

In llvm, IR node **sra** is defined for ash IR instruction, and node **srl** is defined for lshr instruction (We don’t know why it doesn’t use ash and lshr as the IR node name directly). Summary as the Table: C operator >> implementation.

<sup>1</sup> [http://llvm.org/docs/doxygen/html/structllvm\\_1\\_1InstrStage.html](http://llvm.org/docs/doxygen/html/structllvm_1_1InstrStage.html)

Table 4.1: C operator >> implementation

Description	Shift with zero filled	Shift with signed extension filled
symbol in .bc	lshr	ashr
symbol in IR node	srl	sra
Mips instruction	srl	sra
Cpu0 instruction	shr	sra
signed example before $x >> 1$	0xffffffff i.e. -2	0xffffffff i.e. -2
signed example after $x >> 1$	0x7fffffff i.e. 2G-1	0xffffffff i.e. -1
unsigned example before $x >> 1$	0xffffffff i.e. 4G-2	0xffffffff i.e. 4G-2
unsigned example after $x >> 1$	0x7fffffff i.e. 2G-1	0xffffffff i.e. 4G-1

**lshr:** Logical SHift Right

**ashr:** Arithmetic SHift right

**srl:** Shift Right Logically

**sra:** Shift Right Arithmetically

**shr:** SHift Right

If we consider the  $x >> 1$  definition is  $x = x/2$  for compiler implementation. Then as you can see from Table: C operator >> implementation, **lshr** will fail on some signed value (such as -2). In the same way, **ashr** will fail on some unsigned value (such as 4G-2). So, in order to satisfy this definition in both signed and unsigned integers of x, we need these two instructions, **lshr** and **ashr**.

Table 4.2: C operator << implementation

Description	Shift with zero filled
symbol in .bc	shl
symbol in IR node	shl
Mips instruction	sll
Cpu0 instruction	shl
signed example before $x << 1$	0x40000000 i.e. 1G
signed example after $x << 1$	0x80000000 i.e. -2G
unsigned example before $x << 1$	0x40000000 i.e. 1G
unsigned example after $x << 1$	0x80000000 i.e. 2G

Again, consider the  $x << 1$  definition is  $x = x*2$ . From Table: C operator << implementation, we see **lshr** satisfy “unsigned  $x=1G$ ” but fails on signed  $x=1G$ . It’s fine since 2G is out of 32 bits signed integer range (-2G ~ 2G-1). For the overflow case, no way to keep the correct result in register. So, any value in register is OK. You can check that **lshr** satisfy  $x = x*2$ , for all  $x << 1$  and the x result is not out of range, no matter operand x is signed or unsigned integer.

Microsoft implementation references here <sup>2</sup>.

The ‘ashr’ Instruction reference here <sup>3</sup>, ‘lshr’ reference here <sup>4</sup>.

The sra, shlv and shrv are for two virtual input registers instructions while the sra, ... are for 1 virtual input registers and 1 constant input operands.

Now, let’s build Chapter4\_1/ and run with input file ch4\_math.ll as follows,

<sup>2</sup> <http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/336xbhc%28v=vs.80%29.aspx>

<sup>3</sup> <http://llvm.org/docs/LangRef.html#ashr-instruction>

<sup>4</sup> <http://llvm.org/docs/LangRef.html#lshr-instruction>

**Ibdex/input/ch4\_math.ll**

```
; Function Attrs: nounwind
define i32 @_Z9test_mathv() #0 {
    %a = alloca i32, align 4
    %b = alloca i32, align 4
    %1 = load i32, i32* %a, align 4
    %2 = load i32, i32* %b, align 4

    %3 = add nsw i32 %1, %2
    %4 = sub nsw i32 %1, %2
    %5 = mul nsw i32 %1, %2
    %6 = shl i32 %1, 2
    %7 = ashr i32 %1, 2
    %8 = lshr i32 %1, 30
    %9 = shl i32 %1, %2
    %10 = ashr i32 128, %2
    %11 = ashr i32 %1, %2

    %12 = add nsw i32 %3, %4
    %13 = add nsw i32 %12, %5
    %14 = add nsw i32 %13, %6
    %15 = add nsw i32 %14, %7
    %16 = add nsw i32 %15, %8
    %17 = add nsw i32 %16, %9
    %18 = add nsw i32 %17, %10
    %19 = add nsw i32 %18, %11

    ret i32 %19
}
```

**118-165-78-12:input Jonathan\$** /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake\_debug\_build/  
Debug/bin/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm ch4\_math.ll -o -

```
...
    ld    $2, 0($sp)
    ld    $3, 4($sp)
    subu $4, $3, $2
    addu $5, $3, $2
    addu $4, $5, $4
    mul   $5, $3, $2
    addu $4, $4, $5
    shl   $5, $3, 2
    addu $4, $4, $5
    sra   $5, $3, 2
    addu $4, $4, $5
    addiu $5, $zero, 128
    shrv $5, $5, $2
    addiu $t9, $zero, 1
    shlv $t9, $t9, $2
    srav $2, $3, $2
    shr  $3, $3, 30
    addu $3, $4, $3
    addu $3, $3, $t9
    addu $3, $3, $5
    addu $2, $3, $2
```

```
addiu $sp, $sp, 8  
ret    $lr
```

Example input ch4\_1\_math.cpp as the following is the C file which include +, -, \*, <<, and >> operators. It will generate corresponding llvm IR instructions, **add**, **sub**, **mul**, **shl**, **ashr** by clang as Chapter 3 indicated.

### Ibdex/input/ch4\_1\_math.cpp

```
int test_math()  
{  
    int a = 5;  
    int b = 2;  
    unsigned int a1 = -5;  
    int c, d, e, f, g, h, i;  
    unsigned int f1, g1, h1, i1;  
  
    c = a + b;           // c = 7  
    d = a - b;           // d = 3  
    e = a * b;           // e = 10  
    f = (a << 2);      // f = 20  
    f1 = (a1 << 1);    // f1 = 0xffffffff6 = -10  
    g = (a >> 2);      // g = 1  
    g1 = (a1 >> 30);   // g1 = 0x03 = 3  
    h = (1 << a);      // h = 0x20 = 32  
    h1 = (1 << b);     // h1 = 0x04  
    i = (0x80 >> a);   // i = 0x04  
    i1 = (b >> a);     // i1 = 0x0  
  
    return (c+d+e+f+int(f1)+g+(int)g1+h+(int)h1+i+(int)i1);  
// 7+3+10+20-10+1+3+32+4+4+0 = 74  
}
```

Cpu0 instructions add and sub will trigger overflow exception while addu and subu truncate overflow value directly. Compile ch4\_1\_addsuboverflow.cpp with llc -cpu0-enable-overflow=true will generate add and sub instructions as follows,

### Ibdex/input/ch4\_1\_addsuboverflow.cpp

```
#include "debug.h"  
  
int test_add_overflow()  
{  
    int a = 0x70000000;  
    int b = 0x20000000;  
    int c = 0;  
  
    c = a + b;  
  
    return 0;  
}  
  
int test_sub_overflow()  
{
```

```

int a = -0x70000000;
int b = 0x20000000;
int c = 0;

c = a - b;

return 0;
}

```

```

118-165-78-12:input Jonathan$ clang -target mips-unknown-linux-gnu -c
ch4_1_addsuboverflow.cpp -emit-llvm -o ch4_1_addsuboverflow.bc
118-165-78-12:input Jonathan$ llvm-dis ch4_1_addsuboverflow.bc -o -
...
; Function Attrs: nounwind
define i32 @_Z13test_overflowv() #0 {
    ...
%3 = add nsw i32 %1, %2
...
%6 = sub nsw i32 %4, %5
...
}

118-165-78-12:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/
Debug/bin/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm
-cpu0-enable-overflow=true ch4_1_addsuboverflow.bc -o -
...
add      $3, $4, $3
...
sub      $3, $4, $3
...

```

In modern CPU, programmers are used to using truncate overflow instructions for C operators + and -. Anyway, through option -cpu0-enable-overflow=true, programmer get the chance to compile program with overflow exception program. Usually, this option used in debug purpose. Compile with this option can help to identify the bug and fix it early.

#### 4.1.2 Display Ivm IR nodes with Graphviz

The previous section, display the DAG translation process in text on terminal by option llc -debug . The llc also supports the graphic displaying. The section [Install other tools on iMac](#) include the download and installation of tool Graphviz. The llc graphic displaying with tool Graphviz is introduced in this section. The graphic displaying is more readable by eyes than displaying text in terminal. It's not a must-have, but helps a lot especially when you are tired in tracking the DAG translation process. List the llc graphic support options from the sub-section “SelectionDAG Instruction Selection Process” of web “The LLVM Target-Independent Code Generator”<sup>5</sup> as follows,

**Note:** The llc Graphviz DAG display options

- view-dag-combine1-dags displays the DAG after being built, before the first optimization pass.
- view-legalize-dags displays the DAG before Legalization.
- view-dag-combine2-dags displays the DAG before the second optimization pass.
- view-isel-dags displays the DAG before the Select phase.

<sup>5</sup> <http://llvm.org/docs/CodeGenerator.html#selectiondag-instruction-selection-process>

-view-sched-dags displays the DAG before Scheduling.

---

By tracking llc -debug , you can see the steps of DAG translation as follows,

```
Initial selection DAG
Optimized lowered selection DAG
Type-legalized selection DAG
Optimized type-legalized selection DAG
Legalized selection DAG
Optimized legalized selection DAG
Instruction selection
Selected selection DAG
Scheduling
...
```

Let's run llc with option -view-dag-combine1-dags, and open the output result with Graphviz as follows,

```
118-165-12-177:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/
cmake_debug_build/Debug/bin/llc -view-dag-combine1-dags -march=cpu0
-relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm ch4_1_mult.bc -o ch4_1_mult.cpu0.s
Writing '/tmp/llvm_84ibpm/dag.main.dot'... done.
118-165-12-177:input Jonathan$ Graphviz /tmp/llvm_84ibpm/dag.main.dot
```

It will show the /tmp/llvm\_84ibpm/dag.main.dot as Fig. 4.1.

Fig. 4.1 is the stage of “Initial selection DAG”. List the other view options and their corresponding stages of DAG translation as follows,

---

**Note:** llc Graphviz options and the corresponding stages of DAG translation

- view-dag-combine1-dags: Initial selection DAG
  - view-legalize-dags: Optimized type-legalized selection DAG
  - view-dag-combine2-dags: Legalized selection DAG
  - view-isel-dags: Optimized legalized selection DAG
  - view-sched-dags: Selected selection DAG
- 

The -view-isel-dags is important and often used by an llvm backend writer because it is the DAGs before instruction selection. In order to writing the pattern match instruction in target description file .td, backend programmer needs knowing what the DAG nodes are for a given C operator.

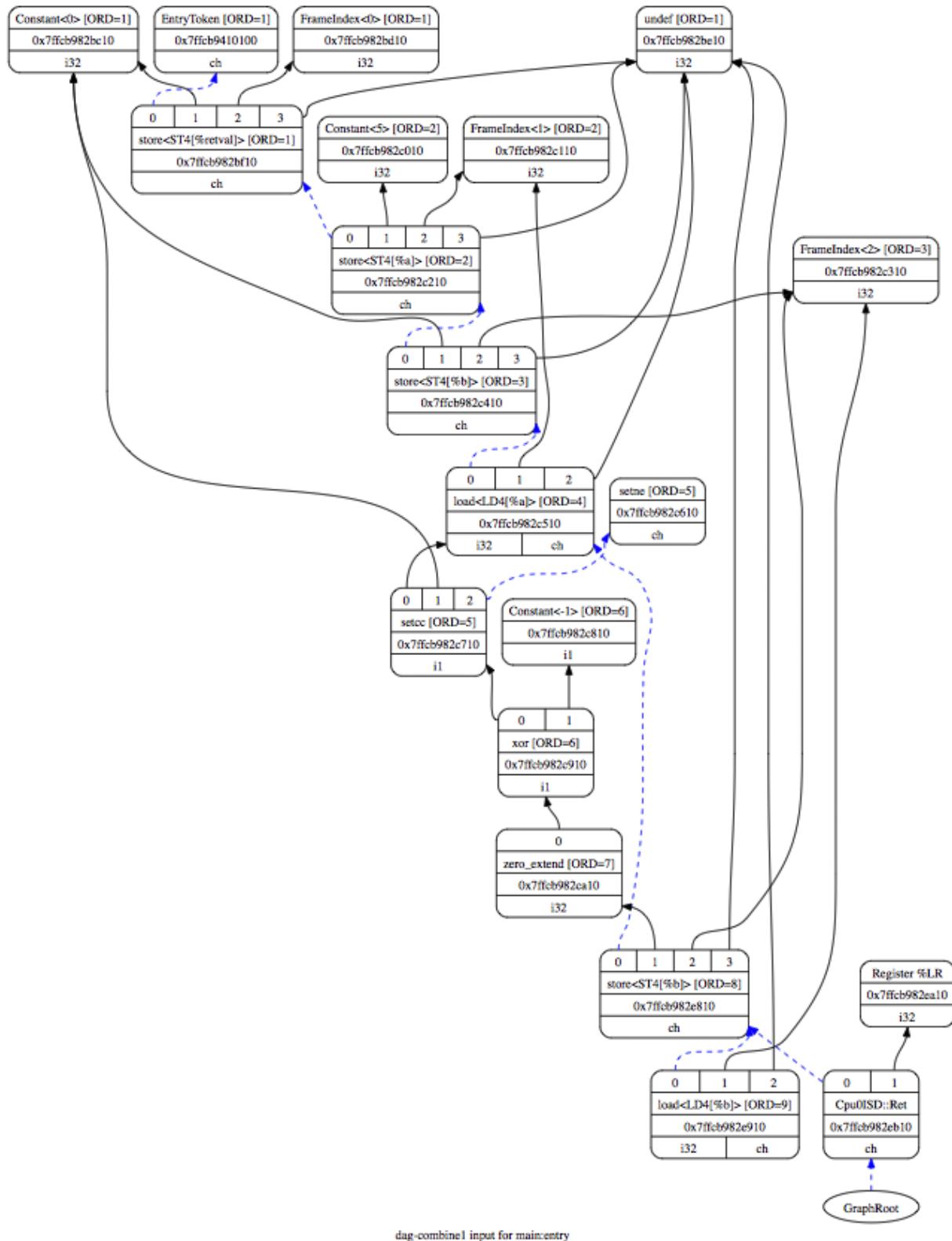
### 4.1.3 Operator % and /

#### The DAG of %

Example input code ch4\_1\_mult.cpp which contains the C operator “%” and it's corresponding llvm IR, as follows,

##### Ibdex/input/ch4\_1\_mult.cpp

```
int test_mult()
{
    int b = 11;
```



dag-combine1 input for main:entry

Fig. 4.1: llc option -view-dag-combine1-dags graphic view

```
// unsigned int b = 11;  
  
b = (b+1)%12;  
  
return b;  
}
```

```
...  
define i32 @_Z8test_multv() #0 {  
    %b = alloca i32, align 4  
    store i32 11, i32* %b, align 4  
    %1 = load i32* %b, align 4  
    %2 = add nsw i32 %1, 1  
    %3 = srem i32 %2, 12  
    store i32 %3, i32* %b, align 4  
    %4 = load i32* %b, align 4  
    ret i32 %4  
}
```

LLVM **srem** is the IR of corresponding “%”, reference here <sup>6</sup>. Copy the reference as follows,

---

### Note: ‘srem’ Instruction

Syntax: <result> = srem <ty> <op1>, <op2> ; yields {ty}:result

Overview: The ‘srem’ instruction returns the remainder from the signed division of its two operands. This instruction can also take vector versions of the values in which case the elements must be integers.

Arguments: The two arguments to the ‘srem’ instruction must be integer or vector of integer values. Both arguments must have identical types.

Semantics: This instruction returns the remainder of a division (where the result is either zero or has the same sign as the dividend, op1), not the modulo operator (where the result is either zero or has the same sign as the divisor, op2) of a value. For more information about the difference, see The Math Forum. For a table of how this is implemented in various languages, please see Wikipedia: modulo operation.

Note that signed integer remainder and unsigned integer remainder are distinct operations; for unsigned integer remainder, use ‘urem’.

Taking the remainder of a division by zero leads to undefined behavior. Overflow also leads to undefined behavior; this is a rare case, but can occur, for example, by taking the remainder of a 32-bit division of -2147483648 by -1. (The remainder doesn’t actually overflow, but this rule lets srem be implemented using instructions that return both the result of the division and the remainder.)

Example: <result> = srem i32 4, %var ; yields {i32}:result = 4 % %var

---

Run Chapter3\_5/ with input file ch4\_1\_mult.bc via option llc -view-isel-dags , will get the following error message and the llvm DAGs of Fig. 4.2 below.

```
118-165-79-37:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/  
cmake_debug_build/Debug/bin/llc -march=cpu0 -view-isel-dags -relocation-model=  
pic -filetype=asm ch4_1_mult.bc -o -  
...  
LLVM ERROR: Cannot select: 0x7fa73a02ea10: i32 = mulhs 0x7fa73a02c610,  
0x7fa73a02e910 [ID=12]
```

---

<sup>6</sup> <http://llvm.org/docs/LangRef.html#srem-instruction>

```
0x7fa73a02c610: i32 = Constant<12> [ORD=5] [ID=7]
0x7fa73a02e910: i32 = Constant<715827883> [ID=9]
```

LLVM replaces srem divide operation with multiply operation in DAG optimization because DIV operation costs more in time than MUL. Example code “**int b = 11; b=(b+1)%12;**” is translated into DAGs as Fig. 4.2. The DAGs of generated result is verified and explained by calculating the value in each node. The  $0xC * 0x2AAAAAAAB = 0x2,00000004$ , ( $\text{mulhs } 0xC, 0x2AAAAAAAB$ ) meaning get the Signed mul high word (32bits). Multiply with 2 operands of 1 word size probably generate the 2 word size of result ( $0x2, 0xAAAAAAAB$ ). The result of high word, in this case is  $0x2$ . The final result (sub 12, 12) is 0 which match the statement  $(11+1)\%12$ .

## Arm solution

To run with ARM solution, change Cpu0InstrInfo.td and Cpu0ISelDAGToDAG.cpp from Chapter4\_1/ as follows,

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter4\_1/Cpu0InstrInfo.td

```
/// Multiply and Divide Instructions.
def SMMUL : ArithLogicR<0x41, "smmul", mulhs, IIImul, CPUREgs, 1>;
def UMMUL : ArithLogicR<0x42, "ummul", mulhu, IIImul, CPUREgs, 1>;
//def MULT : Mult32<0x41, "mult", IIImul>;
//def MULTU : Mult32<0x42, "multu", IIImul>;
```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter4\_1/Cpu0ISelDAGToDAG.cpp

```
#if 0
/// Select multiply instructions.
std::pair<SDNode*, SDNode*>
Cpu0DAGToDAGISel::SelectMULT(SDNode *N, unsigned Opc, SDLoc DL, EVT Ty,
                               bool HasLo, bool HasHi) {
    SDNode *Lo = 0, *Hi = 0;
    SDNode *Mul = CurDAG->getMachineNode(Opc, DL, MVT::Glue, N->getOperand(0),
                                            N->getOperand(1));
    SDValue InFlag = SDValue(Mul, 0);

    if (HasLo) {
        Lo = CurDAG->getMachineNode(Cpu0::MFLO, DL,
                                       Ty, MVT::Glue, InFlag);
        InFlag = SDValue(Lo, 1);
    }
    if (HasHi)
        Hi = CurDAG->getMachineNode(Cpu0::MFHI, DL,
                                       Ty, InFlag);

    return std::make_pair(Lo, Hi);
}
#endif

/// Select instructions not customized! Used for
/// expanded, promoted and normal instructions
SDNode* Cpu0DAGToDAGISel::Select(SDNode *Node) {
...
    switch(Opcode) {
```

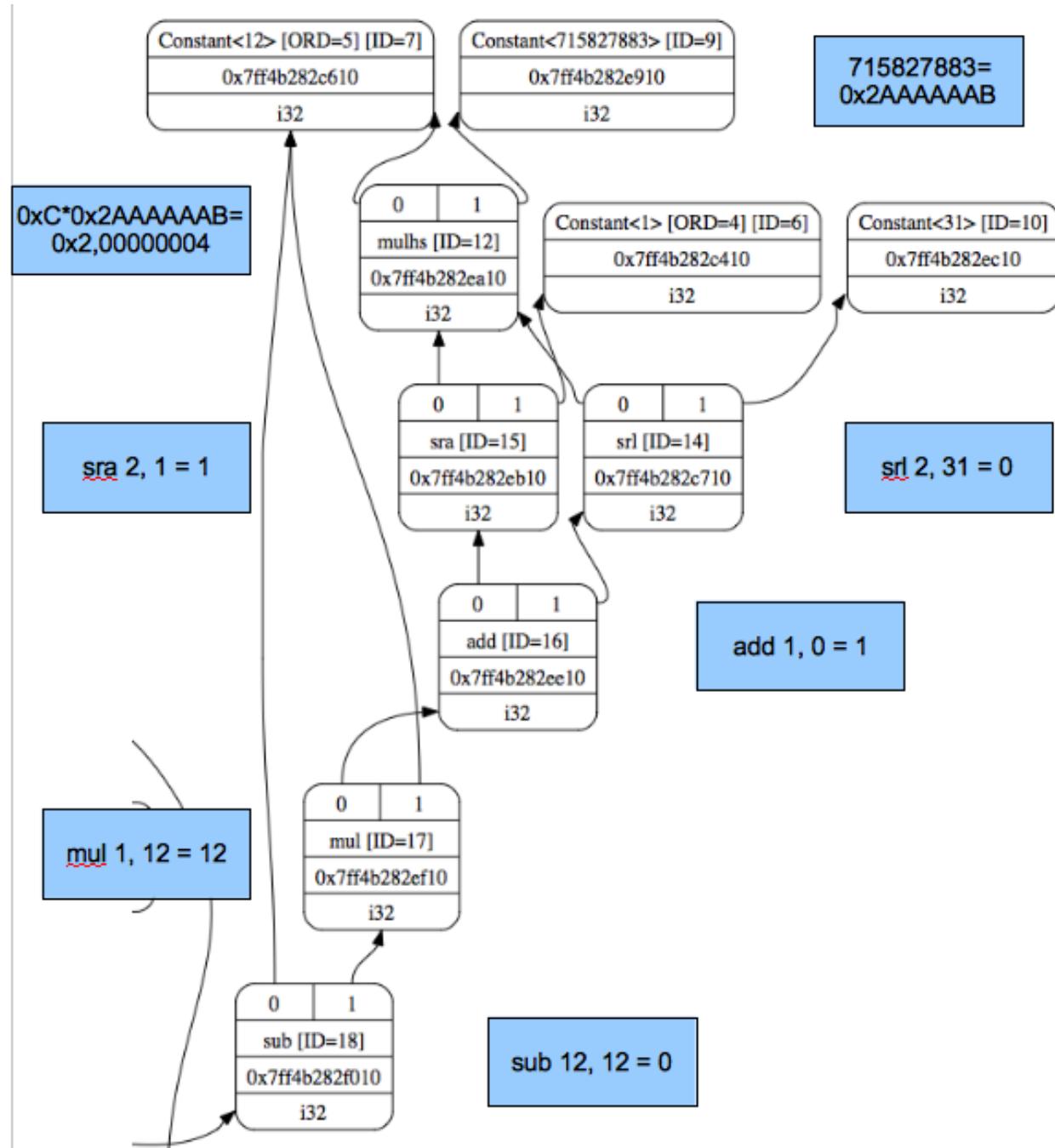


Fig. 4.2: ch4\_1\_mult.bc DAG

```

default: break;
#if 0
  case ISD::MULHS:
  case ISD::MULHU: {
    MultOpc = (Opcode == ISD::MULHU ? Cpu0::MULTu : Cpu0::MULT);
    return SelectMULT(Node, MultOpc, DL, NodeTy, false, true).second;
  }
#endif
...
}

```

Let's run above changes with ch4\_1\_mult.cpp as well as llc -view-sched-dags option to get Fig. 4.3. Instruction SMMUL will get the high word of multiply result.

The following is the result of run above changes with ch4\_1\_mult.bc.

```

118-165-66-82:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_
debug_build/Debug/bin/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm
ch4_1_mult.bc -o -
...
# BB#0:                                # %entry
addiu $sp, $sp, -8
$tmp1:
.cfi_def_cfa_offset 8
addiu $2, $zero, 0
st $2, 4($fp)
addiu $2, $zero, 11
st $2, 0($fp)
lui $2, 10922
ori $3, $2, 43691
addiu $2, $zero, 12
smmul $3, $2, $3
shr $4, $3, 31
sra $3, $3, 1
addu $3, $3, $4
mul $3, $3, $2
subu $2, $2, $3
st $2, 0($fp)
addiu $sp, $sp, 8
ret $lr

```

The other instruction UMMUL and llvm IR mulhu are unsigned int type for operator %. You can check it by unmark the “**unsigned int b = 11;**” in ch4\_1\_mult.cpp.

Using SMMUL instruction to get the high word of multiplication result is adopted in ARM.

## Mips solution

Mips uses MULT instruction and save the high & low part to registers HI and LO, respectively. After that, uses mfhi/mflo to move register HI/LO to your general purpose registers. ARM SMMUL is fast if you only need the HI part of result (it ignores the LO part of operation). ARM also provides SMULL (signed multiply long) to get the whole 64 bits result. If you need the LO part of result, you can use Cpu0 MUL instruction to get the LO part of result only. Chapter4\_1/ is implemented with Mips MULT style. We choose it as the implementation of this book for adding instructions as less as possible. This approach make Cpu0 better both as a tutorial architecture for school teaching purpose material, and an engineer learning materials in compiler design. The MULT, MULTu, MFHI, MFLO, MTHI, MTLO added in Chapter4\_1/Cpu0InstrInfo.td; HI, LO registers in Chapter4\_1/Cpu0RegisterInfo.td

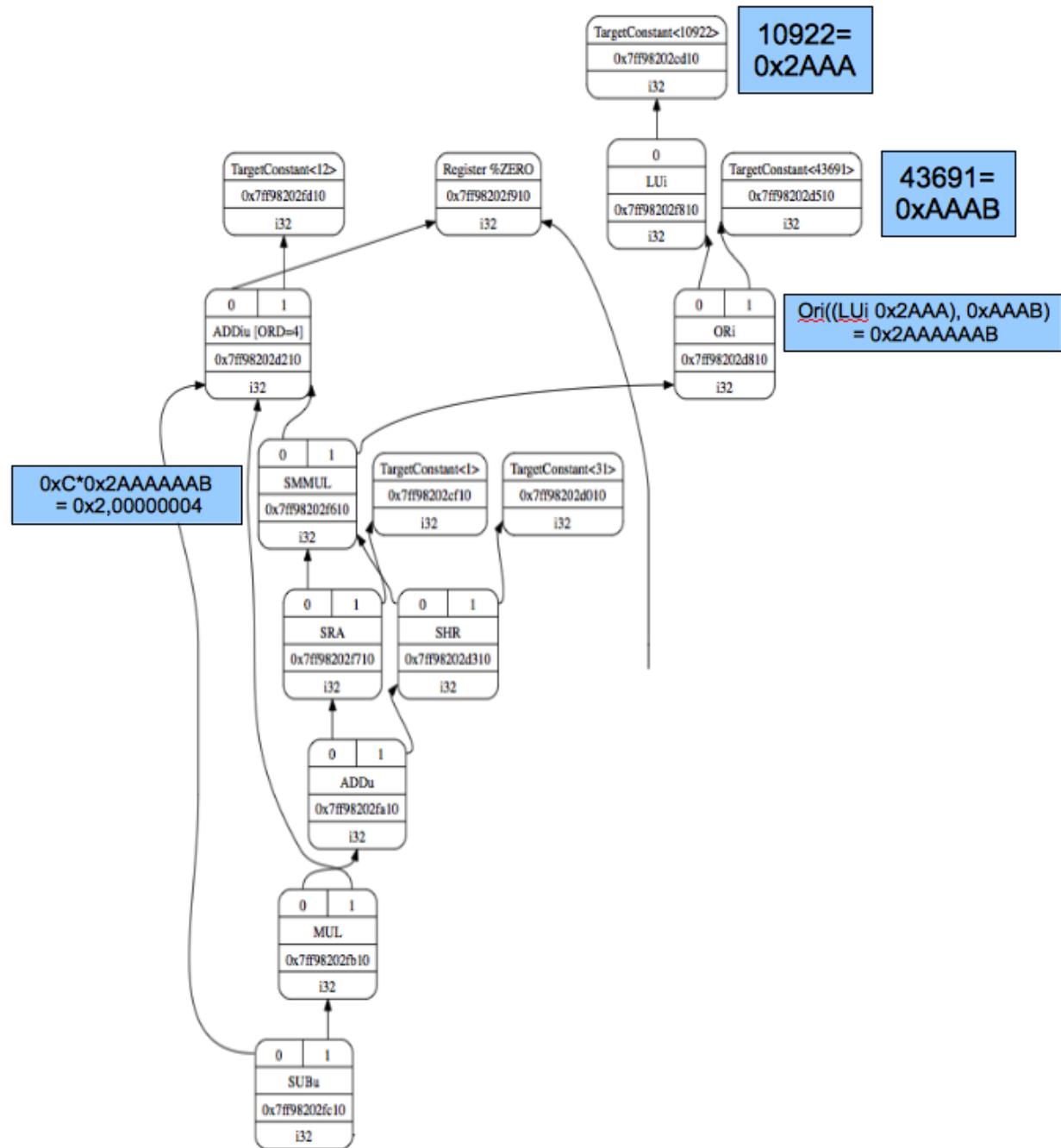


Fig. 4.3: DAG for `ch4_1_mult.bc` with ARM style SMMUL

and Chapter4\_1/MCTargetDesc/ Cpu0BaseInfo.h; IIHiLo, IIImul in Chapter4\_1/Cpu0Schedule.td; SelectMULT() in Chapter4\_1/Cpu0ISelDAGToDAG.cpp are for Mips style implementation.

The related DAG nodes, mulhs and mulhu, both are used in Chapter4\_1/, which come from TargetSelectionDAG.td as follows,

### include/llvm/Target/TargetSelectionDAG.td

```
def mulhs      : SDNode<"ISD::MULHS"      , SDTIntBinOp, [SDNPCommutative]>;
def mulhu      : SDNode<"ISD::MULHU"      , SDTIntBinOp, [SDNPCommutative]>;
```

Except the custom type, llvm IR operations of type expand and promote will call Cpu0DAGToDAGISel::Select() during instruction selection of DAG translation. The SelectMULT() which called by Select() return the HI part of multiplication result to HI register for IR operations of mulhs or mulhu. After that, MFHI instruction moves the HI register to Cpu0 field “a” register, \$ra. MFHI instruction is FL format and only use Cpu0 field “a” register, we set the \$rb and imm16 to 0. Fig. 4.4 and ch4\_1\_mult.cpu0.s are the results of compile ch4\_1\_mult.bc.

```
118-165-66-82:input Jonathan$ cat ch4_1_mult.cpu0.s
...
# BB#0:
addiu $sp, $sp, -8
addiu $2, $zero, 11
st $2, 4($sp)
lui $2, 10922
ori $3, $2, 43691
addiu $2, $zero, 12
mult $2, $3
mfhi $3
shr $4, $3, 31
sra $3, $3, 1
addu $3, $3, $4
mul $3, $3, $2
subu $2, $2, $3
st $2, 4($sp)
addiu $sp, $sp, 8
ret $lr
```

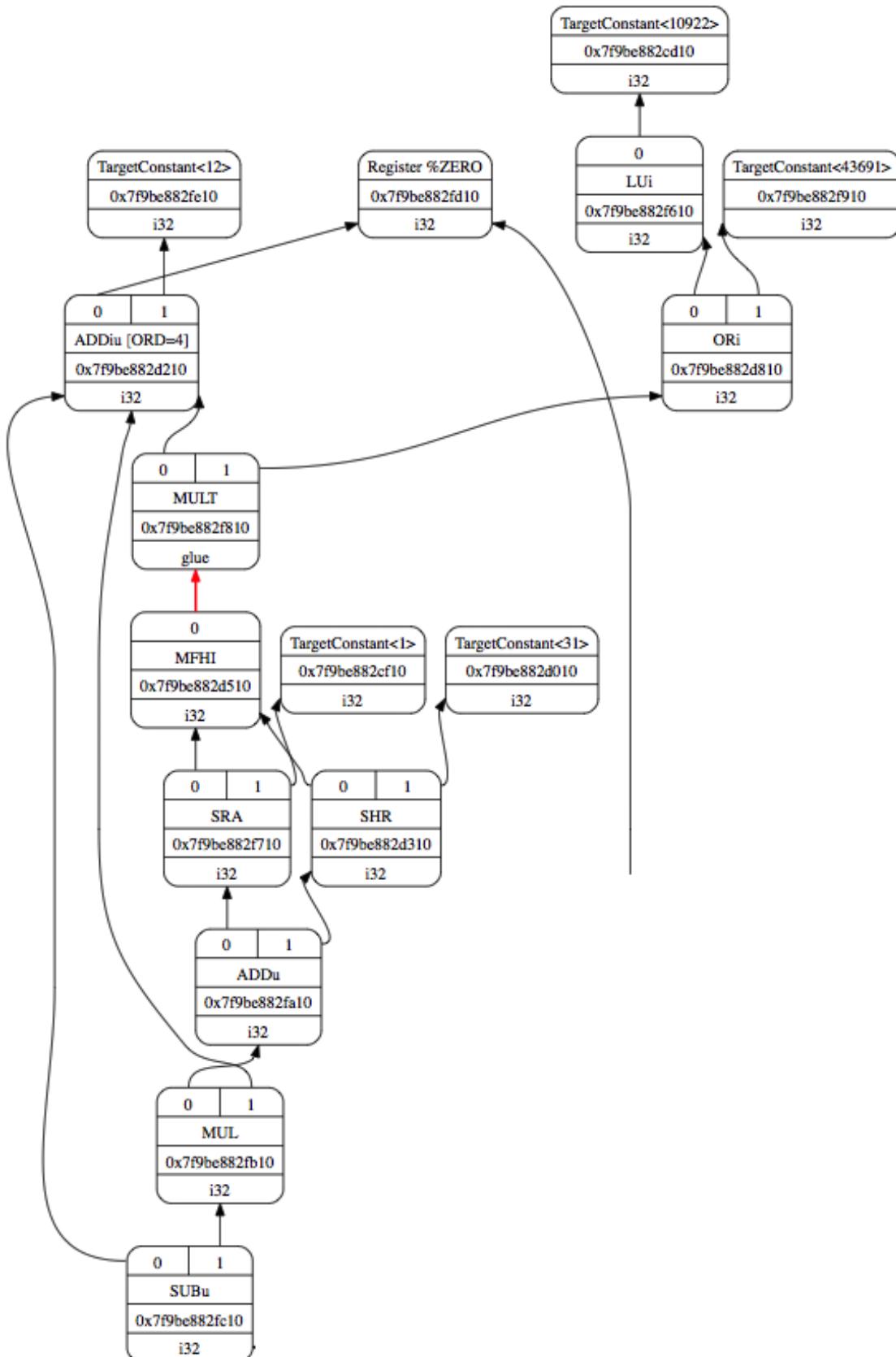
### Full support %, and /

The sensitive readers may find llvm using “**multiplication**” instead of “**div**” to get the “%” result just because our example uses constant as divider, “**(b+1)%12**” in our example. If programmer uses variable as the divider like “**(b+1)%a**”, then: what will happen next? The answer is our code will has error in handling this.

Cpu0 just like Mips uses LO and HI registers to hold the “**quotient**” and “**remainder**”. And uses instructions “**mflo**” and “**mfhi**” to get the result from LO or HI registers furthermore. With this solution, the “**c = a / b**” can be finished by “**div a, b**” and “**mflo c**”; the “**c = a % b**” can be finished by “**div a, b**” and “**mfhi c**”.

To supports operators “%” and “/”, the following code added in Chapter4\_1.

1. SDIV, UDIV and it's reference class, nodes in Cpu0InstrInfo.td.
2. The copyPhysReg() declared and defined in Cpu0InstrInfo.h and Cpu0InstrInfo.cpp.
3. The setOperationAction(ISD::SDIV, MVT::i32, Expand), ..., setTargetDAGCombine(ISD::SDIVREM) in constructore of Cpu0ISelLowering.cpp; PerformDivRemCombine() and PerformDAGCombine() in Cpu0ISelLowering.cpp.

Fig. 4.4: DAG for `ch4_1_mult.bc` with Mips style `MULT`

The IR instruction **sdiv** stands for signed div while **udiv** stands for unsigned div.

### Ibdex/input/ch4\_1\_mult2.cpp

```
int test_mult()
{
    int b = 11;
    int a = 12;

    b = (b+1)%a;

    return b;
}
```

If we run with ch4\_1\_mult2.cpp, the “**div**” cannot be gotten for operator “%”. It still uses “**multiplication**” instead of “**div**” in ch4\_1\_mult2.cpp because llvm do “**Constant Propagation Optimization**” in this. The ch4\_1\_mod.cpp can get the “**div**” for “%” result since it makes llvm “**Constant Propagation Optimization**” useless in it.

### Ibdex/input/ch4\_1\_mod.cpp

```
int test_mod()
{
    int b = 11;
    volatile int a = 12;

    b = (b+1)%a;

    return b;
}
```

```
118-165-77-79:input Jonathan$ clang -target mips-unknown-linux-gnu -c
ch4_1_mod.cpp -emit-llvm -o ch4_1_mod.bc
118-165-77-79:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_
debug_build/Debug/bin/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm
ch4_1_mod.bc -o -
...
div $zero, $3, $2
mflo $2
...
```

To explains how to work with “**div**”, let’s run ch4\_1\_mod.cpp with debug option as follows,

```
118-165-83-58:input Jonathan$ clang -target mips-unknown-linux-gnu -c
ch4_1_mod.cpp -I/Applications/Xcode.app/Contents/Developer/Platforms/
MacOSX.platform/Developer/SDKs/MacOSX10.8.sdk/usr/include/ -emit-llvm -o
ch4_1_mod.bc
118-165-83-58:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/
Debug/bin/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm -debug
ch4_1_mod.bc -o -
...
==== _Z8test_modi
Initial selection DAG: BB#0 '_Z8test_mod2i:'
SelectionDAG has 21 nodes:
...
```

```
0x2447448: <multiple use>
  0x24470d0: <multiple use>
  0x24471f8: i32 = Constant<1>

  0x2447320: i32 = add 0x24470d0, 0x24471f8 [ORD=7]

  0x2447448: <multiple use>
  0x2447570: i32 = srem 0x2447320, 0x2447448 [ORD=9]

  0x24468b8: <multiple use>
  0x2446b08: <multiple use>
  0x2448fc0: ch = store 0x2447448:1, 0x2447570, 0x24468b8, ...
  0x2449210: i32 = Register %V0

  0x2448fc0: <multiple use>
  0x2449210: <multiple use>
    0x2448fc0: <multiple use>
    0x24468b8: <multiple use>
    0x2446b08: <multiple use>
    0x24490e8: i32, ch = load 0x2448fc0, 0x24468b8, 0x2446b08<LD4[%b]> [ORD=11]

  0x2449338: ch, glue = CopyToReg 0x2448fc0, 0x2449210, 0x24490e8 [ORD=12]

  0x2449338: <multiple use>
  0x2449210: <multiple use>
  0x2449338: <multiple use>
  0x2449460: ch = Cpu0ISD::Ret 0x2449338, 0x2449210, 0x2449338:1 [ORD=12]

Replacing.1 0x24490e8: i32, ch = load 0x2448fc0, 0x24468b8, ...
With: 0x2447570: i32 = srem 0x2447320, 0x2447448 [ORD=9]
and 1 other values
...
Optimized lowered selection DAG: BB#0 '_Z8test_mod2i:'
...
  0x2447570: i32 = srem 0x2447320, 0x2447448 [ORD=9]
...
Type-legalized selection DAG: BB#0 '_Z8test_mod2i:'
SelectionDAG has 16 nodes:
...
  0x7fed6882d610: i32, ch = load 0x7fed6882d210, 0x7fed6882cd10,
  0x7fed6882cb10<LD4[%1]> [ORD=5] [ID=-3]

  0x7fed6882d810: i32 = Constant<12> [ID=-3]

  0x7fed6882d610: <multiple use>
  0x7fed6882d710: i32 = srem 0x7fed6882d810, 0x7fed6882d610 [ORD=6] [ID=-3]
  ...

Legalized selection DAG: BB#0 '_Z8test_mod2i:'
...
  ... i32 = srem 0x2447320, 0x2447448 [ORD=9] [ID=-3]
  ...
  ... replacing: ...: i32 = srem 0x2447320, 0x2447448 [ORD=9] [ID=13]
  with:       ...: i32, i32 = sdivrem 0x2447320, 0x2447448 [ORD=9]
```

```

Optimized legalized selection DAG: BB#0 '_Z8test_mod2i:'
SelectionDAG has 18 nodes:
...
0x2449588: i32 = Register %HI

    0x24470d0: <multiple use>
    0x24471f8: i32 = Constant<1> [ID=6]

    0x2447320: i32 = add 0x24470d0, 0x24471f8 [ORD=7] [ID=12]

    0x2447448: <multiple use>
    0x24490e8: glue = Cpu0ISD::DivRem 0x2447320, 0x2447448 [ORD=9]

    0x24496b0: i32,ch,glue = CopyFromReg 0x240d480, 0x2449588, 0x24490e8 [ORD=9]

    0x2449338: <multiple use>
    0x2449210: <multiple use>
    0x2449338: <multiple use>
0x2449460: ch = Cpu0ISD::Ret 0x2449338, 0x2449210, ...
...
===== Instruction selection begins: BB#0 ''
...
Selecting: 0x24490e8: glue = Cpu0ISD::DivRem 0x2447320, 0x2447448 [ORD=9] [ID=14]

ISEL: Starting pattern match on root node: 0x24490e8: glue = Cpu0ISD::DivRem
0x2447320, 0x2447448 [ORD=9] [ID=14]

Initial Opcode index to 4044
Morphed node: 0x24490e8: i32,glue = SDIV 0x2447320, 0x2447448 [ORD=9]

ISEL: Match complete!
=> 0x24490e8: i32,glue = SDIV 0x2447320, 0x2447448 [ORD=9]
...

```

Summary above DAGs translation messages into 4 steps:

1. Reduce DAG nodes in stage “Optimized lowered selection DAG” (Replacing ... displayed before “Optimized lowered selection DAG.”). Since SSA form has some redundant nodes for store and load, they can be removed.
2. Change DAG srem to sdivrem in stage “Legalized selection DAG”.
3. Change DAG sdivrem to Cpu0ISD::DivRem and in stage “Optimized legalized selection DAG”.
4. Add DAG “i32 = Register %HI” and “CopyFromReg ...” in stage “Optimized legalized selection DAG”.

Summary as Table: Stages for C operator % and Table: Functions handle the DAG translation and pattern match for C operator %.

Table 4.3: Stages for C operator %

Stage	IR/DAG/instruction
.bc	srem
Legalized selection DAG	sdivrem
Optimized legalized selection DAG	Cpu0ISD::DivRem, CopyFromReg xx, Hi, Cpu0ISD::DivRem
pattern match	div, mfhi

Table 4.4: Functions handle the DAG translation and pattern match for C operator %

Translation	Do by
srem => sdivrem	setOperationAction(ISD::SREM, MVT::i32, Expand);
sdivrem => Cpu0ISD::DivRem	setTargetDAGCombine(ISD::SDIVREM);
sdivrem => CopyFromReg xx, Hi, xx	PerformDivRemCombine();
Cpu0ISD::DivRem => div	SDIV (Cpu0InstrInfo.td)
CopyFromReg xx, Hi, xx => mfhi	MFLO (Cpu0InstrInfo.td)

Step 2 as above, is triggered by code “setOperationAction(ISD::SREM, MVT::i32, Expand);” in Cpu0ISelLowering.cpp. About **Expand** please ref. <sup>7</sup> and <sup>8</sup>. Step 3 is triggered by code “setTargetDAGCombine(ISD::SDIVREM);” in Cpu0ISelLowering.cpp. Step 4 is did by PerformDivRemCombine() which called by performDAGCombine(). Since the % corresponding **srem** makes the “N->hasAnyUseOfValue(1)” to true in PerformDivRemCombine(), it creates DAG of “CopyFromReg”. When using “%” in C, it will make “N->hasAnyUseOfValue(0)” to true. For sdivrem, **sdiv** makes “N->hasAnyUseOfValue(0)” true while **srem** makes “N->hasAnyUseOfValue(1)” true.

Above steps will change the DAGs when `llc` is running. After that, the pattern match defined in Chapter4\_1/Cpu0InstrInfo.td will translate **Cpu0ISD::DivRem** into **div**; and “**CopyFromReg xx**DAG, **Register %H**, **Cpu0ISD::DivRem**” to **mfhi**.

The ch4\_1\_div.cpp is for / div operator test.

#### 4.1.4 Rotate instructions

Chapter4\_1 include the rotate operations translation. The instructions “rol”, “ror”, “rolv” and “rorv” defined in Cpu0InstrInfo.td handle the translation. Compile ch4\_1\_rotate.cpp will get Cpu0 “rol” instruction.

##### Ibdex/input/ch4\_1\_rotate.cpp

```
// #define TEST_ROXV

int test_rotate_left()
{
    unsigned int a = 8;
    int result = ((a << 30) | (a >> 2));

    return result;
}

#ifdef TEST_ROXV

int test_rotate_left1()
{
    volatile unsigned int a = 4;
    volatile int n = 30;
    int result = ((a << n) | (a >> (32 - n)));

    return result;
}

```

<sup>7</sup> <http://llvm.org/docs/WritingAnLLVMBackend.html#expand>

<sup>8</sup> <http://llvm.org/docs/CodeGenerator.html#selectiondag-legalizetypes-phase>

```

int test_rotate_right()
{
    volatile unsigned int a = 1;
    volatile int n = 30;
    int result = ((a >> n) | (a << (32 - n)));
}

return result;
}

#endif

```

```

114-43-200-122:input Jonathan$ clang -target mips-unknown-linux-gnu -c
ch4_1_rotate.cpp -emit-llvm -o ch4_1_rotate.bc
114-43-200-122:input Jonathan$ llvm-dis ch4_1_rotate.bc -o -

```

```

define i32 @_Z16test_rotate_leftv() #0 {
    %a = alloca i32, align 4
    %result = alloca i32, align 4
    store i32 8, i32* %a, align 4
    %1 = load i32* %a, align 4
    %2 = shl i32 %1, 30
    %3 = load i32* %a, align 4
    %4 = ashr i32 %3, 2
    %5 = or i32 %2, %4
    store i32 %5, i32* %result, align 4
    %6 = load i32* %result, align 4
    ret i32 %6
}

```

```

114-43-200-122:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/Debug/
bin/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm ch4_1_rotate.bc -o -
...
rol $2, $2, 30
...

```

Instructions “rolv” and “rorv” cannot be tested at this moment, they need logic “or” implementation which supported at next section. Like the previous subsection mentioned at this chapter, some IRs in function @\_Z16test\_rotate\_leftv() will be combined into one one IR **rotl** during DAGs translation.

## 4.2 Logic

Chapter4\_2 supports logic operators **&**, **l**, **^**, **!**, **==**, **!=**, **<**, **<=**, **>** and **>=**. They are trivial and easy. Listing the added code with comments and table for these operators IR, DAG and instructions as below. Please check them with the run result of bc and asm instructions for ch4\_2\_logic.cpp as below.

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter4\_2/Cpu0InstrInfo.td

```

let Predicates = [Ch4_2] in {
class CmpInstr<bits<8> op, string instr_asm,
              InstrItinClass itin, RegisterClass RC, RegisterClass RD,
              bit isComm = 0>:
FA<op, (outs RD:$ra), (ins RC:$rb, RC:$rc),

```

```

    !strconcat(instr_asm, "\t$ra, $rb, $rc"), [], itin> {
let shamt = 0;
let isCommutable = isComm;
let Predicates = [HasCmp];
}
}

```

```

// SetCC
let Predicates = [Ch4_2] in {
class SetCC_R<bits<8> op, string instr_asm, PatFrag cond_op,
    RegisterClass RC>:
FA<op, (outs GPROut:$ra), (ins RC:$rb, RC:$rc),
    !strconcat(instr_asm, "\t$ra, $rb, $rc"),
    [(set GPROut:$ra, (cond_op RC:$rb, RC:$rc))],
    IIAlu>, Requires<[HasSlt]> {
let shamt = 0;
}

class SetCC_I<bits<8> op, string instr_asm, PatFrag cond_op, Operand Od,
    PatLeaf imm_type, RegisterClass RC>:
FL<op, (outs GPROut:$ra), (ins RC:$rb, Od:$imm16),
    !strconcat(instr_asm, "\t$ra, $rb, $imm16"),
    [(set GPROut:$ra, (cond_op RC:$rb, imm_type:$imm16))],
    IIAlu>, Requires<[HasSlt]> {
}
}

```

```

let Predicates = [Ch4_2] in {
def ANDi      : ArithLogicI<0x0c, "andi", and, uimm16, immZExt16, CPURegs>;
}

```

```

let Predicates = [Ch4_2] in {
def XORi      : ArithLogicI<0x0e, "xori", xor, uimm16, immZExt16, CPURegs>;
}

```

```

let Predicates = [Ch4_2] in {
let Predicates = [HasCmp] in {
def CMP      : CmpInstr<0x10, "cmp", IIAlu, CPURegs, SR, 0>;
}
}

```

```

let Predicates = [Ch4_2] in {
def AND      : ArithLogicR<0x18, "and", and, IIAlu, CPURegs, 1>;
def OR       : ArithLogicR<0x19, "or", or, IIAlu, CPURegs, 1>;
def XOR      : ArithLogicR<0x1a, "xor", xor, IIAlu, CPURegs, 1>;
}

```

```

let Predicates = [Ch4_2] in {
let Predicates = [HasSlt] in {
def SLTi     : SetCC_I<0x26, "slti", setlt, simm16, immSExt16, CPURegs>;
def SLTiu   : SetCC_I<0x27, "sltiu", setult, simm16, immSExt16, CPURegs>;
def SLT     : SetCC_R<0x28, "slt", setlt, CPURegs>;
def SLTu    : SetCC_R<0x29, "sltu", setult, CPURegs>;
}
}

```

```

let Predicates = [Ch4_2] in {
def : Pat<(not CPURegs:$in),
// 1: in == 0; 0: in != 0
    (XORi CPURegs:$in, 1)>;
}

// setcc patterns

let Predicates = [Ch4_2] in {
// setcc for cmp instruction
multiclass SeteqPatsCmp<RegisterClass RC> {
// a == b
def : Pat<(seteq RC:$lhs, RC:$rhs),
    (SHR (ANDi (CMP RC:$lhs, RC:$rhs), 2), 1)>;
// a != b
def : Pat<(setne RC:$lhs, RC:$rhs),
    (XORi (SHR (ANDi (CMP RC:$lhs, RC:$rhs), 2), 1), 1)>;
}

// a < b
multiclass SetltPatsCmp<RegisterClass RC> {
def : Pat<(setlt RC:$lhs, RC:$rhs),
    (ANDi (CMP RC:$lhs, RC:$rhs), 1)>;
// if cpu0 `define N `SW[31] instead of `SW[0] // Negative flag, then need
// 2 more instructions as follows,
//      (XORi (ANDi (SHR (CMP RC:$lhs, RC:$rhs), (LUI 0x8000), 31), 1), 1)>;
def : Pat<(setult RC:$lhs, RC:$rhs),
    (ANDi (CMP RC:$lhs, RC:$rhs), 1)>;
}

// a <= b
multiclass SetlePatsCmp<RegisterClass RC> {
def : Pat<(setle RC:$lhs, RC:$rhs),
// a <= b is equal to (XORi (b < a), 1)
    (XORi (ANDi (CMP RC:$rhs, RC:$lhs), 1), 1)>;
def : Pat<(setule RC:$lhs, RC:$rhs),
    (XORi (ANDi (CMP RC:$rhs, RC:$lhs), 1), 1)>;
}

// a > b
multiclass SetgtPatsCmp<RegisterClass RC> {
def : Pat<(setgt RC:$lhs, RC:$rhs),
// a > b is equal to b < a is equal to setlt(b, a)
    (ANDi (CMP RC:$rhs, RC:$lhs), 1)>;
def : Pat<(setugt RC:$lhs, RC:$rhs),
    (ANDi (CMP RC:$rhs, RC:$lhs), 1)>;
}

// a >= b
multiclass SetgePatsCmp<RegisterClass RC> {
def : Pat<(setge RC:$lhs, RC:$rhs),
// a >= b is equal to b <= a
    (XORi (ANDi (CMP RC:$lhs, RC:$rhs), 1), 1)>;
def : Pat<(setuge RC:$lhs, RC:$rhs),
    (XORi (ANDi (CMP RC:$lhs, RC:$rhs), 1), 1)>;
}

// setcc for slt instruction

```

```

multiclass SeteqPatsSlt<RegisterClass RC, Instruction SLTiuOp, Instruction XOROp,
                      Instruction SLTuOp, Register ZEROReg> {
    // a == b
    def : Pat<(seteq RC:$lhs, RC:$rhs),
           (SLTiuOp (XOROp RC:$lhs, RC:$rhs), 1)>;
    // a != b
    def : Pat<(setne RC:$lhs, RC:$rhs),
           (SLTuOp ZEROReg, (XOROp RC:$lhs, RC:$rhs))>;
}

// a <= b
multiclass SetlePatsSlt<RegisterClass RC, Instruction SLTOp, Instruction SLTuOp> {
    def : Pat<(setle RC:$lhs, RC:$rhs),
    // a <= b is equal to (XORi (b < a), 1)
           (XORi (SLTOp RC:$rhs, RC:$lhs), 1)>;
    def : Pat<(setule RC:$lhs, RC:$rhs),
           (XORi (SLTuOp RC:$rhs, RC:$lhs), 1)>;
}

// a > b
multiclass SetgtPatsSlt<RegisterClass RC, Instruction SLTOp, Instruction SLTuOp> {
    def : Pat<(setgt RC:$lhs, RC:$rhs),
    // a > b is equal to b < a is equal to setlt(b, a)
           (SLTOp RC:$rhs, RC:$lhs)>;
    def : Pat<(setugt RC:$lhs, RC:$rhs),
           (SLTuOp RC:$rhs, RC:$lhs)>;
}

// a >= b
multiclass SetgePatsSlt<RegisterClass RC, Instruction SLTOp, Instruction SLTuOp> {
    def : Pat<(setge RC:$lhs, RC:$rhs),
    // a >= b is equal to b <= a
           (XORi (SLTOp RC:$lhs, RC:$rhs), 1)>;
    def : Pat<(setuge RC:$lhs, RC:$rhs),
           (XORi (SLTuOp RC:$lhs, RC:$rhs), 1)>;
}

multiclass SetgeImmPatsSlt<RegisterClass RC, Instruction SLTiOp,
                           Instruction SLTiuOp> {
    def : Pat<(setge RC:$lhs, immSExt16:$rhs),
           (XORi (SLTiOp RC:$lhs, immSExt16:$rhs), 1)>;
    def : Pat<(setuge RC:$lhs, immSExt16:$rhs),
           (XORi (SLTiuOp RC:$lhs, immSExt16:$rhs), 1)>;
}

let Predicates = [HasSlt] in {
defm : SeteqPatsSlt<CPUREgs, SLTiu, XOR, SLTu, ZERO>;
defm : SetlePatsSlt<CPUREgs, SLT, SLTu>;
defm : SetgtPatsSlt<CPUREgs, SLT, SLTu>;
defm : SetgePatsSlt<CPUREgs, SLT, SLTu>;
defm : SetgeImmPatsSlt<CPUREgs, SLTi, SLTiu>;
}

let Predicates = [HasCmp] in {
defm : SeteqPatsCmp<CPUREgs>;
defm : SetltPatsCmp<CPUREgs>;
defm : SetlePatsCmp<CPUREgs>;
defm : SetgtPatsCmp<CPUREgs>;
}

```

```
defm : SetgePatsCmp<CPURegs>;
}
} // let Predicates = [Ch4_2]
```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter4\_2/Cpu0ISelLowering.cpp

```
Cpu0TargetLowering::Cpu0TargetLowering(const Cpu0TargetMachine &TM,
                                       const Cpu0Subtarget &STI)
    : TargetLowering(TM), Subtarget(STI), ABI(TM.getABI()) {
```

```
// Cpu0 doesn't have sext_inreg, replace them with shl/sra.
setOperationAction(ISD::SIGN_EXTEND_INREG, MVT::i1, Expand);
setOperationAction(ISD::SIGN_EXTEND_INREG, MVT::i8, Expand);
setOperationAction(ISD::SIGN_EXTEND_INREG, MVT::i16, Expand);
setOperationAction(ISD::SIGN_EXTEND_INREG, MVT::i32, Expand);
setOperationAction(ISD::SIGN_EXTEND_INREG, MVT::Other, Expand);
```

```
...
```

### Ibdex/input/ch4\_2\_logic.cpp

```
int test_andorxornot()
{
    int a = 5;
    int b = 3;
    int c = 0, d = 0, e = 0;

    c = (a & b); // c = 1
    d = (a | b); // d = 7
    e = (a ^ b); // e = 6
    b = !a; // b = 0

    return (c+d+e+b); // 14
}

int test_setxx()
{
    int a = 5;
    int b = 3;
    int c, d, e, f, g, h;

    c = (a == b); // seq, c = 0
    d = (a != b); // sne, d = 1
    e = (a < b); // slt, e = 0
    f = (a <= b); // sle, f = 0
    g = (a > b); // sgt, g = 1
    h = (a >= b); // sge, g = 1

    return (c+d+e+f+g+h); // 3
}
```

```
114-43-204-152:input Jonathan$ clang -target mips-unknown-linux-gnu -c ch4_2_logic.cpp -emit-llvm -o ch4_2_logic.bc
114-43-204-152:input Jonathan$ llvm-dis ch4_2_logic.bc -o -
...
; Function Attrs: nounwind uwtable
define i32 @_Z16test_andorxornotv() #0 {
entry:
...
%and = and i32 %0, %1
...
%or = or i32 %2, %3
...
%xor = xor i32 %4, %5
...
%tobool = icmp ne i32 %6, 0
%lnot = xor il %tobool, true
%conv = zext il %lnot to i32
...
}

; Function Attrs: nounwind uwtable
define i32 @_Z10test_setxxv() #0 {
entry:
...
%cmp = icmp eq i32 %0, %1
%conv = zext il %cmp to i32
store i32 %conv, i32* %c, align 4
...
%cmp1 = icmp ne i32 %2, %3
%conv2 = zext il %cmp1 to i32
store i32 %conv2, i32* %d, align 4
...
%cmp3 = icmp slt i32 %4, %5
%conv4 = zext il %cmp3 to i32
store i32 %conv4, i32* %e, align 4
...
%cmp5 = icmp sle i32 %6, %7
%conv6 = zext il %cmp5 to i32
store i32 %conv6, i32* %f, align 4
...
%cmp7 = icmp sgt i32 %8, %9
%conv8 = zext il %cmp7 to i32
store i32 %conv8, i32* %g, align 4
...
%cmp9 = icmp sge i32 %10, %11
%conv10 = zext il %cmp9 to i32
store i32 %conv10, i32* %h, align 4
...
}

114-43-204-152:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/
Debug/bin/llc -march=cpu0 -mcpu=cpu032I -relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm
ch4_2_logic.bc -o -
.globl _Z16test_andorxornotv
...
and $3, $4, $3
...
```

```
or $3, $4, $3
...
xor $3, $4, $3
...
cmp $sw, $3, $2
andi $2, $sw, 2
shr $2, $2, 1
...
.globl _Z10test_setxxv
...
cmp $sw, $3, $2
andi $2, $sw, 2
shr $2, $2, 1
...
cmp $sw, $3, $2
andi $2, $sw, 2
shr $2, $2, 1
xori $2, $2, 1
...
cmp $sw, $3, $2
andi $2, $sw, 1
xori $2, $2, 1
...
cmp $sw, $3, $2
andi $2, $sw, 1
xori $2, $2, 1
...
cmp $sw, $3, $2
andi $2, $sw, 1
xori $2, $2, 1
...
114-43-204-152:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/
Debug/bin/llc -march=cpu0 -mcpu=cpu032II -relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm
ch4_2_logic.bc -o -
...
    sltiu $2, $2, 1
    andi $2, $2, 1
    ...
```

Table 4.5: Logic operators for cpu032I

C	.bc	Optimized legalized selection DAG	cpu032I
&, &&	and	and	and
,	or	or	or
^	xor	xor	xor
!	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>%tobool = icmp ne i32 %6, 0</li> <li>%lnot = xor i1 %tobool, true</li> <li>%conv = zext i1 %lnot to i32</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>%lnot = (setcc %tobool, 0, seteq)</li> <li>%conv = (and %lnot, 1)</li> <li>•</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>xor \$3, \$4, \$3</li> </ul>
==	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>%cmp = icmp eq i32 %0, %1</li> <li>%conv = zext i1 %cmp to i32</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>%cmp = (setcc %0, %1, seteq)</li> <li>and %cmp, 1</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>cmp \$sw, \$3, \$2</li> <li>andi \$2, \$sw, 2</li> <li>shr \$2, \$2, 1</li> <li>andi \$2, \$2, 1</li> </ul>
!=	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>%cmp = icmp ne i32 %0, %1</li> <li>%conv = zext i1 %cmp to i32</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>%cmp = (setcc %0, %1, setne)</li> <li>and %cmp, 1</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>cmp \$sw, \$3, \$2</li> <li>andi \$2, \$sw, 2</li> <li>shr \$2, \$2, 1</li> <li>andi \$2, \$2, 1</li> </ul>
<	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>%cmp = icmp lt i32 %0, %1</li> <li>%conv = zext i1 %cmp to i32</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(setcc %0, %1, setlt)</li> <li>and %cmp, 1</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>cmp \$sw, \$3, \$2</li> <li>andi \$2, \$sw, 2</li> <li>andi \$2, \$2, 1</li> <li>andi \$2, \$2, 1</li> </ul>
<=	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>%cmp = icmp le i32 %0, %1</li> <li>%conv = zext i1 %cmp to i32</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(setcc %0, %1, settle)</li> <li>and %cmp, 1</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>cmp \$sw, \$2, \$3</li> <li>andi \$2, \$sw, 1</li> <li>xori \$2, \$2, 1</li> <li>andi \$2, \$2, 1</li> </ul>
>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>%cmp = icmp gt i32 %0, %1</li> <li>%conv = zext i1 %cmp to i32</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(setcc %0, %1, setgt)</li> <li>and %cmp, 1</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>cmp \$sw, \$2, \$3</li> <li>andi \$2, \$sw, 2</li> <li>andi \$2, \$2, 1</li> </ul>
>=	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>%cmp = icmp le i32 %0, %1</li> <li>%conv = zext i1 %cmp to i32</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(setcc %0, %1, settle)</li> <li>and %cmp, 1</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>cmp \$sw, \$3, \$2</li> <li>andi \$2, \$sw, 1</li> <li>xori \$2, \$2, 1</li> <li>andi \$2, \$2, 1</li> </ul>

Table 4.6: Logic operators for cpu032II

C	.bc	Optimized legalized selection DAG	cpu032II
&, &&	and	and	and
,	or	or	or
^	xor	xor	xor
!	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>%tobool = icmp ne i32 %6, 0</li> <li>%lnot = xor i1 %tobool, true</li> <li>%conv = zext i1 %lnot to i32</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>%lnot = (setcc %tobool, 0, seteq)</li> <li>%conv = (and %lnot, 1)</li> <li>•</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>xor \$3, \$4, \$3</li> </ul>
==	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>%cmp = icmp eq i32 %0, %1</li> <li>%conv = zext i1 %cmp to i32</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>%cmp = (setcc %0, %1, seteq)</li> <li>and %cmp, 1</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>xor \$2, \$3, \$2</li> <li>sltiu \$2, \$2, 1</li> <li>andi \$2, \$2, 1</li> </ul>
!=	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>%cmp = icmp ne i32 %0, %1</li> <li>%conv = zext i1 %cmp to i32</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>%cmp = (setcc %0, %1, setne)</li> <li>and %cmp, 1</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>xor \$2, \$3, \$2</li> <li>sltu \$2, \$zero, 2</li> <li>shr \$2, \$2, 1</li> <li>andi \$2, \$2, 1</li> </ul>
<	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>%cmp = icmp lt i32 %0, %1</li> <li>%conv = zext i1 %cmp to i32</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(setcc %0, %1, setlt)</li> <li>and %cmp, 1</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>slt \$2, \$3, \$2</li> <li>andi \$2, \$2, 1</li> </ul>
<=	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>%cmp = icmp le i32 %0, %1</li> <li>%conv = zext i1 %cmp to i32</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(setcc %0, %1, settle)</li> <li>and %cmp, 1</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>slt \$2, \$3, \$2</li> <li>xori \$2, \$2, 1</li> <li>andi \$2, \$2, 1</li> </ul>
>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>%cmp = icmp gt i32 %0, %1</li> <li>%conv = zext i1 %cmp to i32</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(setcc %0, %1, setgt)</li> <li>and %cmp, 1</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>slt \$2, \$3, \$2</li> <li>andi \$2, \$2, 1</li> </ul>
>=	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>%cmp = icmp le i32 %0, %1</li> <li>%conv = zext i1 %cmp to i32</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(setcc %0, %1, settle)</li> <li>and %cmp, 1</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>slt \$2, \$3, \$2</li> <li>xori \$2, \$2, 1</li> <li>andi \$2, \$2, 1</li> </ul>

In relation operators ==, !=, ..., %0 = \$3 = 5, %1 = \$2 = 3 for ch4\_2\_logic.cpp.

The “Optimized legalized selection DAG” is the last DAG stage just before the “instruction selection” as the previous section mentioned in this chapter. You can see the whole DAG stages by `llc -debug` option.

From above result, slt spend less instructions than cmp for relation operators translation. Beyond that, slt uses general purpose register while cmp uses \$sw dedicated register.

### Ibdex/input/ch4\_2\_slt\_explain.cpp

```
int test_OptsLt()
{
    int a = 3, b = 1;
    int d = 0, e = 0, f = 0;

    d = (a < 1);
    e = (b < 2);
    f = d + e;

    return (f);
}
```

```
118-165-78-10:input Jonathan$ clang -target mips-unknown-linux-gnu -O2
-c ch4_2_slt_explain.cpp -emit-llvm -o ch4_2_slt_explain.bc
118-165-78-10:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/
Debug/bin/llc -march=cpu0 -mcpu=cpu032I -relocation-model=static -filetype=asm
ch4_2_slt_explain.bc -o -
...
ld $3, 20($sp)
cmp $sw, $3, $2
andi $2, $sw, 1
andi $2, $2, 1
st $2, 12($sp)
addiu $2, $zero, 2
ld $3, 16($sp)
cmp $sw, $3, $2
andi $2, $sw, 1
andi $2, $2, 1
...
118-165-78-10:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/
Debug/bin/llc -march=cpu0 -mcpu=cpu032II -relocation-model=static -filetype=asm
ch4_2_slt_explain.bc -o -
...
ld $2, 20($sp)
slti $2, $2, 1
andi $2, $2, 1
st $2, 12($sp)
ld $2, 16($sp)
slti $2, $2, 2
andi $2, $2, 1
st $2, 8($sp)
...
```

Run these two *llc -mcpu* option for Chapter4\_2 with ch4\_2\_slt\_explain.cpp to get the above result. Regardless of the move between \$sw and general purpose register in *llc -mcpu=cpu032I*, the two cmp instructions in it will has hazard in instruction reorder since both of them use \$sw register. The *llc -mcpu=cpu032II* has not this problem because it uses slti<sup>9</sup>. The slti version can reorder as follows,

---

<sup>9</sup> See book Computer Architecture: A Quantitative Approach (The Morgan Kaufmann Series in Computer Architecture and Design)

```

...
ld $2, 16($sp)
slti $2, $2, 2
andi $2, $2, 1
st $2, 8($sp)
ld $2, 20($sp)
slti $2, $2, 1
andi $2, $2, 1
st $2, 12($sp)
...

```

Chapter4\_2 include instructions cmp and slt. Though cpu032II include both of these two instructions, the slt takes the priority since “let Predicates = [HasSlt]” appeared before “let Predicates = [HasCmp]” in Cpu0InstrInfo.td.

## 4.3 Summary

List C operators, IR of .bc, Optimized legalized selection DAG and Cpu0 instructions implemented in this chapter in Table: Chapter 4 mathmetic operators. There are over 20 operators totally in mathmetic and logic support in this chapter and spend 4xx lines of source code.

Table 4.7: Chapter 4 mathmetic operators

C	.bc	Optimized legalized selection DAG	Cpu0
+	add	add	addu
-	sub	sub	subu
*	mul	mul	mul
/	sdiv	Cpu0ISD::DivRem	div
.	udiv	Cpu0ISD::DivRemU	divu
<<	shl	shl	shl
>>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ashr</li> <li>• lshr</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• sra</li> <li>• srl</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• sra</li> <li>• shr</li> </ul>
!	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• %tobool = icmp ne i32 %0, 0</li> <li>• %lnot = xor i1 %tobool, true</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• %lnot = (setcc %tobool, 0, seteq)</li> <li>• %conv = (and %lnot, 1)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• %1 = (xor %tobool, 0)</li> <li>• %true = (addiu \$r0, 1)</li> <li>• %lnot = (xor %1, %true)</li> </ul>
•	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• %conv = zext i1 %lnot to i32</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• %conv = (and %lnot, 1)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• %conv = (and %lnot, 1)</li> </ul>
%	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• srem</li> <li>• sremu</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Cpu0ISD::DivRem</li> <li>• Cpu0ISD::DivRemU</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• div</li> <li>• divu</li> </ul>
(x<<n) (x>>32-n)	shl + lshr	rotl, rotr	rol, rolv, ror, rorv



---

## GENERATING OBJECT FILES

- *Translate into obj file*
- *ELF obj related code*
- *Backend Target Registration Structure*

The previous chapters introducing the assembly code generation only. This chapter adding the elf obj support and verify the generated obj by objdump utility. With LLVM support, the Cpu0 backend can generate both big endian and little endian obj files with only a few code added. The Target Registration mechanism and their structure are introduced in this chapter.

### 5.1 Translate into obj file

Currently, we only support translation of llvm IR code into assembly code. If you try running Chapter4\_2/ to translate it into obj code will get the error message as follows,

```
[Gamma@localhost 3]$ ~/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/bin/
llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=obj ch4_1_math_math.bc -o
ch4_1_math.cpu0.o
~/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/bin/llc: target does not
support generation of this file type!
```

Chapter5\_1/ support obj file generation. It produces obj files both for big endian and little endian with command `llc -march=cpu0` and `llc -march=cpu0el`, respectively. Run with them will get the obj files as follows,

```
[Gamma@localhost input]$ cat ch4_1_math.cpu0.s
...
.set nomacro
# BB#0:                                # %entry
    addiu $sp, $sp, -40
$tmp1:
    .cfi_def_cfa_offset 40
    addiu $2, $zero, 5
    st $2, 36($fp)
    addiu $2, $zero, 2
    st $2, 32($fp)
    addiu $2, $zero, 0
    st $2, 28($fp)
...
```

```
[Gamma@localhost 3]$ ~/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/bin/
llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=obj ch4_1_math.bc -o
ch4_1_math.cpu0.o
[Gamma@localhost input]$ objdump -s ch4_1_math.cpu0.o

ch4_1_math.cpu0.o:      file format elf32-big

Contents of section .text:
0000 09ddfffc8 09200005 022d0034 09200002 ..... .-.4. ...
0010 022d0030 0920ffffb 022d002c 012d0030 .-.0. ...-.,.-.0
0020 013d0034 11232000 022d0028 012d0030 .=.4.# ...(.-.0
0030 013d0034 12232000 022d0024 012d0030 .=.4.# ...$.-.0
0040 013d0034 17232000 022d0020 012d0034 .=.4.# ...-. .-.4
0050 1e220002 022d001c 012d002c 1e220001 ."...-.-.,."...
0060 022d000c 012d0034 1d220002 022d0018 .-....4."....-
0070 012d002c 1f22001e 022d0008 09200001 .-.,."....-....-
0080 013d0034 21323000 023d0014 013d0030 .=.4!20..=....0
0090 21223000 022d0004 09200080 013d0034 !"0..-.... .-=.4
00a0 22223000 022d0010 012d0034 013d0030 ""0..-....4.=.0
00b0 20232000 022d0000 09dd0038 3ce00000 # ...-....8<...
[Gamma@localhost input]$ ~/llvm/test/
cmake_debug_build/bin/llc -march=cpu0el -relocation-model=pic -filetype=obj
ch4_1_math.bc -o ch4_1_math.cpu0el.o
[Gamma@localhost input]$ objdump -s ch4_1_math.cpu0el.o

ch4_1_math.cpu0el.o:      file format elf32-little

Contents of section .text:
0000 c8fffd09 05002009 34002d02 02002009 ..... .4.-....
0010 30002d02 fbf2009 2c002d02 30002d01 0.-.... ,.-.0.-.
0020 34003d01 00202311 28002d02 30002d01 4.=... #.(.-.0.-.
0030 34003d01 00202312 24002d02 30002d01 4.=... #.$..-.0.-.
0040 34003d01 00202317 20002d02 34002d01 4.=... #. .-.4.-.
0050 0200221e 1c002d02 2c002d01 0100221e .."-...,-....".
0060 0c002d02 34002d01 0200221d 18002d02 ..-.4.-...."-.....
0070 2c002d01 1e00221f 08002d02 01002009 ,.-...."-.... .
0080 34003d01 00303221 14003d02 30003d01 4.=..02!..=.0.=.
0090 00302221 04002d02 80002009 34003d01 .0!"..-.... .4.=.
00a0 00302222 10002d02 34002d01 30003d01 .0""..-4.-.0.=.
00b0 00202320 00002d02 3800dd09 0000e03c . # ...-8.....<
```

The first instruction is “**addiu \$sp, -56**” and its corresponding obj is 0x09ddfffc8. The opcode of addiu is 0x09, 8 bits; \$sp register number is 13(0xd), 4bits; and the immediate is 16 bits -56(=0xfffc8), so it is correct. The third instruction “**st \$2, 52(\$fp)**” and it’s corresponding obj is 0x022b0034. The st opcode is **0x02**, \$2 is 0x2, \$fp is 0xb and immediate is 52(0x0034). Thanks to Cpu0 instruction format which opcode, register operand and offset(immediate value) size are multiple of 4 bits. Base on the 4 bits multiple, the obj format is easy to check by eyes. The big endian (B0, B1, B2, B3) = (09, dd, ff, c8), objdump from B0 to B3 is 0x09ddfffc8 and the little endian is (B3, B2, B1, B0) = (09, dd, ff, c8), objdump from B0 to B3 is 0xc8fffd09.

## 5.2 ELF obj related code

To support elf obj generation, the following code changed and added to Chapter5\_1.

**Ibdex/chapters/Chapter5\_1/InstPrinter/Cpu0InstPrinter.cpp**

```
#include "MCTargetDesc/Cpu0MCExpr.h"
```

**Ibdex/chapters/Chapter5\_1/MCTargetDesc/CMakeLists.txt**

```
Cpu0AsmBackend.cpp
Cpu0MCCodeEmitter.cpp
Cpu0MCExpr.cpp
Cpu0ELFObjectWriter.cpp
Cpu0TargetStreamer.cpp
```

**Ibdex/chapters/Chapter5\_1/MCTargetDesc/Cpu0AsmBackend.h**

```
//===== Cpu0AsmBackend.h - Cpu0 Asm Backend =====//
//  

//          The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure  

//  

// This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source  

// License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.  

//  

//=====  

//  

// This file defines the Cpu0AsmBackend class.  

//  

//=====  

//  

#ifndef LLVM_LIB_TARGET_CPU0_MCTARGETDESC_CPU0ASMBACKEND_H
#define LLVM_LIB_TARGET_CPU0_MCTARGETDESC_CPU0ASMBACKEND_H

#include "Cpu0Config.h"

#include "MCTargetDesc/Cpu0FixupKinds.h"
#include "llvm/ADT/Triple.h"
#include "llvm/MC/MCAsmBackend.h"

namespace llvm {

class MCAssembler;
struct MCFixupKindInfo;
class Target;
class MCObjectWriter;

class Cpu0AsmBackend : public MCAsmBackend {
    Triple::OSType OSType;
    bool IsLittle; // Big or little endian

public:
    Cpu0AsmBackend(const Target &T, Triple::OSType _OSType, bool IsLittle)
        : MCAsmBackend(), OSType(_OSType), IsLittle(IsLittle) {}

    MCObjectWriter *createObjectWriter(raw_pwrite_stream &OS) const override;
```

```

void applyFixup(const MCFixup &Fixup, char *Data, unsigned DataSize,
               uint64_t Value, bool IsPCRel) const override;

const MCFixupKindInfo &getFixupKindInfo(MCFixupKind Kind) const override;

unsigned getNumFixupKinds() const override {
    return Cpu0::NumTargetFixupKinds;
}

/// @name Target Relaxation Interfaces
/// @{

/// \param Inst - The instruction to test.
bool mayNeedRelaxation(const MCInst &Inst) const override {
    return false;
}

/// fixupNeedsRelaxation - Target specific predicate for whether a given
/// fixup requires the associated instruction to be relaxed.
bool fixupNeedsRelaxation(const MCFixup &Fixup, uint64_t Value,
                           const MCRelaxableFragment *DF,
                           const MCAsmLayout &Layout) const override {
    // FIXME.
    llvm_unreachable("RelaxInstruction() unimplemented");
    return false;
}

/// RelaxInstruction - Relax the instruction in the given fragment
/// to the next wider instruction.
///
/// \param Inst - The instruction to relax, which may be the same
/// as the output.
/// \param [out] Res On return, the relaxed instruction.
void relaxInstruction(const MCInst &Inst, const MCSubtargetInfo &STI,
                      MCInst &Res) const override {}

/// @}

bool writeNopData(uint64_t Count, MCObjectWriter *OW) const override;
}; // class Cpu0AsmBackend

} // namespace

#endif

```

### [Index/chapters/Chapter5\\_1/MCTargetDesc/Cpu0AsmBackend.cpp](#)

```

//===== Cpu0AsmBackend.cpp - Cpu0 Asm Backend  -----//
//                                         The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure
//
```

```

// This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source
// License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.
//
//=====
//
// This file implements the Cpu0AsmBackend class.
//
//=====
//
#include "MCTargetDesc/Cpu0FixupKinds.h"
#include "MCTargetDesc/Cpu0AsmBackend.h"

#include "MCTargetDesc/Cpu0MCTargetDesc.h"
#include "llvm/MC/MCAsmBackend.h"
#include "llvm/MC/MCAssembler.h"
#include "llvm/MC/MCDirectives.h"
#include "llvm/MC/MCELFObjectWriter.h"
#include "llvm/MC/MCFixupKindInfo.h"
#include "llvm/MC/MCObjectWriter.h"
#include "llvm/MC/MCSubtargetInfo.h"
#include "llvm/Support/ErrorHandling.h"
#include "llvm/Support/raw_ostream.h"

using namespace llvm;

//@adjustFixupValue {
// Prepare value for the target space for it
static unsigned adjustFixupValue(const MCFixup &Fixup, uint64_t Value,
                                MCContext *Ctx = nullptr) {

    unsigned Kind = Fixup.getKind();

    // Add/subtract and shift
    switch (Kind) {
    default:
        return 0;
    case FK_GPRel_4:
    case FK_Data_4:
    case Cpu0::fixup_Cpu0_LO16:
        break;
    case Cpu0::fixup_Cpu0_HI16:
    case Cpu0::fixup_Cpu0_GOT:
        // Get the higher 16-bits. Also add 1 if bit 15 is 1.
        Value = ((Value + 0x8000) >> 16) & 0xffff;
        break;
    }

    return Value;
}
//@adjustFixupValue }

MCObjectWriter *
Cpu0AsmBackend::createObjectWriter(raw_pwrite_stream &OS) const {
    return createCpu0ELFObjectWriter(OS,
                                    MCELFObjectTargetWriter::getOSABI(OSType), IsLittle);
}

```

```

/// ApplyFixup - Apply the \p Value for given \p Fixup into the provided
/// data fragment, at the offset specified by the fixup and following the
/// fixup kind as appropriate.
void Cpu0AsmBackend::applyFixup(const MCFixup &Fixup, char *Data,
                                unsigned DataSize, uint64_t Value,
                                bool IsPCRel) const {
    MCFixupKind Kind = Fixup.getKind();
    Value = adjustFixupValue(Fixup, Value);

    if (!Value)
        return; // Doesn't change encoding.

    // Where do we start in the object
    unsigned Offset = Fixup.getOffset();
    // Number of bytes we need to fixup
    unsigned NumBytes = (getFixupKindInfo(Kind).TargetSize + 7) / 8;
    // Used to point to big endian bytes
    unsigned FullSize;

    switch ((unsigned)Kind) {
    default:
        FullSize = 4;
        break;
    }

    // Grab current value, if any, from bits.
    uint64_t CurVal = 0;

    for (unsigned i = 0; i != NumBytes; ++i) {
        unsigned Idx = IsLittle ? i : (FullSize - 1 - i);
        CurVal |= (uint64_t)((uint8_t)Data[Offset + Idx]) << (i*8);
    }

    uint64_t Mask = ((uint64_t)(-1) >>
                     (64 - getFixupKindInfo(Kind).TargetSize));
    CurVal |= Value & Mask;

    // Write out the fixed up bytes back to the code/data bits.
    for (unsigned i = 0; i != NumBytes; ++i) {
        unsigned Idx = IsLittle ? i : (FullSize - 1 - i);
        Data[Offset + Idx] = (uint8_t)((CurVal >> (i*8)) & 0xff);
    }
}

// @getFixupKindInfo {
const MCFixupKindInfo &Cpu0AsmBackend::
getFixupKindInfo(MCFixupKind Kind) const {
    const static MCFixupKindInfo Infos[Cpu0::NumTargetFixupKinds] = {
        // This table *must* be in same the order of fixup_* kinds in
        // Cpu0FixupKinds.h.
        //
        // name                  offset  bits  flags
        { "fixup_Cpu0_32",      0,      32,   0 },
        { "fixup_Cpu0_HI16",    0,      16,   0 },
        { "fixup_Cpu0_LO16",    0,      16,   0 },
        { "fixup_Cpu0_GPREL16", 0,      16,   0 },
        { "fixup_Cpu0_GOT",     0,      16,   0 },
        { "fixup_Cpu0_GOT_HI16",0,      16,   0 },
    };
}

```

```

    { "fixup_Cpu0_GOT_LO16",      0,      16,      0 }

};

if (Kind < FirstTargetFixupKind)
    return MCAsmBackend::getFixupKindInfo(Kind);

assert(unsigned(Kind - FirstTargetFixupKind) < getNumFixupKinds() &&
       "Invalid kind!");
return Infos[Kind - FirstTargetFixupKind];
}
//@getFixupKindInfo }

/// WriteNopData - Write an (optimal) nop sequence of Count bytes
/// to the given output. If the target cannot generate such a sequence,
/// it should return an error.
///
/// \return - True on success.
bool Cpu0AsmBackend::writeNopData(uint64_t Count, MCObjectWriter *OW) const {
    return true;
}

// MCAsmBackend
MCAsmBackend *llvm::createCpu0AsmBackendEL32(const Target &T,
                                              const MCRegisterInfo &MRI,
                                              const Triple &TT, StringRef CPU) {
    return new Cpu0AsmBackend(T, TT.getOS(), /*IsLittle*/true);
}

MCAsmBackend *llvm::createCpu0AsmBackendEB32(const Target &T,
                                              const MCRegisterInfo &MRI,
                                              const Triple &TT, StringRef CPU) {
    return new Cpu0AsmBackend(T, TT.getOS(), /*IsLittle*/false);
}

```

## Ibdex/chapters/Chapter5\_1/MCTargetDesc/Cpu0BaseInfo.h

```
#include "Cpu0FixupKinds.h"
```

## Ibdex/chapters/Chapter5\_1/MCTargetDesc/Cpu0ELFObjectWriter.cpp

```

===== Cpu0ELFObjectWriter.cpp - Cpu0 ELF Writer =====
//
// The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure
//
// This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source
// License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.
//
=====

#include "Cpu0Config.h"

#include "MCTargetDesc/Cpu0BaseInfo.h"
#include "MCTargetDesc/Cpu0FixupKinds.h"

```

```

#include "MCTargetDesc/Cpu0MCTargetDesc.h"
#include "llvm/MC/MCAssembler.h"
#include "llvm/MC/MCELFObjectWriter.h"
#include "llvm/MC/MCExpr.h"
#include "llvm/MC/MCSection.h"
#include "llvm/MC/MCValue.h"
#include "llvm/Support/ErrorHandling.h"
#include <list>

using namespace llvm;

namespace {
    class Cpu0ELFObjectWriter : public MCELFObjectTargetWriter {
public:
    Cpu0ELFObjectWriter(uint8_t OSABI);

    ~Cpu0ELFObjectWriter() override;

    unsigned getRelocType(MCContext &Ctx, const MCValue &Target,
                          const MCFixup &Fixup, bool IsPCRel) const override;
    bool needsRelocateWithSymbol(const MCSymbol &Sym,
                                 unsigned Type) const override;
};

Cpu0ELFObjectWriter::Cpu0ELFObjectWriter(uint8_t OSABI)
    : MCELFObjectTargetWriter(/*_is64Bit=false*/ false, OSABI, ELF::EM_CPU0,
                           /*HasRelocationAddend*/ false) {}

Cpu0ELFObjectWriter::~Cpu0ELFObjectWriter() {}

// @GetRelocType {
unsigned Cpu0ELFObjectWriter::getRelocType(MCContext &Ctx,
                                         const MCValue &Target,
                                         const MCFixup &Fixup,
                                         bool IsPCRel) const {
    // determine the type of the relocation
    unsigned Type = (unsigned)ELF::R_CPU0_NONE;
    unsigned Kind = (unsigned)Fixup.getKind();

    switch (Kind) {
    default:
        llvm_unreachable("invalid fixup kind!");
    case FK_Data_4:
        Type = ELF::R_CPU0_32;
        break;
    case Cpu0::fixup_Cpu0_32:
        Type = ELF::R_CPU0_32;
        break;
    case Cpu0::fixup_Cpu0_GPREL16:
        Type = ELF::R_CPU0_GPREL16;
        break;
    case Cpu0::fixup_Cpu0_GOT:
        Type = ELF::R_CPU0_GOT16;
        break;
    case Cpu0::fixup_Cpu0_HI16:
        Type = ELF::R_CPU0_HI16;
        break;
    }
}

```

```

case Cpu0::fixup_Cpu0_LO16:
    Type = ELF::R_CPU0_LO16;
    break;
case Cpu0::fixup_Cpu0_GOT_HI16:
    Type = ELF::R_CPU0_GOT_HI16;
    break;
case Cpu0::fixup_Cpu0_GOT_LO16:
    Type = ELF::R_CPU0_GOT_LO16;
    break;
}

return Type;
}
//@GetRelocType }

bool
Cpu0ELFObjectWriter::needsRelocateWithSymbol(const MCSymbol &Sym,
                                              unsigned Type) const {
    // FIXME: This is extremely conservative. This really needs to use a
    // whitelist with a clear explanation for why each realocation needs to
    // point to the symbol, not to the section.
    switch (Type) {
    default:
        return true;

    case ELF::R_CPU0_GOT16:
        // For Cpu0 pic mode, I think it's OK to return true but I didn't confirm.
        // llvm_unreachable("Should have been handled already");
        return true;

        // These relocations might be paired with another relocation. The pairing is
        // done by the static linker by matching the symbol. Since we only see one
        // relocation at a time, we have to force them to relocate with a symbol to
        // avoid ending up with a pair where one points to a section and another
        // points to a symbol.
    case ELF::R_CPU0_HI16:
    case ELF::R_CPU0_LO16:
        // R_CPU0_32 should be a relocation record, I don't know why Mips set it to
        // false.
    case ELF::R_CPU0_32:
        return true;

    case ELF::R_CPU0_GPREL16:
        return false;
    }
}

MCObjectWriter *llvm::createCpu0ELFObjectWriter(raw_pwrite_stream &OS,
                                                uint8_t OSABI,
                                                bool IsLittleEndian) {
    MCELFObjectTargetWriter *MOTW = new Cpu0ELFObjectWriter(OSABI);
    return createELFObjectWriter(MOTW, OS, IsLittleEndian);
}

```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter5\_1/MCTargetDesc/Cpu0FixupKinds.h

```
===== Cpu0FixupKinds.h - Cpu0 Specific Fixup Entries ----- C++ -*-=====//  
//  
// The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure  
//  
// This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source  
// License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.  
//  
=====//  
  
#ifndef LLVM_LIB_TARGET_CPU0_MCTARGETDESC_CPU0FIXUPKINDS_H  
#define LLVM_LIB_TARGET_CPU0_MCTARGETDESC_CPU0FIXUPKINDS_H  
  
#include "Cpu0Config.h"  
  
#include "llvm/MC/MCFixup.h"  
  
namespace llvm {  
namespace Cpu0 {  
    // Although most of the current fixup types reflect a unique relocation  
    // one can have multiple fixup types for a given relocation and thus need  
    // to be uniquely named.  
    //  
    // This table *must* be in the save order of  
    // MCFixupKindInfo Infos[Cpu0::NumTargetFixupKinds]  
    // in Cpu0AsmBackend.cpp.  
    // @Fixups {  
    enum Fixups {  
        // @ Pure upper 32 bit fixup resulting in - R_CPU0_32.  
        fixup_Cpu0_32 = FirstTargetFixupKind,  
  
        // Pure upper 16 bit fixup resulting in - R_CPU0_HI16.  
        fixup_Cpu0_HI16,  
  
        // Pure lower 16 bit fixup resulting in - R_CPU0_LO16.  
        fixup_Cpu0_LO16,  
  
        // 16 bit fixup for GP offset resulting in - R_CPU0_GPREL16.  
        fixup_Cpu0_GPREL16,  
  
        // Symbol fixup resulting in - R_CPU0_GOT16.  
        fixup_Cpu0_GOT,  
  
        // resulting in - R_CPU0_GOT_HI16  
        fixup_Cpu0_GOT_HI16,  
  
        // resulting in - R_CPU0_GOT_LO16  
        fixup_Cpu0_GOT_LO16,  
  
        // Marker  
        LastTargetFixupKind,  
        NumTargetFixupKinds = LastTargetFixupKind - FirstTargetFixupKind  
    };  
    // @Fixups }  
} // namespace Cpu0
```

```
} // namespace llvm

#endif // LLVM_CPU0_CPU0FIXUPKINDS_H
```

**Index/chapters/Chapter5\_1/MCTargetDesc/Cpu0MCCodeEmitter.h**

```
===== Cpu0MCCodeEmitter.h - Convert Cpu0 Code to Machine Code =====
//
// The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure
//
// This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source
// License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.
//
//=====
//
// This file defines the Cpu0MCCodeEmitter class.
//
//=====
//
#ifndef LLVM_LIB_TARGET_CPU0_MCTARGETDESC_CPU0MCODEEMITTER_H
#define LLVM_LIB_TARGET_CPU0_MCTARGETDESC_CPU0MCODEEMITTER_H

#include "Cpu0Config.h"

#include "llvm/MC/MCCodeEmitter.h"
#include "llvm/Support/DataTypes.h"

using namespace llvm;

namespace llvm {
class MCContext;
class MCExpr;
class MCInst;
class MCInstrInfo;
class MCFixup;
class MCOperand;
class MCSubtargetInfo;
class raw_ostream;

class Cpu0MCCodeEmitter : public MCCodeEmitter {
    Cpu0MCCodeEmitter(const Cpu0MCCodeEmitter &) = delete;
    void operator=(const Cpu0MCCodeEmitter &) = delete;
    const MCInstrInfo &MCII;
    MCContext &Ctx;
    bool IsLittleEndian;

public:
    Cpu0MCCodeEmitter(const MCInstrInfo &mcii, MCContext &Ctx_, bool IsLittle)
        : MCII(mcii), Ctx(Ctx_), IsLittleEndian(IsLittle) {}

    ~Cpu0MCCodeEmitter() override {}

    void EmitByte(unsigned char C, raw_ostream &OS) const;
```

```

void EmitInstruction(uint64_t Val, unsigned Size, raw_ostream &OS) const;

void encodeInstruction(const MCInst &MI, raw_ostream &OS,
                      SmallVectorImpl<MCFixup> &Fixups,
                      const MCSubtargetInfo &STI) const override;

// getBinaryCodeForInstr - TableGen'ered function for getting the
// binary encoding for an instruction.
uint64_t getBinaryCodeForInstr(const MCInst &MI,
                             SmallVectorImpl<MCFixup> &Fixups,
                             const MCSubtargetInfo &STI) const;

// getBranch16TargetOpValue - Return binary encoding of the branch
// target operand, such as BEQ, BNE. If the machine operand
// requires relocation, record the relocation and return zero.
unsigned getBranch16TargetOpValue(const MCInst &MI, unsigned OpNo,
                                 SmallVectorImpl<MCFixup> &Fixups,
                                 const MCSubtargetInfo &STI) const;

// getBranch24TargetOpValue - Return binary encoding of the branch
// target operand, such as JMP #BB01, JEQ, JSUB. If the machine operand
// requires relocation, record the relocation and return zero.
unsigned getBranch24TargetOpValue(const MCInst &MI, unsigned OpNo,
                                 SmallVectorImpl<MCFixup> &Fixups,
                                 const MCSubtargetInfo &STI) const;

// getJumpTargetOpValue - Return binary encoding of the jump
// target operand, such as JSUB #function_addr.
// If the machine operand requires relocation,
// record the relocation and return zero.
unsigned getJumpTargetOpValue(const MCInst &MI, unsigned OpNo,
                            SmallVectorImpl<MCFixup> &Fixups,
                            const MCSubtargetInfo &STI) const;

// getMachineOpValue - Return binary encoding of operand. If the machine
// operand requires relocation, record the relocation and return zero.
unsigned getMachineOpValue(const MCInst &MI, const MCOperand &MO,
                           SmallVectorImpl<MCFixup> &Fixups,
                           const MCSubtargetInfo &STI) const;

unsigned getMemEncoding(const MCInst &MI, unsigned OpNo,
                       SmallVectorImpl<MCFixup> &Fixups,
                       const MCSubtargetInfo &STI) const;

unsigned getExprOpValue(const MCE Expr *Expr, SmallVectorImpl<MCFixup> &Fixups,
                       const MCSubtargetInfo &STI) const;
}; // class Cpu0MCCodeEmitter
} // namespace llvm.

#endif

```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter5\_1/MCTargetDesc/Cpu0MCCodeEmitter.cpp

```

//===== Cpu0MCCodeEmitter.cpp - Convert Cpu0 Code to Machine Code =====//
//
```

```

//                                     The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure
//
// This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source
// License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.
//
//=====
//
// This file implements the Cpu0MCCodeEmitter class.
//
//=====
//
#include "Cpu0MCCodeEmitter.h"

#include "MCTargetDesc/Cpu0BaseInfo.h"
#include "MCTargetDesc/Cpu0FixupKinds.h"
#include "MCTargetDesc/Cpu0MCExpr.h"
#include "MCTargetDesc/Cpu0MCTargetDesc.h"
#include "llvm/ADT/APFloat.h"
#include "llvm/MC/MCCodeEmitter.h"
#include "llvm/MC/MCContext.h"
#include "llvm/MC/MCExpr.h"
#include "llvm/MC/MCInst.h"
#include "llvm/MC/MCInstrInfo.h"
#include "llvm/MC/MCRegisterInfo.h"
#include "llvm/MC/MCSubtargetInfo.h"
#include "llvm/Support/raw_ostream.h"

#define DEBUG_TYPE "mccodeemitter"

#define GET_INSTRMAP_INFO
#include "Cpu0GenInstrInfo.inc"
#undef GET_INSTRMAP_INFO

namespace llvm {
MCCodeEmitter *llvm::createCpu0MCCodeEmitterEB(const MCInstrInfo &MCII,
                                                const MCRegisterInfo &MRI,
                                                MCContext &Ctx) {
    return new Cpu0MCCodeEmitter(MCII, Ctx, false);
}

MCCodeEmitter *llvm::createCpu0MCCodeEmitterEL(const MCInstrInfo &MCII,
                                                const MCRegisterInfo &MRI,
                                                MCContext &Ctx) {
    return new Cpu0MCCodeEmitter(MCII, Ctx, true);
}
} // End of namespace llvm

void Cpu0MCCodeEmitter::EmitByte(unsigned char C, raw_ostream &OS) const {
    OS << (char)C;
}

void Cpu0MCCodeEmitter::EmitInstruction(uint64_t Val, unsigned Size, raw_ostream &OS) {
    // Output the instruction encoding in little endian byte order.
    for (unsigned i = 0; i < Size; ++i) {
        unsigned Shift = IsLittleEndian ? i * 8 : (Size - 1 - i) * 8;
        EmitByte((Val >> Shift) & 0xff, OS);
}

```

```
}

/// encodeInstruction - Emit the instruction.
/// Size the instruction (currently only 4 bytes)
void Cpu0MCCodeEmitter::encodeInstruction(const MCInst &MI, raw_ostream &OS,
                                           SmallVectorImpl<MCFixup> &Fixups,
                                           const MCSubtargetInfo &STI) const
{
    uint32_t Binary = getBinaryCodeForInstr(MI, Fixups, STI);

    // Check for unimplemented opcodes.
    // Unfortunately in CPU0 both NOT and SLL will come in with Binary == 0
    // so we have to special check for them.
    unsigned Opcode = MI.getOpcode();
    if ((Opcode != Cpu0::NOP) && (Opcode != Cpu0::SHL) && !Binary)
        llvm_unreachable("unimplemented opcode in encodeInstruction()");

    const MCInstrDesc &Desc = MCII.get(MI.getOpcode());
    uint64_t TSFlags = Desc.TSFlags;

    // Pseudo instructions don't get encoded and shouldn't be here
    // in the first place!
    if ((TSFlags & Cpu0II::FormMask) == Cpu0II::Pseudo)
        llvm_unreachable("Pseudo opcode found in encodeInstruction()");

    // For now all instructions are 4 bytes
    int Size = 4; // FIXME: Have Desc.getSize() return the correct value!

    EmitInstruction(Binary, Size, OS);
}

//@CH8_1 {
/// getBranch16TargetOpValue - Return binary encoding of the branch
/// target operand. If the machine operand requires relocation,
/// record the relocation and return zero.
unsigned Cpu0MCCodeEmitter::getBranch16TargetOpValue(const MCInst &MI, unsigned OpNo,
                                                     SmallVectorImpl<MCFixup> &Fixups,
                                                     const MCSubtargetInfo &STI) const {
    return 0;
}

/// getBranch24TargetOpValue - Return binary encoding of the branch
/// target operand. If the machine operand requires relocation,
/// record the relocation and return zero.
unsigned Cpu0MCCodeEmitter::getBranch24TargetOpValue(const MCInst &MI, unsigned OpNo,
                                                     SmallVectorImpl<MCFixup> &Fixups,
                                                     const MCSubtargetInfo &STI) const {
    return 0;
}

/// getJumpTargetOpValue - Return binary encoding of the jump
/// target operand, such as JSUB.
/// If the machine operand requires relocation,
/// record the relocation and return zero.
```

```

//@getJumpTargetOpValue {
unsigned Cpu0MCCodeEmitter::
getJumpTargetOpValue(const MCInst &MI, unsigned OpNo,
                     SmallVectorImpl<MCFixup> &Fixups,
                     const MCSubtargetInfo &STI) const {
    return 0;
}
//@CH8_1 }

//@getExprOpValue {
unsigned Cpu0MCCodeEmitter::
getExprOpValue(const MCE Expr *Expr, SmallVectorImpl<MCFixup> &Fixups,
               const MCSubtargetInfo &STI) const {
//@getExprOpValue body {
    MCE Expr::ExprKind Kind = Expr->getKind();
    if (Kind == MCE Expr::Constant) {
        return cast<MCConstantExpr>(Expr)->getValue();
    }

    if (Kind == MCE Expr::Binary) {
        unsigned Res = getExprOpValue(cast<MCBinaryExpr>(Expr)->getLHS(), Fixups, STI);
        Res += getExprOpValue(cast<MCBinaryExpr>(Expr)->getRHS(), Fixups, STI);
        return Res;
    }

    if (Kind == MCE Expr::Target) {
        const Cpu0MCExpr *Cpu0Expr = cast<Cpu0MCExpr>(Expr);

        Cpu0::Fixups FixupKind = Cpu0::Fixups(0);
        switch (Cpu0Expr->getKind()) {
        default: llvm_unreachable("Unsupported fixup kind for target expression!");
        } // switch
        Fixups.push_back(MCFixup::create(0, Expr, MCFixupKind(FixupKind)));
        return 0;
    }

    // All of the information is in the fixup.
    return 0;
}

/// getMachineOpValue - Return binary encoding of operand. If the machine
/// operand requires relocation, record the relocation and return zero.
unsigned Cpu0MCCodeEmitter::
getMachineOpValue(const MCInst &MI, const MCOperand &MO,
                  SmallVectorImpl<MCFixup> &Fixups,
                  const MCSubtargetInfo &STI) const {
    if (MO.isReg()) {
        unsigned Reg = MO.getReg();
        unsigned RegNo = Ctx.getRegisterInfo()->getEncodingValue(Reg);
        return RegNo;
    } else if (MO.isImm()) {
        return static_cast<unsigned>(MO.getImm());
    } else if (MO.isFPImm()) {
        return static_cast<unsigned>(APFloat(MO.getFPImm())
            .bitcastToAPInt().getHiBits(32).getLimitedValue());
    }
    // MO must be an Expr.
    assert(MO.isExpr());
}

```

```

        return getExprOpValue(MO.getExpr(), Fixups, STI);
    }

/// getMemEncoding - Return binary encoding of memory related operand.
/// If the offset operand requires relocation, record the relocation.
unsigned
Cpu0MCCodeEmitter::getMemEncoding(const MCInst &MI, unsigned OpNo,
                                  SmallVectorImpl<MCFixup> &Fixups,
                                  const MCSubtargetInfo &STI) const {
    // Base register is encoded in bits 20-16, offset is encoded in bits 15-0.
    assert(MI.getOperand(OpNo).isReg());
    unsigned RegBits = getMachineOpValue(MI, MI.getOperand(OpNo), Fixups, STI) << 16;
    unsigned OffBits = getMachineOpValue(MI, MI.getOperand(OpNo+1), Fixups, STI);

    return (OffBits & 0xFFFF) | RegBits;
}

#include "Cpu0GenMCCodeEmitter.inc"

```

## Ibdex/chapters/Chapter5\_1/MCTargetDesc/Cpu0MCExpr.h

```

//===== Cpu0MCExpr.h - Cpu0 specific MC expression classes ----- C++ -*=====
//
// The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure
//
// This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source
// License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.
//
//=====

#ifndef LLVM_LIB_TARGET_CPU0_MCTARGETDESC_CPU0MCEXPR_H
#define LLVM_LIB_TARGET_CPU0_MCTARGETDESC_CPU0MCEXPR_H

#include "Cpu0Config.h"
#if CH >= CH5_1

#include "llvm/MC/MCAsmLayout.h"
#include "llvm/MC/MCExpr.h"
#include "llvm/MC/MCValue.h"

namespace llvm {

class Cpu0MCExpr : public MCTargetExpr {
public:
    enum Cpu0ExprKind {
        CEK_None,
        CEK_ABS_HI,
        CEK_ABS_LO,
        CEK_CALL_HI16,
        CEK_CALL_LO16,
        CEK_DTP_HI,
        CEK_DTP_LO,
        CEK_GOT,
        CEK_GOTTPREL,
        CEK_GOT_CALL,

```

```

CEK_GOT_DISP,
CEK_GOT_HI16,
CEK_GOT_LO16,
CEK_GPREL,
CEK_TLSGD,
CEK_TLSLDM,
CEK_TP_HI,
CEK_TP_LO,
CEK_Special,
};

private:
const Cpu0ExprKind Kind;
const MCExpr *Expr;

explicit Cpu0MCExpr(Cpu0ExprKind Kind, const MCExpr *Expr)
: Kind(Kind), Expr(Expr) {}

public:
static const Cpu0MCExpr *create(Cpu0ExprKind Kind, const MCExpr *Expr,
                                 MCContext &Ctx);
static const Cpu0MCExpr *create(const MCSymbol *Symbol,
                                Cpu0MCExpr::Cpu0ExprKind Kind, MCContext &Ctx);
static const Cpu0MCExpr *createGpOff(Cpu0ExprKind Kind, const MCExpr *Expr,
                                      MCContext &Ctx);

/// Get the kind of this expression.
Cpu0ExprKind getKind() const { return Kind; }

/// Get the child of this expression.
const MCExpr *getSubExpr() const { return Expr; }

void printImpl(raw_ostream &OS, const MCAsmInfo *MAI) const override;
bool evaluateAsRelocatableImpl(MCValue &Res, const MCAsmLayout *Layout,
                               const MCFixup *Fixup) const override;
void visitUsedExpr(MCStreamer &Streamer) const override;
MCFragment *findAssociatedFragment() const override {
    return getSubExpr()->findAssociatedFragment();
}

void fixELFSymbolsInTLSFixups(MCAssembler &Asm) const override;

static bool classof(const MCExpr *E) {
    return E->getKind() == MCExpr::Target;
}

bool isGpOff(Cpu0ExprKind &Kind) const;
bool isGpOff() const {
    Cpu0ExprKind Kind;
    return isGpOff(Kind);
}
};

} // end namespace llvm

#endif // #if CH >= CH5_1

#endif

```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter5\_1/MCTargetDesc/Cpu0MCExpr.cpp

```
//===== Cpu0MCExpr.cpp - Cpu0 specific MC expression classes =====//
//
// The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure
//
// This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source
// License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.
//
//=====

#include "Cpu0.h"

#if CH >= CH5_1

#include "Cpu0MCExpr.h"
#include "llvm/MC/MCAsmInfo.h"
#include "llvm/MC/MCAssembler.h"
#include "llvm/MC/MCContext.h"
#include "llvm/MC/MCObjectStreamer.h"
#include "llvm/MC/MCSymbolELF.h"
#include "llvm/Support/ELF.h"

using namespace llvm;

#define DEBUG_TYPE "cpu0mcexpr"

const Cpu0MCExpr *Cpu0MCExpr::create(Cpu0MCExpr::Cpu0ExprKind Kind,
                                      const MCExpr *Expr, MCContext &Ctx) {
    return new (Ctx) Cpu0MCExpr(Kind, Expr);
}

const Cpu0MCExpr *Cpu0MCExpr::create(const MCSymbol *Symbol, Cpu0MCExpr::Cpu0ExprKind Kind,
                                      MCContext &Ctx) {
    const MCSymbolRefExpr *MCSym =
        MCSymbolRefExpr::create(Symbol, MCSymbolRefExpr::VK_None, Ctx);
    return new (Ctx) Cpu0MCExpr(Kind, MCSym);
}

const Cpu0MCExpr *Cpu0MCExpr::createGpOff(Cpu0MCExpr::Cpu0ExprKind Kind,
                                           const MCExpr *Expr, MCContext &Ctx) {
    return create(Kind, create(CEK_None, create(CEK_GPREL, Expr, Ctx), Ctx), Ctx);
}

void Cpu0MCExpr::printImpl(raw_ostream &OS, const MCAsmInfo *MAI) const {
    int64_t AbsVal;

    switch (Kind) {
    case CEK_None:
    case CEK_Special:
        llvm_unreachable("CEK_None and CEK_Special are invalid");
        break;
    case CEK_CALL_HI16:
        OS << "%call_hi";
        break;
    case CEK_CALL_LO16:
        OS << "%call_lo";
    }
}
```

```

break;
case CEK_DTP_HI:
    OS << "%dtp_hi";
break;
case CEK_DTP_LO:
    OS << "%dtp_lo";
break;
case CEK_GOT:
    OS << "%got";
break;
case CEK_GOTPREL:
    OS << "%gotprel";
break;
case CEK_GOT_CALL:
    OS << "%call16";
break;
case CEK_GOT_DISP:
    OS << "%got_disp";
break;
case CEK_GOT_HI16:
    OS << "%got_hi";
break;
case CEK_GOT_LO16:
    OS << "%got_lo";
break;
case CEK_GPREL:
    OS << "%gp_rel";
break;
case CEK_ABS_HI:
    OS << "%hi";
break;
case CEK_ABS_LO:
    OS << "%lo";
break;
case CEK_TLSGD:
    OS << "%tlsgd";
break;
case CEK_TLSLDM:
    OS << "%tlsldm";
break;
case CEK_TP_HI:
    OS << "%tp_hi";
break;
case CEK_TP_LO:
    OS << "%tp_lo";
break;
}

OS << '(';
if (Expr->evaluateAsAbsolute(AbsVal))
    OS << AbsVal;
else
    Expr->print(OS, MAI, true);
OS << ')';
}

bool
Cpu0MCExpr::evaluateAsRelocatableImpl(MCValue &Res,

```

```

        const MCAsmLayout *Layout,
        const MCFixup *Fixup) const {
    return getSubExpr()->evaluateAsRelocatable(Res, Layout, Fixup);
}

void Cpu0MCExpr::visitUsedExpr(MCStreamer &Streamer) const {
    Streamer.visitUsedExpr(*getSubExpr());
}

void Cpu0MCExpr::fixELFSymbolsInTLSFixups(MCAssembler &Asm) const {
    switch (getKind()) {
        case CEK_None:
        case CEK_Special:
            llvm_unreachable("CEK_None and CEK_Special are invalid");
            break;
        case CEK_CALL_HI16:
        case CEK_CALL_LO16:
            break;
    }
}

bool Cpu0MCExpr::isGpOff(Cpu0ExprKind &Kind) const {
    if (const Cpu0MCExpr *S1 = dyn_cast<const Cpu0MCExpr>(getSubExpr())) {
        if (const Cpu0MCExpr *S2 = dyn_cast<const Cpu0MCExpr>(S1->getSubExpr())) {
            if (S1->getKind() == CEK_None && S2->getKind() == CEK_GPREL) {
                Kind = getKind();
                return true;
            }
        }
    }
    return false;
}

#endif

```

## [Index/chapters/Chapter5\\_1/MCTargetDesc/Cpu0MCTargetDesc.h](#)

```

MCCodeEmitter *createCpu0MCCodeEmitterEB(const MCInstrInfo &MCII,
                                         const MCRegisterInfo &MRI,
                                         MCContext &Ctx);
MCCodeEmitter *createCpu0MCCodeEmitterEL(const MCInstrInfo &MCII,
                                         const MCRegisterInfo &MRI,
                                         MCContext &Ctx);

MCAsmBackend *createCpu0AsmBackendEB32(const Target &T,
                                         const MCRegisterInfo &MRI,
                                         const Triple &TT, StringRef CPU);
MCAsmBackend *createCpu0AsmBackendEL32(const Target &T,
                                         const MCRegisterInfo &MRI,
                                         const Triple &TT, StringRef CPU);

MCObjectWriter *createCpu0ELFObjectWriter(raw_pwrite_stream &OS,
                                         uint8_t OSABI,
                                         bool IsLittleEndian);

```

**Ibdex/chapters/Chapter5\_1/MCTargetDesc/Cpu0MCTargetDesc.cpp**

```

static MCStreamer *createMCStreamer(const Triple &TT, MCContext &Context,
                                    MCAsmBackend &MAB, raw_pwrite_stream &OS,
                                    MCCodeEmitter *Emitter, bool RelaxAll) {
    return createELFStreamer(Context, MAB, OS, Emitter, RelaxAll);
}

static MCTargetStreamer *createCpu0AsmTargetStreamer(MCStreamer &S,
                                                      formatted_raw_ostream &OS,
                                                      MCInstPrinter *InstPrint,
                                                      bool isVerboseAsm) {
    return new Cpu0TargetAsmStreamer(S, OS);
}

extern "C" void LLVMInitializeCpu0TargetMC() {

    // Register the elf streamer.
    TargetRegistry::RegisterELFStreamer(*T, createMCStreamer);

    // Register the asm target streamer.
    TargetRegistry::RegisterAsmTargetStreamer(*T, createCpu0AsmTargetStreamer);

    // Register the MC Code Emitter
    TargetRegistry::RegisterMCCodeEmitter(TheCpu0Target,
                                          createCpu0MCCodeEmitterEB);
    TargetRegistry::RegisterMCCodeEmitter(TheCpu0elTarget,
                                          createCpu0MCCodeEmitterEL);

    // Register the asm backend.
    TargetRegistry::RegisterMCAsmBackend(TheCpu0Target,
                                         createCpu0AsmBackendEB32);
    TargetRegistry::RegisterMCAsmBackend(TheCpu0elTarget,
                                         createCpu0AsmBackendEL32);
}

}

```

**Ibdex/chapters/Chapter5\_1/Cpu0MCInstLower.h**

```
#include "MCTargetDesc/Cpu0MCExpr.h"
```

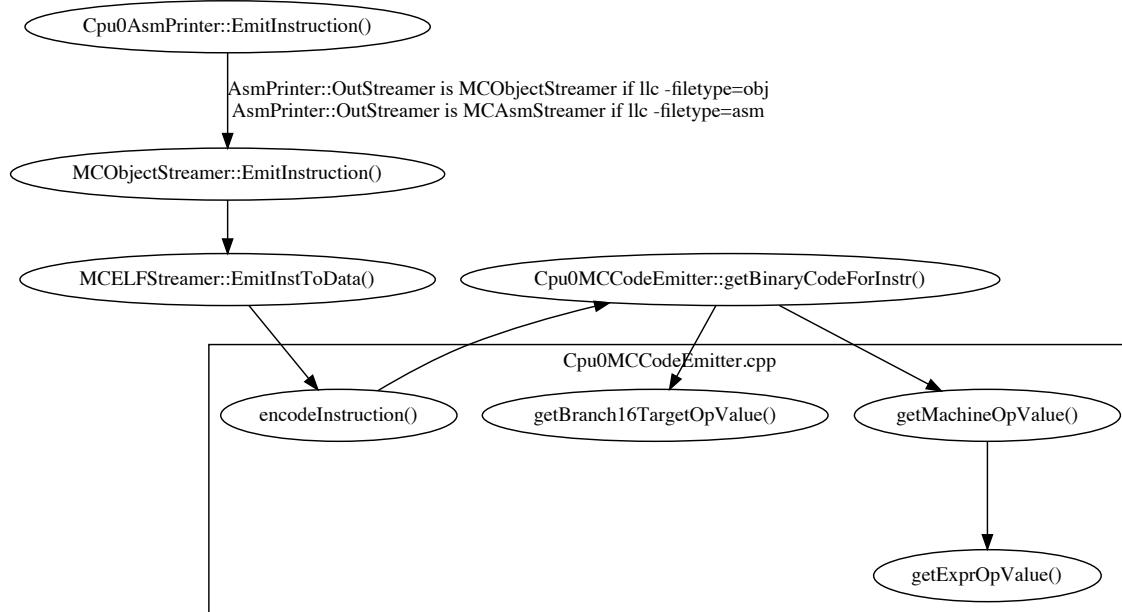


Figure: Calling Functions of elf encoder

The ELF encoder calling functions shown as the figure above. `AsmPrinter::OutStreamer` is set to `MCOObjectStreamer` when by `llc` driver when user input `llc -filetype=obj`.

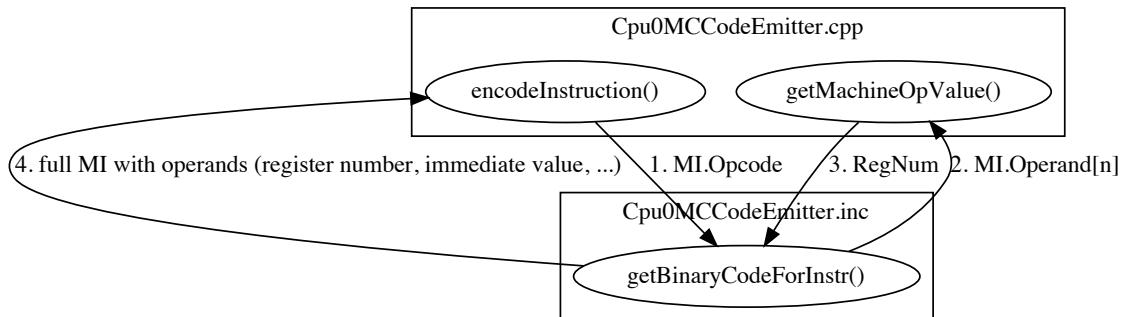
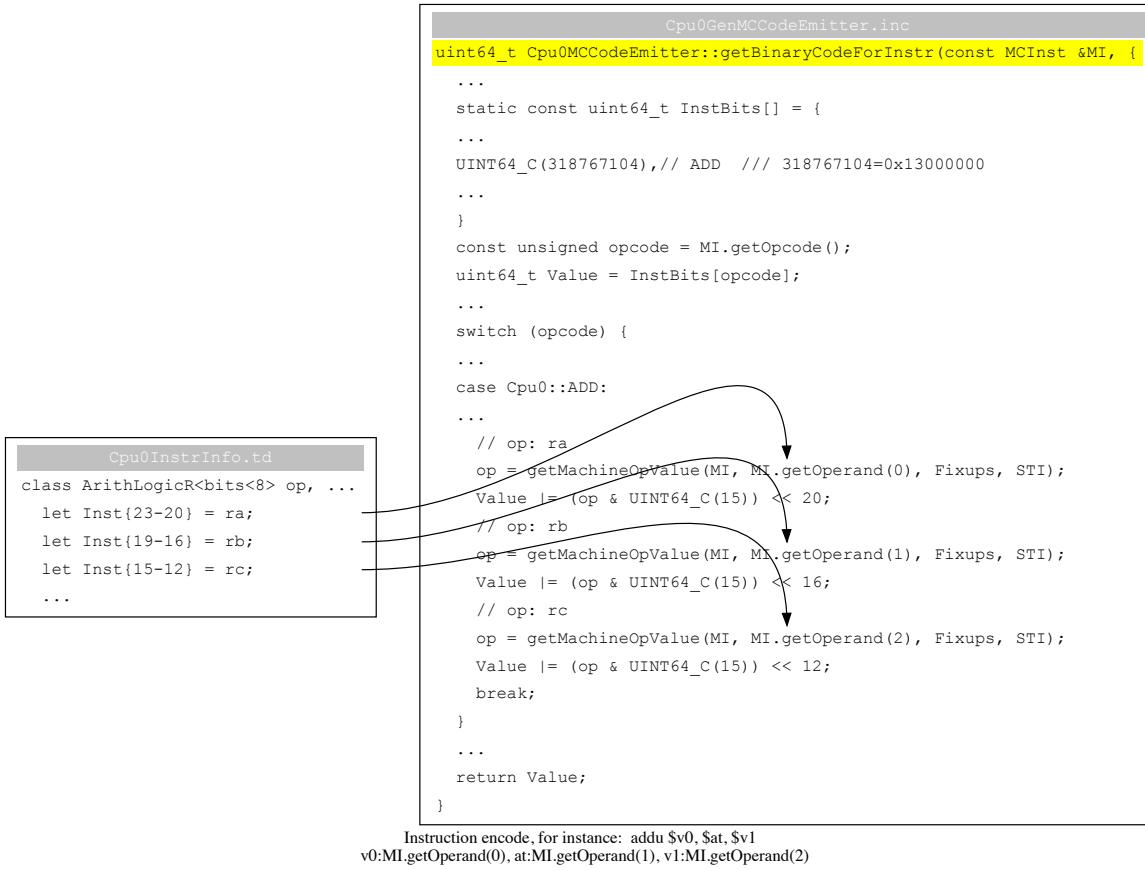


Figure: DFD flow for instruction encode

The instruction operands information for encoder is got as the figure above. Steps as follows,

1. Function `encodeInstruction()` pass `MI.Opcod` to `getBinaryCodeForInstr()`.
2. `getBinaryCodeForInstr()` pass `MI.Operand[n]` to `getMachineOpValue()` and then,
3. get register number by calling `getMachineOpValue()`.
4. `getBinaryCodeForInstr()` return the MI with all number of registers to `encodeInstruction()`.

The `MI.Opcod` is set in Instruction Selection Stage. The table gen function `getBinaryCodeForInstr()` get all the operands information from the `td` files set by programmer as the following figure.



For instance, Cpu0 backend will generate “`addu $v0, $at, $v1`” for the IR “`%0 = add %1, %2`” once llvm allocate registers `$v0`, `$at` and `$v1` for Operands `%0`, `%1` and `%2` individually. The MCOperand structure for `MI.Operands[]` include register number set in the pass of llvm allocate registers which can be got in `getMachineOpValue()`.

The `getEncodingValue(Reg)` in `getMachineOpValue()` as the following will get the `RegNo` of encode from Register name such as AT, V0, or V1, ... by using table gen information from `Cpu0RegisterInfo.td` as the following. My comment is after “//”.

### include/llvm/MC/MCRegisterInfo.h

```

void InitMCRegisterInfo(...,
                       const uint16_t *RET) {
    ...
    RegEncodingTable = RET;
}

unsigned Cpu0MCCodeEmitter::
getMachineOpValue(const MCInst &MI, const MCOperand &MO,
                  SmallVectorImpl<MCFixup> &Fixups,
                  const MCSubtargetInfo &STI) const {
    if (MO.isReg()) {
        unsigned Reg = MO.getReg();
        unsigned RegNo = Ctx.getRegisterInfo()->getEncodingValue(Reg);
    }
}
    
```

```
    return RegNo;
...
}
```

### include/llvm/MC/MCRegisterInfo.h

```
void InitMCRegisterInfo(...,
                       const uint16_t *RET) {
...
RegEncodingTable = RET;
}

/// \brief Returns the encoding for RegNo
uint16_t getEncodingValue(unsigned RegNo) const {
assert(RegNo < NumRegs &&
      "Attempting to get encoding for invalid register number!");
return RegEncodingTable[RegNo];
}
```

### lbdex/chapters/Chapter5\_1/Cpu0RegisterInfo.td

```
let Namespace = "Cpu0" in {
...
def AT : Cpu0GPRReg<1, "1">, DwarfRegNum<[1]>;
def V0 : Cpu0GPRReg<2, "2">, DwarfRegNum<[2]>;
def V1 : Cpu0GPRReg<3, "3">, DwarfRegNum<[3]>;
...
}
```

### cmake\_debug\_build/lib/Target/Cpu0/Cpu0GenRegisterInfo.inc

```
namespace Cpu0 {
enum {
    NoRegister,
    AT = 1,
    ...
    V0 = 19,
    V1 = 20,
    NUM_TARGET_REGS // 21
};
} // end namespace Cpu0

extern const uint16_t Cpu0RegEncodingTable[] = {
    0,
    1,     /// 1, AT
    1,
    12,
    11,
    0,
    0,
    14,
```

```

0,
13,
15,
0,
4,
5,
9,
10,
7,
8,
6,
2,    /// 19, V0
3,    /// 20, V1
};

static inline void InitCpu0MCRegisterInfo(MCRegisterInfo *RI, ...) {
    RI->InitMCRegisterInfo(..., Cpu0RegEncodingTable);
}

```

The applyFixup() of Cpu0AsmBackend.cpp will fix up the **jeq**, **jub**, ... instructions of “address control flow statements” or “function call statements” used in later chapters. The setting of true or false for each relocation record in needsRelocateWithSymbol() of Cpu0ELFOBJECTWriter.cpp depends on whether this relocation record is needed to adjust address value during link or not. If set true, then linker has chance to adjust this address value with correct information. On the other hand, if set false, then linker has no correct information to adjust this relocation record. About relocation record, it will be introduced in later chapter ELF Support.

When emit elf obj format instruction, the EncodeInstruction() of Cpu0MCCodeEmitter.cpp will be called since it override the same name of function in parent class MCCodeEmitter.

### [Index/chapters/Chapter2/Cpu0InstrInfo.td](#)

```

// Address operand
def mem : Operand<iPTR> {
    let PrintMethod = "printMemOperand";
    let MIOperandInfo = (ops CPUREgs, simm16);
    let EncoderMethod = "getMemEncoding";
}

multiclass LoadM32<bits<8> op, string instr_asm, PatFrag OpNode,
    bit Pseudo = 0> {
    def #NAME# : LoadM<op, instr_asm, OpNode, GPROut, mem, Pseudo>;
}

// 32-bit store.
multiclass StoreM32<bits<8> op, string instr_asm, PatFrag OpNode,
    bit Pseudo = 0> {
    def #NAME# : StoreM<op, instr_asm, OpNode, CPUREgs, mem, Pseudo>;
}

```

The “let EncoderMethod = “getMemEncoding”;” in Cpu0InstrInfo.td as above will making llvm call function getMemEncoding() when either **ld** or **st** instruction is issued in elf obj since these two instructions use **mem** Operand.

The other functions in Cpu0MCCodeEmitter.cpp are called by these two functions.

After encoder, the following code will write the encode instructions to buffer.

### src/lib/MC/MCELFStreamer.cpp

```
void MCELFStreamer::EmitInstToData(const MCInst &Inst,
                                    const MCSubtargetInfo &STI) {
    ...
    DF->setHasInstructions(true);
    DF->getContents().append(Code.begin(), Code.end());
    ...
}
```

Then, ELFObjectWriter::writeObject() will write the buffer to elf file.

## 5.3 Backend Target Registration Structure

Now, let's examine Cpu0MCTargetDesc.cpp. Cpu0MCTargetDesc.cpp do the target registration as mentioned in the previous chapter here <sup>1</sup>, and the assembly output has explained here <sup>2</sup>. List the register functions of ELF obj output as follows,

### Register function of elf streamer

```
// Register the elf streamer.
TargetRegistry::RegisterELFStreamer(*T, createMCStreamer);

static MCStreamer *createMCStreamer(const Triple &TT, MCContext &Context,
                                    MCAsmBackend &MAB, raw_pwrite_stream &OS,
                                    MCCodeEmitter *Emitter, bool RelaxAll) {
    return createELFStreamer(Context, MAB, OS, Emitter, RelaxAll);
}

// MCELFStreamer.cpp
MCStreamer *llvm::createELFStreamer(MCContext &Context, MCAsmBackend &MAB,
                                    raw_pwrite_stream &OS, MCCodeEmitter *CE,
                                    bool RelaxAll) {
    MCELFStreamer *S = new MCELFStreamer(Context, MAB, OS, CE);
    if (RelaxAll)
        S->getAssembler().setRelaxAll(true);
    return S;
}
```

Above createELFStreamer takes care the elf obj streamer. Fig. 5.1 as follow is MCELFStreamer inheritance tree. You can find a lot of operations in that inheritance tree.

### Register function of asm target streamer

```
// Register the asm target streamer.
TargetRegistry::RegisterAsmTargetStreamer(*T, createCpu0AsmTargetStreamer);

static MCTargetStreamer *createCpu0AsmTargetStreamer(MCStreamer &S,
                                                     formatted_raw_ostream &OS,
```

<sup>1</sup> <http://jonathan2251.github.io/lbd/llvmstructure.html#target-registration>

<sup>2</sup> <http://jonathan2251.github.io/lbd/backendstructure.html#add-asmprinter>



Fig. 5.1: MCELFStreamer inherit tree

```

        MCInstPrinter *InstPrint,
        bool isVerboseAsm) {

    return new Cpu0TargetAsmStreamer(S, OS);
}

// Cpu0TargetStreamer.h
class Cpu0TargetStreamer : public MCTargetStreamer {
public:
    Cpu0TargetStreamer(MCStreamer &S);
};

// This part is for ascii assembly output
class Cpu0TargetAsmStreamer : public Cpu0TargetStreamer {
    formatted_raw_ostream &OS;

public:
    Cpu0TargetAsmStreamer(MCStreamer &S, formatted_raw_ostream &OS);
};

```

Above instancing MCTargetStreamer instance.

### Register function of MC Code Emitter

```

// Register the MC Code Emitter
TargetRegistry::RegisterMCCodeEmitter(TheCpu0Target,
                                      createCpu0MCCodeEmitterEB);
TargetRegistry::RegisterMCCodeEmitter(TheCpu0elTarget,
                                      createCpu0MCCodeEmitterEL);

// Cpu0MCCodeEmitter.cpp
MCCodeEmitter *llvm::createCpu0MCCodeEmitterEB(const MCInstrInfo &MCII,
                                                const MCRegisterInfo &MRI,
                                                MCContext &Ctx) {
    return new Cpu0MCCodeEmitter(MCII, Ctx, false);
}

MCCodeEmitter *llvm::createCpu0MCCodeEmitterEL(const MCInstrInfo &MCII,
                                              const MCRegisterInfo &MRI,
                                              MCContext &Ctx) {
    return new Cpu0MCCodeEmitter(MCII, Ctx, true);
}

```

Above instancing two objects Cpu0MCCodeEmitter, one is for big endian and the other is for little endian. They take care the obj format generated while RegisterELFStreamer() reuse the elf streamer class.

Reader maybe has the question: “What are the actual arguments in createCpu0MCCodeEmitterEB(const MCInstrInfo &MCII, const MCSubtargetInfo &STI, MCContext &Ctx)?” and “When they are assigned?” Yes, we didn’t assign it at this point, we register the createXXX() function by function pointer only (according C, TargetRegistry::RegisterXXX(TheCpu0Target, createXXX()) where createXXX is function pointer). LLVM keeps a function pointer to createXXX() when we call target registry, and will call these createXXX() function back at proper time with arguments assigned during the target registration process, RegisterXXX().

## Register function of asm backend

```
// Register the asm backend.
TargetRegistry::RegisterMCAsmBackend(TheCpu0Target,
                                      createCpu0AsmBackendEB32);
TargetRegistry::RegisterMCAsmBackend(TheCpu0elTarget,
                                      createCpu0AsmBackendEL32);

// Cpu0AsmBackend.cpp
MCAsmBackend *llvm::createCpu0AsmBackendEL32(const Target &T,
                                              const MCRegisterInfo &MRI,
                                              const Triple &TT, StringRef CPU) {
    return new Cpu0AsmBackend(T, TT.getOS(), /*IsLittle*/true);
}

MCAsmBackend *llvm::createCpu0AsmBackendEB32(const Target &T,
                                              const MCRegisterInfo &MRI,
                                              const Triple &TT, StringRef CPU) {
    return new Cpu0AsmBackend(T, TT.getOS(), /*IsLittle*/false);
}

// Cpu0AsmBackend.h
class Cpu0AsmBackend : public MCAsmBackend {
    ...
}
```

Above Cpu0AsmBackend class is the bridge for asm to obj. Two objects take care big endian and little endian, respectively. It derived from MCAsmBackend. Most of code for object file generated is implemented by MCELFStreamer and it's parent, MCAsmBackend.



## GLOBAL VARIABLES

- *Cpu0 global variable options*
- *Static mode*
  - *data or bss*
  - *sdata or sbss*
- *pic mode*
  - *sdata or sbss*
  - *data or bss*
- *Global variable print support*
- *Summary*

In the last three chapters, we only access the local variables. This chapter deals global variable access translation.

The global variable DAG translation is different from the previous DAG translations until now we have. It creates IR DAG nodes at run time in backend C++ code according the `llc -relocation-model` option while the others of DAG just do IR DAG to Machine DAG translation directly according the input file of IR DAGs (except the Pseudo instruction RetLR used in Chapter3\_4). Readers should focus on how to add code for creating DAG nodes at run time and how to define the pattern match in `td` for the run time created DAG nodes. In addition, the machine instruction printing function for global variable related assembly directive (macro) should be cared if your backend has it.

Chapter6\_1/ supports the global variable, let's compile ch6\_1.cpp with this version first, then explain the code changes after that.

### Ibdex/input/ch6\_1.cpp

```
int gStart = 3;
int gI = 100;
int test_global()
{
    int c = 0;

    c = gI;

    return c;
}
```

```
118-165-78-166:input Jonathan$ llvm-dis ch6_1.bc -o -
...
@gStart = global i32 2, align 4
@gI = global i32 100, align 4

define i32 @_Z3funv() nounwind uwtable ssp {
    %1 = alloca i32, align 4
    %c = alloca i32, align 4
    store i32 0, i32* %1
    store i32 0, i32* %c, align 4
    %2 = load i32* @gI, align 4
    store i32 %2, i32* %c, align 4
    %3 = load i32* %c, align 4
    ret i32 %3
}
```

## 6.1 Cpu0 global variable options

Just like Mips, Cpu0 supports both static and pic mode. There are two different layout of global variables for static mode which controlled by option `cpu0-use-small-section`. Chapter6\_1/ supports the global variable translation. Let's run Chapter6\_1/ with `ch6_1.cpp` via four different options `llc -relocation-model=static -cpu0-use-small-section=false`, `llc -relocation-model=static -cpu0-use-small-section=true`, `llc -relocation-model=pic -cpu0-use-small-section=false` and `llc -relocation-model=pic -cpu0-use-small-section=true` to tracing the DAGs and Cpu0 instructions.

```
118-165-78-166:input Jonathan$ clang -target mips-unknown-linux-gnu -c
ch6_1.cpp -emit-llvm -o ch6_1.bc
118-165-78-166:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/
Debug/bin/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=static -cpu0-use-small-section=false
-filetype=asm -debug ch6_1.bc -o -

...
Type-legalized selection DAG: BB#0 '_Z11test_globalv:'
SelectionDAG has 12 nodes:
...
    0x7ffd5902cc10: <multiple use>
    0x7ffd5902cf10: ch = store 0x7ffd5902cd10, 0x7ffd5902ca10, 0x7ffd5902ce10,
    0x7ffd5902cc10<ST4[%c]> [ORD=2] [ID=-3]

    0x7ffd5902d010: i32 = GlobalAddress<i32* @gI> 0 [ORD=3] [ID=-3]

    0x7ffd5902cc10: <multiple use>
    0x7ffd5902d110: i32,ch = load 0x7ffd5902cf10, 0x7ffd5902d010,
    0x7ffd5902cc10<LD4[@gI]> [ORD=3] [ID=-3]
    ...

Legalized selection DAG: BB#0 '_Z11test_globalv:'
SelectionDAG has 16 nodes:
...
    0x7ffd5902cc10: <multiple use>
    0x7ffd5902cf10: ch = store 0x7ffd5902cd10, 0x7ffd5902ca10, 0x7ffd5902ce10,
    0x7ffd5902cc10<ST4[%c]> [ORD=2] [ID=8]
```

```

0x7ffd5902d310: i32 = TargetGlobalAddress<i32* @gI> 0 [TF=5]

0x7ffd5902d710: i32 = Cpu0ISD::Hi 0x7ffd5902d310

0x7ffd5902d610: i32 = TargetGlobalAddress<i32* @gI> 0 [TF=6]

0x7ffd5902d810: i32 = Cpu0ISD::Lo 0x7ffd5902d610

0x7ffd5902fe10: i32 = add 0x7ffd5902d710, 0x7ffd5902d810

0x7ffd5902cc10: <multiple use>
0x7ffd5902d110: i32, ch = load 0x7ffd5902cf10, 0x7ffd5902fe10,
0x7ffd5902cc10<LD4[@gI]> [ORD=3] [ID=9]
...
lui $2, %hi(gI)
ori $2, $2, %lo(gI)
ld      $2, 0($2)
...
.type   gStart,@object          # @gStart
.data
.globl  gStart
.align   2
gStart:
        .4byte 2                  # 0x2
        .size   gStart, 4

        .type   gI,@object          # @gI
        .globl  gI
        .align   2
gI:
        .4byte 100                 # 0x64
        .size   gI, 4

```

```

118-165-78-166:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/
Debug/bin/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=static -cpu0-use-small-section=true
-filetype=asm -debug ch6_1.bc -o -

...
Type-legalized selection DAG: BB#0 '_Z11test_globalv:'
SelectionDAG has 12 nodes:
...
0x7fc5f382cc10: <multiple use>
0x7fc5f382cf10: ch = store 0x7fc5f382cd10, 0x7fc5f382ca10, 0x7fc5f382ce10,
0x7fc5f382cc10<ST4[%c]> [ORD=2] [ID=-3]

0x7fc5f382d010: i32 = GlobalAddress<i32* @gI> 0 [ORD=3] [ID=-3]

0x7fc5f382cc10: <multiple use>
0x7fc5f382d110: i32, ch = load 0x7fc5f382cf10, 0x7fc5f382d010,
0x7fc5f382cc10<LD4[@gI]> [ORD=3] [ID=-3]
...
Legalized selection DAG: BB#0 '_Z11test_globalv:'
SelectionDAG has 15 nodes:
...
0x7fc5f382cc10: <multiple use>
0x7fc5f382cf10: ch = store 0x7fc5f382cd10, 0x7fc5f382ca10, 0x7fc5f382ce10,
0x7fc5f382cc10<ST4[%c]> [ORD=2] [ID=8]

```

```

0x7fc5f382d710: i32 = register %GP

0x7fc5f382d310: i32 = TargetGlobalAddress<i32* @gI> 0 [TF=4]

0x7fc5f382d610: i32 = Cpu0ISD::GPRel 0x7fc5f382d310

0x7fc5f382d810: i32 = add 0x7fc5f382d710, 0x7fc5f382d610

0x7fc5f382cc10: <multiple use>
0x7fc5f382d110: i32, ch = load 0x7fc5f382cf10, 0x7fc5f382d810,
0x7fc5f382cc10<LD4[@gI]> [ORD=3] [ID=9]
...
ori      $2, $gp, %gp_rel(gI)
ld       $2, 0($2)
...
.type   gStart,@object          # @gStart
.section .sdata,"aw",@progbits
.globl  gStart
.align   2
gStart:
.4byte  2                      # 0x2
.size    gStart, 4

.type   gI,@object             # @gI
.globl  gI
.align   2
gI:
.4byte  100                     # 0x64
.size    gI, 4

```

```

118-165-78-166:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/
Debug/bin/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -cpu0-use-small-section=false
-filetype=asm -debug ch6_1.bc -o -

...
Type-legalized selection DAG: BB#0 '_Z11test_globalv:'
SelectionDAG has 11 nodes:
...
0x7fe03c02e010: <multiple use>
0x7fe03c02e118: ch = store 0x7fe03b50dee0, 0x7fe03c02de00, 0x7fe03c02df08,
0x7fe03c02e010<ST4[%c]> [ORD=3] [ID=-3]

0x7fe03c02e220: i32 = GlobalAddress<i32* @gI> 0 [ORD=4] [ID=-3]

0x7fe03c02e010: <multiple use>
0x7fe03c02e328: i32, ch = load 0x7fe03c02e118, 0x7fe03c02e220,
0x7fe03c02e010<LD4[@gI]> [ORD=4] [ID=-3]
...
Legalized selection DAG: BB#0 '_Z11test_globalv:'
SelectionDAG has 15 nodes:
...
0x7fe03c02e010: <multiple use>
0x7fe03c02e118: ch = store 0x7fe03b50dee0, 0x7fe03c02de00, 0x7fe03c02df08,
0x7fe03c02e010<ST4[%c]> [ORD=3] [ID=6]

0x7fe03c02e538: i32 = TargetGlobalAddress<i32* @gI> 0 [TF=5] [ORD=4]

```

```

0x7fe03c02ea60: i32 = Cpu0ISD::Hi 0x7fe03c02e538 [ORD=4]

0x7fe03c02e958: i32 = TargetGlobalAddress<i32* @gI> 0 [TF=6] [ORD=4]

0x7fe03c02eb68: i32 = Cpu0ISD::Lo 0x7fe03c02e958 [ORD=4]

0x7fe03c02ec70: i32 = add 0x7fe03c02ea60, 0x7fe03c02eb68 [ORD=4]

0x7fe03c02e010: <multiple use>
0x7fe03c02e328: i32, ch = load 0x7fe03c02e118, 0x7fe03c02ec70,
0x7fe03c02e010<LD4[@gI]> [ORD=4] [ID=7]
...
    lui    $2, %got_hi(gI)
    addu   $2, $2, $gp
    ld     $2, %got_lo(gI) ($2)
...
.type gStart,@object          # @gStart
.data
.globl gStart
.align 2
gStart:
    .4byte 3                  # 0x3
.size gStart, 4

.type gI,@object             # @gI
.globl gI
.align 2
gI:
    .4byte 100                # 0x64
.size gI, 4

```

```

118-165-78-166:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/
Debug/bin/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -cpu0-use-small-section=true
-filetype=asm -debug ch6_1.bc -o -

...
Type-legalized selection DAG: BB#0 '_Z11test_globalv:'
SelectionDAG has 11 nodes:
...
    0x7fad7102cc10: <multiple use>
0x7fad7102cf10: ch = store 0x7fad7102cd10, 0x7fad7102ca10, 0x7fad7102ce10,
0x7fad7102cc10<ST4[%c]> [ORD=2] [ID=-3]

0x7fad7102d010: i32 = GlobalAddress<i32* @gI> 0 [ORD=3] [ID=-3]

0x7fad7102cc10: <multiple use>
0x7fad7102d110: i32, ch = load 0x7fad7102cf10, 0x7fad7102d010,
0x7fad7102cc10<LD4[@gI]> [ORD=3] [ID=-3]
...
Legalized selection DAG: BB#0 '_Z11test_globalv:'
SelectionDAG has 14 nodes:
    0x7ff3c9c10b98: ch = EntryToken [ORD=1] [ID=0]
...
    0x7fad7102cc10: <multiple use>
0x7fad7102cf10: ch = store 0x7fad7102cd10, 0x7fad7102ca10, 0x7fad7102ce10,
0x7fad7102cc10<ST4[%c]> [ORD=2] [ID=8]

0x7fad70c10b98: <multiple use>

```

```

0x7fad7102d610: i32 = Register %GP

0x7fad7102d310: i32 = TargetGlobalAddress<i32* @gI> 0 [TF=1]

0x7fad7102d710: i32 = Cpu0ISD::Wrapper 0x7fad7102d610, 0x7fad7102d310

0x7fad7102cc10: <multiple use>
0x7fad7102d810: i32, ch = load 0x7fad70c10b98, 0x7fad7102d710,
0x7fad7102cc10<LD4 [<unknown>]>

0x7ff3ca02cc10: <multiple use>
0x7ff3ca02d110: i32, ch = load 0x7ff3ca02cf10, 0x7ff3ca02d810,
0x7ff3ca02cc10<LD4[@gI]> [ORD=3] [ID=9]

...
.set noreorder
.cupload $6
.set nomacro
...
ld      $2, %got(gI)($gp)
ld      $2, 0($2)
...
.type   gStart,@object          # @gStart
.data
.globl  gStart
.align   2
gStart:
.4byte  2                      # 0x2
.size   gStart, 4

.type   gI,@object            # @gI
.globl  gI
.align   2
gI:
.4byte  100                     # 0x64
.size   gI, 4

```

Summary above information to Table: Cpu0 global variable options.

Table 6.1: Cpu0 global variable options

option name	default	other option value	description
-relocation-model	pic	static	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• pic: Position Independent Address</li> <li>• static: Absolute Address</li> </ul>
-cpu0-use-small-section	false	true	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• false: .data or .bss, 32 bits addressable</li> <li>• true: .sdata or .sbss, 16 bits addressable</li> </ul>

Table 6.2: Cpu0 DAGs and instructions for -relocation-model=static

option: cpu0-use-small-section	false	true
addressing mode	absolute	\$gp relative
addressing	absolute	\$gp+offset
Legalized selection DAG	(add Cpu0ISD::Hi<gI offset Hi16> Cpu0ISD::Lo<gI offset Lo16>)	(add register %GP, Cpu0ISD::GPRel<gI offset>)
Cpu0	lui \$2, %hi(gI); ori \$2, \$2, %lo(gI);	ori \$2, \$gp, %gp_rel(gI);
relocation records solved	link time	link time

- In static, cpu0-use-small-section=true, offset between gI and .data can be calculated since the \$gp is assigned at fixed address of the start of global address table.
- In “static, cpu0-use-small-section=false”, the gI high and low address (%hi(gI) and %lo(gI)) are translated into absolute address.

Table 6.3: Cpu0 DAGs and instructions for -relocation-model=pic

option: cpu0-use- small-section	false	true
addressing mode	\$gp relative	\$gp relative
addressing	\$gp+offset	\$gp+offset
Legalized selection DAG	(load (Cpu0ISD::Wrapper register %GP, <gI offset>))	(load EntryToken, (Cpu0ISD::Wrapper (add Cpu0ISD::Hi<gI offset Hi16>, Register %GP), Cpu0ISD::Lo<gI offset Lo16>))
Cpu0	ld \$2, %got(gI)(\$gp);	lui \$2, %got_hi(gI); add \$2, \$2, \$gp; ld \$2, %got_lo(gI)(\$2);
relocation records solved	link/load time	link/load time

- In pic, offset between gI and .data cannot be calculated if the function is loaded at run time (dynamic link); the offset can be calculated if use static link.
- In C, all variable names binding statically. In C++, the overload variable or function are binding dynamically.

According book of system program, there are Absolute Addressing Mode and Position Independent Addressing Mode. The dynamic function must be compiled with Position Independent Addressing Mode. In general, option -relocation-model is used to generate either Absolute Addressing or Position Independent Addressing. The exception is -relocation-model=static and -cpu0-use-small-section=false. In this case, the register \$gp is reserved to set at the start address of global variable area. Cpu0 uses \$gp relative addressing in this mode.

To support global variable, first add **UseSmallSectionOpt** command variable to Cpu0Subtarget.cpp. After that, user can run llc with option `llc -cpu0-use-small-section=false` to specify **UseSmallSectionOpt** to false. The default of **UseSmallSectionOpt** is false if without specify it further. About the **cl::opt** command line variable, you can refer to here<sup>1</sup> further.

## Ibdex/chapters/Chapter6\_1/Cpu0Subtarget.h

```
extern bool Cpu0ReserveGP;
extern bool Cpu0NoCpload;
```

<sup>1</sup> <http://llvm.org/docs/CommandLine.html>

```

class Cpu0Subtarget : public Cpu0GenSubtargetInfo {
    ...

    // UseSmallSection - Small section is used.
    bool UseSmallSection;

    bool useSmallSection() const { return UseSmallSection; }

    ...
};

```

### [Index/chapters/Chapter6\\_1/Cpu0Subtarget.cpp](#)

```

static cl::opt<bool> UseSmallSectionOpt
    ("cpu0-use-small-section", cl::Hidden, cl::init(false),
     cl::desc("Use small section. Only work when -relocation-model="
              "static. pic always not use small section."));

static cl::opt<bool> ReserveGPOpt
    ("cpu0-reserve-gp", cl::Hidden, cl::init(false),
     cl::desc("Never allocate $gp to variable"));

static cl::opt<bool> NoCuploadOpt
    ("cpu0-no-cupload", cl::Hidden, cl::init(false),
     cl::desc("No issue .cupload"));

bool Cpu0ReserveGP;
bool Cpu0NoCupload;

Cpu0Subtarget::Cpu0Subtarget(const Triple &TT, const std::string &CPU,
                           const std::string &FS, bool little,
                           const Cpu0TargetMachine &_TM) :

    // Set UseSmallSection.
    UseSmallSection = UseSmallSectionOpt;
    Cpu0ReserveGP = ReserveGPOpt;
    Cpu0NoCupload = NoCuploadOpt;

    ...
}

```

The options ReserveGPOpt and NoCuploadOpt will be used in Cpu0 linker at later Chapter. Next add the following code to files Cpu0BaseInfo.h, Cpu0TargetObjectFile.h, Cpu0TargetObjectFile.cpp, Cpu0RegisterInfo.cpp and Cpu0ISelLowering.cpp.

### [Index/chapters/Chapter6\\_1/Cpu0BaseInfo.h](#)

```

enum TOF {
    ...
    /// MO_GOT16 - Represents the offset into the global offset table at which
    /// the address the relocation entry symbol resides during execution.
}

```

```

MO_GOT16,
MO_GOT,
...
}; // enum TOF {

```

**Ibdex/chapters/Chapter6\_1/Cpu0TargetObjectFile.h**

```

/// IsGlobalInSmallSection - Return true if this global address should be
/// placed into small data/bss section.
bool IsGlobalInSmallSection(const GlobalValue *GV,
                           const TargetMachine &TM, SectionKind Kind) const;
bool IsGlobalInSmallSection(const GlobalValue *GV,
                           const TargetMachine &TM) const;
bool IsGlobalInSmallSectionImpl(const GlobalValue *GV,
                               const TargetMachine &TM) const;

MCSection *SelectSectionForGlobal(const GlobalValue *GV, SectionKind Kind,
                                 Mangler &Mang,
                                 const TargetMachine &TM) const override;

```

**Ibdex/chapters/Chapter6\_1/Cpu0TargetObjectFile.cpp**

```

// A address must be loaded from a small section if its size is less than the
// small section size threshold. Data in this section must be addressed using
// gp_rel operator.
static bool IsInSmallSection(uint64_t Size) {
    return Size > 0 && Size <= SSThreshold;
}

bool Cpu0TargetObjectFile::IsGlobalInSmallSection(const GlobalValue *GV,
                                                const TargetMachine &TM) const {
    if (GV->isDeclaration() || GV->hasAvailableExternallyLinkage())
        return false;

    return IsGlobalInSmallSection(GV, TM, getKindForGlobal(GV, TM));
}

/// IsGlobalInSmallSection - Return true if this global address should be
/// placed into small data/bss section.
bool Cpu0TargetObjectFile::
IsGlobalInSmallSection(const GlobalValue *GV, const TargetMachine &TM,
                      SectionKind Kind) const {
    return (IsGlobalInSmallSectionImpl(GV, TM) &&
           (Kind.isData() || Kind.isBSS() || Kind.isCommon()));
}

/// Return true if this global address should be placed into small data/bss
/// section. This method does all the work, except for checking the section
/// kind.
bool Cpu0TargetObjectFile::
IsGlobalInSmallSectionImpl(const GlobalValue *GV,
                          const TargetMachine &TM) const {
    const Cpu0Subtarget &Subtarget =
        *static_cast<const Cpu0TargetMachine &>(TM).getSubtargetImpl();

```

```
// Return if small section is not available.
if (!Subtarget.useSmallSection())
    return false;

// Only global variables, not functions.
const GlobalVariable *GVA = dyn_cast<GlobalVariable>(GV);
if (!GVA)
    return false;

Type *Ty = GV->getValueType();
return IsInSmallSection(
    GV->getParent()->getDataLayout().getTypeAllocSize(Ty));
}

MCSection *
Cpu0TargetObjectFile::SelectSectionForGlobal(const GlobalValue *GV,
                                             SectionKind Kind, Mangler &Mang,
                                             const TargetMachine &TM) const {
// TODO: Could also support "weak" symbols as well with ".gnu.linkonce.s.*"
// sections?

// Handle Small Section classification here.
if (Kind.isBSS() && IsGlobalInSmallSection(GV, TM, Kind))
    return SmallBSSSection;
if (Kind.isData() && IsGlobalInSmallSection(GV, TM, Kind))
    return SmallDataSection;

// Otherwise, we work the same as ELF.
return TargetLoweringObjectFileELF::SelectSectionForGlobal(GV, Kind, Mang, TM);
}
```

### [Index/chapters/Chapter6\\_1/Cpu0RegisterInfo.cpp](#)

```
BitVector Cpu0RegisterInfo::
getReservedRegs(const MachineFunction &MF) const {
...
    Reserved.set(Cpu0::GP);
...
}
```

### [Index/chapters/Chapter6\\_1/Cpu0ISelLowering.h](#)

```
SDValue getGlobalReg(SelectionDAG &DAG, EVT Ty) const;

// This method creates the following nodes, which are necessary for
// computing a local symbol's address:
//
// (add (load (wrapper $gp, %got(sym)), %lo(sym))
template<class NodeTy>
SDValue getAddrLocal(NodeTy *N, EVT Ty, SelectionDAG &DAG) const {
    SDLoc DL(N);
```

```

unsigned GOTFlag = Cpu0II::MO_GOT;
SDValue GOT = DAG.getNode(Cpu0ISD::Wrapper, DL, Ty, getGlobalReg(DAG, Ty),
                           getTargetNode(N, Ty, DAG, GOTFlag));
SDValue Load =
    DAG.getLoad(Ty, DL, DAG.getEntryNode(), GOT,
                MachinePointerInfo::getGOT(DAG.getMachineFunction()));
unsigned LoFlag = Cpu0II::MO_ABS_LO;
SDValue Lo = DAG.getNode(Cpu0ISD::Lo, DL, Ty,
                        getTargetNode(N, Ty, DAG, LoFlag));
return DAG.getNode(ISD::ADD, DL, Ty, Load, Lo);
}

//@getAddrGlobal {
// This method creates the following nodes, which are necessary for
// computing a global symbol's address:
//
// (load (wrapper $gp, %got(sym)))
template<class NodeTy>
SDValue getAddrGlobal(NodeTy *N, EVT Ty, SelectionDAG &DAG,
                      unsigned Flag, SDValue Chain,
                      const MachinePointerInfo &PtrInfo) const {
    SDLoc DL(N);
    SDValue Tgt = DAG.getNode(Cpu0ISD::Wrapper, DL, Ty, getGlobalReg(DAG, Ty),
                               getTargetNode(N, Ty, DAG, Flag));
    return DAG.getLoad(Ty, DL, Chain, Tgt, PtrInfo);
}
//@getAddrGlobal }

//@getAddrGlobalLargeGOT {
// This method creates the following nodes, which are necessary for
// computing a global symbol's address in large-GOT mode:
//
// (load (wrapper (add %hi(sym), $gp), %lo(sym)))
template<class NodeTy>
SDValue getAddrGlobalLargeGOT(NodeTy *N, EVT Ty, SelectionDAG &DAG,
                             unsigned HiFlag, unsigned LoFlag,
                             SDValue Chain,
                             const MachinePointerInfo &PtrInfo) const {
    SDLoc DL(N);
    SDValue Hi = DAG.getNode(Cpu0ISD::Hi, DL, Ty,
                            getTargetNode(N, Ty, DAG, HiFlag));
    SDValue Lo = DAG.getNode(ISD::ADD, DL, Ty, Hi, getGlobalReg(DAG, Ty));
    SDValue Wrapper = DAG.getNode(Cpu0ISD::Wrapper, DL, Ty, Hi,
                                getTargetNode(N, Ty, DAG, LoFlag));
    return DAG.getLoad(Ty, DL, Chain, Wrapper, PtrInfo);
}
//@getAddrGlobalLargeGOT }

//@getAddrNonPIC
// This method creates the following nodes, which are necessary for
// computing a symbol's address in non-PIC mode:
//
// (add %hi(sym), %lo(sym))
template<class NodeTy>
SDValue getAddrNonPIC(NodeTy *N, EVT Ty, SelectionDAG &DAG) const {
    SDLoc DL(N);
    SDValue Hi = getTargetNode(N, Ty, DAG, Cpu0II::MO_ABS_HI);
    SDValue Lo = getTargetNode(N, Ty, DAG, Cpu0II::MO_ABS_LO);
}

```

```

        return DAG.getNode(ISD::ADD, DL, Ty,
                           DAG.getNode(Cpu0ISD::Hi, DL, Ty, Hi),
                           DAG.getNode(Cpu0ISD::Lo, DL, Ty, Lo));
    }
}

```

### [Index/chapters/Chapter6\\_1/Cpu0ISelLowering.cpp](#)

```

SDValue Cpu0TargetLowering::getGlobalReg(SelectionDAG &DAG, EVT Ty) const {
    Cpu0FunctionInfo *FI = DAG.getMachineFunction().getInfo<Cpu0FunctionInfo>();
    return DAG.getRegister(FI->getGlobalBaseReg(), Ty);
}

//@getTargetNode(GlobalAddressSDNode
SDValue Cpu0TargetLowering::getTargetNode(GlobalAddressSDNode *N, EVT Ty,
                                         SelectionDAG &DAG,
                                         unsigned Flag) const {
    return DAG.getTargetGlobalAddress(N->getGlobal(), SDLoc(N), Ty, 0, Flag);
}

//@getTargetNode(ExternalSymbolSDNode
SDValue Cpu0TargetLowering::getTargetNode(ExternalSymbolSDNode *N, EVT Ty,
                                         SelectionDAG &DAG,
                                         unsigned Flag) const {
    return DAG.getTargetExternalSymbol(N->getSymbol(), Ty, Flag);
}

```

```

Cpu0TargetLowering::Cpu0TargetLowering(const Cpu0TargetMachine &TM,
                                       const Cpu0Subtarget &STI)
    : TargetLowering(TM), Subtarget(STI), ABI(TM.getABI()) {

```

```

    setOperationAction(ISD::GlobalAddress,           MVT::i32,   Custom);
}

SDValue Cpu0TargetLowering::
LowerOperation(SDValue Op, SelectionDAG &DAG) const
{
    switch (Op.getOpcode())
    {

```

```

        case ISD::GlobalAddress:      return lowerGlobalAddress(Op, DAG);

```

```

    }
    return SDValue();
}

```

```

SDValue Cpu0TargetLowering::lowerGlobalAddress(SDValue Op,
                                              SelectionDAG &DAG) const {
    //@lowerGlobalAddress }
    SDLoc DL(Op);
    const Cpu0TargetObjectFile *TLOF =
        static_cast<const Cpu0TargetObjectFile *>(

}

```

```

        getTargetMachine().getObjFileLowering());
//@lga 1 {
EVT Ty = Op.getValueType();
GlobalAddressSDNode *N = cast<GlobalAddressSDNode>(Op);
const GlobalValue *GV = N->getGlobal();
//@lga 1 }

if (!isPositionIndependent()) {
//@ %gp_rel relocation
if (TLOF->IsGlobalInSmallSection(GV, getTargetMachine())) {
    SDValue GA = DAG.getTargetGlobalAddress(GV, DL, MVT::i32, 0,
                                             Cpu0II::MO_GPREL);
    SDValue GPRelNode = DAG.getNode(Cpu0ISD::GPRel, DL,
                                    DAG.getVTList(MVT::i32), GA);
    SDValue GPReg = DAG.getRegister(Cpu0::GP, MVT::i32);
    return DAG.getNode(ISD::ADD, DL, MVT::i32, GPReg, GPRelNode);
}

//@ %hi/%lo relocation
return getAddrNonPIC(N, Ty, DAG);
}

if (GV->hasInternalLinkage() || (GV->hasLocalLinkage() && !isa<Function>(GV)))
    return getAddrLocal(N, Ty, DAG);

//@large section
if (!TLOF->IsGlobalInSmallSection(GV, getTargetMachine()))
    return getAddrGlobalLargeGOT(
        N, Ty, DAG, Cpu0II::MO_GOT_HI16, Cpu0II::MO_GOT_LO16,
        DAG.getEntryNode(),
        MachinePointerInfo::getGOT(DAG.getMachineFunction()));
return getAddrGlobal(
    N, Ty, DAG, Cpu0II::MO_GOT, DAG.getEntryNode(),
    MachinePointerInfo::getGOT(DAG.getMachineFunction()));
}
    
```

The setOperationAction(ISD::GlobalAddress, MVT::i32, Custom) tells `llc` that we implement global address operation in C++ function `Cpu0TargetLowering::LowerOperation()`. LLVM will call this function only when llvm want to translate IR DAG of loading global variable into machine code. Although all the Custom type of IR operations set by `setOperationAction(ISD::XXX, MVT::XXX, Custom)` in construction function `Cpu0TargetLowering()` will invoke llvm to call `Cpu0TargetLowering::LowerOperation()` in stage “Legalized selection DAG”, the global address access operation can be identified by checking whether the opcode of DAG Node is ISD::GlobalAddress or not, furthmore.

Finally, add the following code in `Cpu0ISelDAGToDAG.cpp` and `Cpu0InstrInfo.td`.

## Ibdex/chapters/Chapter6\_1/Cpu0ISelDAGToDAG.h

```

SDNode *getGlobalBaseReg();
    
```

## Ibdex/chapters/Chapter6\_1/Cpu0ISelDAGToDAG.cpp

```

/// getGlobalBaseReg - Output the instructions required to put the
/// GOT address into a register.
SDNode *Cpu0DAGToDAGISel::getGlobalBaseReg() {
    
```

```

unsigned GlobalBaseReg = MF->getInfo<Cpu0FunctionInfo>()->getGlobalBaseReg();
return CurDAG->getRegister(GlobalBaseReg, getTargetLowering()->getPointerTy(
                                                CurDAG->getDataLayout()))
        .getNode();
}

/// ComplexPattern used on Cpu0InstrInfo
/// Used on Cpu0 Load/Store instructions
bool Cpu0DAGToDAGISel::
SelectAddr(SDNode *Parent, SDValue Addr, SDValue &Base, SDValue &Offset) {

    // on PIC code Load GA
    if (Addr.getOpcode() == Cpu0ISD::Wrapper) {
        Base = Addr.getOperand(0);
        Offset = Addr.getOperand(1);
        return true;
    }

    // @static
    if (TM.getRelocationModel() != Reloc::PIC_) {
        if ((Addr.getOpcode() == ISD::TargetExternalSymbol ||
              Addr.getOpcode() == ISD::TargetGlobalAddress))
            return false;
    }
}

...
}

/// Select instructions not customized! Used for
/// expanded, promoted and normal instructions
void Cpu0DAGToDAGISel::Select(SDNode *Node) {

    // Get target GOT address.
    case ISD::GLOBAL_OFFSET_TABLE:
        ReplaceNode(Node, getGlobalBaseReg());
        return;
}

...
}

```

### [Index/chapters/Chapter6\\_1/Cpu0InstrInfo.td](#)

```

// Hi and Lo nodes are used to handle global addresses. Used on
// Cpu0ISelLowering to lower stuff like GlobalAddress, ExternalSymbol
// static model. (nothing to do with Cpu0 Registers Hi and Lo)
def Cpu0Hi      : SDNode<"Cpu0ISD::Hi", SDTIntUnaryOp>;
def Cpu0Lo      : SDNode<"Cpu0ISD::Lo", SDTIntUnaryOp>;
def Cpu0GPRel   : SDNode<"Cpu0ISD::GPRel", SDTIntUnaryOp>;

def Cpu0Wrapper : SDNode<"Cpu0ISD::Wrapper", SDTIntBinOp>;

```

```
def RelocPIC      : Predicate<"TM.getRelocationModel() == Reloc::PIC_">;
```

```
// hi/lo relocs
let Predicates = [Ch6_1] in {
def : Pat<(Cpu0Hi tglobaladdr:$in), (LUi tglobaladdr:$in)>;
}
```

```
let Predicates = [Ch6_1] in {
def : Pat<(Cpu0Lo tglobaladdr:$in), (ORi ZERO, tglobaladdr:$in)>;
}
```

```
let Predicates = [Ch6_1] in {
def : Pat<(add CPUREgs:$hi, (Cpu0Lo tglobaladdr:$lo)),
          (ORi CPUREgs:$hi, tglobaladdr:$lo)>;
}
```

```
// gp_rel relocs
let Predicates = [Ch6_1] in {
def : Pat<(add CPUREgs:$gp, (Cpu0GPRel tglobaladdr:$in)),
          (ORi CPUREgs:$gp, tglobaladdr:$in)>;
}

//@ wrapper_pic
let Predicates = [Ch6_1] in {
class WrapperPat<SDNode node, Instruction ORiOp, RegisterClass RC>:
    Pat<(Cpu0Wrapper RC:$gp, node:$in),
          (ORiOp RC:$gp, node:$in)>;

def : WrapperPat<tglobaladdr, ORi, GPROut>;
}
```

## 6.2 Static mode

From Table: Cpu0 global variable options, option cpu0-use-small-section=false puts the global varibale in data/bss while cpu0-use-small-section=true puts in sdata/sbss. The sdata stands for small data area. Section data and sdata are areas for global variables with initial value (such as int gI = 100 in this example) while Section bss and sbss are areas for global variables without initial value (for instance, int gI);.

### 6.2.1 data or bss

The data/bss are 32 bits addressable areas since Cpu0 is a 32 bits architecture. Option cpu0-use-small-section=false will generate the following instructions.

```
...
lui $2, %hi(gI)
ori $2, $2, %lo(gI)
ld $2, 0($2)

...
.type      gStart,@object           # @gStart
.data
.globl     gStart
.align    2
```

```

gStart:
    .4byte      2          # 0x2
    .size       gStart, 4

    .type       gI,@object   # @gI
    .globl      gI
    .align      2

gI:
    .4byte      100         # 0x64
    .size       gI, 4

```

As above code, it loads the high address part of gI PC relative address (16 bits) to register \$2 and shift 16 bits. Now, the register \$2 got it's high part of gI absolute address. Next, it adds register \$2 and low part of gI absolute address into \$2. At this point, it gets the gI memory address. Finally, it gets the gI content by instruction “ld \$2, 0(\$2)”. The `llc -relocation-model=static` is for absolute address mode which must be used in static link mode. The dynamic link must be encoded with Position Independent Addressing. As you can see, the PC relative address can be solved in static link (The offset between the address of gI and instruction “`lui $2, %hi(gI)`” can be caculated). Since Cpu0 uses PC relative address coding, this program can be loaded to any address and run correctly there. If this program uses absolute address and can be loaded at a specific address known at link stage, the relocation record of gI variable access instruction such as “`lui $2, %hi(gI)`” and “`ori $2, $2, %lo(gI)`” can be solved at link time. On the other hand, if this program use absolute address and the loading address is known at load time, then this relocation record will be solved by loader at load time.

`IsGlobalInSmallSection()` returns true or false depends on `UseSmallSectionOpt`.

The code fragment of `lowerGlobalAddress()` as the following corresponding option `llc -relocation-model=static -cpu0-use-small-section=false` will translate DAG (Global-Address<i32\* @gI> 0) into (`add Cpu0ISD::Hi<gI offset Hi16> Cpu0ISD::Lo<gI offset Lo16>`) in stage “Legalized selection DAG” as below.

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter6\_1/Cpu0ISelLowering.h

```

// This method creates the following nodes, which are necessary for
// computing a symbol's address in non-PIC mode:
//
// (add %hi(sym), %lo(sym))
template<class NodeTy>
SDValue getAddrNonPIC(NodeTy *N, EVT Ty, SelectionDAG &DAG) const {
    SDLoc DL(N);
    SDValue Hi = getTargetNode(N, Ty, DAG, Cpu0II::MO_ABS_HI);
    SDValue Lo = getTargetNode(N, Ty, DAG, Cpu0II::MO_ABS_LO);
    return DAG.getNode(ISD::ADD, DL, Ty,
                      DAG.getNode(Cpu0ISD::Hi, DL, Ty, Hi),
                      DAG.getNode(Cpu0ISD::Lo, DL, Ty, Lo));
}

```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter6\_1/Cpu0ISelLowering.cpp

```

SDValue Cpu0TargetLowering::getTargetNode(GlobalAddressSDNode *N, EVT Ty,
                                         SelectionDAG &DAG,
                                         unsigned Flag) const {
    return DAG.getTargetGlobalAddress(N->getGlobal(), SDLoc(N), Ty, 0, Flag);
}

```

```
SDValue Cpu0TargetLowering::lowerGlobalAddress(SDValue Op,
                                              SelectionDAG &DAG) const {
    ...
    EVT Ty = Op.getValueType();
    GlobalAddressSDNode *N = cast<GlobalAddressSDNode>(Op);
    ...

    if (getTargetMachine().getRelocationModel() != Reloc::PIC_) {
        ...
        // %hi/%lo relocation
        return getAddrNonPIC(N, Ty, DAG);
    }
    ...
}
```

```
118-165-78-166:input Jonathan$ clang -target mips-unknown-linux-gnu -c
ch6_1.cpp -emit-llvm -o ch6_1.bc
118-165-78-166:input Jonathan$ ~/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/Debug/bin/llc
-march=cpu0 -relocation-model=static -cpu0-use-small-section=false
-filetype=asm -debug ch6_1.bc -o -
...
Type-legalized selection DAG: BB#0 '_Z3funv:entry'
SelectionDAG has 12 nodes:
...
    0x7ffd5902cc10: <multiple use>
    0x7ffd5902cf10: ch = store 0x7ffd5902cd10, 0x7ffd5902ca10, 0x7ffd5902ce10,
    0x7ffd5902cc10<ST4[%c]> [ORD=2] [ID=-3]

    0x7ffd5902d010: i32 = GlobalAddress<i32* @gI> 0 [ORD=3] [ID=-3]

    0x7ffd5902cc10: <multiple use>
    0x7ffd5902d110: i32,ch = load 0x7ffd5902cf10, 0x7ffd5902d010,
    0x7ffd5902cc10<LD4[@gI]> [ORD=3] [ID=-3]
    ...

Legalized selection DAG: BB#0 '_Z3funv:entry'
SelectionDAG has 16 nodes:
...
    0x7ffd5902cc10: <multiple use>
    0x7ffd5902cf10: ch = store 0x7ffd5902cd10, 0x7ffd5902ca10, 0x7ffd5902ce10,
    0x7ffd5902cc10<ST4[%c]> [ORD=2] [ID=8]

    0x7ffd5902d310: i32 = TargetGlobalAddress<i32* @gI> 0 [TF=5]

    0x7ffd5902d710: i32 = Cpu0ISD::Hi 0x7ffd5902d310

    0x7ffd5902d610: i32 = TargetGlobalAddress<i32* @gI> 0 [TF=6]

    0x7ffd5902d810: i32 = Cpu0ISD::Lo 0x7ffd5902d610

    0x7ffd5902fe10: i32 = add 0x7ffd5902d710, 0x7ffd5902d810

    0x7ffd5902cc10: <multiple use>
    0x7ffd5902d110: i32,ch = load 0x7ffd5902cf10, 0x7ffd5902fe10,
    0x7ffd5902cc10<LD4[@gI]> [ORD=3] [ID=9]
```

Finally, the pattern defined in Cpu0InstrInfo.td as the following will translate DAG (add Cpu0ISD::Hi<gI offset Hi16> Cpu0ISD::Lo<gI offset Lo16>) into Cpu0 instructions as below.

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter6\_1/Cpu0InstrInfo.td

```
// Hi and Lo nodes are used to handle global addresses. Used on
// Cpu0ISelLowering to lower stuff like GlobalAddress, ExternalSymbol
// static model. (nothing to do with Cpu0 Registers Hi and Lo)
def Cpu0Hi : SDNode<"Cpu0ISD::Hi", SDTIntUnaryOp>;
def Cpu0Lo : SDNode<"Cpu0ISD::Lo", SDTIntUnaryOp>;
```

```
// hi/lo relocs
let Predicates = [Ch6_1] in {
def : Pat<(Cpu0Hi tglobaladdr:$in), (LUi tglobaladdr:$in)>;
}
```

```
let Predicates = [Ch6_1] in {
def : Pat<(Cpu0Lo tglobaladdr:$in), (ORi ZERO, tglobaladdr:$in)>;
}
```

```
let Predicates = [Ch6_1] in {
def : Pat<(add CPUREgs:$hi, (Cpu0Lo tglobaladdr:$lo)),
          (ORi CPUREgs:$hi, tglobaladdr:$lo)>;
}
```

```
...
lui $2, %hi(gI)
ori $2, $2, %lo(gI)
...
```

As above, Pat<(...),(...)> include two lists of DAGs. The left is IR DAG and the right is machine instruction DAG. “Pat<(Cpu0Hi tglobaladdr:\$in), (LUi, tglobaladdr:\$in)>,” will translate DAG (Cpu0ISD::Hi tglobaladdr) into (lui (ori ZERO, tglobaladdr), 16). “Pat<(add CPUREgs:\$hi, (Cpu0Lo tglobaladdr:\$lo)), (ORi CPUREgs:\$hi, tglobaladdr:\$lo)>,” will translate DAG (add Cpu0ISD::Hi, Cpu0ISD::Lo) into Cpu0 instruction (ori Cpu0ISD::Hi, Cpu0ISD::Lo).

### 6.2.2 sdata or sbss

The sdata/sbss are 16 bits addressable areas which placed in ELF for fast access. Option cpu0-use-small-section=true will generate the following instructions.

```
ori $2, $gp, %gp_rel(gI)
ld $2, 0($2)
...
.type      gStart,@object           # @gStart
.section   .sdata,"aw",@progbits
.globl    gStart
.align     2
gStart:
        .4byte   2                  # 0x2
        .size    gStart, 4
.type      gI,@object           # @gI
```

```

.globl      gI
.align      2
gI:
.4byte     100          # 0x64
.size      gI, 4

```

The code fragment of lowerGlobalAddress() as the following corresponding option llc -relocation-model=static -cpu0-use-small-section=true will translate DAG (GlobalAddress*i32\* @gI> 0) into (add register %GP Cpu0ISD::GPRel<gI offset>) in stage “Legalized selection DAG” as below.*

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter6\_1/Cpu0ISelLowering.cpp

```

SDValue Cpu0TargetLowering::lowerGlobalAddress(SDValue Op,
                                              SelectionDAG &DAG) const {
    //@@lowerGlobalAddress }
    SDLoc DL(Op);
    const Cpu0TargetObjectFile *TLOF =
        static_cast<const Cpu0TargetObjectFile *>(
            getTargetMachine().getObjFileLowering());
    //@@lga 1 {
    EVT Ty = Op.getValueType();
    GlobalAddressSDNode *N = cast<GlobalAddressSDNode>(Op);
    const GlobalValue *GV = N->getGlobal();
    //@@lga 1 }

    if (!isPositionIndependent()) {
        //@@ %gp_rel relocation
        if (TLOF->IsGlobalInSmallSection(GV, getTargetMachine())) {
            SDValue GA = DAG.getTargetGlobalAddress(GV, DL, MVT::i32, 0,
                                                      Cpu0II::MO_GPREL);
            SDValue GPRelNode = DAG.getNode(Cpu0ISD::GPRel, DL,
                                             DAG.getVTList(MVT::i32), GA);
            SDValue GPReg = DAG.getRegister(Cpu0::GP, MVT::i32);
            return DAG.getNode(ISD::ADD, DL, MVT::i32, GPReg, GPRelNode);
        }
    }
}

```

```

    ...
}
...
}

```

```

...
Type-legalized selection DAG: BB#0 '_Z3funv:entry'
SelectionDAG has 12 nodes:
...
    0x7fc5f382cc10: <multiple use>
    0x7fc5f382cf10: ch = store 0x7fc5f382cd10, 0x7fc5f382ca10, 0x7fc5f382ce10,
    0x7fc5f382cc10<ST4[%c]> [ORD=2] [ID=-3]

    0x7fc5f382d010: i32 = GlobalAddress<i32* @gI> 0 [ORD=3] [ID=-3]

    0x7fc5f382cc10: <multiple use>
    0x7fc5f382d110: i32,ch = load 0x7fc5f382cf10, 0x7fc5f382d010,

```

```

0x7fc5f382cc10<LD4[@gI]> [ORD=3] [ID=-3]

Legalized selection DAG: BB#0 '_Z3funv:entry'
SelectionDAG has 15 nodes:
...
    0x7fc5f382cc10: <multiple use>
0x7fc5f382cf10: ch = store 0x7fc5f382cd10, 0x7fc5f382ca10, 0x7fc5f382ce10,
0x7fc5f382cc10<ST4[%c]> [ORD=2] [ID=8]

    0x7fc5f382d710: i32 = register %GP

    0x7fc5f382d310: i32 = TargetGlobalAddress<i32* @gI> 0 [TF=4]

    0x7fc5f382d610: i32 = Cpu0ISD::GPRel 0x7fc5f382d310

    0x7fc5f382d810: i32 = add 0x7fc5f382d710, 0x7fc5f382d610

    0x7fc5f382cc10: <multiple use>
0x7fc5f382d110: i32, ch = load 0x7fc5f382cf10, 0x7fc5f382d810,
0x7fc5f382cc10<LD4[@gI]> [ORD=3] [ID=9]
...

```

Finally, the pattern defined in Cpu0InstrInfo.td as the following will translate DAG (add register %GP Cpu0ISD::GPRel<gI offset>) into Cpu0 instruction as below.

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter6\_1/Cpu0InstrInfo.td

```
def Cpu0GPRel : SDNode<"Cpu0ISD::GPRel", SDTIntUnaryOp>;
```

```
// gp_rel relocs
let Predicates = [Ch6_1] in {
def : Pat<(add CPUREgs:$gp, (Cpu0GPRel tglobaladdr:$in)),
            (ORi CPUREgs:$gp, tglobaladdr:$in)>;
}
```

```
ori $2, $gp, %gp_rel(gI)
...
```

“Pat<(add CPUREgs:\$gp, (Cpu0GPRel tglobaladdr:\$in)), (ADD CPUREgs:\$gp, (ORi ZERO, tglobaladdr:\$in))>;” will translate (add register %GP Cpu0ISD::GPRel tglobaladdr) into (add \$gp, (ori ZERO, tglobaladdr)).

In this mode, the \$gp content is assigned at compile/link time, changed only at program be loaded, and is fixed during the program running; on the contrary, when -relocation-model=pic the \$gp can be changed during program running. For this example code, if \$gp is assigned to the start address of .sdata by loader when program ch6\_1.cpu0.s is loaded, then linker can caculate %gp\_rel(gI) (= the relative address distance between gI and start of .sdata section). Which meaning this relocation record can be solved at link time, that's why it is static mode.

In this mode, we reserve \$gp to a specific fixed address of the program is loaded. As a result, the \$gp cannot be allocated as a general purpose for variables. The following code tells llvm never allocate \$gp for variables.

**Ibdex/chapters/Chapter6\_1/Cpu0Subtarget.cpp**

```
Cpu0Subtarget::Cpu0Subtarget(const Triple &TT, const std::string &CPU,
                           const std::string &FS, bool little,
                           const Cpu0TargetMachine &_TM) :
    // Set UseSmallSection.
    UseSmallSection = UseSmallSectionOpt;
    Cpu0ReserveGP = ReserveGPOpt;
    Cpu0NoCpload = NoCploadOpt;
#ifdef ENABLE_GPRESTORE
    if (!_TM.isPositionIndependent() && !UseSmallSection && !Cpu0ReserveGP)
        FixGlobalBaseReg = false;
    else
#endif
    FixGlobalBaseReg = true;

}
```

**Ibdex/chapters/Chapter6\_1/Cpu0RegisterInfo.cpp**

```
BitVector Cpu0RegisterInfo::
getReservedRegs(const MachineFunction &MF) const {
//@getReservedRegs body {

#ifdef ENABLE_GPRESTORE //1
    const Cpu0FunctionInfo *Cpu0FI = MF.getInfo<Cpu0FunctionInfo>();
    // Reserve GP if globalBaseRegFixed()
    if (Cpu0FI->globalBaseRegFixed())
#endif
    Reserved.set(Cpu0::GP);

    ...
}
```

## 6.3 pic mode

### 6.3.1 sdata or sbss

Option `llc -relocation-model=pic -cpu0-use-small-section=true` will generate the following instructions.

```
...
.set      noreorder
.cupload   $6
.set      nomacro
...
ld  $2, %got(gI)($gp)
ld  $2, 0($2)
...
.type     gStart,@object          # @gStart
```

```

.data
.globl gStart
.align 2
gStart:
    .4byte 2          # 0x2
    .size gStart, 4

.type gI,@object      # @gI
.globl gI
.align 2
gI:
    .4byte 100        # 0x64
    .size gI, 4

```

The following code fragment of Cpu0AsmPrinter.cpp will emit **.cupload** asm pseudo instruction at function entry point as below.

### [Index/chapters/Chapter6\\_1/Cpu0MachineFunction.h](#)

```

/// Cpu0FunctionInfo - This class is derived from MachineFunction private
/// Cpu0 target-specific information for each MachineFunction.
class Cpu0FunctionInfo : public MachineFunctionInfo {
public:
    Cpu0FunctionInfo(MachineFunction& MF)
        : MF(MF),

```

```
        GlobalBaseReg(0),
```

```

    bool globalBaseRegFixed() const;
    bool globalBaseRegSet() const;
    unsigned getGlobalBaseReg();
```

```

/// GlobalBaseReg - keeps track of the virtual register initialized for
/// use as the global base register. This is used for PIC in some PIC
/// relocation models.
unsigned GlobalBaseReg;
```

```
int GPFI; // Index of the frame object for restoring $gp
```

```

    ...
};
```

### [Index/chapters/Chapter6\\_1/Cpu0MachineFunction.cpp](#)

```

bool Cpu0FunctionInfo::globalBaseRegFixed() const {
    return FixGlobalBaseReg;
}

bool Cpu0FunctionInfo::globalBaseRegSet() const {
    return GlobalBaseReg;
}
```

```
unsigned Cpu0FunctionInfo::getGlobalBaseReg() {
    return GlobalBaseReg = Cpu0::GP;
}
```

**Ibdex/chapters/Chapter6\_1/Cpu0AsmPrinter.cpp**

```
/// EmitFunctionBodyStart - Targets can override this to emit stuff before
/// the first basic block in the function.
void Cpu0AsmPrinter::EmitFunctionBodyStart() {
```

```
    bool EmitCPLoad = (MF->getTarget().getRelocationModel() == Reloc::PIC_) &&
        Cpu0FI->globalBaseRegSet() &&
        Cpu0FI->globalBaseRegFixed();
    if (Cpu0NoCpload)
        EmitCPLoad = false;
```

```
    // Emit .cupload directive if needed.
    if (EmitCPLoad)
        OutStreamer->EmitRawText(StringRef("\t.cupload\t$t9"));
```

```
} else if (EmitCPLoad) {
    SmallVector<MCInst, 4> MCInsts;
    MCInstLowering.LowerCPLOAD(MCInsts);
    for (SmallVector<MCInst, 4>::iterator I = MCInsts.begin();
          I != MCInsts.end(); ++I)
        OutStreamer->EmitInstruction(*I, getSubtargetInfo());
```

```
}
```

```
...
.set      noreorder
.cupload  $6
.set      nomacro
...
```

The **.cupload** is the assembly directive (macro) which will expand to several instructions. Issue **.cupload** before **.set nomacro** since the **.set nomacro** option causes the assembler to print a warning message whenever an assembler operation generates more than one machine language instruction, reference Mips ABI<sup>2</sup>.

Following code will expand **.cupload** into machine instructions as below. “0fa00000 09aa0000 13aa6000” is the **.cupload** machine instructions displayed in comments of Cpu0MCInstLower.cpp.

**Ibdex/chapters/Chapter6\_1/Cpu0MCInstLower.h**

```
/// This class is used to lower an MachineInstr into an MCInst.
class LLVM_LIBRARY_VISIBILITY Cpu0MCInstLower {
```

```
    void LowerCPLOAD(SmallVector<MCInst, 4>& MCInsts);
```

<sup>2</sup> <http://www.linux-mips.org/pub/linux/mips/doc/ABI/mipsabi.pdf>

```

private:
    MCOperand LowerSymbolOperand(const MachineOperand &MO,
                                  MachineOperandType MOTy, unsigned Offset) const;
}

...
}

```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter6\_1/Cpu0MCInstLower.cpp

```

// Lower ".cupload $reg" to
// "lui $gp, %hi(_gp_disp)"
// "addiu $gp, $gp, %lo(_gp_disp)"
// "addu $gp, $gp, $t9"
void Cpu0MCInstLower::LowerCUPLOAD(SmallVector<MCInst, 4>& MCInsts) {
    MCOperand GPRReg = MCOperand::createReg(Cpu0::GP);
    MCOperand T9Reg = MCOperand::createReg(Cpu0::T9);
    StringRef SymName("_gp_disp");
    const MCSymbol *Sym = Ctx->getOrCreateSymbol(SymName);
    const Cpu0MCEExpr *MCSym;

    MCSym = Cpu0MCEExpr::create(Sym, Cpu0MCEExpr::CEK_ABS_HI, *Ctx);
    MCOperand SymHi = MCOperand::createExpr(MCSym);
    MCSym = Cpu0MCEExpr::create(Sym, Cpu0MCEExpr::CEK_ABS_LO, *Ctx);
    MCOperand SymLo = MCOperand::createExpr(MCSym);

    MCInsts.resize(3);

    CreateMCInst(MCInsts[0], Cpu0::LUI, GPRReg, SymHi);
    CreateMCInst(MCInsts[1], Cpu0::ORI, GPRReg, GPRReg, SymLo);
    CreateMCInst(MCInsts[2], Cpu0::ADD, GPRReg, GPRReg, T9Reg);
}

```

```

118-165-76-131:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/
cmake_debug_build/Debug/bin/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=
obj ch6_1.bc -o ch6_1.cpu0.o
118-165-76-131:input Jonathan$ gobjdump -s ch6_1.cpu0.o

ch6_1.cpu0.o:      file format elf32-big

Contents of section .text:
0000 0fa00000 0daa0000 13aa6000 ...
...

118-165-76-131:input Jonathan$ gobjdump -tr ch6_1.cpu0.o
...
RELOCATION RECORDS FOR [.text]:
OFFSET   TYPE          VALUE
00000000 UNKNOWN       _gp_disp
00000008 UNKNOWN       _gp_disp
00000020 UNKNOWN       gI

```

---

**Note:** // Mips ABI: **\_gp\_disp** After calculating the gp, a function allocates the local stack space and saves the gp on the stack, so it can be restored after subsequent function calls. In other words, the gp is a caller saved register.

...

`_gp_disp` represents the offset between the beginning of the function and the global offset table. Various optimizations are possible in this code example and the others that follow. For example, the calculation of `gp` need not be done for a position-independent function that is strictly local to an object module.

The `_gp_disp` as above is a relocation record, it means both the machine instructions 0da00000 (offset 0) and 0daa0000 (offset 8) which equal to assembly “ori \$gp, \$zero, %hi(\_gp\_disp)” and assembly “ori \$gp, \$gp, %lo(\_gp\_disp)”, respectively, are relocated records depend on `_gp_disp`. The loader or OS can calculate `_gp_disp` by (`x` - start address of `.data`) when load the dynamic function into memory `x`, and adjusts these two instructions offset correctly. Since shared function is loaded when this function is called, the relocation record “ld \$2, %got(gI)(\$gp)” cannot be resolved in link time. In spite of the relocation record is solved on load time, the name binding is static, since linker deliver the memory address to loader, and loader can solve this just by calculate the offset directly. The memory reference bind with the offset of `_gp_disp` at link time. The ELF relocation records will be introduced in Chapter ELF Support. So, don’t worry if you don’t quite understand it at this point.

The code fragment of `lowerGlobalAddress()` as the following corresponding option `llc -relocation-model=pic` will translate DAG (`GlobalAddress<i32* @gI> 0`) into (load `EntryToken`, (`Cpu0ISD::Wrapper Register %GP, TargetGlobalAddress<i32* @gI> 0`)) in stage “Legalized selection DAG” as below.

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter6\_1/Cpu0ISelLowering.h

```
// This method creates the following nodes, which are necessary for
// computing a global symbol's address:
//
// (load (wrapper $gp, %got(sym)))
template<class NodeTy>
SDValue getAddrGlobal(NodeTy *N, EVT Ty, SelectionDAG &DAG,
                      unsigned Flag, SDValue Chain,
                      const MachinePointerInfo &PtrInfo) const {
    SDLoc DL(N);
    SDValue Tgt = DAG.getNode(Cpu0ISD::Wrapper, DL, Ty, getGlobalReg(DAG, Ty),
                               getTargetNode(N, Ty, DAG, Flag));
    return DAG.getLoad(Ty, DL, Chain, Tgt, PtrInfo);
}
```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter6\_1/Cpu0ISelLowering.cpp

```
SDValue Cpu0TargetLowering::lowerGlobalAddress(SDValue Op,
                                              SelectionDAG &DAG) const {

    EVT Ty = Op.getValueType();
    GlobalAddressSDNode *N = cast<GlobalAddressSDNode>(Op);
    const GlobalValue *GV = N->getGlobal();

    if (TLOF->IsGlobalInSmallSection(GV, getTargetMachine())) {
        SDValue GA = DAG.getTargetGlobalAddress(GV, DL, MVT::i32, 0,
                                                Cpu0II::MO_GPREL);
        SDValue GPRelNode = DAG.getNode(Cpu0ISD::GPRel, DL,
                                         DAG.getVTList(MVT::i32), GA);
        SDValue GPReg = DAG.getRegister(Cpu0::GP, MVT::i32);
        return DAG.getNode(ISD::ADD, DL, MVT::i32, GPReg, GPRelNode);
    }
}
```

```
}
```

```
...  
}
```

### **Index/chapters/Chapter6\_1/Cpu0ISelDAGToDAG.cpp**

```
/// ComplexPattern used on Cpu0InstrInfo  
/// Used on Cpu0 Load/Store instructions  
bool Cpu0DAGToDAGISel::  
SelectAddr(SDNode *Parent, SDValue Addr, SDValue &Base, SDValue &Offset) {
```

```
// on PIC code Load GA  
if (Addr.getOpcode() == Cpu0ISD::Wrapper) {  
    Base = Addr.getOperand(0);  
    Offset = Addr.getOperand(1);  
    return true;  
}
```

```
...  
}
```

```
...  
Type-legalized selection DAG: BB#0 '_Z3funv:entry'  
SelectionDAG has 12 nodes:  
...  
    0x7fad7102cc10: <multiple use>  
    0x7fad7102cf10: ch = store 0x7fad7102cd10, 0x7fad7102ca10, 0x7fad7102ce10,  
    0x7fad7102cc10<ST4[%c]> [ORD=2] [ID=-3]  
  
    0x7fad7102d010: i32 = GlobalAddress<i32* @gI> 0 [ORD=3] [ID=-3]  
  
    0x7fad7102cc10: <multiple use>  
    0x7fad7102d110: i32, ch = load 0x7fad7102cf10, 0x7fad7102d010,  
    0x7fad7102cc10<LD4[@gI]> [ORD=3] [ID=-3]  
...  
Legalized selection DAG: BB#0 '_Z3funv:entry'  
SelectionDAG has 15 nodes:  
    0x7ff3c9c10b98: ch = EntryToken [ORD=1] [ID=0]  
...  
    0x7fad7102cc10: <multiple use>  
    0x7fad7102cf10: ch = store 0x7fad7102cd10, 0x7fad7102ca10, 0x7fad7102ce10,  
    0x7fad7102cc10<ST4[%c]> [ORD=2] [ID=8]  
  
    0x7fad70c10b98: <multiple use>  
        0x7fad7102d610: i32 = Register %GP  
  
        0x7fad7102d310: i32 = TargetGlobalAddress<i32* @gI> 0 [TF=1]  
  
    0x7fad7102d710: i32 = Cpu0ISD::Wrapper 0x7fad7102d610, 0x7fad7102d310  
  
    0x7fad7102cc10: <multiple use>
```

```

0x7fad7102d810: i32, ch = load 0x7fad70c10b98, 0x7fad7102d710,
0x7fad7102cc10<LD4[<unknown>]>
0x7ff3ca02cc10: <multiple use>
0x7ff3ca02d110: i32, ch = load 0x7ff3ca02cf10, 0x7ff3ca02d810,
0x7ff3ca02cc10<LD4[@gI]> [ORD=3] [ID=9]
...

```

Finally, the pattern Cpu0 instruction **Id** defined before in Cpu0InstrInfo.td will translate DAG (load EntryToken, (Cpu0ISD::Wrapper Register %GP, TargetGlobalAddress<i32\* @gI> 0)) into Cpu0 instruction as follows,

```

...
ld $2, %got(gI)($gp)
...

```

Remind in pic mode, Cpu0 uses ".cupload" and "ld \$2, %got(gI)(\$gp)" to access global variable as Mips. It takes 4 instructions in both Cpu0 and Mips. The cost came from we didn't assume that register \$gp is always assigned to address .sdata and fixed there. Even we reserve \$gp in this function, the \$gp register can be changed at other functions. In last sub-section, the \$gp is assumed to preserved at any function. If \$gp is fixed during the run time, then ".cupload" can be removed here and have only one instruction cost in global variable access. The advantage of ".cupload" removing come from losing one general purpose register \$gp which can be allocated for variables. In last sub-section, .sdata mode, we use ".cupload" removing since it is static link. In pic mode, the dynamic loading takes too much time. Remove ".cupload" with the cost of losing one general purpose register at all functions is not deserved here. The relocation records of ".cupload" from l1c -relocation-model=pic can also be solved in link stage if we want to link this function by static link.

### 6.3.2 data or bss

The code fragment of lowerGlobalAddress() as the following corresponding option l1c -relocation-model=pic will translate DAG (GlobalAddress<i32\* @gI> 0) into (load EntryToken, (Cpu0ISD::Wrapper (add Cpu0ISD::Hi<gI offset Hi16>, Register %GP), TargetGlobalAddress<i32\* @gI> 0)) in stage “Legalized selection DAG” as below.

#### [Index/chapters/Chapter6\\_1/Cpu0ISelLowering.h](#)

```

// This method creates the following nodes, which are necessary for
// computing a global symbol's address in large-GOT mode:
//
// (load (wrapper (add %hi(sym), $gp), %lo(sym)))
template<class NodeTy>
SDValue getAddrGlobalLargeGOT(NodeTy *N, EVT Ty, SelectionDAG &DAG,
                               unsigned HiFlag, unsigned LoFlag,
                               SDValue Chain,
                               const MachinePointerInfo &PtrInfo) const {
    SDLoc DL(N);
    SDValue Hi = DAG.getNode(Cpu0ISD::Hi, DL, Ty,
                             getTargetNode(N, Ty, DAG, HiFlag));
    Hi = DAG.getNode(ISD::ADD, DL, Ty, Hi, getGlobalReg(DAG, Ty));
    SDValue Wrapper = DAG.getNode(Cpu0ISD::Wrapper, DL, Ty, Hi,
                                   getTargetNode(N, Ty, DAG, LoFlag));
    return DAG.getLoad(Ty, DL, Chain, Wrapper, PtrInfo);
}

```

**Ibdex/chapters/Chapter6\_1/Cpu0ISelLowering.cpp**

```

SDValue Cpu0TargetLowering::lowerGlobalAddress(SDValue Op,
                                              SelectionDAG &DAG) const {

    EVT Ty = Op.getValueType();
    GlobalAddressSDNode *N = cast<GlobalAddressSDNode>(Op);
    const GlobalValue *GV = N->getGlobal();

    if (!TLOF->IsGlobalInSmallSection(GV, getTargetMachine()))
        return getAddrGlobalLargeGOT(
            N, Ty, DAG, Cpu0II::MO_GOT_HI16, Cpu0II::MO_GOT_LO16,
            DAG.getEntryNode(),
            MachinePointerInfo::getGOT(DAG.getMachineFunction()));
    return getAddrGlobal(
        N, Ty, DAG, Cpu0II::MO_GOT, DAG.getEntryNode(),
        MachinePointerInfo::getGOT(DAG.getMachineFunction()));
}

...
Type-legalized selection DAG: BB#0 '_Z3funv:'
SelectionDAG has 10 nodes:
...
0x7fb77a02cd10: ch = store 0x7fb779c10a08, 0x7fb77a02ca10, 0x7fb77a02cb10,
0x7fb77a02cc10<ST4[%c]> [ORD=1] [ID=-3]

0x7fb77a02ce10: i32 = GlobalAddress<i32* @gI> 0 [ORD=2] [ID=-3]

0x7fb77a02cc10: <multiple use>
0x7fb77a02cf10: i32, ch = load 0x7fb77a02cd10, 0x7fb77a02ce10,
0x7fb77a02cc10<LD4[@gI]> [ORD=2] [ID=-3]
...

Legalized selection DAG: BB#0 '_Z3funv:'
SelectionDAG has 16 nodes:
...
0x7fb77a02cd10: ch = store 0x7fb779c10a08, 0x7fb77a02ca10, 0x7fb77a02cb10,
0x7fb77a02cc10<ST4[%c]> [ORD=1] [ID=6]

0x7fb779c10a08: <multiple use>
0x7fb77a02d110: i32 = TargetGlobalAddress<i32* @gI> 0 [TF=19]

0x7fb77a02d410: i32 = Cpu0ISD::Hi 0x7fb77a02d110

0x7fb77a02d510: i32 = Register %GP

0x7fb77a02d610: i32 = add 0x7fb77a02d410, 0x7fb77a02d510

0x7fb77a02d710: i32 = TargetGlobalAddress<i32* @gI> 0 [TF=20]

0x7fb77a02d810: i32 = Cpu0ISD::Wrapper 0x7fb77a02d610, 0x7fb77a02d710

0x7fb77a02cc10: <multiple use>
0x7fb77a02fe10: i32, ch = load 0x7fb779c10a08, 0x7fb77a02d810,
0x7fb77a02cc10<LD4[GOT]>

0x7fb77a02cc10: <multiple use>

```

```

0x7fb77a02cf10: i32, ch = load 0x7fb77a02cd10, 0x7fb77a02fe10,
0x7fb77a02cc10<LD4[@gI]> [ORD=2] [ID=7]
...

```

Finally, the pattern Cpu0 instruction **Id** defined before in Cpu0InstrInfo.td will translate DAG (load EntryToken, (Cpu0ISD::Wrapper (add Cpu0ISD::Hi<gI offset Hi16>, Register %GP), Cpu0ISD::Lo<gI offset Lo16>)) into Cpu0 instructions as below.

```

...
ori $2, $zero, %got_hi(gI)
shl $2, $2, 16
add $2, $2, $gp
ld $2, %got_lo(gI) ($2)
...

```

The following code in Cpu0InstrInfo.td is needed for example input ch8\_2\_select\_global\_pic.cpp. Since ch8\_2\_select\_global\_pic.cpp uses llvm IR **select**, it cannot be run at this point. It will be run in later Chapter Control flow statements.

### [Index/chapters/Chapter6\\_1/Cpu0InstrInfo.td](#)

```

def Cpu0Wrapper : SDNode<"Cpu0ISD::Wrapper", SDTIntBinOp>;

```

```

let Predicates = [Ch6_1] in {
class WrapperPat<SDNode node, Instruction ORiOp, RegisterClass RC>:
    Pat<(Cpu0Wrapper RC:$gp, node:$in),
        (ORiOp RC:$gp, node:$in)>

def : WrapperPat<tglobaladdr, ORi, GPROut>;
}

```

### [Index/input/ch8\\_2\\_select\\_global\\_pic.cpp](#)

```

volatile int a1 = 1;
volatile int b1 = 2;

int gI1 = 100;
int gJ1 = 50;

int test_select_global_pic()
{
    if (a1 < b1)
        return gI1;
    else
        return gJ1;
}

```

## 6.4 Global variable print support

Above code is for global address DAG translation. Next, add the following code to Cpu0MCInstLower.cpp and Cpu0ISelLowering.cpp for global variable printing operand function.

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter6\_1/Cpu0MCInstLower.cpp

```

MCOperand Cpu0MCInstLower::LowerSymbolOperand(const MachineOperand &MO,
                                              MachineOperandType MOTy,
                                              unsigned Offset) const {
    MCSymbolRefExpr::VariantKind Kind = MCSymbolRefExpr::VK_None;
    Cpu0MCE Expr::Cpu0ExprKind TargetKind = Cpu0MCE Expr::CEK_None;
    const MCSymbol *Symbol;

    switch(MO.getTargetFlags()) {
    default: llvm_unreachable("Invalid target flag!");
    case Cpu0II::MO_NO_FLAG:
        break;

    // Cpu0_GPREL is for llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=static -cpu0-islinux-
    // format=false (global var in .sdata).
    case Cpu0II::MO_GPREL:
        TargetKind = Cpu0MCE Expr::CEK_GPREL;
        break;

    case Cpu0II::MO_GOT:
        TargetKind = Cpu0MCE Expr::CEK_GOT;
        break;
    // ABS_HI and ABS_LO is for llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=static (global
    // var in .data).
    case Cpu0II::MO_ABS_HI:
        TargetKind = Cpu0MCE Expr::CEK_ABS_HI;
        break;
    case Cpu0II::MO_ABS_LO:
        TargetKind = Cpu0MCE Expr::CEK_ABS_LO;
        break;
    case Cpu0II::MO_GOT_HI16:
        TargetKind = Cpu0MCE Expr::CEK_GOT_HI16;
        break;
    case Cpu0II::MO_GOT_LO16:
        TargetKind = Cpu0MCE Expr::CEK_GOT_LO16;
        break;
    }

    switch (MOTy) {
    case MachineOperand::MO_GlobalAddress:
        Symbol = AsmPrinter.getSymbol(MO.getGlobal());
        Offset += MO.getOffset();
        break;

    default:
        llvm_unreachable("<unknown operand type>");
    }

    const MCExpr *Expr = MCSymbolRefExpr::create(Symbol, Kind, *Ctx);

    if (Offset) {
        // Assume offset is never negative.
        assert(Offset > 0);
        Expr = MCBinaryExpr::createAdd(Expr, MCConstantExpr::create(Offset, *Ctx),
                                      *Ctx);
    }
}

```

```

if (TargetKind != Cpu0MCExpr::CEK_None)
    Expr = Cpu0MCExpr::create(TargetKind, Expr, *Ctx);

return MCOperand::createExpr(Expr);

}

MCOperand Cpu0MCInstLower::LowerOperand(const MachineOperand& MO,
                                         unsigned offset) const {
    MachineOperandType MOTy = MO.getType();
    switch (MOTy) {

        case MachineOperand::MO_GlobalAddress:
        //@1
        return LowerSymbolOperand(MO, MOTy, offset);

        ...
    }
    ...
}
    
```

The Cpu0MCExpr::printImpl() of Cpu0InstPrinter.cpp in last chapter is for global variable printing operand function too.

The following function is for llc -debug this chapter DAG node name printing. It is added at Chapter3\_1 already.

### [Index/chapters/Chapter3\\_1/Cpu0ISelLowering.cpp](#)

```

const char *Cpu0TargetLowering::getTargetNodeName(unsigned Opcode) const {
    switch (Opcode) {
        ...
        case Cpu0ISD::GPRel:           return "Cpu0ISD::GPRel";
        ...
        case Cpu0ISD::Wrapper:        return "Cpu0ISD::Wrapper";
        ...
    }
}
    
```

OS is the output stream which output to the assembly file.

## 6.5 Summary

The global variable Instruction Selection for DAG translation is not like the ordinary IR node translation, it has static (absolute address) and pic mode. Backend deals this translation by create DAG nodes in function lowerGlobalAddress() which called by LowerOperation(). Function LowerOperation() takes care all Custom type of operation. Backend set global address as Custom operation by "setOperationAction(ISD::GlobalAddress, MVT::i32, Custom);" in Cpu0TargetLowering() constructor. Different address mode create their own DAG list at run time. By setting the pattern Pat<> in Cpu0InstrInfo.td, the llvm can apply the compiler mechanism, pattern match, in the Instruction Selection stage.

There are three types for setXXXAction(), Promote, Expand and Custom. Except Custom, the other two maybe no need to coding. Here <sup>3</sup> is the references.

As shown in this chapter, the global variable can be laid in .sdata/.sbss by option -cpu0-use-small-section=true. It is possible that the variables of small data section (16 bits addressable) are full out at link stage. When that happens, linker will highlights that error and forces the toolchain users to fix it. As the result, the toolchain user need to reconsider which global variables should be moved from .sdata/.sbss to .data/.bss by set option -cpu0-use-small-section=false in Makefile as follows,

### Makefile

```
# Set the global variables declared in a.cpp to .data/.bss
llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=static -cpu0-use-small-section=false \
-filetype=obj a.bc -o a.cpu0.o
# Set the global variables declared in b.cpp to .sdata/.sbss
llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=static -cpu0-use-small-section=true \
-filetype=obj b.bc -o b.cpu0.o
```

The rule for global variables allocation is “set the small and frequent variables in small 16 addressable area”.

---

<sup>3</sup> <http://llvm.org/docs/WritingAnLLVMBackend.html#the-selectiondag-legalize-phase>

## OTHER DATA TYPE

- *Local variable pointer*
- *char, short int and bool*
- *long long*
- *float and double*
- *Array and struct support*
- *Vector type (SIMD) support*

Until now, we only handle both int and long type of 32 bits size. This chapter introduce other types, such as pointer and those are not 32-bit size which include bool, char, short int and long long.

### 7.1 Local variable pointer

To support pointer to local variable, add this code fragment in Cpu0InstrInfo.td and Cpu0InstPrinter.cpp as follows,

#### [Index/chapters/Chapter7\\_1/Cpu0InstrInfo.td](#)

```
def mem_ea : Operand<iPTR> {
    let PrintMethod = "printMemOperandEA";
    let MIOperandInfo = (ops CPUREgs, simm16);
    let EncoderMethod = "getMemEncoding";
}
```

```
class EffectiveAddress<string instr_asm, RegisterClass RC, Operand Mem> :
    FMem<0x09, (outs RC:$ra), (ins Mem:$addr),
        instr_asm, [(set RC:$ra, addr:$addr)], IIAlu>;
}
```

```
// FrameIndexes are legalized when they are operands from load/store
// instructions. The same not happens for stack address copies, so an
// add op with mem ComplexPattern is used and the stack address copy
// can be matched. It's similar to Sparc LEA_ADDRi
def LEA_ADDiu : EffectiveAddress<"addiu\t$ra, $addr", CPUREgs, mem_ea> {
    let isCodeGenOnly = 1;
}
```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter3\_2/InstPrinter/Cpu0InstPrinter.h

```
void printMemOperandEA(const MCInst *MI, int opNum, raw_ostream &O);
```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter3\_2/InstPrinter/Cpu0InstPrinter.cpp

```
// The DAG data node, mem_ea of Cpu0InstrInfo.td, cannot be disabled by
// ch7_1, only opcode node can be disabled.
void Cpu0InstPrinter:::
printMemOperandEA(const MCInst *MI, int opNum, raw_ostream &O) {
    // when using stack locations for not load/store instructions
    // print the same way as all normal 3 operand instructions.
    printOperand(MI, opNum, O);
    O << ", ";
    printOperand(MI, opNum+1, O);
    return;
}
```

As comment in Cpu0InstPrinter.cpp, the printMemOperandEA is added at early chapter 3\_2 since the DAG data node, mem\_ea of Cpu0InstrInfo.td, cannot be disabled by ch7\_1\_localpointer, only opcode node can be disabled. Run ch7\_1\_localpointer.cpp with code Chapter7\_1/ which support pointer to local variable, will get result as follows,

### Ibdex/input/ch7\_1\_localpointer.cpp

```
int test_local_pointer()
{
    int b = 3;

    int* p = &b;

    return *p;
}
```

```
118-165-66-82:input Jonathan$ clang -target mips-unknown-linux-gnu -c
ch7_1_localpointer.cpp -emit-llvm -o ch7_1_localpointer.bc
118-165-66-82:input Jonathan$ llvmdis ch7_1_localpointer.bc -o -
...
; Function Attrs: nounwind
define i32 @_Z18test_local_pointerv() #0 {
    %b = alloca i32, align 4
    %p = alloca i32*, align 4
    store i32 3, i32* %b, align 4
    store i32* %b, i32** %p, align 4
    %1 = load i32** %p, align 4
    %2 = load i32* %1, align 4
    ret i32 %2
}
...
118-165-66-82:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_
debug_build/Debug/bin/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm
ch7_1_localpointer.bc -o -
...
```

```

addiu $sp, $sp, -8
addiu $2, $zero, 3
st    $2, 4($fp)
addiu $2, $fp, 4      // b address is 4($sp)
st    $2, 0($fp)
ld    $2, 4($fp)
addiu $sp, $sp, 8
ret   $lr
...

```

## 7.2 char, short int and bool

To support signed/unsigned type of char and short int, adding the following code to Chapter7\_1/.

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter7\_1/Cpu0InstrInfo.td

```

def sextloadi16_a : AlignedLoad<sextloadi16>;
def zextloadi16_a : AlignedLoad<zextloadi16>;
def extloadi16_a : AlignedLoad<extloadi16>;
```

```

def truncstorei16_a : AlignedStore<truncstorei16>;
```

```

let Predicates = [Ch7_1] in {
defm LB      : LoadM32<0x03, "lb",  sextloadi8>;
defm LBu     : LoadM32<0x04, "lbu", zextloadi8>;
defm SB      : StoreM32<0x05, "sb",  truncstorei8>;
defm LH      : LoadM32<0x06, "lh",  sextloadi16_a>;
defm LHu     : LoadM32<0x07, "lhu", zextloadi16_a>;
defm SH      : StoreM32<0x08, "sh",  truncstorei16_a>;
}
```

Run Chapter7\_1/ with ch7\_1\_char\_in\_struct.cpp will get the following result.

### Ibdex/input/ch7\_1\_char\_in\_struct.cpp

```

struct Date
{
    short year;
    char month;
    char day;
    char hour;
    char minute;
    char second;
};

unsigned char b[4] = {'a', 'b', 'c', '\0'};

int test_char()
{
    unsigned char a = b[1];
    char c = (char)b[1];
```

```

Date date1 = {2012, (char)11, (char)25, (char)9, (char)40, (char)15};
char m = date1.month;
char s = date1.second;

return 0;
}

```

```

118-165-64-245:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/
Debug/bin/llvm-dis ch7_1_char_in_struct.bc -o -
define i32 @_Z9test_charv() #0 {
    %a = alloca i8, align 1
    %c = alloca i8, align 1
    %date1 = alloca %struct.Date, align 2
    %m = alloca i8, align 1
    %s = alloca i8, align 1
    %1 = load i8* getelementptr inbounds ([4 x i8]* @b, i32 0, i32 1), align 1
    store i8 %1, i8* %a, align 1
    %2 = load i8* getelementptr inbounds ([4 x i8]* @b, i32 0, i32 1), align 1
    store i8 %2, i8* %c, align 1
    %3 = bitcast %struct.Date* %date1 to i8*
    call void @llvm.memcpy.p0i8.p0i8.i32(i8* %3, i8* bitcast ({ i16, i8, i8, i8,
    i8, i8 }* @_ZZ9test_charvE5date1 to i8*), i32 8, i32 2, i1 false)
    %4 = getelementptr inbounds %struct.Date* %date1, i32 0, i32 1
    %5 = load i8* %4, align 1
    store i8 %5, i8* %m, align 1
    %6 = getelementptr inbounds %struct.Date* %date1, i32 0, i32 5
    %7 = load i8* %6, align 1
    store i8 %7, i8* %s, align 1
    ret i32 0
}

118-165-64-245:input Jonathan$ clang -target mips-unknown-linux-gnu -c
ch7_1_char_in_struct.cpp -emit-llvm -o ch7_1_char_in_struct.bc
118-165-64-245:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/
Debug/bin/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm
ch7_1_char_in_struct.bc -o -
...
# BB#0:                                     # %entry
addiu $sp, $sp, -24
lui $2, %got_hi(b)
addu $2, $2, $gp
ld $2, %got_lo(b) ($2)
lbu $3, 1($2)
sb $3, 20($fp)
lbu $2, 1($2)
sb $2, 16($fp)
ld $2, %got($_ZZ9test_charvE5date1) ($gp)
addiu $2, $2, %lo($_ZZ9test_charvE5date1)
lhu $3, 4($2)
shl $3, $3, 16
lhu $4, 6($2)
or $3, $3, $4
st $3, 12($fp) // store hour, minute and second on 12($sp)
lhu $3, 2($2)
lhu $2, 0($2)
shl $2, $2, 16
or $2, $2, $3

```

```

st $2, 8($fp)      // store year, month and day on 8($sp)
lbu $2, 10($fp)    // m = date1.month;
sb $2, 4($fp)
lbu $2, 14($fp)    // s = date1.second;
sb $2, 0($fp)
addiu $sp, $sp, 24
ret $lr
.set macro
.set reorder
.end _Z9test_charv
$tmp1:
.size _Z9test_charv, ($tmp1)-_Z9test_charv

.type b,@object          # @b
.data
.globl b
b:
.asciz "abc"
.size b, 4

.type _$ZZ9test_charvE5date1,@object # @_ZZ9test_charvE5date1
.section .rodata.cst8,"aM",@progbits,8
.align 1
$_ZZ9test_charvE5date1:
.2byte 2012           # 0x7dc
.byte 11              # 0xb
.byte 25              # 0x19
.byte 9               # 0x9
.byte 40              # 0x28
.byte 15              # 0xf
.space 1
.size _$ZZ9test_charvE5date1, 8

```

Run Chapter7\_1/ with ch7\_1\_char\_short.cpp will get the following result.

### **Index/input/ch7\_1\_char\_short.cpp**

```

int test_signed_char()
{
    char a = 0x80;
    int i = (signed int)a;
    i = i + 2; // i = (-128+2) = -126

    return i;
}

int test_unsigned_char()
{
    unsigned char c = 0x80;
    unsigned int ui = (unsigned int)c;
    ui = ui + 2; // i = (128+2) = 130

    return (int)ui;
}

int test_signed_short()

```

```
{  
    short a = 0x8000;  
    int i = (signed int)a;  
    i = i + 2; // i = (-32768+2) = -32766  
  
    return i;  
}  
  
int test_unsigned_short()  
{  
    unsigned short c = 0x8000;  
    unsigned int ui = (unsigned int)c;  
    ui = ui + 2; // i = (32768+2) = 32770  
    c = (unsigned short)ui;  
  
    return (int)ui;  
}
```

```
1-160-136-236:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/  
Debug/bin/llvm-dis ch7_1_char_short.bc -  
...  
define i32 @_Z16test_signed_charv() #0 {  
    ...  
    %1 = load i8* %a, align 1  
    %2 = sext i8 %1 to i32  
    ...  
}  
  
; Function Attrs: nounwind  
define i32 @_Z18test_unsigned_charv() #0 {  
    ...  
    %1 = load i8* %c, align 1  
    %2 = zext i8 %1 to i32  
    ...  
}  
  
; Function Attrs: nounwind  
define i32 @_Z17test_signed_shortv() #0 {  
    ...  
    %1 = load i16* %a, align 2  
    %2 = sext i16 %1 to i32  
    ...  
}  
  
; Function Attrs: nounwind  
define i32 @_Z19test_unsigned_shortv() #0 {  
    ...  
    %1 = load i16* %c, align 2  
    %2 = zext i16 %1 to i32  
    ...  
}  
  
attributes #0 = { nounwind }  
  
1-160-136-236:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/  
Debug/bin/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=static -filetype=asm ch7_1_char_short.bc -  
→o -
```

```

...
.globl _Z16test_signed_charv
...
lb $2, 4($sp)
...
.end _Z16test_signed_charv

.globl _Z18test_unsigned_charv
...
lbu $2, 4($sp)
...
.end _Z18test_unsigned_charv

.globl _Z17test_signed_shortv
...
lh $2, 4($sp)
...
.end _Z17test_signed_shortv

.globl _Z19test_unsigned_shortv
...
lhu $2, 4($sp)
...
.end _Z19test_unsigned_shortv
...

```

As you can see lb/lh are for signed byte/short type while lbu/lhu are for unsigned byte/short type. To support C type-cast or type-conversion feature efficiently, Cpu0 provide instruction “lb” to converse type char to int with one single instruction. The other instructions lbu, lh, lhu, sb and sh are applied in both signed or unsigned of type byte and short conversion. Their differences have been explained in Chapter 2.

To support load bool type, the following code added.

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter7\_1/Cpu0ISelLowering.cpp

```
Cpu0TargetLowering::Cpu0TargetLowering(const Cpu0TargetMachine &TM,
                                       const Cpu0Subtarget &STI)
    : TargetLowering(TM), Subtarget(STI), ABI(TM.getABI()) {
```

```

// Cpu0 does not have i1 type, so use i32 for
// setcc operations results (slt, sgt, ...).
setBooleanContents(ZeroOrOneBooleanContent);
setBooleanVectorContents(ZeroOrNegativeOneBooleanContent);

// Load extented operations for i1 types must be promoted
for (MVT VT : MVT::integer_valuetypes()) {
    setLoadExtAction(ISD::EXTLOAD, VT, MVT::i1, Promote);
    setLoadExtAction(ISD::ZEXTLOAD, VT, MVT::i1, Promote);
    setLoadExtAction(ISD::SEXTLOAD, VT, MVT::i1, Promote);
}
```

```

}
...
```

The setBooleanContents() purpose as following, but I don't know it well. Without it, the ch7\_1\_bool2.ll still works as below. The IR input file ch7\_1\_bool2.ll is used in testing here since the c++ version need flow control which is not supported at this point. File ch\_run\_backend.cpp include the test fragment for bool as below.

### include/llvm/Target/TargetLowering.h

```
enum BooleanContent { // How the target represents true/false values.
    UndefinedBooleanContent,      // Only bit 0 counts, the rest can hold garbage.
    ZeroOrOneBooleanContent,     // All bits zero except for bit 0.
    ZeroOrNegativeOneBooleanContent // All bits equal to bit 0.
};

...
protected:
    /// setBooleanContents - Specify how the target extends the result of a
    /// boolean value from i1 to a wider type. See getBooleanContents.
    void setBooleanContents(BooleanContent Ty) { BooleanContents = Ty; }
    /// setBooleanVectorContents - Specify how the target extends the result
    /// of a vector boolean value from a vector of i1 to a wider type. See
    /// getBooleanContents.
    void setBooleanVectorContents(BooleanContent Ty) {
        BooleanVectorContents = Ty;
    }
```

### lbdex/input/ch7\_1\_bool2.ll

```
define zeroext i1 @verify_load_bool() #0 {
entry:
    %retval = alloca i1, align 1
    store i1 1, i1* %retval, align 1
    %0 = load i1, i1* %retval
    ret i1 %0
}
```

```
118-165-64-245:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/
Debug/bin/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm ch7_1_bool2.ll -o -
.section .mdebug.abi32
.previous
.file "ch7_1_bool2.ll"
.text
.globl verify_load_bool
.align 2
.type verify_load_bool,@function
.ent verify_load_bool      # @verify_load_bool
.verify_load_bool:
.cfi_startproc
.frame $sp,8,$lr
.mask 0x00000000,0
.set noreorder
.set nomacro
# BB#0:                      # %entry
    addiu $sp, $sp, -8
$tmp1:
.cfi_def_cfa_offset 8
```

```

addiu $2, $zero, 1
sb $2, 7($sp)
addiu $sp, $sp, 8
ret $lr
.set macro
.set reorder
.end verify_load_bool
$tmp2:
.size verify_load_bool, ($tmp2)-verify_load_bool
.cfi_endproc

```

The ch7\_1\_bool.cpp is the bool test version for C language. You can run with it at Chapter8\_1 to get the similar result with ch7\_1\_bool2.ll.

### [Index](#)/input/ch7\_1\_bool.cpp

```

bool test_load_bool()
{
    int a = 1;

    if (a < 0)
        return false;

    return true;
}

```

Summary as the following table.

Table 7.1: The C, IR, and DAG translation for char, short and bool translation (ch7\_1\_char\_short.cpp and ch7\_1\_bool2.ll).

C	.bc	Optimized legalized selection DAG
char a =0x80;	%1 = load i8* %a, align 1	•
int i = (signed int)a;	%2 = sext i8 %1 to i32	load ..., <..., sext from i8>
unsigned char c = 0x80;	%1 = load i8* %c, align 1	•
unsigned int ui = (unsigned int)c;	%2 = zext i8 %1 to i32	load ..., <..., zext from i8>
short a =0x8000;	%1 = load i16* %a, align 2	•
int i = (signed int)a;	%2 = sext i16 %1 to i32	load ..., <..., sext from i16>
unsigned short c = 0x8000;	%1 = load i16* %c, align 2	•
unsigned int ui = (unsigned int)c;	%2 = zext i16 %1 to i32	load ..., <..., zext from i16>
c = (unsigned short)ui;	%6 = trunc i32 %5 to i16	•
•	store i16 %6, i16* %c, align 2	store ..., <..., trunc to i16>
return true;	store i1 1, i1* %retval, align 1	store ..., <..., trunc to i8>

Table 7.2: The backend translation for char, short and bool translation (ch7\_1\_char\_short.cpp and ch7\_1\_bool2.ll).

Optimized legalized selection DAG	Cpu0	pattern in Cpu0InstrInfo.td
load ..., <..., sext from i8>	lb	LB : LoadM32<0x03, “lb”, sextloadi8>;
load ..., <..., zext from i8>	lbu	LBU : LoadM32<0x04, “lbu”, zextloadi8>;
load ..., <..., sext from i16>	lh	LH : LoadM32<0x06, “lh”, sextloadi16_a>;
load ..., <..., zext from i16>	lhu	LHU : LoadM32<0x07, “lhu”, zextloadi16_a>;
store ..., <..., trunc to i16>	sh	SH : StoreM32<0x08, “sh”, truncstorei16_a>;
store ..., <..., trunc to i8>	sb	SB : StoreM32<0x05, “sb”, truncstorei8>;

## 7.3 long long

Like Mips, the type long of Cpu0 is 32-bit and type long long is 64-bit for C language. To support type long long, we add the following code to Chapter7\_1/.

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter7\_1/Cpu0SEISelDAGToDAG.cpp

```
void Cpu0SEIDAGToDAGISel::selectAddESubE(unsigned MOOp, SDValue InFlag,
                                         SDValue CmpLHS, const SDLoc &DL,
                                         SDNode *Node) const {
    unsigned Opc = InFlag.getOpcode(); (void)Opc;
    assert((((Opc == ISD::ADDC || Opc == ISD::ADDE) ||
              (Opc == ISD::SUBC || Opc == ISD::SUBE)) &&
           "(ADD|SUB)E flag operand must come from (ADD|SUB)C/E insn");

    SDValue Ops[] = { CmpLHS, InFlag.getOperand(1) };
    SDValue LHS = Node->getOperand(0), RHS = Node->getOperand(1);
    EVT VT = LHS.getValueType();

    SDNode *Carry;
    if (Subtarget->hasCpu032II())
        Carry = CurDAG->getMachineNode(Cpu0::SLTu, DL, VT, Ops);
    else {
        SDNode *StatusWord = CurDAG->getMachineNode(Cpu0::CMP, DL, VT, Ops);
        SDValue Constant1 = CurDAG->getTargetConstant(1, DL, VT);
        Carry = CurDAG->getMachineNode(Cpu0::ANDi, DL, VT,
                                         SDValue(StatusWord, 0), Constant1);
    }
    SDNode *AddCarry = CurDAG->getMachineNode(Cpu0::ADDu, DL, VT,
                                                SDValue(Carry, 0), RHS);

    CurDAG->SelectNodeTo(Node, MOOp, VT, MVT::Glue, LHS, SDValue(AddCarry, 0));
}
```

```
bool Cpu0SEIDAGToDAGISel::trySelect(SDNode *Node) {
    unsigned Opcode = Node->getOpcode();
    SDLoc DL(Node);

    /**
     // Instruction Selection not handled by the auto-generated
     // tablegen selection should be handled here.
    /**

```

```

///  

// Instruction Selection not handled by the auto-generated  

// tablegen selection should be handled here.  

///  

EVT NodeTy = Node->getValueType(0);  

unsigned MultOpc;  

switch(Opcode) {  

default: break;
```

```

case ISD::SUBE: {  

    SDValue InFlag = Node->getOperand(2);  

    selectAddESubE(Cpu0::SUBu, InFlag, InFlag.getOperand(0), DL, Node);  

    return true;  

}  

case ISD::ADDE: {  

    SDValue InFlag = Node->getOperand(2);  

    selectAddESubE(Cpu0::ADDu, InFlag, InFlag.getValue(0), DL, Node);  

    return true;  

}  

/// Mul with two results  

case ISD::SMUL_LOHI:  

case ISD::UMUL_LOHI: {  

    MultOpc = (Opcode == ISD::UMUL_LOHI ? Cpu0::MULTu : Cpu0::MULT);  

    std::pair<SDNode*, SDNode*> LoHi =  

        selectMULT(Node, MultOpc, DL, NodeTy, true, true);  

    if (!SDValue(Node, 0).use_empty())  

        ReplaceUses(SDValue(Node, 0), SDValue(LoHi.first, 0));  

    if (!SDValue(Node, 1).use_empty())  

        ReplaceUses(SDValue(Node, 1), SDValue(LoHi.second, 0));  

    CurDAG->RemoveDeadNode(Node);  

    return true;  

}
```

```

    ...  
}
```

## Index/chapters/Chapter7\_1/Cpu0ISelLowering.h

```

class Cpu0TargetLowering : public TargetLowering {  

    bool isOffsetFoldingLegal(const GlobalAddressSDNode *GA) const override;  

    ...  
}
```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter7\_1/Cpu0ISelLowering.cpp

```
Cpu0TargetLowering::Cpu0TargetLowering(const Cpu0TargetMachine &TM,
                                      const Cpu0Subtarget &STI)
: TargetLowering(TM), Subtarget(STI), ABI(TM.getABI()) {

    // Handle i64 shl
    setOperationAction(ISD::SHL_PARTS,           MVT::i32,      Expand);
    setOperationAction(ISD::SRA_PARTS,           MVT::i32,      Expand);
    setOperationAction(ISD::SRL_PARTS,           MVT::i32,      Expand);

    ...
}
```

The added code in Cpu0ISelLowering.cpp are for shift operations which support type long long 64-bit. When applying operators << and >> in 64-bit variables will create DAG SHL\_PARTS, SRA\_PARTS and SRL\_PARTS those which take care the 32 bits operands during llvm DAGs translation. File ch9\_7.cpp of 64-bit shift operations cannot be run at this point. It will be verified on later chapter “Function call”.

Run Chapter7\_1 with ch7\_1\_longlong.cpp to get the result as follows,

### Ibdex/input/ch7\_1\_longlong.cpp

```
long long test_longlong()
{
    long long a = 0x300000002;
    long long b = 0x100000001;
    int al = 0x3001000;
    int bl = 0x2001000;

    long long c = a + b;    // c = 0x00000004,00000003
    long long d = a - b;    // d = 0x00000002,00000001
    long long e = a * b;    // e = 0x00000005,00000002
    long long f = (long long)al * (long long)bl; // f = 0x00060050,01000000

    return (c+d+e+f); // (0x0006005b,01000006) = (393307,16777222)
}
```

```
1-160-134-62:input Jonathan$ clang -target mips-unknown-linux-gnu -c
ch7_1_longlong.cpp -emit-llvm -o ch7_1_longlong.bc
1-160-134-62:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/
Debug/bin/llc -march=cpu0 -mcpu=cpu032I -relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm
ch7_1_longlong.bc -o -
...
# BB#0:
    addiu $sp, $sp, -72
    st    $8, 68($fp)          # 4-byte Folded Spill
    addiu $2, $zero, 2
    st    $2, 60($fp)
    addiu $2, $zero, 3
    st    $2, 56($fp)
    addiu $2, $zero, 1
    st    $2, 52($fp)
```

```

st    $2, 48($fp)
lui   $2, 768
ori   $2, $2, 4096
st    $2, 44($fp)
lui   $2, 512
ori   $2, $2, 4096
st    $2, 40($fp)
ld    $2, 52($fp)
ld    $3, 60($fp)
addu $3, $3, $2
ld    $4, 56($fp)
ld    $5, 48($fp)
st    $3, 36($fp)
cmp   $sw, $3, $2
andi $2, $sw, 1
addu $2, $2, $5
addu $2, $4, $2
st    $2, 32($fp)
ld    $2, 52($fp)
ld    $3, 60($fp)
subu $4, $3, $2
ld    $5, 56($fp)
ld    $t9, 48($fp)
st    $4, 28($fp)
cmp   $sw, $3, $2
andi $2, $sw, 1
addu $2, $2, $t9
subu $2, $5, $2
st    $2, 24($fp)
ld    $2, 52($fp)
ld    $3, 60($fp)
multu $3, $2
mflo $4
mfhi $5
ld    $t9, 56($fp)
ld    $7, 48($fp)
st    $4, 20($fp)
mul   $3, $3, $7
addu $3, $5, $3
mul   $2, $t9, $2
addu $2, $3, $2
st    $2, 16($fp)
ld    $2, 40($fp)
ld    $3, 44($fp)
mult  $3, $2
mflo $2
mfhi $4
st    $2, 12($fp)
st    $4, 8($fp)
ld    $5, 28($fp)
ld    $3, 36($fp)
addu $t9, $3, $5
ld    $7, 20($fp)
addu $8, $t9, $7
addu $3, $8, $2
cmp   $sw, $3, $2
andi $2, $sw, 1
addu $2, $2, $4

```

```

    cmp    $sw, $t9, $5
    st     $sw, 4($fp)          # 4-byte Folded Spill
    cmp    $sw, $8, $7
    andi   $4, $sw, 1
    ld     $5, 16($fp)
    addu   $4, $4, $5
    ld     $sw, 4($fp)          # 4-byte Folded Reload
    andi   $5, $sw, 1
    ld     $t9, 24($fp)
    addu   $5, $5, $t9
    ld     $t9, 32($fp)
    addu   $5, $t9, $5
    addu   $4, $5, $4
    addu   $2, $4, $2
    ld     $8, 68($fp)          # 4-byte Folded Reload
    addiu  $sp, $sp, 72
    ret    $lr
...

```

## 7.4 float and double

Cpu0 only has integer instructions at this point. For float operations, Cpu0 backend will call the library function to translate integer to float. This float (or double) function call for Cpu0 will be supported after the chapter of function call. For hardware cost reason, many CPU have no hardware float instructions. They call library function to finish float operations. Mips sperarate float operations with a sperarate co-processor for those needing “float intended” application.

In order to support float point library (part of compiler-rt)<sup>2</sup>, the following code are added to support instructions clz and clo.

### [Index/chapters/Chapter7\\_1/Cpu0InstrInfo.td](#)

```

let Predicates = [Ch7_1] in {
// Count Leading Ones/Zeros in Word
class CountLeading0<bits<8> op, string instr_asm, RegisterClass RC>:
    FA<op, (outs GPROut:$ra), (ins RC:$rb),
    !strconcat(instr_asm, "\t$ra, $rb"),
    [(set GPROut:$ra, (ctlz RC:$rb))], II_CLZ> {
    let rc = 0;
    let shamt = 0;
}

class CountLeading1<bits<8> op, string instr_asm, RegisterClass RC>:
    FA<op, (outs GPROut:$ra), (ins RC:$rb),
    !strconcat(instr_asm, "\t$ra, $rb"),
    [(set GPROut:$ra, (ctlz (not RC:$rb)))], II_CLO> {
    let rc = 0;
    let shamt = 0;
}
}

```

<sup>2</sup> <http://jonathan2251.github.io/lbt/lib.html#compiler-rt>

```
let Predicates = [Ch7_1] in {
/// Count Leading
def CLZ : CountLeading0<0x15, "clz", CPURegs>;
def CLO : CountLeading1<0x16, "clo", CPURegs>;
```

## 7.5 Array and struct support

LLVM uses `getelementptr` to represent the array and struct type in C. Please reference here <sup>1</sup>. For `ch7_1_globalstructoffset.cpp`, the llvm IR as follows,

### Ibdex/input/ch7\_1\_globalstructoffset.cpp

```
struct Date
{
    int year;
    int month;
    int day;
};

Date date = {2012, 10, 12};
int a[3] = {2012, 10, 12};

int test_struct()
{
    int day = date.day;
    int i = a[1];

    return (i+day); // 10+12=22
}
```

```
// ch7_1_globalstructoffset.ll
; ModuleID = 'ch7_1_globalstructoffset.bc'
...
%struct.Date = type { i32, i32, i32 }

@date = global %struct.Date { i32 2012, i32 10, i32 12 }, align 4
@a = global [3 x i32] [i32 2012, i32 10, i32 12], align 4

; Function Attrs: nounwind
define i32 @_Z11test_structv() #0 {
    %day = alloca i32, align 4
    %i = alloca i32, align 4
    %1 = load i32* getelementptr inbounds (%struct.Date* @date, i32 0, i32 2), align 4
    store i32 %1, i32* %day, align 4
    %2 = load i32* getelementptr inbounds ([3 x i32]* @a, i32 0, i32 1), align 4
    store i32 %2, i32* %i, align 4
    %3 = load i32* %i, align 4
    %4 = load i32* %day, align 4
    %5 = add nsw i32 %3, %4
```

<sup>1</sup> <http://llvm.org/docs/LangRef.html#getelementptr-instruction>

```
    ret i32 %5
}
```

Run Chapter6\_1/ with ch7\_1\_globalstructoffset.bc on static mode will get the incorrect asm file as follows,

```
1-160-134-62:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/bin/
Debug/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=static -filetype=asm
ch7_1_globalstructoffset.bc -o -
...
lui $2, %hi(date)
ori $2, $2, %lo(date)
ld $2, 0($2) // the correct one is ld $2, 8($2)
...
```

For “**day = date.day**”, the correct one is “**ld \$2, 8(\$2)**”, not “**Id \$2, 0(\$2)**”, since date.day is offset 8(date) ( Type int is 4 bytes in Cpu0, and the date.day has fields year and month before it). Let’s use debug option in llc to see what’s wrong,

```
jonathantekiimac:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/
cmake_debug_build/Debug/bin/llc -march=cpu0 -debug -relocation-model=static
-filetype=asm ch6_2.bc -o ch6_2.cpu0.static.s
...
==== main
Initial selection DAG: BB#0 'main:entry'
SelectionDAG has 20 nodes:
0x7f7f5b02d210: i32 = undef [ORD=1]

    0x7f7f5ac10590: ch = EntryToken [ORD=1]

    0x7f7f5b02d010: i32 = Constant<0> [ORD=1]

    0x7f7f5b02d110: i32 = FrameIndex<0> [ORD=1]

    0x7f7f5b02d210: <multiple use>
0x7f7f5b02d310: ch = store 0x7f7f5ac10590, 0x7f7f5b02d010, 0x7f7f5b02d110,
0x7f7f5b02d210<ST4[%retval]> [ORD=1]

    0x7f7f5b02d410: i32 = GlobalAddress<%struct.Date* @date> 0 [ORD=2]

    0x7f7f5b02d510: i32 = Constant<8> [ORD=2]

    0x7f7f5b02d610: i32 = add 0x7f7f5b02d410, 0x7f7f5b02d510 [ORD=2]

    0x7f7f5b02d210: <multiple use>
0x7f7f5b02d710: i32, ch = load 0x7f7f5b02d310, 0x7f7f5b02d610, 0x7f7f5b02d210
<LD4[getelementptr inbounds (%struct.Date* @date, i32 0, i32 2)]> [ORD=3]

    0x7f7f5b02db10: i64 = Constant<4>

    0x7f7f5b02d710: <multiple use>
    0x7f7f5b02d710: <multiple use>
    0x7f7f5b02d810: i32 = FrameIndex<1> [ORD=4]

    0x7f7f5b02d210: <multiple use>
0x7f7f5b02d910: ch = store 0x7f7f5b02d710:1, 0x7f7f5b02d710, 0x7f7f5b02d810,
0x7f7f5b02d210<ST4[%day]> [ORD=4]

    0x7f7f5b02da10: i32 = GlobalAddress<[3 x i32]* @a> 0 [ORD=5]
```

```

0x7f7f5b02dc10: i32 = Constant<4> [ORD=5]

0x7f7f5b02dd10: i32 = add 0x7f7f5b02da10, 0x7f7f5b02dc10 [ORD=5]

0x7f7f5b02d210: <multiple use>
0x7f7f5b02de10: i32, ch = load 0x7f7f5b02d910, 0x7f7f5b02dd10, 0x7f7f5b02d210
<LD4[getelementptr inbounds ([3 x i32]* @a, i32 0, i32 1)]> [ORD=6]

...

Replacing.3 0x7f7f5b02dd10: i32 = add 0x7f7f5b02da10, 0x7f7f5b02dc10 [ORD=5]
With: 0x7f7f5b030010: i32 = GlobalAddress<[3 x i32]* @a> + 4

Replacing.3 0x7f7f5b02d610: i32 = add 0x7f7f5b02d410, 0x7f7f5b02d510 [ORD=2]
With: 0x7f7f5b02db10: i32 = GlobalAddress<%struct.Date* @date> + 8

Optimized lowered selection DAG: BB#0 'main:entry'
SelectionDAG has 15 nodes:
0x7f7f5b02d210: i32 = undef [ORD=1]

0x7f7f5ac10590: ch = EntryToken [ORD=1]

0x7f7f5b02d010: i32 = Constant<0> [ORD=1]

0x7f7f5b02d110: i32 = FrameIndex<0> [ORD=1]

0x7f7f5b02d210: <multiple use>
0x7f7f5b02d310: ch = store 0x7f7f5ac10590, 0x7f7f5b02d010, 0x7f7f5b02d110,
0x7f7f5b02d210<ST4[%retval]> [ORD=1]

0x7f7f5b02db10: i32 = GlobalAddress<%struct.Date* @date> + 8

0x7f7f5b02d210: <multiple use>
0x7f7f5b02d710: i32, ch = load 0x7f7f5b02d310, 0x7f7f5b02db10, 0x7f7f5b02d210
<LD4[getelementptr inbounds (%struct.Date* @date, i32 0, i32 2)]> [ORD=3]

0x7f7f5b02d710: <multiple use>
0x7f7f5b02d710: <multiple use>
0x7f7f5b02d810: i32 = FrameIndex<1> [ORD=4]

0x7f7f5b02d210: <multiple use>
0x7f7f5b02d910: ch = store 0x7f7f5b02d710:1, 0x7f7f5b02d710, 0x7f7f5b02d810,
0x7f7f5b02d210<ST4[%day]> [ORD=4]

0x7f7f5b030010: i32 = GlobalAddress<[3 x i32]* @a> + 4

0x7f7f5b02d210: <multiple use>
0x7f7f5b02de10: i32, ch = load 0x7f7f5b02d910, 0x7f7f5b030010, 0x7f7f5b02d210
<LD4[getelementptr inbounds ([3 x i32]* @a, i32 0, i32 1)]> [ORD=6]

...

```

Through `llc -debug`, you can see the DAG translation process. As above, the DAG list for `date.day` (`add GlobalAddress<[3 x i32]* @a> 0, Constant<8>`) with 3 nodes is replaced by 1 node `GlobalAddress<%struct.Date* @date> + 8`. The DAG list for `a[1]` is same. The replacement occurs since `TargetLowering.cpp::isOffsetFoldingLegal(...)` return true in `llc -static` static addressing mode as below. In Cpu0 the `ld` instruction format is “`ld $r1, offset($r2)`” which meaning load `$r2` address+offset to `$r1`. So, we just replace the `isOffsetFoldingLegal(...)` function by override mechanism as below.

### lib/CodeGen/SelectionDAG/TargetLowering.cpp

```
bool
TargetLowering::isOffsetFoldingLegal(const GlobalAddressSDNode *GA) const {
    // Assume that everything is safe in static mode.
    if (getTargetMachine().getRelocationModel() == Reloc::Static)
        return true;

    // In dynamic-no-pic mode, assume that known defined values are safe.
    if (getTargetMachine().getRelocationModel() == Reloc::DynamicNoPIC &&
        GA &&
        !GA->getGlobal()->isDeclaration() &&
        !GA->getGlobal()->isWeakForLinker())
        return true;

    // Otherwise assume nothing is safe.
    return false;
}
```

### lbdex/chapters/Chapter7\_1/Cpu0ISelLowering.cpp

```
bool
Cpu0TargetLowering::isOffsetFoldingLegal(const GlobalAddressSDNode *GA) const {
    // The Cpu0 target isn't yet aware of offsets.
    return false;
}
```

Beyond that, we need to add the following code fragment to `Cpu0ISelDAGToDAG.cpp`,

### lbdex/chapters/Chapter7\_1/Cpu0ISelDAGToDAG.cpp

```
/// ComplexPattern used on Cpu0InstrInfo
/// Used on Cpu0 Load/Store instructions
bool Cpu0DAGToDAGISel::
SelectAddr(SDNode *Parent, SDValue Addr, SDValue &Base, SDValue &Offset) {

    // Addresses of the form FI+const or FI|const
    if (CurDAG->isBaseWithConstantOffset(Addr)) {
        ConstantSDNode *CN = dyn_cast<ConstantSDNode>(Addr.getOperand(1));
        if (isInt<16>(CN->getSExtValue())) {

            // If the first operand is a FI, get the TargetFI Node
            if (FrameIndexSDNode *FIN = dyn_cast<FrameIndexSDNode>
                (Addr.getOperand(0)))
                Base = CurDAG->getTargetFrameIndex(FIN->getIndex(), ValTy);
        }
    }
}
```

```

    else
        Base = Addr.getOperand(0);

        Offset = CurDAG->getTargetConstant(CN->getZExtValue(), DL, ValTy);
        return true;
    }
}

...
}

```

Recall we have translated DAG list for date.day (add GlobalAddress<[3 x i32]\* @a> 0, Constant<8>) into (add (add (add Cpu0ISD::Hi (Cpu0II::MO\_ABS\_HI), Cpu0ISD::Lo(Cpu0II::MO\_ABS\_LO)), Constant<8>) by the following code in Cpu0ISelLowering.cpp.

### [Index/chapters/Chapter6\\_1/Cpu0ISelLowering.h](#)

```

// This method creates the following nodes, which are necessary for
// computing a symbol's address in non-PIC mode:
//
// (add %hi(sym), %lo(sym))
template<class NodeTy>
SDValue getAddrNonPIC(NodeTy *N, EVT Ty, SelectionDAG &DAG) const {
    SDLoc DL(N);
    SDValue Hi = getTargetNode(N, Ty, DAG, Cpu0II::MO_ABS_HI);
    SDValue Lo = getTargetNode(N, Ty, DAG, Cpu0II::MO_ABS_LO);
    return DAG.getNode(ISD::ADD, DL, Ty,
                        DAG.getNode(Cpu0ISD::Hi, DL, Ty, Hi),
                        DAG.getNode(Cpu0ISD::Lo, DL, Ty, Lo));
}

```

So, when the SelectAddr(...) of Cpu0ISelDAGToDAG.cpp is called. The Addr SDValue in SelectAddr(..., Addr, ...) is DAG list for date.day (add (add Cpu0ISD::Hi (Cpu0II::MO\_ABS\_HI), Cpu0ISD::Lo(Cpu0II::MO\_ABS\_LO)), Constant<8>). Since Addr.getOpcode() = ISD::ADD, Addr.getOperand(0) = (add Cpu0ISD::Hi (Cpu0II::MO\_ABS\_HI), Cpu0ISD::Lo(Cpu0II::MO\_ABS\_LO)) and Addr.getOperand(1).getOpcode() = ISD::Constant, the Base = SDValue (add Cpu0ISD::Hi (Cpu0II::MO\_ABS\_HI), Cpu0ISD::Lo(Cpu0II::MO\_ABS\_LO)) and Offset = Constant<8>. After set Base and Offset, the load DAG will translate the global address date.day into machine instruction “**ld \$r1, 8(\$r2)**” in Instruction Selection stage.

Chapter7\_1/include these changes as above, you can run it with ch7\_1\_globalstructoffset.cpp to get the correct generated instruction “**ld \$r1, 8(\$r2)**” for date.day access, as follows.

```

...
    lui    $2, %hi(date)
    ori    $2, $2, %lo(date)
    ld     $2, 8($2) // correct
...

```

The ch7\_1\_localarrayinit.cpp is for local variable initialization test. The result as follows,

### Ibdex/input/ch7\_1\_localarrayinit.cpp

```
int main()
{
    int a[3]={0, 1, 2};

    return 0;
}
```

```
118-165-79-206:input Jonathan$ clang -target mips-unknown-linux-gnu -c
ch7_1_localarrayinit.cpp -emit-llvm -o ch7_1_localarrayinit.bc
118-165-79-206:input Jonathan$ llvm-dis ch7_1_localarrayinit.bc -o -
...
```

```
define i32 @main() nounwind ssp {
entry:
%retval = alloca i32, align 4
%a = alloca [3 x i32], align 4
store i32 0, i32* %retval
%0 = bitcast [3 x i32]* %a to i8*
call void @_llvm.memcpy.p0i8.p0i8.i32(i8* %0, i8* bitcast ([3 x i32]*
 @_ZZ4mainE1a to i8*), i32 12, i32 4, i1 false)
ret i32 0
}
; Function Attrs: nounwind
declare void @_llvm.memcpy.p0i8.p0i8.i32(i8* nocapture, i8* nocapture, i32, i32, i1) #1
```

```
118-165-79-206:input Jonathan$ ~/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/
bin/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm ch7_1_localarrayinit.bc -o -
...
# BB#0:                                # %entry
    addiu $sp, $sp, -16
    addiu $2, $zero, 0
    st    $2, 12($fp)
    ld    $2, %got($_ZZ4mainE1a)($gp)
    ori   $2, $2, %lo($_ZZ4mainE1a)
    ld    $3, 8($2)
    st    $3, 8($fp)
    ld    $3, 4($2)
    st    $3, 4($fp)
    ld    $2, 0($2)
    st    $2, 0($fp)
    addiu $sp, $sp, 16
    ret   $lr
    ...
.type $_ZZ4mainE1a,@object      # @_ZZ4mainE1a
.section     .rodata,"a",@progbits
.align       2
$_ZZ4mainE1a:
    .4byte    0                      # 0x0
    .4byte    1                      # 0x1
    .4byte    2                      # 0x2
    .size $_ZZ4mainE1a, 12
```

## 7.6 Vector type (SIMD) support

Vector types are used when multiple primitive data are operated in parallel using a single instruction (SIMD)<sup>3</sup>. Mips supports the following llvm IRs “icmp slt” and “sext” for vector type, Cpu0 supports them either.

`lbdex/input/ch7_1_vector.cpp`

```
typedef long    vector8long   __attribute__((__vector_size__(32)));
typedef long    vector8short  __attribute__((__vector_size__(16)));


int test_cmplt_short() {
    volatile vector8short a0 = {0, 1, 2, 3};
    volatile vector8short b0 = {2, 2, 2, 2};
    volatile vector8short c0;
    c0 = a0 < b0; // c0[0] = 1 (since 0 < 2 is true), c0[1] = 1, c0[2] = 0 (since 2 < 2 is false), c0[3] = 0

    return (int)(c0[0]+c0[1]+c0[2]+c0[3]); // 2
}

int test_cmplt_long() {
    volatile vector8long a0 = {2, 2, 2, 2, 1, 1, 1, 1};
    volatile vector8long b0 = {1, 1, 1, 1, 2, 2, 2, 2};
    volatile vector8long c0;
    c0 = a0 < b0; // c0[0..3] = {0, 0, ...}, c0[4..7] = {1, ...}

    return (c0[0]+c0[1]+c0[2]+c0[3]+c0[4]+c0[5]+c0[6]+c0[7]); //4
}
```

```
118-165-79-206:input Jonathan$ clang -target mips-unknown-linux-gnu -c
ch7_1_vector.cpp -emit-llvm -o ch7_1_vector.bc
118-165-79-206:input Jonathan$ ~/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/Debug/bin/
llvm-dis ch7_1_vector.bc -o -
...
```

```
; Function Attrs: nounwind
define i32 @_Z16test_cmplt_shortv() #0 {
    %a0 = alloca <4 x i32>, align 16
    %b0 = alloca <4 x i32>, align 16
    %c0 = alloca <4 x i32>, align 16
    store volatile <4 x i32> <i32 0, i32 1, i32 2, i32 3>, <4 x i32>* %a0, align 16
    store volatile <4 x i32> <i32 2, i32 2, i32 2, i32 2>, <4 x i32>* %b0, align 16
    %1 = load volatile <4 x i32>, <4 x i32>* %a0, align 16
    %2 = load volatile <4 x i32>, <4 x i32>* %b0, align 16
    %3 = icmp slt <4 x i32> %1, %2
    %4 = sext <4 x i1> %3 to <4 x i32>
    store volatile <4 x i32> %4, <4 x i32>* %c0, align 16
    %5 = load volatile <4 x i32>, <4 x i32>* %c0, align 16
    %6 = extractelement <4 x i32> %5, i32 0
```

<sup>3</sup> <http://llvm.org/docs/LangRef.html#vector-type>

```
%7 = load volatile <4 x i32>, <4 x i32>* %c0, align 16
%8 = extractelement <4 x i32> %7, i32 1
%9 = add nsw i32 %6, %8
%10 = load volatile <4 x i32>, <4 x i32>* %c0, align 16
%11 = extractelement <4 x i32> %10, i32 2
%12 = add nsw i32 %9, %11
%13 = load volatile <4 x i32>, <4 x i32>* %c0, align 16
%14 = extractelement <4 x i32> %13, i32 3
%15 = add nsw i32 %12, %14
ret i32 %15
}
```

```
118-165-79-206:input Jonathan$ ~/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/Debug/bin/llc
-march=cpu0 -mcpu=cpu032II -relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm ch7_1_vector.bc
-o -
.text
.section .mdebug.abi032
.previous
.file "ch7_1_vector.bc"
.globl _Z16test_cmplt_shortv
.p2align 2
.type _Z16test_cmplt_shortv,@function
.ent _Z16test_cmplt_shortv # @_Z16test_cmplt_shortv
_Z16test_cmplt_shortv:
.frame $fp,48,$lr
.mask 0x00000000,0
.set noreorder
.set nomacro
# BB#0:
addiu $sp, $sp, -48
addiu $2, $zero, 3
st $2, 44($sp)
addiu $2, $zero, 1
st $2, 36($sp)
addiu $2, $zero, 0
st $2, 32($sp)
addiu $2, $zero, 2
st $2, 40($sp)
st $2, 28($sp)
st $2, 24($sp)
st $2, 20($sp)
st $2, 16($sp)
ld $2, 32($sp)
ld $3, 44($sp)
ld $4, 40($sp)
ld $5, 36($sp)
ld $t9, 20($sp)
slt $5, $5, $t9
ld $t9, 24($sp)
slt $4, $4, $t9
ld $t9, 28($sp)
slt $3, $3, $t9
shl $3, $3, 31
sra $3, $3, 31
ld $t9, 16($sp)
st $3, 12($sp)
shl $3, $4, 31
sra $3, $3, 31
```

```

st $3, 8($sp)
shl $3, $5, 31
sra $3, $3, 31
st $3, 4($sp)
slt $2, $2, $t9
shl $2, $2, 31
sra $2, $2, 31
st $2, 0($sp)
ld $2, 12($sp)
ld $2, 8($sp)
ld $2, 4($sp)
ld $2, 0($sp)
ld $3, 4($sp)
addu $2, $2, $3
ld $3, 12($sp)
ld $3, 8($sp)
ld $3, 0($sp)
ld $3, 8($sp)
addu $2, $2, $3
ld $3, 12($sp)
ld $3, 4($sp)
ld $3, 0($sp)
ld $3, 12($sp)
addu $2, $2, $3
ld $3, 12($sp)
ld $3, 4($sp)
ld $3, 0($sp)
addiu $sp, $sp, 48
ret $lr
.set macro
.set reorder
.end _Z16test_cmplt_shortv
$func_end0:
.size _Z16test_cmplt_shortv, ($func_end0)-_Z16test_cmplt_shortv

.ident "Apple LLVM version 7.0.0 (clang-700.1.76)"
.section ".note.GNU-stack","",@progbits

```

Since test\_longlong\_shift2() of ch7\_1\_vector.cpp needs implementation storeRegToStack() of Cpu0SEInstInfo.cpp, at this point it cannot be verified.

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter7\_1/Cpu0ISelLowering.h

```

/// getSetCCResultType - get the ISD::SETCC result ValueType
EVT getSetCCResultType(const DataLayout &DL, LLVMContext &Context,
                      EVT VT) const override;

```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter7\_1/Cpu0ISelLowering.cpp

```

EVT Cpu0TargetLowering::getSetCCResultType(const DataLayout &, LLVMContext &,
                                            EVT VT) const {
    if (!VT.isVector())
        return MVT::i32;
}

```

```
    return VT.changeVectorElementTypeToInteger();  
}
```

## CONTROL FLOW STATEMENTS

- *Control flow statement*
- *Long branch support*
- *Cpu0 backend Optimization: Remove useless JMP*
- *Fill Branch Delay Slot*
- *Conditional instruction*
- *Phi node*
- *RISC CPU knowledge*

This chapter illustrates the corresponding IR for control flow statements, such as “**if else**”, “**while**” and “**for**” loop statements in C, and how to translate these control flow statements of llvm IR into Cpu0 instructions in section I. In section “Cpu0 backend Optimization: Remove useless JMP”, an optimization pass of control flow for backend is introduced. It’s a simple tutorial program to let readers know how to add a backend optimization pass and program it. Section “Conditional instruction”, include the conditional instructions handling since clang will generate specific IRS, select and select\_cc, to support the backend optimiation in control flow statement.

### 8.1 Control flow statement

Run ch8\_1\_1.cpp with clang will get result as follows,

#### Ibdex/input/ch8\_1\_1.cpp

```
int test_ifctrl()
{
    unsigned int a = 0;

    if (a == 0) {
        a++; // a = 1
    }

    return a;
}
```

```

...
%0 = load i32* %a, align 4
%cmp = icmp eq i32 %0, 0
br i1 %cmp, label %if.then, label %if.end

; <label>:3:                                     ; preds = %0
%1 = load i32* %a, align 4
%inc = add i32 %1, 1
store i32 %inc, i32* %a, align 4
br label %if.end
...

```

The “**icmp ne**” stands for integer compare NotEqual, “**slt**” stands for Set Less Than, “**sle**” stands for Set Less or Equal. Run version Chapter8\_1/ with llc -view-isel-dags or -debug option, you can see the **if** statement is translated into (br (brcond (%1, setcc(%2, Constant<c>, setne)), BasicBlock\_02), BasicBlock\_01). Ignore %1, then we will get the form (br (brcond (setcc(%2, Constant<c>, setne)), BasicBlock\_02), BasicBlock\_01). For explanation, listing the IR DAG as follows,

```

Optimized legalized selection DAG: BB#0 '_Z11test_ifctrlv:entry'
SelectionDAG has 12 nodes:
...
t5: i32,ch = load<Volatile LD4[%a]> t4, FrameIndex:i32<0>, undef:i32
    t16: i32 = setcc t5, Constant:i32<0>, setne:ch
    t11: ch = brcond t5:1, t16, BasicBlock:ch<if.end 0x10305a338>
    t13: ch = br t11, BasicBlock:ch<if.then 0x10305a288>

```

We want to translate them into Cpu0 instruction DAGs as follows,

```

addiu %3, ZERO, Constant<c>
cmp %2, %3
jne BasicBlock_02
jmp BasicBlock_01

```

For the last IR br, we translate unconditional branch (br BasicBlock\_01) into jmp BasicBlock\_01 by the following pattern definition,

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter8\_1/Cpu0InstrInfo.td

```

// Unconditional branch, such as JMP
let Predicates = [Ch8_1] in {
class UncondBranch<bits<8> op, string instr_asm>:
  FJ<op, (outs), (ins jmptarget:$addr),
    !strconcat(instr_asm, "\t$addr"), [(br bb:$addr)], IIBranch> {
    let isBranch = 1;
    let isTerminator = 1;
    let isBarrier = 1;
    let hasDelaySlot = 0;
  }
}

...
def JMP      : UncondBranch<0x26, "jmp">;

```

The pattern [(br bb:\$imm24)] in class UncondBranch is translated into jmp machine instruction. The translation for the pair Cpu0 instructions, **cmp** and **jne**, is not happened before this chapter. To solve this chained IR to machine

instructions translation, we define the following pattern,

#### **Ibdex/chapters/Chapter8\_1/Cpu0InstrInfo.td**

```
// brcond patterns
multiclass BrcondPatsCmp<RegisterClass RC, Instruction JEQOp, Instruction JNEOp,
    Instruction JLTOp, Instruction JGTOp, Instruction JLEOp, Instruction JGEOp,
    Instruction CMPOp> {
...
def : Pat<(brcond (i32 (setne RC:$lhs, RC:$rhs)), bb:$dst),
            (JNEOp (CMPOp RC:$lhs, RC:$rhs), bb:$dst)>;
...
def : Pat<(brcond RC:$cond, bb:$dst),
            (JNEOp (CMPOp RC:$cond, ZEROReg), bb:$dst)>;
...
}
```

Since the aboved BrcondPats pattern uses RC (Register Class) as operand, the following ADDiu pattern defined in Chapter2 will generate instruction **addiu** before the instruction **cmp** for the first IR, **setcc(%2, Constant<c>, setne)**, as above.

#### **Ibdex/chapters/Chapter2/Cpu0InstrInfo.td**

```
// Small immediates
def : Pat<(i32 immSExt16:$in),
            (ADDiu ZERO, imm:$in)>;
```

The definition of BrcondPats supports setne, seteq, setlt, ..., register operand compare and setult, setugt, ..., for unsigned int type. In addition to seteq and setne, we define setueq and setune by refering Mips code, even though we don't find how to generate setune IR from C language. We have tried to define unsigned int type, but clang still generates setne instead of setune. The order of Pattern Search is from the order of their appearing in context. The last pattern (brcond RC:\$cond, bb:\$dst) means branch to \$dst if \$cond != 0. So we set the corresponding translation to (JNEOp (CMPOp RC:\$cond, ZEROReg), bb:\$dst).

The CMP instruction will set the result to register SW, and then JNE check the condition based on SW status as Fig. 8.1. Since SW belongs to a different register class, it will be correct even an instruction is inserted between CMP and JNE as follows,

```
cmp %2, %3
addiu $r1, $r2, 3 // $r1 register never be allocated to $SW because in
                    // class ArithLogicI, GPROut is the output register
                    // class and the GPROut is defined without $SW in
                    // Cpu0RegisterInfoForGPROutForOther.td
jne BasicBlock_02
```

The reserved registers setting by the following function code we defined before,

#### **Ibdex/chapters/Chapter3\_1/Cpu0RegisterInfo.cpp**

```
BitVector Cpu0RegisterInfo::getReservedRegs(const MachineFunction &MF) const {
//@getReservedRegs body {
    static const uint16_t ReservedCPURegs[] = {
```

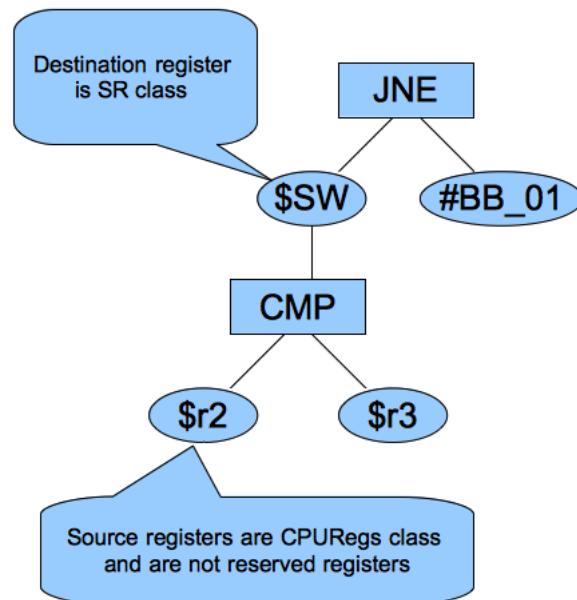


Fig. 8.1: JNE (CMP \$r2, \$r3),

```

        Cpu0::ZERO, Cpu0::AT, Cpu0::SP, Cpu0::LR, Cpu0::PC
    };
    BitVector Reserved(getNumRegs ());

    for (unsigned I = 0; I < array_lengthof(ReservedCPUREgs); ++I)
        Reserved.set(ReservedCPUREgs[I]);

    return Reserved;
}
  
```

Although the following definition in `Cpu0RegisterInfo.td` has no real effect in Reserved Registers, it's better to comment the Reserved Registers in it for readability. Setting SW in both register classes CPUREgs and SR to allow access SW by RISC instructions like `andi`, and allow programmers use traditional assembly instruction `cmp`. The `copyPhysReg()` is called when both DestReg and SrcReg are belonging to different Register Classes.

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter2/Cpu0RegisterInfo.td

```

//=====

def CPUREgs : RegisterClass<"Cpu0", [i32], 32, (add
    // Reserved
    ZERO, AT,
    // Return Values and Arguments
    V0, V1, A0, A1,
    // Not preserved across procedure calls
    T9, T0, T1,
    // Callee save
    S0, S1,
    // Reserved
    GP, FP,
  
```

```
SP, LR, SW)>;
```

```
def SR      : RegisterClass<"Cpu0", [i32], 32, (add SW)>;
```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter2/Cpu0RegisterInfoGPROutForOther.id

```
//=====
// Register Classes
//=====

def GPROut : RegisterClass<"Cpu0", [i32], 32, (add (sub CPUREgs, SW))>;
```

Chapter8\_1/ include support for control flow statement. Run with it as well as the following llc option, you will get the obj file. Dump it's content by gobdump or hexdump after as follows,

```
118-165-79-206:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/
cmake_debug_build/Debug/bin/llc -march=cpu0 -mcpu=cpu032I -relocation-model=pic
-filetype=asm ch8_1_1.bc -o -
...
ld $4, 36($fp)
cmp $sw, $4, $3
jne $BB0_2
jmp $BB0_1
$BB0_1:          # %if.then
    ld $4, 36($fp)
    addiu $4, $4, 1
    st $4, 36($fp)
$BB0_2:          # %if.end
    ld $4, 32($fp)
...
```

```
118-165-79-206:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/
cmake_debug_build/Debug/bin/llc -march=cpu0 -mcpu=cpu032I -relocation-model=pic
-filetype=obj ch8_1_1.bc -o ch8_1_1.cpu0.o

118-165-79-206:input Jonathan$ hexdump ch8_1_1.cpu0.o
// jmp offset is 0x10=16 bytes which is correct
0000080 ..... 10 43 00 00
0000090 31 00 00 10 36 00 00 00 .....
```

The immediate value of jne (op 0x31) is 16; The offset between jne and \$BB0\_2 is 20 (5 words = 5\*4 bytes). Suppose the jne address is X, then the label \$BB0\_2 is X+20. Cpu0's instruction set is designed as a RISC CPU with 5 stages of pipeline just like 5 stages of Mips. Cpu0 do branch instruction execution at decode stage which like mips too. After the jne instruction fetched, the PC (Program Counter) is X+4 since cpu0 update PC at fetch stage. The \$BB0\_2 address is equal to PC+16 for the jne branch instruction execute at decode stage. List and explain this again as follows,

```
// Fetch instruction stage for jne instruction. The fetch stage
// can be divided into 2 cycles. First cycle fetch the
// instruction. Second cycle adjust PC = PC+4.
jne $BB0_2 // Do jne compare in decode stage. PC = X+4 at this stage.
```

```

        // When jne immediate value is 16, PC = PC+16. It will fetch
        // X+20 which equal to label $BB0_2 instruction, ld $4, 32($sp) .
nop
$BB0_1:                                # %if.then
    ld $4, 36($fp)
    addiu $4, $4, 1
    st $4, 36($fp)
$BB0_2:                                # %if.end
    ld $4, 32($fp)

```

If Cpu0 do “**jne**” in execution stage, then we should set PC=PC+12, offset of (\$BB0\_2, jne \$BB02) – 8, in this example.

In reality, the conditional branch is important in performance of CPU design. According bench mark information, every 7 instructions will meet 1 branch instruction in average. The cpu032I spends 2 instructions in conditional branch, (jne(cmp...)), while cpu032II use one instruction (bne) as follows,

```

JonathantekiiMac:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/
cmake_debug_build/Debug/bin/llc -march=cpu0 -mcpu=cpu032I -relocation-model=pic
-filetype=asm ch8_1_1.bc -o -
...
    cmp      $sw, $4, $3
    jne      $sw, $BB0_2
    jmp      $BB0_1
$BB0_1:

JonathantekiiMac:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/
cmake_debug_build/Debug/bin/llc -march=cpu0 -mcpu=cpu032II -relocation-model=pic
-filetype=asm ch8_1_1.bc -o -
...
    bne      $4, $zero, $BB0_2
    jmp      $BB0_1
$BB0_1:

```

Beside brcond explained in this section, above code also include DAG opcode **br\_jt** and label **JumpTable** which occurs during DAG translation for some kind of program.

The ch8\_1\_ctrl.cpp include “**nest if**”, “**for loop**”, “**while loop**”, “**continue**”, “**break**” and “**goto**”. The ch8\_1\_br\_jt.cpp is for **br\_jt** and **JumpTable** test. The ch8\_1\_blockaddr.cpp is for **blockaddress** and **indirectbr** test. You can run with them if you like to test more.

List the control flow statements of C, IR, DAG and Cpu0 instructions as the following table.

Table 8.1: Control flow statements of C, IR, DAG and Cpu0 instructions

C	if, else, for, while, goto, switch, break
IR	(icmp + (eq, ne, sgt, sge, slt, sle)0 + br
DAG	(seteq, setne, setgt, setge, setlt, setle) + brcond,
•	(setueq, setune, setugt, setuge, setult, setule) + brcond
cpu032I	CMP + (JEQ, JNE, JGT, JGE, JLT, JLE)
cpu032II	(SLT, SLTu, SLTi, SLTiu) + (BEG, BNE)

## 8.2 Long branch support

As last section, cpu032II uses beq and bne to improve performance but the jump offset reduces from 24 bits to 16 bits. If program exists more than 16 bits, cpu032II will fail to generate code. Mips backend has solution and Cpu0 hire the solution from it.

To support long branch the following code added in Chapter8\_1.

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter8\_2/CMakeLists.txt

```
Cpu0LongBranch.cpp
```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter8\_2/Cpu0.h

```
FunctionPass *createCpu0LongBranchPass(Cpu0TargetMachine &TM);
```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter8\_2/MCTargetDesc/Cpu0MCCodeEmitter.cpp

```
unsigned Cpu0MCCodeEmitter::  
getJumpTargetOpValue(const MCInst &MI, unsigned OpNo,  
                     SmallVectorImpl<MCFixup> &Fixups,  
                     const MCSubtargetInfo &STI) const {  
  
    if (Opcode == Cpu0::JMP || Opcode == Cpu0::BAL)  
  
    ...  
}
```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter8\_2/Cpu0AsmPrinter.h

```
bool isLongBranchPseudo(int Opcode) const;
```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter8\_2/Cpu0AsmPrinter.cpp

```
//- EmitInstruction() must exists or will have run time error.  
void Cpu0AsmPrinter::EmitInstruction(const MachineInstr *MI) {  
  
    if (I->isPseudo() && !isLongBranchPseudo(I->getOpcode()))  
  
    ...  
}  
  
bool Cpu0AsmPrinter::isLongBranchPseudo(int Opcode) const {  
    return (Opcode == Cpu0::LONG_BRANCH_LUI  
           || Opcode == Cpu0::LONG_BRANCH_ADDiu);  
}
```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter8\_2/Cpu0InstrInfo.h

```
virtual unsigned getOppositeBranchOpc(unsigned Opc) const = 0;
```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter8\_2/Cpu0InstrInfo.td

```
let Predicates = [Ch8_2] in {
// We need these two pseudo instructions to avoid offset calculation for long
// branches. See the comment in file Cpu0LongBranch.cpp for detailed
// explanation.

// Expands to: lui $dst, %hi($tgt - $baltgt)
def LONG_BRANCH_LUI : Cpu0Pseudo<(outs GPROut:$dst),
  (ins jmptarget:$tgt, jmptarget:$baltgt), "", []>;

// Expands to: addiu $dst, $src, %lo($tgt - $baltgt)
def LONG_BRANCH_ADDIU : Cpu0Pseudo<(outs GPROut:$dst),
  (ins GPROut:$src, jmptarget:$tgt, jmptarget:$baltgt), "", []>;
}

let isBranch = 1, isTerminator = 1, isBarrier = 1,
    hasDelaySlot = 0, Defs = [LR] in
def BAL: FJ<0x3A, (outs), (ins jmptarget:$addr), "bal\t$addr", [], IIBranch>,
    Requires<[HasSlt]>;
```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter8\_2/Cpu0LongBranch.cpp

```
===== Cpu0LongBranch.cpp - Emit long branches =====/
//
// The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure
//
// This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source
// License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.
//
//=====
// This pass expands a branch or jump instruction into a long branch if its
// offset is too large to fit into its immediate field.
//
// FIXME: Fix pc-region jump instructions which cross 256MB segment boundaries.
//=====

#include "Cpu0.h"

#if CH >= CH8_2

#include "MCTargetDesc/Cpu0BaseInfo.h"
#include "Cpu0MachineFunction.h"
#include "Cpu0TargetMachine.h"
#include "llvm/ADT/Statistic.h"
#include "llvm/CodeGen/MachineFunctionPass.h"
#include "llvm/CodeGen/MachineInstrBuilder.h"
#include "llvm/IR/Function.h"
```

```

#include "llvm/Support/CommandLine.h"
#include "llvm/Support/MathExtras.h"
#include "llvm/Target/TargetInstrInfo.h"
#include "llvm/Target/TargetMachine.h"
#include "llvm/Target/TargetRegisterInfo.h"

using namespace llvm;

#define DEBUG_TYPE "cpu0-long-branch"

STATISTIC(LongBranches, "Number of long branches.");

static cl::opt<bool> ForceLongBranch(
    "force-cpu0-long-branch",
    cl::init(false),
    cl::desc("CPU0: Expand all branches to long format."),
    cl::Hidden);

namespace {
    typedef MachineBasicBlock::iterator Iter;
    typedef MachineBasicBlock::reverse_iterator ReverseIter;

    struct MBBInfo {
        uint64_t Size, Address;
        bool HasLongBranch;
        MachineInstr *Br;

        MBBInfo() : Size(0), HasLongBranch(false), Br(nullptr) {}
    };

    class Cpu0LongBranch : public MachineFunctionPass {

public:
    static char ID;
    Cpu0LongBranch(TargetMachine &tm)
        : MachineFunctionPass(ID), TM(tm), IsPIC(TM.isPositionIndependent()),
          ABI(static_cast<const Cpu0TargetMachine &>(TM).getABI()) {}

    const char *getPassName() const override {
        return "Cpu0 Long Branch";
    }

    bool runOnMachineFunction(MachineFunction &F) override;

private:
    void splitMBB(MachineBasicBlock *MBB);
    void initMBBInfo();
    int64_t computeOffset(const MachineInstr *Br);
    void replaceBranch(MachineBasicBlock &MBB, Iter Br, const DebugLoc &DL,
                      MachineBasicBlock *MBB0pnd);
    void expandToLongBranch(MBBInfo &Info);

    const TargetMachine &TM;
    MachineFunction *MF;
    SmallVector<MBBInfo, 16> MBBInfos;
    bool IsPIC;
    Cpu0ABIInfo ABI;
    unsigned LongBranchSeqSize;
};

```

```
};

char Cpu0LongBranch::ID = 0;
} // end of anonymous namespace

/// createCpu0LongBranchPass - Returns a pass that converts branches to long
/// branches.
FunctionPass *llvm::createCpu0LongBranchPass(Cpu0TargetMachine &tm) {
    return new Cpu0LongBranch(tm);
}

/// Iterate over list of Br's operands and search for a MachineBasicBlock
/// operand.
static MachineBasicBlock *getTargetMBB(const MachineInstr &Br) {
    for (unsigned I = 0, E = Br.getDesc().getNumOperands(); I < E; ++I) {
        const MachineOperand &MO = Br.getOperand(I);

        if (MO.isMBB())
            return MO.getMBB();
    }

    llvm_unreachable("This instruction does not have an MBB operand.");
}

// Traverse the list of instructions backwards until a non-debug instruction is
// found or it reaches E.
static ReverseIter getNonDebugInstr(ReverseIter B, const ReverseIter &E) {
    for (; B != E; ++B)
        if (!B->isDebugValue())
            return B;

    return E;
}

// Split MBB if it has two direct jumps/branches.
void Cpu0LongBranch::splitMBB(MachineBasicBlock *MBB) {
    ReverseIter End = MBB->rend();
    ReverseIter LastBr = getNonDebugInstr(MBB->rbegin(), End);

    // Return if MBB has no branch instructions.
    if ((LastBr == End) ||
        (!LastBr->isConditionalBranch() && !LastBr->isUnconditionalBranch()))
        return;

    ReverseIter FirstBr = getNonDebugInstr(std::next(LastBr), End);

    // MBB has only one branch instruction if FirstBr is not a branch
    // instruction.
    if ((FirstBr == End) ||
        (!FirstBr->isConditionalBranch() && !FirstBr->isUnconditionalBranch()))
        return;

    assert(!FirstBr->isIndirectBranch() && "Unexpected indirect branch found.");

    // Create a new MBB. Move instructions in MBB to the newly created MBB.
    MachineBasicBlock *NewMBB =
        MF->CreateMachineBasicBlock(MBB->getBasicBlock());
}
```

```

// Insert NewMBB and fix control flow.
MachineBasicBlock *Tgt = getTargetMBB(*FirstBr);
NewMBB->transferSuccessors(MBB);
NewMBB->removeSuccessor(Tgt, true);
MBB->addSuccessor(NewMBB);
MBB->addSuccessor(Tgt);
MF->insert(std::next(MachineFunction::iterator(MBB)), NewMBB);

NewMBB->splice(NewMBB->end(), MBB, (++LastBr).base(), MBB->end());
}

// Fill MBBInfos.
void Cpu0LongBranch::initMBBInfo() {
    // Split the MBBs if they have two branches. Each basic block should have at
    // most one branch after this loop is executed.
    for (auto &MBB : *MF)
        splitMBB(&MBB);

    MF->RenumberBlocks();
    MBBInfos.clear();
    MBBInfos.resize(MF->size());

    const Cpu0InstrInfo *TII =
        static_cast<const Cpu0InstrInfo *>(MF->getSubtarget().getInstrInfo());
    for (unsigned I = 0, E = MBBInfos.size(); I < E; ++I) {
        MachineBasicBlock *MBB = MF->getBlockNumbered(I);

        // Compute size of MBB.
        for (MachineBasicBlock::instr_iterator MI = MBB->instr_begin();
             MI != MBB->instr_end(); ++MI)
            MBBInfos[I].Size += TII->GetInstSizeInBytes(*MI);

        // Search for MBB's branch instruction.
        ReverseIter End = MBB->rend();
        ReverseIter Br = getNonDebugInstr(MBB->rbegin(), End);

        if ((Br != End) && !Br->isIndirectBranch() &&
            (Br->isConditionalBranch() || (Br->isUnconditionalBranch() && IsPIC)))
            MBBInfos[I].Br = &*(++Br).base();
    }
}

// Compute offset of branch in number of bytes.
int64_t Cpu0LongBranch::computeOffset(const MachineInstr *Br) {
    int64_t Offset = 0;
    int ThisMBB = Br->getParent()->getNumber();
    int TargetMBB = getTargetMBB(*Br)->getNumber();

    // Compute offset of a forward branch.
    if (ThisMBB < TargetMBB) {
        for (int N = ThisMBB + 1; N < TargetMBB; ++N)
            Offset += MBBInfos[N].Size;

        return Offset + 4;
    }

    // Compute offset of a backward branch.
    for (int N = ThisMBB; N >= TargetMBB; --N)

```

```
Offset += MBBInfos[N].Size;

return -Offset + 4;
}

// Replace Br with a branch which has the opposite condition code and a
// MachineBasicBlock operand MBBOpnd.
void Cpu0LongBranch::replaceBranch(MachineBasicBlock &MBB, Iter Br,
                                    const DebugLoc &DL,
                                    MachineBasicBlock *MBBOpnd) {
    const Cpu0InstrInfo *TII = static_cast<const Cpu0InstrInfo *>(
        MBB.getParent()->getSubtarget().getInstrInfo());
    unsigned NewOpc = TII->getOppositeBranchOpc(Br->getOpcode());
    const MCInstrDesc &NewDesc = TII->get(NewOpc);

    MachineInstrBuilder MIB = BuildMI(MBB, Br, DL, NewDesc);

    for (unsigned I = 0, E = Br->getDesc().getNumOperands(); I < E; ++I) {
        MachineOperand &MO = Br->getOperand(I);

        if (!MO.isReg()) {
            assert(MO.isMBB() && "MBB operand expected.");
            break;
        }

        MIB.addReg(MO.getReg());
    }

    MIB.addMBB(MBBOpnd);

    if (Br->hasDelaySlot()) {
        // Bundle the instruction in the delay slot to the newly created branch
        // and erase the original branch.
        assert(Br->isBundledWithSucc());
        MachineBasicBlock::instr_iterator II = Br.getInstrIterator();
        MIBundleBuilder(&*MIB).append((++II)->removeFromBundle());
    }
    Br->eraseFromParent();
}

// Expand branch instructions to long branches.
// TODO: This function has to be fixed for beqz16 and bnez16, because it
// currently assumes that all branches have 16-bit offsets, and will produce
// wrong code if branches whose allowed offsets are [-128, -126, ..., 126]
// are present.
void Cpu0LongBranch::expandToLongBranch(MBBInfo &I) {
    MachineBasicBlock::iterator Pos;
    MachineBasicBlock *MBB = I.Br->getParent(), *TgtMBB = getTargetMBB(*I.Br);
    DebugLoc DL = I.Br->getDebugLoc();
    const BasicBlock *BB = MBB->getBasicBlock();
    MachineFunction::iterator FallThroughMBB = ++MachineFunction::iterator(MBB);
    MachineBasicBlock *LongBrMBB = MF->CreateMachineBasicBlock(BB);
    const Cpu0Subtarget &Subtarget =
        static_cast<const Cpu0Subtarget &>(MF->getSubtarget());
    const Cpu0InstrInfo *TII =
        static_cast<const Cpu0InstrInfo *>(Subtarget.getInstrInfo());

    MF->insert(FallThroughMBB, LongBrMBB);
```

```

MBB->replaceSuccessor(TgtMBB, LongBrMBB);

if (IsPIC) {
    MachineBasicBlock *BalTgtMBB = MF->CreateMachineBasicBlock(BB);
    MF->insert(FallThroughMBB, BalTgtMBB);
    LongBrMBB->addSuccessor(BalTgtMBB);
    BalTgtMBB->addSuccessor(TgtMBB);

    unsigned BalOp = Cpu0::BAL;

    // $longbr:
    // addiu $sp, $sp, -8
    // st $lr, 0($sp)
    // lui $at, %hi($tgt - $baltgt)
    // addiu $lr, $lr, %lo($tgt - $baltgt)
    // bal $baltgt
    // nop
    // $baltgt:
    // addu $at, $lr, $at
    // addiu $sp, $sp, 8
    // ld $lr, 0($sp)
    // jr $at
    // nop
    // $fallthrough:
    //

    Pos = LongBrMBB->begin();

    BuildMI(*LongBrMBB, Pos, DL, TII->get(Cpu0::ADDiu), Cpu0::SP)
        .addReg(Cpu0::SP).addImm(-8);
    BuildMI(*LongBrMBB, Pos, DL, TII->get(Cpu0::ST)).addReg(Cpu0::LR)
        .addReg(Cpu0::SP).addImm(0);

    // LUi and ADDiu instructions create 32-bit offset of the target basic
    // block from the target of BAL instruction. We cannot use immediate
    // value for this offset because it cannot be determined accurately when
    // the program has inline assembly statements. We therefore use the
    // relocation expressions %hi($tgt-$baltgt) and %lo($tgt-$baltgt) which
    // are resolved during the fixup, so the values will always be correct.
    //
    // Since we cannot create %hi($tgt-$baltgt) and %lo($tgt-$baltgt)
    // expressions at this point (it is possible only at the MC layer),
    // we replace LUi and ADDiu with pseudo instructions
    // LONG_BRANCH_LUi and LONG_BRANCH_ADDiu, and add both basic
    // blocks as operands to these instructions. When lowering these pseudo
    // instructions to LUi and ADDiu in the MC layer, we will create
    // %hi($tgt-$baltgt) and %lo($tgt-$baltgt) expressions and add them as
    // operands to lowered instructions.

    BuildMI(*LongBrMBB, Pos, DL, TII->get(Cpu0::LONG_BRANCH_LUI), Cpu0::AT)
        .addMBB(TgtMBB).addMBB(BalTgtMBB);
    BuildMI(*LongBrMBB, Pos, DL, TII->get(Cpu0::LONG_BRANCH_ADDiu), Cpu0::AT)
        .addReg(Cpu0::AT).addMBB(TgtMBB).addMBB(BalTgtMBB);
    MIBundleBuilder(*LongBrMBB, Pos)
        .append(BuildMI(*MF, DL, TII->get(BalOp)).addMBB(BalTgtMBB));

    Pos = BalTgtMBB->begin();
}

```

```

BuildMI(*BalTgtMBB, Pos, DL, TII->get(Cpu0::ADDu), Cpu0::AT)
    .addReg(Cpu0::LR).addReg(Cpu0::AT);
BuildMI(*BalTgtMBB, Pos, DL, TII->get(Cpu0::LD), Cpu0::LR)
    .addReg(Cpu0::SP).addImm(0);
BuildMI(*BalTgtMBB, Pos, DL, TII->get(Cpu0::ADDiu), Cpu0::SP)
    .addReg(Cpu0::SP).addImm(8);

MIBundleBuilder(*BalTgtMBB, Pos)
    .append(BuildMI(*MF, DL, TII->get(Cpu0::JR)).addReg(Cpu0::AT))
    .append(BuildMI(*MF, DL, TII->get(Cpu0::NOP)));

assert(LongBrMBB->size() + BalTgtMBB->size() == LongBranchSeqSize);
} else {
    // $longbr:
    // jmp $tgt
    // nop
    // $fallthrough:
    //
    Pos = LongBrMBB->begin();
    LongBrMBB->addSuccessor(TgtMBB);
    MIBundleBuilder(*LongBrMBB, Pos)
        .append(BuildMI(*MF, DL, TII->get(Cpu0::JMP)).addMBB(TgtMBB))
        .append(BuildMI(*MF, DL, TII->get(Cpu0::NOP)));

    assert(LongBrMBB->size() == LongBranchSeqSize);
}

if (I.Br->isUnconditionalBranch()) {
    // Change branch destination.
    assert(I.Br->getDesc().getNumOperands() == 1);
    I.Br->RemoveOperand(0);
    I.Br->addOperand(MachineOperand::CreateMBB(LongBrMBB));
} else
    // Change branch destination and reverse condition.
    replaceBranch(*MBB, I.Br, DL, &*FallThroughMBB);
}

static void emitGPDisp(MachineFunction &F, const Cpu0InstrInfo *TII) {
    MachineBasicBlock &MBB = F.front();
    MachineBasicBlock::iterator I = MBB.begin();
    DebugLoc DL = MBB.findDebugLoc(MBB.begin());
    BuildMI(MBB, I, DL, TII->get(Cpu0::LUI), Cpu0::V0)
        .addExternalSymbol("_gp_disp", Cpu0II::MO_ABS_HI);
    BuildMI(MBB, I, DL, TII->get(Cpu0::ADDiu), Cpu0::V0)
        .addReg(Cpu0::V0).addExternalSymbol("_gp_disp", Cpu0II::MO_ABS_LO);
    MBB.removeLiveIn(Cpu0::V0);
}

bool Cpu0LongBranch::runOnMachineFunction(MachineFunction &F) {
    const Cpu0Subtarget &STI =
        static_cast<const Cpu0Subtarget &>(F.getSubtarget());
    const Cpu0InstrInfo *TII =
        static_cast<const Cpu0InstrInfo *>(STI.getInstrInfo());
    LongBranchSeqSize =
        !IsPIC ? 2 : 10;

    if (!STI.enableLongBranchPass())
        return false;
}

```

```

if (IsPIC && static_cast<const Cpu0TargetMachine &>(TM).getABI().IsO32() &&
    F.getInfo<Cpu0FunctionInfo>()->globalBaseRegSet())
    emitGPDisp(F, TII);

MF = &F;
initMBBInfo();

SmallVectorImpl<MBBInfo>::iterator I, E = MBBInfos.end();
bool EverMadeChange = false, MadeChange = true;

while (MadeChange) {
    MadeChange = false;

    for (I = MBBInfos.begin(); I != E; ++I) {
        // Skip if this MBB doesn't have a branch or the branch has already been
        // converted to a long branch.
        if (!I->Br || I->HasLongBranch)
            continue;

        int ShVal = 4;
        int64_t Offset = computeOffset(I->Br) / ShVal;

        // Check if offset fits into 16-bit immediate field of branches.
        if (!ForceLongBranch && isInt<16>(Offset))
            continue;

        I->HasLongBranch = true;
        I->Size += LongBranchSeqSize * 4;
        ++LongBranches;
        EverMadeChange = MadeChange = true;
    }
}

if (!EverMadeChange)
    return true;

// Compute basic block addresses.
if (IsPIC) {
    uint64_t Address = 0;

    for (I = MBBInfos.begin(); I != E; Address += I->Size, ++I)
        I->Address = Address;
}

// Do the expansion.
for (I = MBBInfos.begin(); I != E; ++I)
    if (I->HasLongBranch)
        expandToLongBranch(*I);

MF->RenumberBlocks();

return true;
}

#endif // #if CH >= CH8_2

```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter8\_2/Cpu0MCInstLower.h

```
MCOOperand createSub(MachineBasicBlock *BB1, MachineBasicBlock *BB2,
                     Cpu0MCEExpr::Cpu0ExprKind Kind) const;
void lowerLongBranchLUI(const MachineInstr *MI, MCInst &OutMI) const;
void lowerLongBranchADDiu(const MachineInstr *MI, MCInst &OutMI,
                          int Opcode,
                          Cpu0MCEExpr::Cpu0ExprKind Kind) const;
bool lowerLongBranch(const MachineInstr *MI, MCInst &OutMI) const;
```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter8\_2/Cpu0MCInstLower.cpp

```
MCOOperand Cpu0MCInstLower::createSub(MachineBasicBlock *BB1,
                                       MachineBasicBlock *BB2,
                                       Cpu0MCEExpr::Cpu0ExprKind Kind) const {
    const MCSymbolRefExpr *Sym1 = MCSymbolRefExpr::create(BB1->getSymbol(), *Ctx);
    const MCSymbolRefExpr *Sym2 = MCSymbolRefExpr::create(BB2->getSymbol(), *Ctx);
    const MCBinaryExpr *Sub = MCBinaryExpr::createSub(Sym1, Sym2, *Ctx);

    return MCOOperand::createExpr(Cpu0MCEExpr::create(Kind, Sub, *Ctx));
}

void Cpu0MCInstLower::
lowerLongBranchLUI(const MachineInstr *MI, MCInst &OutMI) const {
    OutMI.setOpcode(Cpu0::LUI);

    // Lower register operand.
    OutMI.addOperand(LowerOperand(MI->getOperand(0)));

    // Create %hi($tgt-$baltgt).
    OutMI.addOperand(createSub(MI->getOperand(1).getMBB(),
                               MI->getOperand(2).getMBB(),
                               Cpu0MCEExpr::CEK_ABS_HI));
}

void Cpu0MCInstLower::
lowerLongBranchADDiu(const MachineInstr *MI, MCInst &OutMI, int Opcode,
                     Cpu0MCEExpr::Cpu0ExprKind Kind) const {
    OutMI.setOpcode(Opcode);

    // Lower two register operands.
    for (unsigned I = 0, E = 2; I != E; ++I) {
        const MachineOperand &MO = MI->getOperand(I);
        OutMI.addOperand(LowerOperand(MO));
    }

    // Create %lo($tgt-$baltgt) or %hi($tgt-$baltgt).
    OutMI.addOperand(createSub(MI->getOperand(2).getMBB(),
                               MI->getOperand(3).getMBB(), Kind));
}

bool Cpu0MCInstLower::lowerLongBranch(const MachineInstr *MI,
                                      MCInst &OutMI) const {
    switch (MI->getOpcode()) {
    default:
        return false;
```

```

        case Cpu0::LONG_BRANCH_LUi:
            lowerLongBranchLUi(MI, OutMI);
            return true;
        case Cpu0::LONG_BRANCH_ADDiu:
            lowerLongBranchADDiu(MI, OutMI, Cpu0::ADDiu,
                                  Cpu0MCExpr::CEK_ABS_LO);
            return true;
    }
}

```

```
void Cpu0MCInstLower::Lower(const MachineInstr *MI, MCInst &OutMI) const {
```

```

if (lowerLongBranch(MI, OutMI))
    return;

```

```

...
}
```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter8\_2/Cpu0SEInstrInfo.h

```
unsigned getOppositeBranchOpc(unsigned Opc) const override;
```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter8\_2/Cpu0SEInstrInfo.cpp

```

/// getOppositeBranchOpc - Return the inverse of the specified
/// opcode, e.g. turning BEQ to BNE.
unsigned Cpu0SEInstrInfo::getOppositeBranchOpc(unsigned Opc) const {
    switch (Opc) {
        default:           llvm_unreachable("Illegal opcode!");
        case Cpu0::BEQ:   return Cpu0::BNE;
        case Cpu0::BNE:   return Cpu0::BEQ;
    }
}

```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter8\_2/Cpu0TargetMachine.cpp

```
void addPreEmitPass() override;
```

```

// Implemented by targets that want to run passes immediately before
// machine code is emitted. return true if -print-machineinstrs should
// print out the code after the passes.
void Cpu0PassConfig::addPreEmitPass() {
    Cpu0TargetMachine &TM = getCpu0TargetMachine();

```

```

    addPass(createCpu0LongBranchPass(TM));
    return;
}

```

The code of Chapter8\_2 will compile the following example as follows,

### Ibdex/input/ch8\_2\_longbranch.cpp

```
int test_longbranch()
{
    volatile int a = 2;
    volatile int b = 1;
    int result = 0;

    if (a < b)
        result = 1;
    return result;
}
```

```
118-165-78-10:input Jonathan$ ~/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/Debug/bin/llc
-march=cpu0 -mcpu=cpu032II -relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm
-force-cpu0-long-branch ch8_2_longbranch.bc -o -
...
.text
.section .mdebug.abi032
.previous
.file "ch8_2_longbranch.bc"
.globl _Z15test_longbranchv
.align 2
.type _Z15test_longbranchv,@function
.ent _Z15test_longbranchv # @_Z15test_longbranchv
_Z15test_longbranchv:
.frame $fp,16,$lr
.mask 0x00001000,-4
.set noreorder
.set nomacro
# BB#0:
    addiu $sp, $sp, -16
    st    $fp, 12($sp)          # 4-byte Folded Spill
    move  $fp, $sp
    addiu $2, $zero, 1
    st    $2, 8($fp)
    addiu $3, $zero, 2
    st    $3, 4($fp)
    addiu $3, $zero, 0
    st    $3, 0($fp)
    ld    $3, 8($fp)
    ld    $4, 4($fp)
    slt   $3, $3, $4
    bne   $3, $zero, .LBB0_3
    nop
# BB#1:
    addiu $sp, $sp, -8
    st    $lr, 0($sp)
    lui   $1, %hi(.LBB0_4-.LBB0_2)
    addiu $1, $1, %lo(.LBB0_4-.LBB0_2)
    bal   .LBB0_2
.LBB0_2:
    addu  $1, $lr, $1
    ld    $lr, 0($sp)
    addiu $sp, $sp, 8
    jr   $1
```

```

nop
.LBB0_3:
    st    $2, 0($fp)
.LBB0_4:
    ld    $2, 0($fp)
    move $sp, $fp
    ld    $fp, 12($sp)          # 4-byte Folded Reload
    addiu $sp, $sp, 16
    ret   $lr
    nop
    .set  macro
    .set  reorder
    .end  _Z15test_longbranchv
$func_end0:
    .size _Z15test_longbranchv, ($func_end0)-_Z15test_longbranchv

```

## 8.3 Cpu0 backend Optimization: Remove useless JMP

LLVM uses functional pass both in code generation and optimization. Following the 3 tiers of compiler architecture, LLVM do most optimization in middle tier of LLVM IR, SSA form. Beyond middle tier optimization, there are opportunities in optimization which depend on backend features. The “fill delay slot” in Mips is an example of backend optimization used in pipeline RISC machine. You can port it from Mips if your backend is a pipeline RISC with delay slot. In this section, we apply the “delete useless jmp” in Cpu0 backend optimization. This algorithm is simple and effective to be a perfect tutorial in optimization. Through this example, you can understand how to add an optimization pass and coding your complicated optimization algorithm on your backend in real project.

Chapter8\_2/ supports “delete useless jmp” optimization algorithm which add codes as follows,

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter8\_2/CMakeLists.txt

```
Cpu0DelUselessJMP.cpp
```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter8\_2/Cpu0.h

```
FunctionPass *createCpu0DelJmpPass(Cpu0TargetMachine &TM);
```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter8\_2/Cpu0TargetMachine.cpp

```
// Implemented by targets that want to run passes immediately before
// machine code is emitted. return true if -print-machineinstrs should
// print out the code after the passes.
void Cpu0PassConfig::addPreEmitPass() {
    Cpu0TargetMachine &TM = getCpu0TargetMachine();
```

```
    addPass(createCpu0DelJmpPass(TM));
```

```
}
```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter8\_2/Cpu0DelUselessJMP.cpp

```
===== Cpu0DelUselessJMP.cpp - Cpu0 DelJmp =====//
//
// The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure
//
// This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source
// License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.
//
//=====
//
// Simple pass to fills delay slots with useful instructions.
//
//=====

#include "Cpu0.h"
#if CH >= CH8_2

#include "Cpu0TargetMachine.h"
#include "llvm/CodeGen/MachineFunctionPass.h"
#include "llvm/Support/CommandLine.h"
#include "llvm/Target/TargetMachine.h"
#include "llvm/Target/TargetInstrInfo.h"
#include "llvm/ADT/SmallSet.h"
#include "llvm/ADT/Statistic.h"

using namespace llvm;

#define DEBUG_TYPE "del-jmp"

STATISTIC(NumDelJmp, "Number of useless jmp deleted");

static cl::opt<bool> EnableDelJmp(
    "enable-cpu0-del-useless-jmp",
    cl::init(true),
    cl::desc("Delete useless jmp instructions: jmp 0."),
    cl::Hidden);

namespace {
    struct DelJmp : public MachineFunctionPass {
        static char ID;
        DelJmp(TargetMachine &tm)
            : MachineFunctionPass(ID) { }

        virtual const char *getPassName() const {
            return "Cpu0 Del Useless jmp";
        }

        bool runOnMachineBasicBlock(MachineBasicBlock &MBB, MachineBasicBlock &MBBN);
        bool runOnMachineFunction(MachineFunction &F) {
            bool Changed = false;
            if (EnableDelJmp) {
                MachineFunction::iterator FJ = F.begin();
                if (FJ != F.end())
                    FJ++;
                if (FJ == F.end())
                    return Changed;
                for (MachineFunction::iterator FI = F.begin(), FE = F.end(); FI != FE; FI++)
                    if (FI->isBranch() && FI->getDestBlock() == MBB)
                        FI->replaceAllUsesWith(MBB);
            }
            return Changed;
        }
    };
}
```

```

        FJ != FE; ++FI, ++FJ)
    // In STL style, F.end() is the dummy BasicBlock() like '\0' in
    // C string.
    // FJ is the next BasicBlock of FI; When FI range from F.begin() to
    // the PreviousBasicBlock of F.end() call runOnMachineBasicBlock().
    Changed |= runOnMachineBasicBlock(*FI, *FJ);
}
return Changed;
}

};

char DelJmp::ID = 0;
} // end of anonymous namespace

bool DelJmp::
runOnMachineBasicBlock(MachineBasicBlock &MBB, MachineBasicBlock &MBBN) {
    bool Changed = false;

    MachineBasicBlock::iterator I = MBB.end();
    if (I != MBB.begin())
        I--;           // set I to the last instruction
    else
        return Changed;

    if (I->getOpcode() == Cpu0::JMP && I->getOperand(0).getMBB() == &MBBN) {
        // I is the instruction of "jmp #offset=0", as follows,
        //     jmp      $BB0_3
        // $BB0_3:
        //     ld      $4, 28($sp)
        ++NumDelJmp;
        MBB.erase(I);           // delete the "JMP 0" instruction
        Changed = true;         // Notify LLVM kernel Changed
    }
    return Changed;
}

/// createCpu0DelJmpPass - Returns a pass that DelJmp in Cpu0 MachineFunctions
FunctionPass *llvm::createCpu0DelJmpPass(Cpu0TargetMachine &tm) {
    return new DelJmp(tm);
}

#endif

```

As above code, except Cpu0DelUselessJMP.cpp, other files are changed for registering class DelJmp as a functional pass. As the comment of above code, MBB is the current block and MBBN is the next block. For each last instruction of every MBB, we check whether or not it is the JMP instruction and its Operand is the next basic block. By getMBB() in MachineOperand, you can get the MBB address. For the member functions of MachineOperand, please check include/llvm/CodeGen/MachineOperand.h Now, let's run Chapter8\_2/ with ch8\_2\_deluselessjmp.cpp for explanation.

### Ibdex/input/ch8\_2\_deluselessjmp.cpp

```

int test_DelUselessJMP()
{
    int a = 1; int b = -2; int c = 3;

```

```

if (a == 0) {
    a++;
}
if (b == 0) {
    a = a + 3;
    b++;
} else if (b < 0) {
    a = a + b;
    b--;
}
if (c > 0) {
    a = a + c;
    c++;
}

return a;
}

```

```

118-165-78-10:input Jonathan$ clang -target mips-unknown-linux-gnu
-c ch8_2_deluselessjmp.cpp -emit-llvm -o ch8_2_deluselessjmp.bc
118-165-78-10:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/
Debug/bin/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=static -filetype=asm -stats
ch8_2_deluselessjmp.bc -o -
...
    cmp    $sw, $4, $3
    jne    $sw, $BB0_2
    nop
# BB#1:
...
    cmp    $sw, $3, $2
    jlt    $sw, $BB0_8
    nop
# BB#7:
...
=====
... Statistics Collected ...
=====
...
2 del-jmp      - Number of useless jmp deleted
...

```

The terminal displays “Number of useless jmp deleted” by `llc -stats` option because we set the “STATISTIC(NumDelJmp, “Number of useless jmp deleted”)” in code. It deletes 2 jmp instructions from block “# BB#0” and “\$BB0\_6”. You can check it by `llc -enable-cpu0-del-useless-jmp=false` option to see the difference to non-optimization version. If you run with `ch8_1_1.cpp`, you will find 10 jmp instructions are deleted from 120 lines of assembly code, which meaning 8% improvement in speed and code size<sup>1</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> On a platform with cache and DRAM, the cache miss costs severral tens time of instruction cycle. Usually, the compiler engineers who work in the vendor of platform solution are spending much effort of trying to reduce the cache miss for speed. Reduce code size will decrease the cache miss frequency too.

## 8.4 Fill Branch Delay Slot

Cpu0 instruction set is designed to be a classical RISC pipeline machine. Classical RISC machine has many perfect features <sup>3</sup> <sup>4</sup>. I change Cpu0 backend to a 5 stages of classical RISC pipeline machine with one delay slot like some of Mips model (The original Cpu0 from its author, is a 3 stages of RISC machine). With this change, the backend needs filling the NOP instruction in the branch delay slot. In order to make this tutorial simple for learning, Cpu0 backend code not fill the branch delay slot with any useful instruction for optimization. Readers can reference the MipsDelaySlotFiller.cpp to know how to insert useful instructions in backend optimization. Following code added in Chapter8\_2 for NOP fill in Branch Delay Slot.

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter8\_2/CMakeLists.txt

```
Cpu0DelaySlotFiller.cpp
```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter8\_2/Cpu0.h

```
FunctionPass *createCpu0DelaySlotFillerPass (Cpu0TargetMachine &TM) ;
```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter8\_2/Cpu0TargetMachine.cpp

```
// Implemented by targets that want to run passes immediately before
// machine code is emitted. return true if -print-machineinstrs should
// print out the code after the passes.
void Cpu0PassConfig::addPreEmitPass() {
    Cpu0TargetMachine &TM = getCpu0TargetMachine();

    addPass(createCpu0DelaySlotFillerPass(TM));

}
```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter8\_2/Cpu0DelaySlotFiller.cpp

```
===== Cpu0DelaySlotFiller.cpp - Cpu0 Delay Slot Filler =====
//
// The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure
//
// This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source
// License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.
//
//=====
// Simple pass to fill delay slots with useful instructions.
//=====
//=====
```

<sup>3</sup> See book Computer Architecture: A Quantitative Approach (The Morgan Kaufmann Series in Computer Architecture and Design)

<sup>4</sup> [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Classic\\_RISC\\_pipeline](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Classic_RISC_pipeline)

```
#include "Cpu0.h"
#if CH >= CH8_2

#include "Cpu0InstrInfo.h"
#include "Cpu0TargetMachine.h"
#include "llvm/ADT/BitVector.h"
#include "llvm/ADT/SmallPtrSet.h"
#include "llvm/ADT/Statistic.h"
#include "llvm/Analysis/AliasAnalysis.h"
#include "llvm/Analysis/ValueTracking.h"
#include "llvm/CodeGen/MachineBranchProbabilityInfo.h"
#include "llvm/CodeGen/MachineFunctionPass.h"
#include "llvm/CodeGen/MachineInstrBuilder.h"
#include "llvm/CodeGen/PseudoSourceValue.h"
#include "llvm/Support/CommandLine.h"
#include "llvm/Target/TargetInstrInfo.h"
#include "llvm/Target/TargetMachine.h"
#include "llvm/Target/TargetRegisterInfo.h"

using namespace llvm;

#define DEBUG_TYPE "delay-slot-filler"

STATISTIC(FilledSlots, "Number of delay slots filled");

namespace {
    typedef MachineBasicBlock::iterator Iter;
    typedef MachineBasicBlock::reverse_iterator ReverseIter;

    class Filler : public MachineFunctionPass {
public:
    Filler(TargetMachine &tm)
        : MachineFunctionPass(ID) { }

    const char *getPassName() const override {
        return "Cpu0 Delay Slot Filler";
    }

    bool runOnMachineFunction(MachineFunction &F) override {
        bool Changed = false;
        for (MachineFunction::iterator FI = F.begin(), FE = F.end();
             FI != FE; ++FI)
            Changed |= runOnMachineBasicBlock(*FI);
        return Changed;
    }
private:
    bool runOnMachineBasicBlock(MachineBasicBlock &MBB);

    static char ID;
};

char Filler::ID = 0;
} // end of anonymous namespace

static bool hasUnoccupiedSlot(const MachineInstr *MI) {
    return MI->hasDelaySlot() && !MI->isBundledWithSucc();
}

/// runOnMachineBasicBlock - Fill in delay slots for the given basic block.
```

```

/// We assume there is only one delay slot per delayed instruction.
bool Filler::runOnMachineBasicBlock(MachineBasicBlock &MBB) {
    bool Changed = false;
    const Cpu0Subtarget &STI = MBB.getParent()->getSubtarget<Cpu0Subtarget>();
    const Cpu0InstrInfo *TII = STI.getInstrInfo();

    for (Iter I = MBB.begin(); I != MBB.end(); ++I) {
        if (!hasUnoccupiedSlot(&*I))
            continue;

        ++FilledSlots;
        Changed = true;

        // Bundle the NOP to the instruction with the delay slot.
        BuildMI(MBB, std::next(I), I->getDebugLoc(), TII->get(Cpu0::NOP));
        MIBundleBuilder(MBB, I, std::next(I, 2));
    }

    return Changed;
}

/// createCpu0DelaySlotFillerPass - Returns a pass that fills in delay
/// slots in Cpu0 MachineFunctions
FunctionPass *llvm::createCpu0DelaySlotFillerPass(Cpu0TargetMachine &tm) {
    return new Filler(tm);
}

#endif

```

To make the basic block label remains same, statement MIBundleBuilder() needs to be inserted after the statement BuildMI(..., NOP) of Cpu0DelaySlotFiller.cpp. MIBundleBuilder() make both the branch instruction and NOP bundled into one instruction (first part is branch instruction and second part is NOP).

## Ibdex/chapters/Chapter3\_2/Cpu0AsmPrinter.cpp

```

// - EmitInstruction() must exists or will have run time error.
void Cpu0AsmPrinter::EmitInstruction(const MachineInstr *MI) {

    // Print out both ordinary instruction and boudle instruction
    MachineBasicBlock::const_instr_iterator I = MI->getIterator();
    MachineBasicBlock::const_instr_iterator E = MI->getParent()->instr_end();

    do {

        if (I->isPseudo() && !isLongBranchPseudo(I->getOpcode()))

            llvm_unreachable("Pseudo opcode found in EmitInstruction()");

        MCInst TmpInst0;
        MCInstLowering.Lower(&*I, TmpInst0);
        OutStreamer->EmitInstruction(TmpInst0, getSubtargetInfo());
    } while ((++I != E) && I->isInsideBundle()); // Delay slot check
}

```

In order to print the NOP, the Cpu0AsmPrinter.cpp of Chapter3\_2 prints all bundle instructions in loop. Without the loop, only the first part of the bundle instruction (branch instruction only) is printed. In llvm 3.1 the basic block label remains same even if you didn't do the bundle after it. But for some reasons, it changed in llvm at some later version and you need doing "bundle" in order to keep block label unchanged at later llvm phase.

## 8.5 Conditional instruction

[Index](#)/[input/ch8\\_2\\_select.cpp](#)

```
// The following files will generate IR select even compile with clang -O0.
int test_movx_1()
{
    volatile int a = 1;
    int c = 0;

    c = !a ? 1:3;

    return c;
}

int test_movx_2()
{
    volatile int a = 1;
    int c = 0;

    c = a ? 1:3;

    return c;
}
```

Run Chapter8\_1 with ch8\_2\_select.cpp will get the following result.

```
114-37-150-209:input Jonathan$ clang -O1 -target mips-unknown-linux-gnu
-c ch8_2_select.cpp -emit-llvm -o ch8_2_select.bc
114-37-150-209:input Jonathan$ ~/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/Debug/bin/
llvm-dis ch8_2_select.bc -o -
...
; Function Attrs: nounwind uwtable
define i32 @_Z11test_movx_1v() #0 {
    %a = alloca i32, align 4
    %c = alloca i32, align 4
    store volatile i32 1, i32* %a, align 4
    store i32 0, i32* %c, align 4
    %1 = load volatile i32* %a, align 4
    %2 = icmp ne i32 %1, 0
    %3 = xor i1 %2, true
    %4 = select i1 %3, i32 1, i32 3
    store i32 %4, i32* %c, align 4
    %5 = load i32* %c, align 4
    ret i32 %5
}

; Function Attrs: nounwind uwtable
```

```

define i32 @_Z11test_movx_2v() #0 {
    %a = alloca i32, align 4
    %c = alloca i32, align 4
    store volatile i32 1, i32* %a, align 4
    store i32 0, i32* %c, align 4
    %1 = load volatile i32* %a, align 4
    %2 = icmp ne i32 %1, 0
    %3 = select i1 %2, i32 1, i32 3
    store i32 %3, i32* %c, align 4
    %4 = load i32* %c, align 4
    ret i32 %4
}
...
114-37-150-209:input Jonathan$ ~/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/Debug/bin/llc
-march=cpu0 -mcpu=cpu032I -relocation-model=static -filetype=asm
ch8_2_select.bc -o -
...
LLVM ERROR: Cannot select: 0x39f47c0: i32 = select_cc ...

```

As above llvm IR, ch8\_2\_select.bc, clang generates **select** IR for small basic control block (if statement only include one assign statement). This **select** IR is the result of optimization for CPUs with conditional instructions support. And from above error message, obviously IR **select** is changed to **select\_cc** during DAG optimization stages.

Chapter8\_2 supports **select** with the following code added and changed.

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter8\_2/Cpu0InstrInfo.td

```

let Predicates = [Ch8_2] in {
include "Cpu0CondMov.td"
} // let Predicates = [Ch8_2]

```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter8\_2/Cpu0CondMov.td

```

//===== Cpu0CondMov.td - Describe Cpu0 Conditional Moves --- tablegen -----//
//
//                               The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure
//
// This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source
// License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.
//
//=====
// This is the Conditional Moves implementation.
//
//=====

// Conditional moves:
// These instructions are expanded in
// Cpu0ISelLowering::EmitInstrWithCustomInserter if target does not have
// conditional move instructions.
// cond:int, data:int
class CondMovIntInt<RegisterClass CRC, RegisterClass DRC, bits<8> op,
                     string instr_asm> :

```

```

FA<op, (outs DRC:$ra), (ins DRC:$rb, CRC:$rc, DRC:$F),
  !strconcat(instr_asm, "\t$ra, $rb, $rc"), [], IIAlu> {
let shamt = 0;
let Constraints = "$F = $ra";
}

// select patterns
multiclass MovzPats0Slt<RegisterClass CRC, RegisterClass DRC,
  Instruction MOVZInst, Instruction SLTOp,
  Instruction SLTuOp, Instruction SLTiOp,
  Instruction SLTiuiOp> {
def : Pat<(select (i32 (setge CRC:$lhs, CRC:$rhs)), DRC:$T, DRC:$F),
  (MOVZInst DRC:$T, (SLTOp CRC:$lhs, CRC:$rhs), DRC:$F)>;
def : Pat<(select (i32 (setuge CRC:$lhs, CRC:$rhs)), DRC:$T, DRC:$F),
  (MOVZInst DRC:$T, (SLTuOp CRC:$lhs, CRC:$rhs), DRC:$F)>;
def : Pat<(select (i32 (setge CRC:$lhs, immSExt16:$rhs)), DRC:$T, DRC:$F),
  (MOVZInst DRC:$T, (SLTiOp CRC:$lhs, immSExt16:$rhs), DRC:$F)>;
def : Pat<(select (i32 (setuge CRC:$lh, immSExt16:$rh)), DRC:$T, DRC:$F),
  (MOVZInst DRC:$T, (SLTiuiOp CRC:$lh, immSExt16:$rh), DRC:$F)>;
def : Pat<(select (i32 (setle CRC:$lhs, CRC:$rhs)), DRC:$T, DRC:$F),
  (MOVZInst DRC:$T, (SLTOp CRC:$rhs, CRC:$lhs), DRC:$F)>;
def : Pat<(select (i32 (setule CRC:$lhs, CRC:$rhs)), DRC:$T, DRC:$F),
  (MOVZInst DRC:$T, (SLTuOp CRC:$rhs, CRC:$lhs), DRC:$F)>;
}

multiclass MovzPats1<RegisterClass CRC, RegisterClass DRC,
  Instruction MOVZInst, Instruction XOROp> {
def : Pat<(select (i32 (seteq CRC:$lhs, CRC:$rhs)), DRC:$T, DRC:$F),
  (MOVZInst DRC:$T, (XOROp CRC:$lhs, CRC:$rhs), DRC:$F)>;
def : Pat<(select (i32 (seteq CRC:$lhs, 0)), DRC:$T, DRC:$F),
  (MOVZInst DRC:$T, CRC:$lhs, DRC:$F)>;
}

multiclass MovnPats<RegisterClass CRC, RegisterClass DRC, Instruction MOVNInst,
  Instruction XOROp> {
def : Pat<(select (i32 (setne CRC:$lhs, CRC:$rhs)), DRC:$T, DRC:$F),
  (MOVNInst DRC:$T, (XOROp CRC:$lhs, CRC:$rhs), DRC:$F)>;
def : Pat<(select CRC:$cond, DRC:$T, DRC:$F),
  (MOVNInst DRC:$T, CRC:$cond, DRC:$F)>;
def : Pat<(select (i32 (setne CRC:$lhs, 0)), DRC:$T, DRC:$F),
  (MOVNInst DRC:$T, CRC:$lhs, DRC:$F)>;
}

// Instantiation of instructions.
def MOVZ_I_I      : CondMovIntInt<CPUREgs, CPUREgs, 0x0a, "movz">;
def MOVN_I_I      : CondMovIntInt<CPUREgs, CPUREgs, 0x0b, "movn">;
// Instantiation of conditional move patterns.
let Predicates = [HasSlt] in {
defm : MovzPats0Slt<CPUREgs, CPUREgs, MOVZ_I_I, SLT, SLTu, SLTi, SLTiui>;
}

defm : MovzPats1<CPUREgs, CPUREgs, MOVZ_I_I, XOR>;
defm : MovnPats<CPUREgs, CPUREgs, MOVN_I_I, XOR>;

```

**Ibdex/chapters/Chapter8\_2/Cpu0ISelLowering.h**

```
SDValue lowerSELECT(SDValue Op, SelectionDAG &DAG) const;
```

**Ibdex/chapters/Chapter8\_2/Cpu0ISelLowering.cpp**

```
Cpu0TargetLowering::Cpu0TargetLowering(const Cpu0TargetMachine &TM,
                                       const Cpu0Subtarget &STI)
    : TargetLowering(TM), Subtarget(STI), ABI(TM.getABI()) {
```

```
    setOperationAction(ISD::SELECT, MVT::i32, Custom);
```

```
    setOperationAction(ISD::SELECT_CC, MVT::i32, Expand);
    setOperationAction(ISD::SELECT_CC, MVT::Other, Expand);
```

```
}
```

```
SDValue Cpu0TargetLowering::
LowerOperation(SDValue Op, SelectionDAG &DAG) const
{
    switch (Op.getOpcode())
    {
```

```
        case ISD::SELECT:           return lowerSELECT(Op, DAG);
```

```
    }
    ...
}
```

```
SDValue Cpu0TargetLowering::
lowerSELECT(SDValue Op, SelectionDAG &DAG) const
{
    return Op;
}
```

Set ISD::SELECT\_CC to “Expand” will stop llvm optimization from merging “setcc” and “select” into one IR “select\_cc”<sup>2</sup>. Next the LowerOperation() return Op code directly for ISD::SELECT. Finally the pattern defined in Cpu0CondMov.td will translate the **select** IR into conditional instruction, **movz** or **movn**. Let’s run Chapter8\_2 with ch8\_2\_select.cpp to get the following result. Again, the cpu032II uses **slt** instead of **cmp** has a little improved in instructions number.

```
114-37-150-209:input Jonathan$ ~/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/Debug/bin/llc
-march=cpu0 -mcpu=cpu032I -relocation-model=static -filetype=asm ch8_2_select.bc -o -
...
.type _Z11test_movx_1v,@function
...
addiu $2, $zero, 3
movz $2, $3, $4
...
.type _Z11test_movx_2v,@function
```

<sup>2</sup> <http://llvm.org/docs/WritingAnLLVMBBackend.html#expand>

```
...
addiu $2, $zero, 3
movn $2, $3, $4
...
```

The clang uses **select** IR in small basic block to reduce the branch cost in pipeline machine since the branch will make the pipeline “stall”. But it needs the conditional instruction support<sup>3</sup>. If your backend has no conditional instruction and needs clang compiler with optimization option **O1** above level, you can change clang to force it generating traditional branch basic block instead of generating IR **select**. RISC CPU came from the advantage of pipeline and add more and more instruction when time passed. Compare Mips and ARM, the Mips has only **movz** and **movn** two instructions while ARM has many. We create Cpu0 instructions as a simple instructions RISC pipeline machine for compiler toolchain tutorial. However the **cmp** instruction is hired because many programmer is used to it in past and now (ARM use it). This instruction matches the thinking in assembly programming, but the **slt** instruction is more efficient in RISC pipeline. If you designed a backend aimed for C/C++ highlevel language, you may consider **slt** instead of **cmp** since assembly code are rare used in programming and beside, the assembly programmer can accept **slt** not difficultly since usually they are professional.

File ch8\_2\_select2.cpp will generate IR **select** if compile with `clang -O1`.

### Ibdex/input/ch8\_2\_select2.cpp

```
// The following files will generate IR select when compile with clang -O1 but
// clang -O0 won't generate IR select.
volatile int a = 1;
volatile int b = 2;

int test_movx_3()
{
    int c = 0;

    if (a < b)
        return 1;
    else
        return 2;
}

int test_movx_4()
{
    int c = 0;

    if (a)
        c = 1;
    else
        c = 3;

    return c;
}
```

List the conditional statements of C, IR, DAG and Cpu0 instructions as the following table.

Table 8.2: Conditional statements of C, IR, DAG and Cpu0 instructions

C	if (a < b) c = 1; else c = 3; c = a ? 1:3;
.	
IR	icmp + (eq, ne, sgt, sge, slt, sle) + br
DAG	((seteq, setne, setgt, setge, setlt, setle) + setcc) + select
Cpu0	movz, movn

File ch8\_2\_select\_global\_pic.cpp mentioned in Chapter Global variables can be tested now as follows,

### Ibdex/input/ch8\_2\_select\_global\_pic.cpp

```
volatile int a1 = 1;
volatile int b1 = 2;

int gI1 = 100;
int gJ1 = 50;

int test_select_global_pic()
{
    if (a1 < b1)
        return gI1;
    else
        return gJ1;
}
```

```
JonathantekiiMac:input Jonathan$ clang -O1 -target mips-unknown-linux-gnu
-c ch8_2_select_global_pic.cpp -emit-llvm -o ch8_2_select_global_pic.bc
JonathantekiiMac:input Jonathan$ ~/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/Debug/bin/
llvm-dis ch8_2_select_global_pic.bc -o -
...
@a1 = global i32 1, align 4
@b1 = global i32 2, align 4
@gI1 = global i32 100, align 4
@gJ1 = global i32 50, align 4

; Function Attrs: nounwind
define i32 @_Z18test_select_globalv() #0 {
    %1 = load volatile i32* @a1, align 4, !tbaa !1
    %2 = load volatile i32* @b1, align 4, !tbaa !1
    %3 = icmp slt i32 %1, %2
    %gI1.val = load i32* @gI1, align 4
    %gJ1.val = load i32* @gJ1, align 4
    %.0 = select i1 %3, i32 %gI1.val, i32 %gJ1.val
    ret i32 %.0
}
...
JonathantekiiMac:input Jonathan$ ~/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/Debug/bin/
l1c -march=cpu0 -mcpu=cpu032I -relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm ch8_2_select_global_
→pic.bc -o -
.section .mdebug.abi32
.previous
.file "ch8_2_select_global_pic.bc"
.text
```

```

.globl _Z18test_select_globalv
.align 2
.type _Z18test_select_globalv,@function
.ent _Z18test_select_globalv # @_Z18test_select_globalv
_Z18test_select_globalv:
.frame $sp,0,$lr
.mask 0x00000000,0
.set noreorder
.cupload $t9
.set nomacro
# BB#0:
    lui $2, %got_hi(a1)
    addu $2, $2, $gp
    ld $2, %got_lo(a1)($2)
    ld $2, 0($2)
    lui $3, %got_hi(b1)
    addu $3, $3, $gp
    ld $3, %got_lo(b1)($3)
    ld $3, 0($3)
    cmp $sw, $2, $3
    andi $2, $sw, 1
    lui $3, %got_hi(gJ1)
    addu $3, $3, $gp
    ori $3, $3, %got_lo(gJ1)
    lui $4, %got_hi(gI1)
    addu $4, $4, $gp
    ori $4, $4, %got_lo(gI1)
    movn $3, $4, $2
    ld $2, 0($3)
    ld $2, 0($2)
    ret $lr
.set macro
.set reorder
.end _Z18test_select_globalv
$tmp0:
.size _Z18test_select_globalv, ($tmp0)-_Z18test_select_globalv

.type a1,@object          # @a1
.data
.globl a1
.align 2
a1:
.4byte 1                  # 0x1
.size a1, 4

.type b1,@object          # @b1
.globl b1
.align 2
b1:
.4byte 2                  # 0x2
.size b1, 4

.type gI1,@object          # @gI1
.globl gI1
.align 2
gI1:
.4byte 100                 # 0x64
.size gI1, 4

```

```
.type gJ1,@object          # @gJ1
.globl  gJ1
.align  2
gJ1:
    .4byte 50             # 0x32
    .size gJ1, 4
```

## 8.6 Phi node

Since phi ( $\Phi$ ) node is popular used in SSA form<sup>5</sup>, llvm applies phi node in IR for optimization work either. Phi node exists for “live variable analysis”. An example for C is here<sup>6</sup>. As mentioned in wiki web site of reference above, through finding dominance frontiers, compiler knows where to insert  $\Phi$  functions. The following input let you know the benefits of phi node as follows,

**lbdex/input/ch8\_2\_phinode.cpp**

```
int test_phinode(int a , int b, int c)
{
    int d = 2;

    if (a == 0) {
        a = a+1; // a = 1
    }
    else if (b != 0) {
        a = a-1;
    }
    else if (c == 0) {
        a = a+2;
    }
    d = a + b;

    return d;
}
```

Compile it with debug build clang for O3 as follows,

```
114-43-212-251:input Jonathan$ ~/llvm/release/cmake_debug_build/Debug/bin/clang
-O3 -target mips-unknown-linux-gnu -c ch8_2_phinode.cpp -emit-llvm -o
ch8_2_phinode.bc
114-43-212-251:input Jonathan$ ~/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/Debug/bin/llvm-dis
ch8_2_phinode.bc -o -
...
define i32 @_Z12test_phinodeiii(i32 signext %a, i32 signext %b, i32 signext %c) local_
  ↪unnamed_addr #0 {
entry:
  %cmp = icmp eq i32 %a, 0
  br i1 %cmp, label %if.end7, label %if.else

if.else:                                ; preds = %entry
  %cmp1 = icmp eq i32 %b, 0
```

<sup>5</sup> [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Static\\_single\\_assignment\\_form](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Static_single_assignment_form)

<sup>6</sup> <http://stackoverflow.com/questions/11485531/what-exactly-phi-instruction-does-and-how-to-use-it-in-llvm>

```

br i1 %cmp1, label %if.else3, label %if.then2

if.then2:                                ; preds = %if.else
  %dec = add nsw i32 %a, -1
  br label %if.end7

if.else3:                                ; preds = %if.else
  %cmp4 = icmp eq i32 %c, 0
  %add = add nsw i32 %a, 2
  %add.a = select i1 %cmp4, i32 %add, i32 %a
  br label %if.end7

if.end7:                                ; preds = %entry, %if.else3, %if.
  ↪then2
  %a.addr.0 = phi i32 [ %dec, %if.then2 ], [ %add.a, %if.else3 ], [ 1, %entry ]
  %add8 = add nsw i32 %a.addr.0, %b
  ret i32 %add8
}

```

Because SSA form, the llvm ir for destination variable *a* in different basic block (if then, else) must use different name. But how does the source variable *a* in “*d* = *a* + *b*;” be named? The basic block “*a* = *a*-1;” and “*a* = *a*+2;” have different names. The basic block “*a* = *a*-1;” uses %dec and the basic block “*a* = *a*+2;” uses "%add" as destination variable name in SSA llvm ir. In order to solve the source variable name from different basic blocks in SSA form, the phi structure is created as above. The compiler option O0 as the following doesn't apply phi node. Instead, it uses store to solve the source variable name from different basic block.

```

114-43-212-251:input Jonathan$ ~/llvm/release/cmake_debug_build/Debug/bin/clang
-O0 -target mips-unknown-linux-gnu -c ch8_2_phinode.cpp -emit-llvm -o
ch8_2_phinode.bc
114-43-212-251:input Jonathan$ ~/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/Debug/bin/llvm-dis
ch8_2_phinode.bc -o -
...
define i32 @_Z12test_phinodeiii(i32 signext %a, i32 signext %b, i32 signext %c) #0 {
entry:
  %a.addr = alloca i32, align 4
  %b.addr = alloca i32, align 4
  %c.addr = alloca i32, align 4
  %d = alloca i32, align 4
  store i32 %a, i32* %a.addr, align 4
  store i32 %b, i32* %b.addr, align 4
  store i32 %c, i32* %c.addr, align 4
  store i32 2, i32* %d, align 4
  %0 = load i32, i32* %a.addr, align 4
  %cmp = icmp eq i32 %0, 0
  br i1 %cmp, label %if.then, label %if.else

if.then:                                ; preds = %entry
  %1 = load i32, i32* %a.addr, align 4
  %inc = add nsw i32 %1, 1
  store i32 %inc, i32* %a.addr, align 4
  br label %if.end7

if.else:                                ; preds = %entry
  %2 = load i32, i32* %b.addr, align 4
  %cmp1 = icmp ne i32 %2, 0
  br i1 %cmp1, label %if.then2, label %if.else3

```

```

if.then2:                                ; preds = %if.else
    %3 = load i32, i32* %a.addr, align 4
    %dec = add nsw i32 %3, -1
    store i32 %dec, i32* %a.addr, align 4
    br label %if.end6

if.else3:                                ; preds = %if.else
    %4 = load i32, i32* %c.addr, align 4
    %cmp4 = icmp eq i32 %4, 0
    br i1 %cmp4, label %if.then5, label %if.end

if.then5:                                ; preds = %if.else3
    %5 = load i32, i32* %a.addr, align 4
    %add = add nsw i32 %5, 2
    store i32 %add, i32* %a.addr, align 4
    br label %if.end

if.end:                                   ; preds = %if.then5, %if.else3
    br label %if.end6

if.end6:                                   ; preds = %if.end, %if.then2
    br label %if.end7

if.end7:                                   ; preds = %if.end6, %if.then
    %6 = load i32, i32* %a.addr, align 4
    %7 = load i32, i32* %b.addr, align 4
    %add8 = add nsw i32 %6, %7
    store i32 %add8, i32* %d, align 4
    %8 = load i32, i32* %d, align 4
    ret i32 %8
}

```

Compile with `clang -O3` generate phi function. The phi function can assign virtual register value directly from multi basic blocks. Compile with `clang -O0` doesn't generate phi, it assigns virtual register value by loading stack slot where the stack slot is saved in each of multi basic blocks before. In this example the pointer of `%a.addr` point to the stack slot, and “`store i32 %inc, i32* %a.addr, align 4`”, “`store i32 %dec, i32* %a.addr, align 4`”, “`store i32 %add, i32* %a.addr, align 4`” in label `if.then:`, `if.then2:` and `if.then5:`, respectively. In other words, it needs 3 store instructions. It's possible that compiler finds that the `a == 0` is always true after optimization analysis through phi node. If so, the phi node version will bring better result because `clang -O0` version uses load and store with pointer `%a.addr` which may cut the optimization opportunity. Compiler books discuss the Control Flow Graph (CFG) analysis through dominance frontiers calculation for setting phi node. Then compiler apply the global optimization on CFG with phi node, and remove phi node by replacing with “load store” at the end.

If you are interested in more details than the wiki web site, please refer book here <sup>[7](#)</sup> for phi node, or book here <sup>[8](#)</sup> for the dominator tree analysis if you have this book.

## 8.7 RISC CPU knowledge

As mentioned in the previous section, Cpu0 is a RISC (Reduced Instruction Set Computer) CPU with 5 stages of pipeline. RISC CPU is full in the world, even the X86 of CISC (Complex Instruction Set Computer) is RISC inside (It translates CISC instruction into micro-instructions which do pipeline as RISC). Knowledge with RISC concept may make you satisfied in compiler design. List these two excellent books we have read for reference. Sure, there are

<sup>7</sup> Section 8.11 of Muchnick, Steven S. (1997). Advanced Compiler Design and Implementation. Morgan Kaufmann. ISBN 1-55860-320-4.

<sup>8</sup> Refer chapter 9 of book Compilers: Principles, Techniques, and Tools (2nd Edition)

many books in Computer Architecture and some of them contain real RISC CPU knowledge needed, but these two are excellent and popular.

Computer Organization and Design: The Hardware/Software Interface (The Morgan Kaufmann Series in Computer Architecture and Design)

Computer Architecture: A Quantitative Approach (The Morgan Kaufmann Series in Computer Architecture and Design)

The book of “Computer Organization and Design: The Hardware/Software Interface” (there are 4 editions at the book is written) is for the introduction, while “Computer Architecture: A Quantitative Approach” is more complicate and deep in CPU architecture (there are 5 editions at the book is written).

Above two books use Mips CPU as an example since Mips is more RISC-like than other market CPUs. ARM serials of CPU dominate the embedded market especially in mobile phone and other portable devices. The following book is good which I am reading now.

ARM System Developer’s Guide: Designing and Optimizing System Software (The Morgan Kaufmann Series in Computer Architecture and Design).

## FUNCTION CALL

- *Mips stack frame*
- *Load incoming arguments from stack frame*
- *Store outgoing arguments to stack frame*
  - *Pseudo hook instruction ADJCALLSTACKDOWN and ADJCALLSTACKUP*
  - *Read Lowercall() with Graphviz's help*
  - *Long and short string initialization*
- *Structure type support*
  - *Ordinary struct type*
  - *byval struct type*
- *Function call optimization*
  - *Tail call optimization*
  - *Recursion optimization*
- *Other features supporting*
  - *The \$gp register caller saved register in PIC addressing mode*
  - *Variable number of arguments*
  - *Dynamic stack allocation support*
  - *Variable sized array support*
  - *Function related Intrinsics support*
    - \* *frameaddress and returnaddress intrinsics*
    - \* *eh.return intrinsic*
    - \* *eh.dwarf intrinsic*
    - \* *bswap intrinsic*
  - *Add specific backend intrinsic function*
- *Summary*

The subroutine/function call of backend translation is supported in this chapter. A lot of code are needed to support function call in this chapter. They are added according llvm supplied interface to explain easily. This chapter starts

from introducing the Mips stack frame structure since we borrow many parts of ABI from it. Although each CPU has its own ABI, most of ABI for RISC CPUs are similar. The section “4.5 DAG Lowering” of tricore\_llvm.pdf contains knowledge about Lowering process. Section “4.5.1 Calling Conventions” of tricore\_llvm.pdf is the related material you can reference further.

If you have problem in reading the stack frame illustrated in the first three sections of this chapter, you can read the appendix B of “Procedure Call Convention” of book “Computer Organization and Design, 1st Edition”<sup>1</sup>, “Run Time Memory” of compiler book, or “Function Call Sequence” and “Stack Frame” of Mips ABI<sup>3</sup>.

## 9.1 Mips stack frame

The first thing for designing the Cpu0 function call is deciding how to pass arguments in function call. There are two options. One is passing arguments all in stack. The other is passing arguments in the registers which are reserved for function arguments, and put the other arguments in stack if it over the number of registers reserved for function call. For example, Mips pass the first 4 arguments in register \$a0, \$a1, \$a2, \$a3, and the other arguments in stack if it over 4 arguments. Fig. 9.1 is the Mips stack frame.

Base	Offset	Contents	Frame
old \$sp	+16	unspecified variable size (if present) incoming arguments passed in stack frame	<i>High addresses</i>  Previous
		space for incoming arguments 1-4	
		locals and temporaries	
		general register save area	
		floating-point register save area	
	\$sp	argument build area	<i>Low addresses</i>  Current

Fig. 9.1: Mips stack frame

Run llc -march=mips for ch9\_1.bc, you will get the following result. See comments “//”.

### Ibdex/input/ch9\_1.cpp

```
int gI = 100;

int sum_i(int x1, int x2, int x3, int x4, int x5, int x6)
{
    int sum = gI + x1 + x2 + x3 + x4 + x5 + x6;

    return sum;
}
```

<sup>1</sup> Computer Organization and Design: The Hardware/Software Interface 1st edition (The Morgan Kaufmann Series in Computer Architecture and Design)

<sup>3</sup> <http://www.linux-mips.org/pub/linux/mips/doc/ABI/mipsabi.pdf>

```
int main()
{
    int a = sum_i(1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6);

    return a;
}
```

```
118-165-78-230:input Jonathan$ clang -target mips-unknown-linux-gnu -c
ch9_1.cpp -emit-llvm -o ch9_1.bc
118-165-78-230:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/
Debug/bin/llc -march=mips -relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm ch9_1.bc -o
ch9_1.mips.s
118-165-78-230:input Jonathan$ cat ch9_1.mips.s
.section .mdebug.abi32
.previous
.file "ch9_1.bc"
.text
.globl _Z5sum_iiiiii
.align 2
.type _Z5sum_iiiiii,@function
.set nomips16           # @_Z5sum_iiiiii
.ent _Z5sum_iiiiii
_Z5sum_iiiiii:
.cfi_startproc
.frame $sp,32,$ra
.mask 0x00000000,0
.fmask 0x00000000,0
.set noreorder
.set nomacro
.set noat
# BB#0:
addiu $sp, $sp, -32
$tmp1:
.cfi_def_cfa_offset 32
sw $4, 28($sp)
sw $5, 24($sp)
sw $t9, 20($sp)
sw $7, 16($sp)
lw $1, 48($sp) // load argument 5
sw $1, 12($sp)
lw $1, 52($sp) // load argument 6
sw $1, 8($sp)
lw $2, 24($sp)
lw $3, 28($sp)
addu $2, $3, $2
lw $3, 20($sp)
addu $2, $2, $3
lw $3, 16($sp)
addu $2, $2, $3
lw $3, 12($sp)
addu $2, $2, $3
addu $2, $2, $1
sw $2, 4($sp)
jr $ra
addiu $sp, $sp, 32
.set at
.set macro
.set reorder
```

```

.end _Z5sum_iiiiii
$tmp2:
.size _Z5sum_iiiiii, ($tmp2)-_Z5sum_iiiiii
.cfi_endproc

.globl main
.align 2
.type main,@function
.set nomips16           # @main
.ent main
main:
.cfi_startproc
.frame $sp,40,$ra
.mask 0x80000000,-4
.fmask 0x00000000,0
.set noreorder
.set nomacro
.set noat
# BB#0:
lui $2, %hi(_gp_disp)
ori $2, $2, %lo(_gp_disp)
addiu $sp, $sp, -40
$tmp5:
.cfi_def_cfa_offset 40
sw $ra, 36($sp)          # 4-byte Folded Spill
$tmp6:
.cfi_offset 31, -4
addu $gp, $2, $25
sw $zero, 32($sp)
addiu $1, $zero, 6
sw $1, 20($sp) // Save argument 6 to 20($sp)
addiu $1, $zero, 5
sw $1, 16($sp) // Save argument 5 to 16($sp)
lw $25, %call16(_Z5sum_iiiiii)($gp)
addiu $4, $zero, 1      // Pass argument 1 to $4 (=a0)
addiu $5, $zero, 2      // Pass argument 2 to $5 (=a1)
addiu $t9, $zero, 3
jalr $25
addiu $7, $zero, 4
sw $2, 28($sp)
lw $ra, 36($sp)          # 4-byte Folded Reload
jr $ra
addiu $sp, $sp, 40
.set at
.set macro
.set reorder
.end main
$tmp7:
.size main, ($tmp7)-main
.cfi_endproc

```

From the mips assembly code generated as above, we see that it saves the first 4 arguments to \$a0..\$a3 and last 2 arguments to 16(\$sp) and 20(\$sp). Fig. 9.2 is the location of arguments for example code ch9\_1.cpp. It loads argument 5 from 48(\$sp) in sum\_i() since the argument 5 is saved to 16(\$sp) in main(). The stack size of sum\_i() is 32, so 16+32(\$sp) is the location of incoming argument 5.

The 007-2418-003.pdf in here <sup>2</sup> is the Mips assembly language manual. Here <sup>3</sup> is Mips Application Binary Interface

---

<sup>2</sup> <http://math-atlas.sourceforge.net-devel/assembly/007-2418-003.pdf>

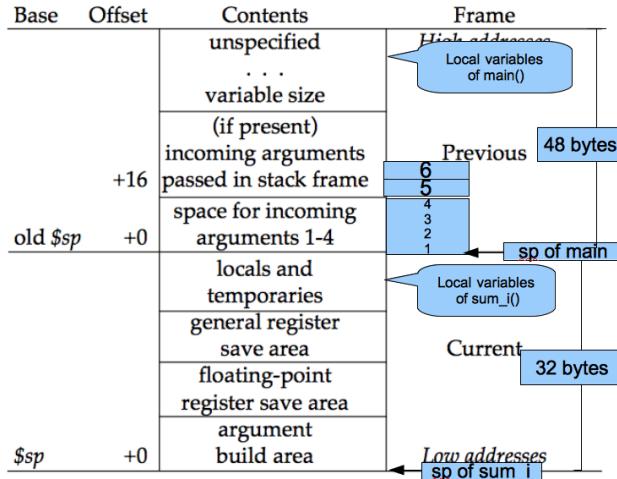


Fig. 9.2: Mips arguments location in stack frame

which include the Fig. 9.1.

## 9.2 Load incoming arguments from stack frame

From last section, in order to support function call, we need implementing the arguments passing mechanism with stack frame. Before doing it, let's run the old version of code Chapter8\_2/ with ch9\_1.cpp and see what happens.

```
118-165-79-31:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/
cmake_debug_build/Debug/bin/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm
ch9_1.bc -o ch9_1.cpu0.s
Assertion failed: (InVals.size() == Ins.size() && "LowerFormalArguments didn't
emit the correct number of values!"), function LowerArguments, file /Users/
Jonathan/llvm/test/src/lib/CodeGen/SelectionDAG/
SelectionDAGBuilder.cpp, ...
...
0. Program arguments: /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/
Debug/bin/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm ch9_1.bc -o
ch9_1.cpu0.s
1. Running pass 'Function Pass Manager' on module 'ch9_1.bc'.
2. Running pass 'CPU0 DAG->DAG Pattern Instruction Selection' on function
'@_Z5sum_iiiiiii'.
Illegal instruction: 4
```

Since Chapter8\_2/ define the LowerFormalArguments() with empty body, we get the error messages as above. Before defining LowerFormalArguments(), we have to choose how to pass arguments in function call. For demonstration, Cpu0 passes first two arguments in registers as default setting of llc -cpu0-s32-calls=false . When llc -cpu0-s32-calls=true , Cpu0 passes all it's arguments in stack.

Function LowerFormalArguments() is in charge of incoming arguments creation. We define it as follows,

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter9\_1/Cpu0ISelLowering.h

```
class Cpu0TargetLowering : public TargetLowering {
```

```
/// Cpu0CC - This class provides methods used to analyze formal and call
/// arguments and inquire about calling convention information.
class Cpu0CC {
```

```
    void analyzeFormalArguments(const SmallVectorImpl<ISD::InputArg> &Ins,
                                bool IsSoftFloat,
                                Function::const_arg_iterator FuncArg);
```

```
    /// regSize - Size (in number of bits) of integer registers.
    unsigned regSize() const { return IsO32 ? 4 : 4; }
    /// numIntArgRegs - Number of integer registers available for calls.
    unsigned numIntArgRegs() const;
```

```
    /// Return pointer to array of integer argument registers.
    const ArrayRef<MCPhysReg> intArgRegs() const;
```

```
    void handleByValArg(unsigned ValNo, MVT ValVT, MVT LocVT,
                        CCValAssign::LocInfo LocInfo,
                        ISD::ArgFlagsTy ArgFlags);

    /// useRegsForByval - Returns true if the calling convention allows the
    /// use of registers to pass byval arguments.
    bool useRegsForByval() const { return CallConv != CallingConv::Fast; }

    /// Return the function that analyzes fixed argument list functions.
    llvm::CCAssignFn *fixedArgFn() const;
```

```
    void allocateRegs(ByValArgInfo &ByVal, unsigned ByValSize,
                      unsigned Align);
```

```
};  
...
```

```
    /// isEligibleForTailCallOptimization - Check whether the call is eligible
    /// for tail call optimization.
    virtual bool
    isEligibleForTailCallOptimization(const Cpu0CC &Cpu0CCInfo,
                                      unsigned NextStackOffset,
                                      const Cpu0FunctionInfo& FI) const = 0;
```

```
    /// copyByValArg - Copy argument registers which were used to pass a byval
    /// argument to the stack. Create a stack frame object for the byval
    /// argument.
    void copyByValRegs(SDValue Chain, const SDLoc &DL,
                       std::vector<SDValue> &OutChains, SelectionDAG &DAG,
                       const ISD::ArgFlagsTy &Flags,
                       SmallVectorImpl<SDValue> &InVals,
                       const Argument *FuncArg,
                       const Cpu0CC &CC, const ByValArgInfo &ByVal) const;
```

```
    SDValue LowerCall(TargetLowering::CallLoweringInfo &CLI,
                      SmallVectorImpl<SDValue> &InVals) const override;
```

```
    ...
}
```

### Index/chapters/Chapter9\_1/Cpu0ISelLowering.cpp

```
// addLiveIn - This helper function adds the specified physical register to the
// MachineFunction as a live in value. It also creates a corresponding
// virtual register for it.
static unsigned
addLiveIn(MachineFunction &MF, unsigned PReg, const TargetRegisterClass *RC)
{
    unsigned VReg = MF.getRegInfo().createVirtualRegister(RC);
    MF.getRegInfo().addLiveIn(PReg, VReg);
    return VReg;
}
```

```
=====//
// TODO: Implement a generic logic using tblgen that can support this.
// Cpu0 32 ABI rules:
// ---
=====//

// Passed in stack only.
static bool CC_Cpu0S32(unsigned ValNo, MVT ValVT, MVT LocVT,
                      CCValAssign::LocInfo LocInfo, ISD::ArgFlagsTy ArgFlags,
                      CCState &State) {
    // Do not process byval args here.
    if (ArgFlags.isByVal())
        return true;

    // Promote i8 and i16
    if (LocVT == MVT::i8 || LocVT == MVT::i16) {
        LocVT = MVT::i32;
        if (ArgFlags.isSExt())
            LocInfo = CCValAssign::SExt;
        else if (ArgFlags.isZExt())
            LocInfo = CCValAssign::ZExt;
        else
            LocInfo = CCValAssign::AExt;
    }

    unsigned OrigAlign = ArgFlags.getOrigAlign();
    unsigned Offset = State.AllocateStack(ValVT.getSizeInBits() >> 3,
                                         OrigAlign);
    State.addLoc(CCValAssign::getMem(ValNo, ValVT, Offset, LocVT, LocInfo));
    return false;
}

// Passed first two i32 arguments in registers and others in stack.
static bool CC_Cpu0O32(unsigned ValNo, MVT ValVT, MVT LocVT,
                      CCValAssign::LocInfo LocInfo, ISD::ArgFlagsTy ArgFlags,
                      CCState &State) {
    static const MCPHYSREG IntRegs[] = { Cpu0::A0, Cpu0::A1 };

    // Do not process byval args here.
```

```

if (ArgFlags.isByVal())
    return true;

// Promote i8 and i16
if (LocVT == MVT::i8 || LocVT == MVT::i16) {
    LocVT = MVT::i32;
    if (ArgFlags.isSExt())
        LocInfo = CCValAssign::SExt;
    else if (ArgFlags.isZExt())
        LocInfo = CCValAssign::ZExt;
    else
        LocInfo = CCValAssign::AExt;
}

unsigned Reg;

// f32 and f64 are allocated in A0, A1 when either of the following
// is true: function is vararg, argument is 3rd or higher, there is previous
// argument which is not f32 or f64.
bool AllocateFloatsInIntReg = true;
unsigned OrigAlign = ArgFlags.getOrigAlign();
bool isI64 = (ValVT == MVT::i32 && OrigAlign == 8);

if (ValVT == MVT::i32 || (ValVT == MVT::f32 && AllocateFloatsInIntReg)) {
    Reg = State.AllocateReg(IntRegs);
    // If this is the first part of an i64 arg,
    // the allocated register must be A0.
    if (isI64 && (Reg == Cpu0::A1))
        Reg = State.AllocateReg(IntRegs);
    LocVT = MVT::i32;
} else if (ValVT == MVT::f64 && AllocateFloatsInIntReg) {
    // Allocate int register. If first
    // available register is Cpu0::A1, shadow it too.
    Reg = State.AllocateReg(IntRegs);
    if (Reg == Cpu0::A1)
        Reg = State.AllocateReg(IntRegs);
    State.AllocateReg(IntRegs);
    LocVT = MVT::i32;
} else
    llvm_unreachable("Cannot handle this ValVT.");

if (!Reg) {
    unsigned Offset = State.AllocateStack(ValVT.getSizeInBits() >> 3,
                                          OrigAlign);
    State.addLoc(CCValAssign::getMem(ValNo, ValVT, Offset, LocVT, LocInfo));
} else
    State.addLoc(CCValAssign::getReg(ValNo, ValVT, Reg, LocVT, LocInfo));

return false;
}

```

```

//=====
//          Call Calling Convention Implementation
//=====

static const MCPhysReg O32IntRegs[] = {
    Cpu0::A0, Cpu0::A1
};

```

```

//@LowerCall {
/// LowerCall - functions arguments are copied from virtual regs to
/// (physical regs)/(stack frame), CALLSEQ_START and CALLSEQ_END are emitted.
SDValue
Cpu0TargetLowering::LowerCall(TargetLowering::CallLoweringInfo &CLI,
                           SmallVectorImpl<SDValue> &InVals) const {

//@LowerCall {
/// LowerCall - functions arguments are copied from virtual regs to
/// (physical regs)/(stack frame), CALLSEQ_START and CALLSEQ_END are emitted.
SDValue
Cpu0TargetLowering::LowerCall(TargetLowering::CallLoweringInfo &CLI,
                           SmallVectorImpl<SDValue> &InVals) const {

    return CLI.Chain;

}

//=====
//@LowerFormalArguments {
/// LowerFormalArguments - transform physical registers into virtual registers
/// and generate load operations for arguments places on the stack.
SDValue
Cpu0TargetLowering::LowerFormalArguments(SDValue Chain,
                                         CallingConv::ID CallConv,
                                         bool IsVarArg,
                                         const SmallVectorImpl<ISD::InputArg> &Ins,
                                         const SDLoc &DL, SelectionDAG &DAG,
                                         SmallVectorImpl<SDValue> &InVals)
                                         const {
MachineFunction &MF = DAG.getMachineFunction();
MachineFrameInfo *MFI = MF.getFrameInfo();
Cpu0FunctionInfo *Cpu0FI = MF.getInfo<Cpu0FunctionInfo>();

Cpu0FI->setVarArgsFrameIndex(0);

// Assign locations to all of the incoming arguments.
SmallVector<CCValAssign, 16> ArgLocs;
CCState CCInfo(CallConv, IsVarArg, DAG.getMachineFunction(),
               ArgLocs, *DAG.getContext());
Cpu0CC Cpu0CCInfo(CallConv, ABI.IsO32(),
                  CCInfo);

Function::const_arg_iterator FuncArg =
    DAG.getMachineFunction().getFunction()->arg_begin();
bool UseSoftFloat = Subtarget.abiUsesSoftFloat();

Cpu0CCInfo.analyzeFormalArguments(Ins, UseSoftFloat, FuncArg);
Cpu0FI->setFormalArgInfo(CCInfo.getNextStackOffset(),
                           Cpu0CCInfo.hasByValArg());

// Used with vargs to accumulate store chains.
std::vector<SDValue> OutChains;

```

```

unsigned CurArgIdx = 0;
Cpu0CC::byval_iterator ByValArg = Cpu0CCInfo.byval_begin();

//@2 {
for (unsigned i = 0, e = ArgLocs.size(); i != e; ++i) {
//@2 }
    CCValAssign &VA = ArgLocs[i];
    if (Ins[i].isOrigArg()) {
        std::advance(FuncArg, Ins[i].getOrigArgIndex() - CurArgIdx);
        CurArgIdx = Ins[i].getOrigArgIndex();
    }
    EVT ValVT = VA.getValVT();
    ISD::ArgFlagsTy Flags = Ins[i].Flags;
    bool IsRegLoc = VA.isRegLoc();

    //@byval pass {
    if (Flags.isByVal()) {
        assert(Flags.getByValSize() &&
               "ByVal args of size 0 should have been ignored by front-end.");
        assert(ByValArg != Cpu0CCInfo.byval_end());
        copyByValRegs(Chain, DL, OutChains, DAG, Flags, InVals, &FuncArg,
                      Cpu0CCInfo, *ByValArg);
        ++ByValArg;
        continue;
    }
    //@byval pass }
    // Arguments stored on registers
    if (ABI.IsO32() && IsRegLoc) {
        MVT RegVT = VA.getLocVT();
        unsigned ArgReg = VA.getLocReg();
        const TargetRegisterClass *RC = getRegClassFor(RegVT);

        // Transform the arguments stored on
        // physical registers into virtual ones
        unsigned Reg = addLiveIn(DAG.getMachineFunction(), ArgReg, RC);
        SDValue ArgValue = DAG.getCopyFromReg(Chain, DL, Reg, RegVT);

        // If this is an 8 or 16-bit value, it has been passed promoted
        // to 32 bits. Insert an assert[sz]ext to capture this, then
        // truncate to the right size.
        if (VA.getLocInfo() != CCValAssign::Full) {
            unsigned Opcode = 0;
            if (VA.getLocInfo() == CCValAssign::SExt)
                Opcode = ISD::AssertSext;
            else if (VA.getLocInfo() == CCValAssign::ZExt)
                Opcode = ISD::AssertZext;
            if (Opcode)
                ArgValue = DAG.getNode(Opcode, DL, RegVT, ArgValue,
                                      DAG.getValueType(ValVT));
            ArgValue = DAG.getNode(ISD::TRUNCATE, DL, ValVT, ArgValue);
        }

        // Handle floating point arguments passed in integer registers.
        if ((RegVT == MVT::i32 && ValVT == MVT::f32) ||
            (RegVT == MVT::i64 && ValVT == MVT::f64))
            ArgValue = DAG.getNode(ISD::BITCAST, DL, ValVT, ArgValue);
        InVals.push_back(ArgValue);
    } else { // VA.isRegLoc()
}

```

```

MVT LocVT = VA.getLocVT();

// sanity check
assert(VA.isMemLoc());

// The stack pointer offset is relative to the caller stack frame.
int FI = MFI->CreateFixedObject(ValVT.getSizeInBits()/8,
                                 VA.getLocMemOffset(), true);

// Create load nodes to retrieve arguments from the stack
SDValue FIN = DAG.getFrameIndex(FI, getPointerTy(DAG.getDataLayout()));
SDValue Load = DAG.getLoad(
    LocVT, DL, Chain, FIN,
    MachinePointerInfo::getFixedStack(DAG.getMachineFunction(), FI));
InVals.push_back(Load);
OutChains.push_back(Load.getValue(1));
}
}

//@Ordinary struct type: 1 {
for (unsigned i = 0, e = ArgLocs.size(); i != e; ++i) {
    // The cpu0 ABIs for returning structs by value requires that we copy
    // the sret argument into $v0 for the return. Save the argument into
    // a virtual register so that we can access it from the return points.
    if (Ins[i].Flags.isSRet()) {
        unsigned Reg = Cpu0FI->getSRetReturnReg();
        if (!Reg) {
            Reg = MF.getRegInfo().createVirtualRegister(
                getRegClassFor(MVT::i32));
            Cpu0FI->setSRetReturnReg(Reg);
        }
        SDValue Copy = DAG.getCopyToReg(DAG.getEntryNode(), DL, Reg, InVals[i]);
        Chain = DAG.getNode(ISD::TokenFactor, DL, MVT::Other, Copy, Chain);
        break;
    }
}
//@Ordinary struct type: 1 }

// All stores are grouped in one node to allow the matching between
// the size of Ins and InVals. This only happens when on varg functions
if (!OutChains.empty()) {
    OutChains.push_back(Chain);
    Chain = DAG.getNode(ISD::TokenFactor, DL, MVT::Other, OutChains);
}

return Chain;
}
// @LowerFormalArguments }

//=====//

```

```

void Cpu0TargetLowering::Cpu0CC::
analyzeFormalArguments(const SmallVectorImpl<ISD::InputArg> &Args,
                      bool IsSoftFloat, Function::const_arg_iterator FuncArg) {
    unsigned NumArgs = Args.size();
    llvm::CCAssignFn *FixedFn = fixedArgFn();
    unsigned CurArgIdx = 0;

```

```

for (unsigned I = 0; I != NumArgs; ++I) {
    MVT ArgVT = Args[I].VT;
    ISD::ArgFlagsTy ArgFlags = Args[I].Flags;
    if (Args[I].isOrigArg()) {
        std::advance(FuncArg, Args[I].getOrigArgIndex() - CurArgIdx);
        CurArgIdx = Args[I].getOrigArgIndex();
    }
    CurArgIdx = Args[I].OrigArgIndex;

    if (ArgFlags.isByVal()) {
        handleByValArg(I, ArgVT, ArgVT, CCValAssign::Full, ArgFlags);
        continue;
    }

    MVT RegVT = getRegVT(ArgVT, FuncArg->getType(), nullptr, IsSoftFloat);

    if (!FixedFn(I, ArgVT, RegVT, CCValAssign::Full, ArgFlags, CCIInfo))
        continue;

#ifndef NDEBUG
    dbgs() << "Formal Arg #" << I << " has unhandled type "
        << EVT(ArgVT).getEVTString();
#endif
    llvm_unreachable(nullptr);
}
}

```

```

void Cpu0TargetLowering::Cpu0CC::handleByValArg(unsigned ValNo, MVT ValVT,
                                                MVT LocVT,
                                                CCValAssign::LocInfo LocInfo,
                                                ISD::ArgFlagsTy ArgFlags) {
    assert(ArgFlags.getByValSize() && "Byval argument's size shouldn't be 0.");

    struct ByValArgInfo ByVal;
    unsigned RegSize = regSize();
    unsigned ByValSize = alignTo(ArgFlags.getByValSize(), RegSize);
    unsigned Align = std::min(std::max(ArgFlags.getByValAlign(), RegSize),
                             RegSize * 2);

    if (useRegsForByval())
        allocateRegs(ByVal, ByValSize, Align);

    // Allocate space on caller's stack.
    ByVal.Address = CCIInfo.AllocateStack( ByValSize - RegSize * ByVal.NumRegs,
                                           Align );
    CCIInfo.addLoc(CCValAssign::getMem(ValNo, ValVT, ByVal.Address, LocVT,
                                       LocInfo));
    ByValArgs.push_back(ByVal);
}

unsigned Cpu0TargetLowering::Cpu0CC::numIntArgRegs() const {
    return IsO32 ? array_lengthof(O32IntRegs) : 0;
}

```

```

const ArrayRef<MCPhysReg> Cpu0TargetLowering::Cpu0CC::intArgRegs() const {
    return makeArrayRef(O32IntRegs);
}

```

```
llvm::CCAssignFn *Cpu0TargetLowering::Cpu0CC::fixedArgFn() const {
    if (IsO32)
        return CC_Cpu0O32;
    else // IsS32
        return CC_Cpu0S32;
}
```

```
void Cpu0TargetLowering::Cpu0CC::allocateRegs(ByValArgInfo &ByVal,
                                              unsigned ByValSize,
                                              unsigned Align) {
    unsigned RegSize = regSize(), NumIntArgRegs = numIntArgRegs();
    const ArrayRef<MCPhysReg> IntArgRegs = intArgRegs();
    assert(!(ByValSize % RegSize) && !(Align % RegSize) &&
           "Byval argument's size and alignment should be a multiple of"
           "RegSize.");
    ByVal.FirstIdx = CCInfo.getFirstUnallocated(IntArgRegs);

    // If Align > RegSize, the first arg register must be even.
    if ((Align > RegSize) && (ByVal.FirstIdx % 2)) {
        CCInfo.AllocateReg(IntArgRegs[ByVal.FirstIdx]);
        ++ByVal.FirstIdx;
    }

    // Mark the registers allocated.
    for (unsigned I = ByVal.FirstIdx; ByValSize && (I < NumIntArgRegs);
         ByValSize -= RegSize, ++I, ++ByVal.NumRegs)
        CCInfo.AllocateReg(IntArgRegs[I]);
}
```

Refresh “section Global variable”<sup>4</sup>, we handled global variable translation by creating the IR DAG in LowerGlobalAddress() first, and then finish the Instruction Selection according their corresponding machine instruction DAGs in Cpu0InstrInfo.td. LowerGlobalAddress() is called when llc meets the global variable access. LowerFormalArguments() work in the same way. It is called when function is entered. It gets incoming arguments information by CCInfo(CallConv,..., ArgLocs, ...) before entering “**for loop**”. In ch9\_1.cpp, there are 6 arguments in sum\_i(...) function call. So ArgLocs.size() is 6, each argument information is in ArgLocs[i]. When VA.isRegLoc() is true, meaning the argument passes in register. On the contrary, when VA.isMemLoc() is true, meaning the argument pass in memory stack. When passing in register, it marks the register “live in” and copy directly from the register. When passing in memory stack, it creates stack offset for this frame index object and load node with the created stack offset, and then puts the load node into vector InVals.

When llc -cpu0-s32-calls=false it passes first two arguments registers and the other arguments in stack frame. When llc -cpu0-s32-calls=true it passes all arguments in stack frame.

Before taking care the arguments as above, it calls analyzeFormalArguments(). In analyzeFormalArguments() it calls fixedArgFn() which return the function pointer of CC\_Cpu0O32() or CC\_Cpu0S32(). ArgFlags.isByVal() will be true when it meets “struct pointer byval” keyword, such as “%struct.S\* byval” in tailcall.ll. When llc -cpu0-s32-calls=false the stack offset begin from 8 (in case the argument registers need spill out) while llc -cpu0-s32-calls=true stack offset begin from 0.

For instance of example code ch9\_1.cpp with llc -cpu0-s32-calls=true (using memory stack only to pass arguments), LowerFormalArguments() will be called twice. First time is for sum\_i() which will create 6 “load DAGs” for 6 incoming arguments passing into this function. Second time is for main() which won’t create any “load DAG” since no incoming argument passing into main(). In addition to LowerFormalArguments() which creates the “load

<sup>4</sup> <http://jonathan2251.github.io/lbd/globalvar.html#global-variable>

DAG”, we need loadRegFromStackSlot() (defined in the early chapter) to issue the machine instruction “**ld \$r, offset(\$sp)**” to load incoming arguments from stack frame offset. GetMemOperand(..., FI, ...) return the Memory location of the frame index variable, which is the offset.

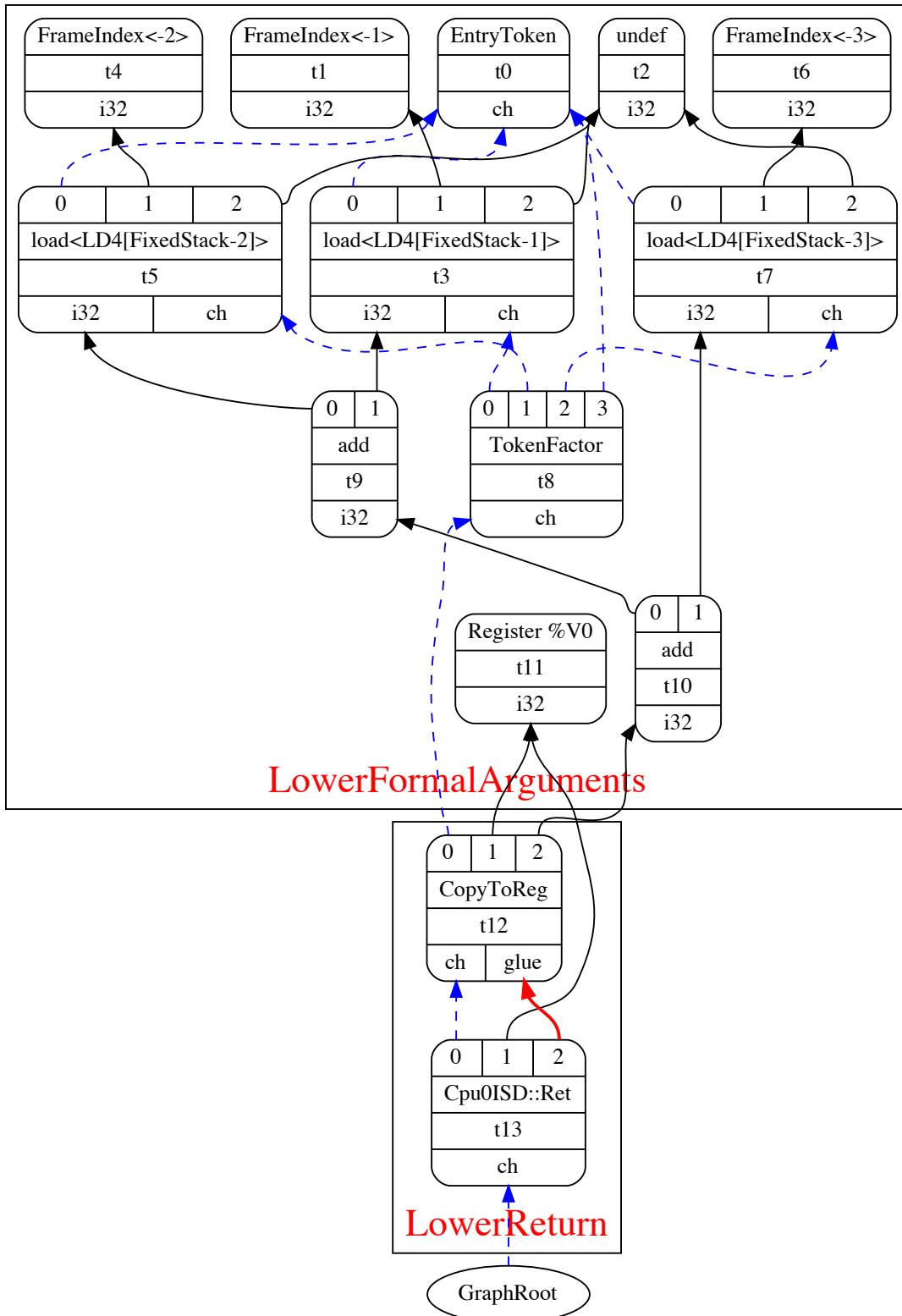
For input ch9\_incoming.cpp as below, LowerFormalArguments() will generate the red box parts of DAG nodes shown as the next two figures for llc -cpu0-s32-calls=true and llc -cpu0-s32-calls=false , respectively. The root node at bottom is created by

### Ibdex/input/ch9\_incoming.cpp

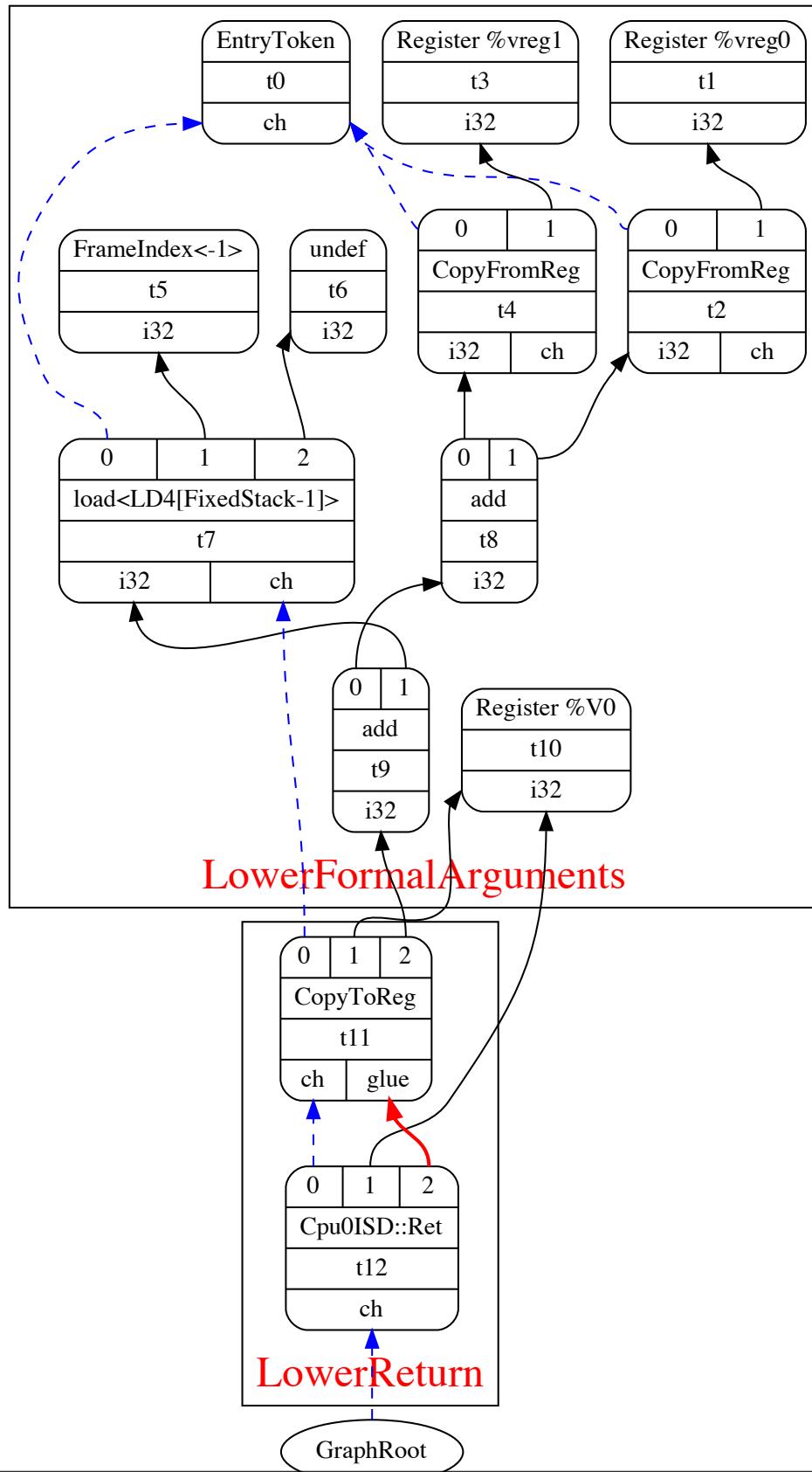
```
int sum_i(int x1, int x2, int x3)
{
    int sum = x1 + x2 + x3;

    return sum;
}
```

```
JonathantekiiMac:input Jonathan$ clang -O3 -target mips-unknown-linux-gnu -c
ch9_incoming.cpp -emit-llvm -o ch9_incoming.bc
JonathantekiiMac:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/
Debug/bin/llvm-dis ch9_incoming.bc -o -
...
define i32 @_Z5sum_iiii(i32 %x1, i32 %x2, i32 %x3) #0 {
    %1 = add nsw i32 %x2, %x1
    %2 = add nsw i32 %1, %x3
    ret i32 %2
}
```



Incoming arguments DAG created for `ch9_incoming.cpp` with `-cpu0-s32-calls=true`



In addition to Calling Convention and LowerFormalArguments(), Chapter9\_1/ adds the following code for the instruction selection and printing of Cpu0 instructions **swi** (Software Interrupt), **jsub** and **jalr** (function call).

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter9\_1/Cpu0InstrInfo.td

```
def SDT_Cpu0JmpLink : SDTypeProfile<0, 1, [SDTCisVT<0, iPTR]>;
```

```
// Call
def Cpu0JmpLink : SDNode<"Cpu0ISD::JmpLink", SDT_Cpu0JmpLink,
    [SDNPHasChain, SDNPOutGlue, SDNPOptInGlue,
     SDNPVariadic]>;
```

```
class IsTailCall {
    bit isCall = 1;
    bit isTerminator = 1;
    bit isReturn = 1;
    bit isBarrier = 1;
    bit hasExtraSrcRegAllocReq = 1;
    bit isCodeGenOnly = 1;
}
```

```
def calltarget : Operand<iPTR> {
    let EncoderMethod = "getJumpTargetOpValue";
}
```

```
let Predicates = [Ch9_1] in {
// Jump and Link (Call)
let isCall=1, hasDelaySlot=1 in {
    // @JumpLink {
    class JumpLink<bits<8> op, string instr_asm>:
        FJ<op, (outs), (ins calltarget:$target, variable_ops),
        !strconcat(instr_asm, "\t$target"), [(Cpu0JmpLink imm:$target)], 
        IIBranch> {
    //##if CH >= CH10_1 2
        let DecoderMethod = "DecodeJumpTarget";
    //##endif
        }
    // @JumpLink }

    class JumpLinkReg<bits<8> op, string instr_asm,
                    RegisterClass RC>:
        FA<op, (outs), (ins RC:$rb, variable_ops),
        !strconcat(instr_asm, "\t$rb"), [(Cpu0JmpLink RC:$rb)], IIBranch> {
        let rc = 0;
        let ra = 14;
        let shamt = 0;
    }
}
```

```
/// Jump & link and Return Instructions
let Predicates = [Ch9_1] in {
def JSUB : JumpLink<0x3b, "jsub">;
}
```

```
let Predicates = [Ch9_1] in {
def JALR      : JumpLinkReg<0x39, "jalr", GPROut>;
}
```

```
let Predicates = [Ch9_1] in {
def : Pat<(Cpu0JmpLink (i32 tglobaladdr:$dst)),
       (JSUB tglobaladdr:$dst)>;
def : Pat<(Cpu0JmpLink (i32 texternalsym:$dst)),
       (JSUB texternalsym:$dst)>;
}
```

```
}
```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter9\_1/Cpu0MCInstLower.cpp

```
MCOperand Cpu0MCInstLower::LowerSymbolOperand(const MachineOperand &MO,
                                              MachineOperandType MOTy,
                                              unsigned Offset) const {
    MCSymbolRefExpr::VariantKind Kind = MCSymbolRefExpr::VK_None;
    Cpu0MCE Expr::Cpu0ExprKind TargetKind = Cpu0MCE Expr::CEK_None;
    const MCSymbol *Symbol;

    switch (MO.getTargetFlags()) {
```

```
        case Cpu0II::MO_GOT_CALL:
            TargetKind = Cpu0MCE Expr::CEK_GOT_CALL;
            break;
```

```
        ...
    }
    switch (MOTy) {
        ...
```

```
        case MachineOperand::MO_ExternalSymbol:
            Symbol = AsmPrinter.GetExternalSymbolSymbol(MO.getSymbolName());
            Offset += MO.getOffset();
            break;
```

```
        ...
    }
```

```
    MCOperand Cpu0MCInstLower::LowerOperand(const MachineOperand& MO,
                                             unsigned offset) const {
        MachineOperandType MOTy = MO.getType();

        switch (MOTy) {
            // @2
```

```
            case MachineOperand::MO_ExternalSymbol:
```

```
return LowerSymbolOperand(MO, MOTy, offset);
```

```
...
}
...
}
```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter9\_1/MCTargetDesc/Cpu0AsmBackend.cpp

```
// Prepare value for the target space for it
static unsigned adjustFixupValue(const MCFixup &Fixup, uint64_t Value,
                                MCContext *Ctx = nullptr) {

    unsigned Kind = Fixup.getKind();

    // Add/subtract and shift
    switch (Kind) {

        case Cpu0::fixup_Cpu0_CALL16:

            ...
        }
        ...
    }
```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter9\_1/MCTargetDesc/Cpu0ELFObjectWriter.cpp

```
unsigned Cpu0ELFObjectWriter::getRelocType(MCContext &Ctx,
                                           const MCValue &Target,
                                           const MCFixup &Fixup,
                                           bool IsPCRel) const {
    // determine the type of the relocation
    unsigned Type = (unsigned)ELF::R_CPU0_NONE;
    unsigned Kind = (unsigned)Fixup.getKind();

    switch (Kind) {

        case Cpu0::fixup_Cpu0_CALL16:
            Type = ELF::R_CPU0_CALL16;
            break;

        ...
    }
}
```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter9\_1/MCTargetDesc/Cpu0FixupKinds.h

```
enum Fixups {  
  
    // resulting in - R_CPU0_CALL16.  
    fixup_Cpu0_CALL16,  
  
    ...  
};
```

### Index/chapters/Chapter9\_1/MCTargetDesc/Cpu0MCCodeEmitter.cpp

```
unsigned Cpu0MCCodeEmitter::  
getJumpTargetOpValue(const MCInst &MI, unsigned OpNo,  
                    SmallVectorImpl<MCFixup> &Fixups,  
                    const MCSubtargetInfo &STI) const {  
  
    if (Opcode == Cpu0::JSUB || Opcode == Cpu0::JMP || Opcode == Cpu0::BAL)  
#elif CH >= CH8_2 //1  
    if (Opcode == Cpu0::JMP || Opcode == Cpu0::BAL)  
  
    Fixups.push_back(MCFixup::create(0, Expr,  
                                    MCFixupKind(Cpu0::fixup_Cpu0_PC24)));  
  
    ...  
}  
  
unsigned Cpu0MCCodeEmitter::  
getExprOpValue(const MCExpr *Expr, SmallVectorImpl<MCFixup> &Fixups,  
               const MCSubtargetInfo &STI) const {  
  
//    switch(cast<MCSymbolRefExpr>(Expr)->getKind()) {  
  
    case Cpu0MCExpr::CEK_GOT_CALL:  
        FixupKind = Cpu0::fixup_Cpu0_CALL16;  
        break;  
  
    ...  
}  
...  
}
```

### Index/chapters/Chapter9\_1/Cpu0MachineFunction.h

```
/// Cpu0FunctionInfo - This class is derived from MachineFunction private  
/// Cpu0 target-specific information for each MachineFunction.  
class Cpu0FunctionInfo : public MachineFunctionInfo {  
public:  
    Cpu0FunctionInfo(MachineFunction& MF)  
        : MF(MF),
```

```
InArgFIRange(std::make_pair(-1, 0)),
OutArgFIRange(std::make_pair(-1, 0)), GPFI(0), DynAllocFI(0),
```

```
bool isInArgFI(int FI) const {
    return FI <= InArgFIRange.first && FI >= InArgFIRange.second;
}
void setLastInArgFI(int FI) { InArgFIRange.second = FI; }
bool isOutArgFI(int FI) const {
    return FI <= OutArgFIRange.first && FI >= OutArgFIRange.second;
}
```

```
int getGPFI() const { return GPFI; }
void setGPFI(int FI) { GPFI = FI; }
bool isGPFI(int FI) const { return GPFI && GPFI == FI; }
```

```
bool isDynAllocFI(int FI) const { return DynAllocFI && DynAllocFI == FI; }
```

```
// Range of frame object indices.
// InArgFIRange: Range of indices of all frame objects created during call to
//                 LowerFormalArguments.
// OutArgFIRange: Range of indices of all frame objects created during call to
//                 LowerCall except for the frame object for restoring $gp.
std::pair<int, int> InArgFIRange, OutArgFIRange;
```

```
mutable int DynAllocFI; // Frame index of dynamically allocated stack area.
```

```
...  
};
```

## Ibdex/chapters/Chapter9\_1/Cpu0SEFrameLowering.h

```
bool spillCalleeSavedRegisters(MachineBasicBlock &MBB,
                                MachineBasicBlock::iterator MI,
                                const std::vector<CalleeSavedInfo> &CSI,
                                const TargetRegisterInfo *TRI) const override;
```

## Ibdex/chapters/Chapter9\_1/Cpu0SEFrameLowering.cpp

```
bool Cpu0SEFrameLowering::
spillCalleeSavedRegisters(MachineBasicBlock &MBB,
                          MachineBasicBlock::iterator MI,
                          const std::vector<CalleeSavedInfo> &CSI,
                          const TargetRegisterInfo *TRI) const {
    MachineFunction *MF = MBB.getParent();
    MachineBasicBlock *EntryBlock = &MF->front();
    const TargetInstrInfo &TII = *MF->getSubtarget().getInstrInfo();

    for (unsigned i = 0, e = CSI.size(); i != e; ++i) {
        // Add the callee-saved register as live-in. Do not add if the register is
        // LR and return address is taken, because it has already been added in
```

```

// method Cpu0TargetLowering::LowerRETURNADDR.
// It's killed at the spill, unless the register is LR and return address
// is taken.
unsigned Reg = CSI[i].getReg();
bool IsRAAndRetAddrIsTaken = (Reg == Cpu0::LR)
    && MF->getFrameInfo()->isReturnAddressTaken();
if (!IsRAAndRetAddrIsTaken)
    EntryBlock->addLiveIn(Reg);

// Insert the spill to the stack frame.
bool IsKill = !IsRAAndRetAddrIsTaken;
const TargetRegisterClass *RC = TRI->getMinimalPhysRegClass(Reg);
TII.storeRegToStackSlot(*EntryBlock, MI, Reg, IsKill,
                       CSI[i].getFrameIdx(), RC, TRI);
}

return true;
}

```

Both JSUB and JALR defined in Cpu0InstrInfo.td as above use Cpu0JmpLink node. They are distinguishable since JSUB use “imm” operand while JALR uses register operand.

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter9\_1/Cpu0InstrInfo.td

```

let Predicates = [Ch9_1] in {
def : Pat<(Cpu0JmpLink (i32 tglobaladdr:$dst)),
           (JSUB tglobaladdr:$dst)>;
def : Pat<(Cpu0JmpLink (i32 texternalsym:$dst)),
           (JSUB texternalsym:$dst)>;

```

The code tells TableGen generating pattern match code that matching the “imm” for “tglobaladdr” pattern first. If it fails then trying to match “texternalsym” next. The function you declared belongs to “tglobaladdr”, (for instance the function sum\_i(...) defined in ch9\_1.cpp belongs to “tglobaladdr”); the function which implicitly used by llvm belongs to “texternalsym” (for instance the function “memcpy” belongs to “texternalsym”). The “memcpy” will be generated when defining a long string. The ch9\_1\_2.cpp is an example for generating “memcpy” function call. It will be shown in next section with Chapter9\_2 example code. Cpu0GenDAGISel.inc contains pattern matched information of JSUB and JALR which generated from TablGen as follows,

```

/*SwitchOpcode*/ 74, TARGET_VAL(Cpu0ISD::JmpLink), // ->734
/*660*/
OPC_RecordNode, // #0 = 'Cpu0JmpLink' chained node
/*661*/
OPC_CaptureGlueInput,
/*662*/
OPC_RecordChild1, // #1 = $target
/*663*/
OPC_Scope, 57, /*->722*/ // 2 children in Scope
/*665*/
OPC_MoveChild, 1,
/*667*/
OPC_SwitchOpcode /*3 cases */, 22, TARGET_VAL(ISD::Constant),
// ->693
/*671*/
OPC_MoveParent,
/*672*/
OPC_EmitMergeInputChains1_0,
/*673*/
OPC_EmitConvertToTarget, 1,
/*675*/
OPC_Scope, 7, /*->684*/ // 2 children in Scope
/*684*/
/*Scope*/ 7, /*->692*/
/*685*/
OPC_MorphNodeTo, TARGET_VAL(Cpu0::JSUB), 0|OPFL_Chain|
OPFL_GlueInput|OPFL_GlueOutput|OPFL_Variadic1,
0/*#VTS*/, 1/*#Ops*/, 2,
// Src: (Cpu0JmpLink (imm:iPTR)::$target) - Complexity = 6

```

```

/*692*/
        // Dst: (JSUB (imm:iPTR):$target)
        0, /*End of Scope*/
/*696*/
        /*SwitchOpcode*/ 11, TARGET_VAL(ISD::TargetGlobalAddress), // ->707
        OPC_CheckType, MVT::i32,
/*698*/
        OPC_MoveParent,
/*699*/
        OPC_EmitMergeInputChains1_0,
/*700*/
        OPC_MorphNodeTo, TARGET_VAL(Cpu0::JSUB), 0|OPFL_Chain|
OPFL_GlueInput|OPFL_GlueOutput|OPFL_Variadic1,
        0/*#VTS*/, 1/*#Ops*/, 1,
        // Src: (Cpu0JmpLink (tglobaladdr:i32):$dst) - Complexity = 6
        // Dst: (JSUB (tglobaladdr:i32):$dst)
/*704*/
        /*SwitchOpcode*/ 11, TARGET_VAL(ISD::TargetExternalSymbol), // ->721
        OPC_CheckType, MVT::i32,
/*712*/
        OPC_MoveParent,
/*713*/
        OPC_EmitMergeInputChains1_0,
/*714*/
        OPC_MorphNodeTo, TARGET_VAL(Cpu0::JSUB), 0|OPFL_Chain|
OPFL_GlueInput|OPFL_GlueOutput|OPFL_Variadic1,
        0/*#VTS*/, 1/*#Ops*/, 1,
        // Src: (Cpu0JmpLink (texternalsym:i32):$dst) - Complexity = 6
        // Dst: (JSUB (texternalsym:i32):$dst)
        0, // EndSwitchOpcode
/*722*/
        /*Scope*/ 10, /*->733*/
/*723*/
        OPC_CheckChild1Type, MVT::i32,
/*725*/
        OPC_EmitMergeInputChains1_0,
/*726*/
        OPC_MorphNodeTo, TARGET_VAL(Cpu0::JALR), 0|OPFL_Chain|
OPFL_GlueInput|OPFL_GlueOutput|OPFL_Variadic1,
        0/*#VTS*/, 1/*#Ops*/, 1,
        // Src: (Cpu0JmpLink CPURegs:i32:$rb) - Complexity = 3
        // Dst: (JALR CPURegs:i32:$rb)
/*733*/
        0, /*End of Scope*/

```

After above changes, you can run Chapter9\_1/ with ch9\_1.cpp and see what happens in the following,

```

118-165-79-83:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/
cmake_debug_build/Debug/bin/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm
ch9_1.bc -o ch9_1.cpu0.s
Assertion failed: ((CLI.IsTailCall || InVals.size() == CLI.Ins.size()) &&
"LowerCall didn't emit the correct number of values!"), function LowerCallTo,
file /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/src/lib/CodeGen/SelectionDAG/SelectionDAGBuilder.
cpp, ...
...
0. Program arguments: /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/
Debug/bin/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm ch9_1.bc -o
ch9_1.cpu0.s
1. Running pass 'Function Pass Manager' on module 'ch9_1.bc'.
2. Running pass 'CPU0 DAG->DAG Pattern Instruction Selection' on function
'@main'
Illegal instruction: 4

```

Now, the LowerFormalArguments() has the correct number, but LowerCall() has not the correct number of values!

## 9.3 Store outgoing arguments to stack frame

Fig. 9.2 depicts two steps to take care arguments passing. One is store outgoing arguments into caller function, the other is load incoming arguments into callee function. We defined LowerFormalArguments() for “**load incoming**

arguments” in callee function last section. Now, we will finish “store outgoing arguments” in caller function. LowerCall() is responsible in doing this. The implementation as follows,

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter9\_2/Cpu0MachineFunction.h

```
/// Create a MachinePointerInfo that has an ExternalSymbolPseudoSourceValue
/// object representing a GOT entry for an external function.
MachinePointerInfo callPtrInfo(const char *ES);

/// Create a MachinePointerInfo that has a GlobalValuePseudoSourceValue object
/// representing a GOT entry for a global function.
MachinePointerInfo callPtrInfo(const GlobalValue *GV);
```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter9\_2/Cpu0MachineFunction.cpp

```
MachinePointerInfo Cpu0FunctionInfo::callPtrInfo(const char *ES) {
    return MachinePointerInfo(MF.getPSVManager().getExternalSymbolCallEntry(ES));
}

MachinePointerInfo Cpu0FunctionInfo::callPtrInfo(const GlobalValue *GV) {
    return MachinePointerInfo(MF.getPSVManager().getGlobalValueCallEntry(GV));
}
```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter9\_2/Cpu0ISelLowering.h

```
/// This function fills Ops, which is the list of operands that will later
/// be used when a function call node is created. It also generates
/// copyToReg nodes to set up argument registers.
virtual void
getOpndList(SmallVectorImpl<SDValue> &Ops,
            std::deque< std::pair<unsigned, SDValue> > &RegsToPass,
            bool IsPICCall, bool GlobalOrExternal, bool InternalLinkage,
            CallLoweringInfo &CLI, SDValue Callee, SDValue Chain) const;
```

```
/// Cpu0CC - This class provides methods used to analyze formal and call
/// arguments and inquire about calling convention information.
class Cpu0CC {
```

```
void analyzeCallOperands(const SmallVectorImpl<ISD::OutputArg> &Outs,
                        bool IsVarArg, bool IsSoftFloat,
                        const SDNode *CallNode,
                        std::vector<ArgListEntry> &FuncArgs);
```

```
. };
```

```
Cpu0CC::SpecialCallingConvType getSpecialCallingConv(SDValue Callee) const;
```

```
// Lower Operand helpers
SDValue LowerCallResult(SDValue Chain, SDValue InFlag,
                       CallingConv::ID CallConv, bool isVarArg,
```

```

        const SmallVectorImpl<ISD::InputArg> &Ins,
        const SDLoc &DL, SelectionDAG &DAG,
        SmallVectorImpl<SDValue> &InVals,
        const SDNode *CallNode, const Type *RetTy) const;

/// passByValArg - Pass a byval argument in registers or on stack.
void passByValArg(SDValue Chain, const SDLoc &DL,
                   std::deque< std::pair<unsigned, SDValue> > &RegsToPass,
                   SmallVectorImpl<SDValue> &MemOpChains, SDValue StackPtr,
                   MachineFrameInfo *MFI, SelectionDAG &DAG, SDValue Arg,
                   const Cpu0CC &CC, const ByValArgInfo &ByVal,
                   const ISD::ArgFlagsTy &Flags, bool isLittle) const;

SDValue passArgOnStack(SDValue StackPtr, unsigned Offset, SDValue Chain,
                      SDValue Arg, const SDLoc &DL, bool IsTailCall,
                      SelectionDAG &DAG) const;

bool CanLowerReturn(CallingConv::ID CallConv, MachineFunction &MF,
                     bool isVarArg,
                     const SmallVectorImpl<ISD::OutputArg> &Outs,
                     LLVMContext &Context) const override;

```

## Ibdex/chapters/Chapter9\_2/Cpu0ISelLowering.cpp

```

SDValue
Cpu0TargetLowering::passArgOnStack(SDValue StackPtr, unsigned Offset,
                                    SDValue Chain, SDValue Arg, const SDLoc &DL,
                                    bool IsTailCall, SelectionDAG &DAG) const {
    if (!IsTailCall) {
        SDValue PtrOff =
            DAG.getNode(ISD::ADD, DL, getPointerTy(DAG.getDataLayout()), StackPtr,
                        DAG.getIntPtrConstant(Offset, DL));
        return DAG.getStore(Chain, DL, Arg, PtrOff, MachinePointerInfo());
    }

    MachineFrameInfo *MFI = DAG.getMachineFunction().getFrameInfo();
    int FI = MFI->CreateFixedObject(Arg.getValueSizeInBits() / 8, Offset, false);
    SDValue FIN = DAG.getFrameIndex(FI, getPointerTy(DAG.getDataLayout()));
    return DAG.getStore(Chain, DL, Arg, FIN, MachinePointerInfo(),
                        /* Alignment = */ 0, MachineMemOperand::MOVolatile);
}

void Cpu0TargetLowering::
getOpndList(SmallVectorImpl<SDValue> &Ops,
            std::deque< std::pair<unsigned, SDValue> > &RegsToPass,
            bool IsPICCall, bool GlobalOrExternal, bool InternalLinkage,
            CallLoweringInfo &CLI, SDValue Callee, SDValue Chain) const {
    // T9 should contain the address of the callee function if
    // -relocation-model=pic or it is an indirect call.
    if (IsPICCall || !GlobalOrExternal) {
        unsigned T9Reg = Cpu0::T9;
        RegsToPass.push_front(std::make_pair(T9Reg, Callee));
    } else
        Ops.push_back(Callee);
}

```

```

// Insert node "GP copy globalreg" before call to function.
//
// R_CPU0_CALL* operators (emitted when non-internal functions are called
// in PIC mode) allow symbols to be resolved via lazy binding.
// The lazy binding stub requires GP to point to the GOT.
if (IsPICCall && !InternalLinkage) {
    unsigned GPReg = Cpu0::GP;
    EVT Ty = MVT::i32;
    RegsToPass.push_back(std::make_pair(GPReg, getGlobalReg(CLI.DAG, Ty)));
}

// Build a sequence of copy-to-reg nodes chained together with token
// chain and flag operands which copy the outgoing args into registers.
// The InFlag is necessary since all emitted instructions must be
// stuck together.
SDValue InFlag;

for (unsigned i = 0, e = RegsToPass.size(); i != e; ++i) {
    Chain = CLI.DAG.getCopyToReg(Chain, CLI.DL, RegsToPass[i].first,
                                 RegsToPass[i].second, InFlag);
    InFlag = Chain.getValue(1);
}

// Add argument registers to the end of the list so that they are
// known live into the call.
for (unsigned i = 0, e = RegsToPass.size(); i != e; ++i)
    Ops.push_back(CLI.DAG.getRegister(RegsToPass[i].first,
                                      RegsToPass[i].second.getValueType()));

// Add a register mask operand representing the call-preserved registers.
const TargetRegisterInfo *TRI = Subtarget.getRegisterInfo();
const uint32_t *Mask =
    TRI->getCallPreservedMask(CLI.DAG.getMachineFunction(), CLI.CallConv);
assert(Mask && "Missing call preserved mask for calling convention");
Ops.push_back(CLI.DAG.getRegisterMask(Mask));

if (InFlag.getNode())
    Ops.push_back(InFlag);
}

```

```

/// LowerCall - functions arguments are copied from virtual regs to
/// (physical regs)/(stack frame), CALLSEQ_START and CALLSEQ_END are emitted.
SDValue
Cpu0TargetLowering::LowerCall(TargetLowering::CallLoweringInfo &CLI,
                           SmallVectorImpl<SDValue> &InVals) const {
    SelectionDAG &DAG = CLI.DAG;
    SDLoc DL = CLI.DL;
    SmallVectorImpl<ISD::OutputArg> &Outs = CLI.Outs;
    SmallVectorImpl<SDValue> &OutVals = CLI.OutVals;
    SmallVectorImpl<ISD::InputArg> &Ins = CLI.Ins;
    SDValue Chain = CLI.Chain;
    SDValue Callee = CLI.Callee;
    bool &IsTailCall = CLI.IsTailCall;
    CallingConv::ID CallConv = CLI.CallConv;
    bool IsVarArg = CLI.IsVarArg;

    MachineFunction &MF = DAG.getMachineFunction();
    MachineFrameInfo *MFI = MF.getFrameInfo();

```

```

const TargetFrameLowering *TFL = MF.getSubtarget().getFrameLowering();
Cpu0FunctionInfo *FuncInfo = MF.getInfo<Cpu0FunctionInfo>();
bool IsPIC = isPositionIndependent();
Cpu0FunctionInfo *Cpu0FI = MF.getInfo<Cpu0FunctionInfo>();

// Analyze operands of the call, assigning locations to each operand.
SmallVector<CCValAssign, 16> ArgLocs;
CCState CCInfo(CallConv, IsVarArg, DAG.getMachineFunction(),
               ArgLocs, *DAG.getContext());
Cpu0CC::SpecialCallingConvType SpecialCallingConv =
    getSpecialCallingConv(Callee);
Cpu0CC Cpu0CCInfo(CallConv, ABI.IsO32(),
                   CCInfo, SpecialCallingConv);

Cpu0CCInfo.analyzeCallOperands(Outs, IsVarArg,
                               Subtarget.abiUsesSoftFloat(),
                               Callee.getNode(), CLI.getArgs());

// Get a count of how many bytes are to be pushed on the stack.
unsigned NextStackOffset = CCInfo.getNextStackOffset();

//@TailCall 1 {
// Check if it's really possible to do a tail call.
if (IsTailCall)
    IsTailCall =
        isEligibleForTailCallOptimization(Cpu0CCInfo, NextStackOffset,
                                           *MF.getInfo<Cpu0FunctionInfo>());

if (!IsTailCall && CLI.CS && CLI.CS->isMustTailCall())
    report_fatal_error("failed to perform tail call elimination on a call "
                      "site marked musttail");

if (IsTailCall)
    ++NumTailCalls;
//@TailCall 1 }

// Chain is the output chain of the last Load/Store or CopyToReg node.
// ByValChain is the output chain of the last Memcpy node created for copying
// byval arguments to the stack.
unsigned StackAlignment = TFL->getStackAlignment();
NextStackOffset = alignTo(NextStackOffset, StackAlignment);
SDValue NextStackOffsetVal = DAG.getIntPtrConstant(NextStackOffset, DL, true);

//@TailCall 2 {
if (!IsTailCall)
    Chain = DAG.getCALLSEQ_START(Chain, NextStackOffsetVal, DL);
//@TailCall 2 }

SDValue StackPtr =
    DAG.getCopyFromReg(Chain, DL, Cpu0::SP,
                       getPointerTy(DAG.getDataLayout()));

// With EABI is it possible to have 16 args on registers.
std::deque< std::pair<unsigned, SDValue> > RegsToPass;
SmallVector<SDValue, 8> MemOpChains;
Cpu0CC::byval_iterator ByValArg = Cpu0CCInfo.byval_begin();

//@1 {

```

```

// Walk the register/memloc assignments, inserting copies/loads.
for (unsigned i = 0, e = ArgLocs.size(); i != e; ++i) {
//@1
    SDValue Arg = OutVals[i];
    CCValAssign &VA = ArgLocs[i];
    MVT LocVT = VA.getLocVT();
    ISD::ArgFlagsTy Flags = Outs[i].Flags;

    //@ByVal Arg {
    if (Flags.isByVal()) {
        assert(Flags.getByValSize() &&
               "ByVal args of size 0 should have been ignored by front-end.");
        assert(ByValArg != Cpu0CCInfo/byval_end());
        assert(!IsTailCall &&
               "Do not tail-call optimize if there is a byval argument.");
        passByValArg(Chain, DL, RegsToPass, MemOpChains, StackPtr, MFI, DAG, Arg,
                     Cpu0CCInfo, *ByValArg, Flags, Subtarget.isLittle());
        ++ByValArg;
        continue;
    }
    //@ByVal Arg }

    // Promote the value if needed.
    switch (VA.getLocInfo()) {
    default: llvm_unreachable("Unknown loc info!");
    case CCValAssign::Full:
        break;
    case CCValAssign::SExt:
        Arg = DAG.getNode(ISD::SIGN_EXTEND, DL, LocVT, Arg);
        break;
    case CCValAssign::ZExt:
        Arg = DAG.getNode(ISD::ZERO_EXTEND, DL, LocVT, Arg);
        break;
    case CCValAssign::AExt:
        Arg = DAG.getNode(ISD::ANY_EXTEND, DL, LocVT, Arg);
        break;
    }

    // Arguments that can be passed on register must be kept at
    // RegsToPass vector
    if (VA.isRegLoc()) {
        RegsToPass.push_back(std::make_pair(VA.getLocReg(), Arg));
        continue;
    }

    // Register can't get to this point...
    assert(VA.isMemLoc());

    // emit ISD::STORE whichs stores the
    // parameter value to a stack Location
    MemOpChains.push_back(passArgOnStack(StackPtr, VA.getLocMemOffset(),
                                          Chain, Arg, DL, IsTailCall, DAG));
}

// Transform all store nodes into one single node because all store
// nodes are independent of each other.
if (!MemOpChains.empty())
    Chain = DAG.getNode(ISD::TokenFactor, DL, MVT::Other, MemOpChains);

```

```

// If the callee is a GlobalAddress/ExternalSymbol node (quite common, every
// direct call is) turn it into a TargetGlobalAddress/TargetExternalSymbol
// node so that legalize doesn't hack it.
bool IsPICCall = IsPIC; // true if calls are translated to
                        // jalr $t9
bool GlobalOrExternal = false, InternalLinkage = false;
SDValue CalleeLo;
EVT Ty = Callee.getValueType();

if (GlobalAddressSDNode *G = dyn_cast<GlobalAddressSDNode>(Callee)) {
    if (IsPICCall) {
        const GlobalValue *Val = G->getGlobal();
        InternalLinkage = Val->hasInternalLinkage();

        if (InternalLinkage)
            Callee = getAddrLocal(G, Ty, DAG);
        else
            Callee = getAddrGlobal(G, Ty, DAG, Cpu0II::MO_GOT_CALL, Chain,
                                   FuncInfo->callPtrInfo(Val));
    } else
        Callee = DAG.getTargetGlobalAddress(G->getGlobal(), DL,
                                            getPointerTy(DAG.getDataLayout()), 0,
                                            Cpu0II::MO_NO_FLAG);
    GlobalOrExternal = true;
}
else if (ExternalSymbolSDNode *S = dyn_cast<ExternalSymbolSDNode>(Callee)) {
    const char *Sym = S->getSymbol();

    if (!IsPIC) // static
        Callee = DAG.getTargetExternalSymbol(Sym,
                                             getPointerTy(DAG.getDataLayout()),
                                             Cpu0II::MO_NO_FLAG);
    else // PIC
        Callee = getAddrGlobal(S, Ty, DAG, Cpu0II::MO_GOT_CALL, Chain,
                               FuncInfo->callPtrInfo(Sym));

    GlobalOrExternal = true;
}

SmallVector<SDValue, 8> Ops(1, Chain);
SDVTList NodeTys = DAG.getVTList(MVT::Other, MVT::Glue);

getOpndList(Ops, RegsToPass, IsPICCall, GlobalOrExternal, InternalLinkage,
            CLI, Callee, Chain);

//@TailCall 3 {
if (IsTailCall)
    return DAG.getNode(Cpu0ISD::TailCall, DL, MVT::Other, Ops);
//@TailCall 3 }

Chain = DAG.getNode(Cpu0ISD::JmpLink, DL, NodeTys, Ops);
SDValue InFlag = Chain.getValue(1);

// Create the CALLSEQ_END node.
Chain = DAG.getCALLSEQ_END(Chain, NextStackOffsetVal,
                           DAG.getIntPtrConstant(0, DL, true), InFlag, DL);
InFlag = Chain.getValue(1);

```

```
// Handle result values, copying them out of physregs into vregs that we
// return.
return LowerCallResult(Chain, InFlag, CallConv, IsVarArg,
                      Ins, DL, DAG, InVals, CLI.Callee.getNode(), CLI.RetTy);
}
```

```
/// LowerCallResult - Lower the result values of a call into the
/// appropriate copies out of appropriate physical registers.
SDValue
Cpu0TargetLowering::LowerCallResult(SDValue Chain, SDValue InFlag,
                                    CallingConv::ID CallConv, bool IsVarArg,
                                    const SmallVectorImpl<ISD::InputArg> &Ins,
                                    const SDLoc &DL, SelectionDAG &DAG,
                                    SmallVectorImpl<SDValue> &InVals,
                                    const SDNode *CallNode,
                                    const Type *RetTy) const {
    // Assign locations to each value returned by this call.
    SmallVector<CCValAssign, 16> RVLocs;
    CCState CCInfo(CallConv, IsVarArg, DAG.getMachineFunction(),
                   RVLocs, *DAG.getContext());

    Cpu0CC Cpu0CCInfo(CallConv, ABI.IsO32(), CCInfo);

    Cpu0CCInfo.analyzeCallResult(Ins, Subtarget.abiUsesSoftFloat(),
                                CallNode, RetTy);

    // Copy all of the result registers out of their specified physreg.
    for (unsigned i = 0; i != RVLocs.size(); ++i) {
        SDValue Val = DAG.getCopyFromReg(Chain, DL, RVLocs[i].getLocReg(),
                                         RVLocs[i].getLocVT(), InFlag);
        Chain = Val.getValue(1);
        InFlag = Val.getValue(2);

        if (RVLocs[i].getValVT() != RVLocs[i].getLocVT())
            Val = DAG.getNode(ISD::BITCAST, DL, RVLocs[i].getValVT(), Val);

        InVals.push_back(Val);
    }

    return Chain;
}
```

```
bool
Cpu0TargetLowering::CanLowerReturn(CallingConv::ID CallConv,
                                   MachineFunction &MF, bool IsVarArg,
                                   const SmallVectorImpl<ISD::OutputArg> &Outs,
                                   LLVMContext &Context) const {
    SmallVector<CCValAssign, 16> RVLocs;
    CCState CCInfo(CallConv, IsVarArg, MF,
                   RVLocs, Context);
    return CCInfo.CheckReturn(Outs, RetCC_Cpu0);
}
```

```
Cpu0TargetLowering::Cpu0CC::SpecialCallingConvType
Cpu0TargetLowering::getSpecialCallingConv(SDValue Callee) const {
    Cpu0CC::SpecialCallingConvType SpecialCallingConv =
```

```
Cpu0CC::NoSpecialCallingConv;
return SpecialCallingConv;
}
```

```
void Cpu0TargetLowering::Cpu0CC::
analyzeCallOperands(const SmallVectorImpl<ISD::OutputArg> &Args,
                    bool IsVarArg, bool IsSoftFloat, const SDNode *CallNode,
                    std::vector<ArgListEntry> &FuncArgs) {
//@analyzeCallOperands body {
    assert((CallConv != CallingConv::Fast || !IsVarArg) &&
           "CallingConv::Fast shouldn't be used for vararg functions.");

    unsigned NumOpnds = Args.size();
    llvm::CCAssignFn *FixedFn = fixedArgFn();

    //@3 {
    for (unsigned I = 0; I != NumOpnds; ++I) {
        //@3 }
        MVT ArgVT = Args[I].VT;
        ISD::ArgFlagsTy ArgFlags = Args[I].Flags;
        bool R;

        if (ArgFlags.isByVal()) {
            handleByValArg(I, ArgVT, ArgVT, CCValAssign::Full, ArgFlags);
            continue;
        }

        {
            MVT RegVT = getRegVT(ArgVT, FuncArgs[Args[I].OrigArgIndex].Ty, CallNode,
                                 IsSoftFloat);
            R = FixedFn(I, ArgVT, RegVT, CCValAssign::Full, ArgFlags, CCInfo);
        }

        if (R) {
#ifndef NDEBUG
            dbgs() << "Call operand #" << I << " has unhandled type "
                << EVT(ArgVT).getEVTString();
#endif
            llvm_unreachable(nullptr);
        }
    }
}
```

Just like load incoming arguments from stack frame, we call CCInfo(CallConv,..., ArgLocs, ...) to get outgoing arguments information before entering “**for loop**”\*. They’re almost same in \*\*\*“**for loop**” with LowerFormalArguments(), except LowerCall() creates “store DAG vector” instead of “load DAG vector”. After the “**for loop**”, it create “**ld \$t9, %call16(\_Z5sum\_iiiiii)(\$gp)**” and jalr \$t9 for calling subroutine (the \$6 is \$t9) in PIC mode.

Like loading incoming arguments, we need to implement storeRegToStackSlot() at early chapter.

### 9.3.1 Pseudo hook instruction ADJCALLSTACKDOWN and ADJCALLSTACKUP

DAG.getCALLSEQ\_START() and DAG.getCALLSEQ\_END() are set before and after the “**for loop**”, respectively, they insert CALLSEQ\_START, CALLSEQ\_END, and translate them into pseudo machine instructions !ADJCALLSTACKDOWN, !ADJCALLSTACKUP later according Cpu0InstrInfo.td definition as follows.

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter9\_2/Cpu0InstrInfo.td

```

def SDT_Cpu0CallSeqStart : SDCallSeqStart<[SDTCisVT<0, i32>]>;
def SDT_Cpu0CallSeqEnd   : SDCallSeqEnd<[SDTCisVT<0, i32>, SDTCisVT<1, i32>]>;

// These are target-independent nodes, but have target-specific formats.
def callseq_start : SDNode<"ISD::CALLSEQ_START", SDT_Cpu0CallSeqStart,
                      [SDNPHasChain, SDNPOutGlue]>;
def callseq_end   : SDNode<"ISD::CALLSEQ_END", SDT_Cpu0CallSeqEnd,
                      [SDNPHasChain, SDNPOptInGlue, SDNPOutGlue]>;

//=====
// Pseudo instructions
//=====

let Predicates = [Ch9_2] in {
// As stack alignment is always done with addiu, we need a 16-bit immediate
let Defs = [SP], Uses = [SP] in {
def ADJCALLSTACKDOWN : Cpu0Pseudo<(outs), (ins uimm16:$amt),
                      "!ADJCALLSTACKDOWN $amt",
                      [(callseq_start timm:$amt)]>;
def ADJCALLSTACKUP   : Cpu0Pseudo<(outs), (ins uimm16:$amt1, uimm16:$amt2),
                      "!ADJCALLSTACKUP $amt1",
                      [(callseq_end timm:$amt1, timm:$amt2)]>;
}

//@def CPRESTORE {
// When handling PIC code the assembler needs .cupload and .cprestore
// directives. If the real instructions corresponding these directives
// are used, we have the same behavior, but get also a bunch of warnings
// from the assembler.
let hasSideEffects = 0 in
def CPRESTORE : Cpu0Pseudo<(outs), (ins i32imm:$loc, CPURegs:$gp),
                      ".cprestore\t$loc", []>;
} // let Predicates = [Ch9_2]
}

```

With below definition, `eliminateCallFramePseudoInstr()` will be called when llvm meets pseudo instructions `ADJCALLSTACKDOWN` and `ADJCALLSTACKUP`. It justs discard these 2 pseudo instructions, and llvm will add offset to stack.

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter9\_2/Cpu0InstrInfo.cpp

```

Cpu0InstrInfo::Cpu0InstrInfo(const Cpu0Subtarget &STI)
:
Cpu0GenInstrInfo(Cpu0::ADJCALLSTACKDOWN, Cpu0::ADJCALLSTACKUP),

```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter9\_2/Cpu0FrameLowering.h

```

MachineBasicBlock::iterator
eliminateCallFramePseudoInstr(MachineFunction &MF,
                             MachineBasicBlock &MBB,
                             MachineBasicBlock::iterator I) const override;

```

**Index/chapters/Chapter9\_2/Cpu0FrameLowering.cpp**

```
// Eliminate ADJCALLSTACKDOWN, ADJCALLSTACKUP pseudo instructions
MachineBasicBlock::iterator Cpu0FrameLowering::
eliminateCallFramePseudoInstr(MachineFunction &MF, MachineBasicBlock &MBB,
                               MachineBasicBlock::iterator I) const {
```

```
    return MBB.erase(I);
}
```

**9.3.2 Read Lowercall() with Graphviz's help**

The whole DAGs created for outgoing arguments as “Figure Outgoing arguments DAG (A)...” below for ch9\_outgoing.cpp with cpu032I. LowerCall() (excluding calling LowerCallResult()) will generate the DAG nodes as “Figure Outgoing arguments DAG (B)...” below for ch9\_outgoing.cpp with cpu032I. The corresponding code of DAGs Store and TargetGlobalAddress are listed in the figure, user can match the other DAGs to function LowerCall() easily. Through Graphviz tool with llc option -view-dag-combine1-dags, you can design a small input C or llvm IR source code and then check the DAGs to understand the code in LowerCall() and LowerFormalArguments(). At the sub-sections “variable arguments” and “dynamic stack allocation support” in the later section of this chapter, you can design the input example with this features and check the DAGs with these two functions again to make sure you know the code in these two function. About Graphviz, please refer to section “Display llvm IR nodes with Graphviz” of chapter 4, Arithmetic and logic instructions. The DAGs diagram can be got by llc option as follows,

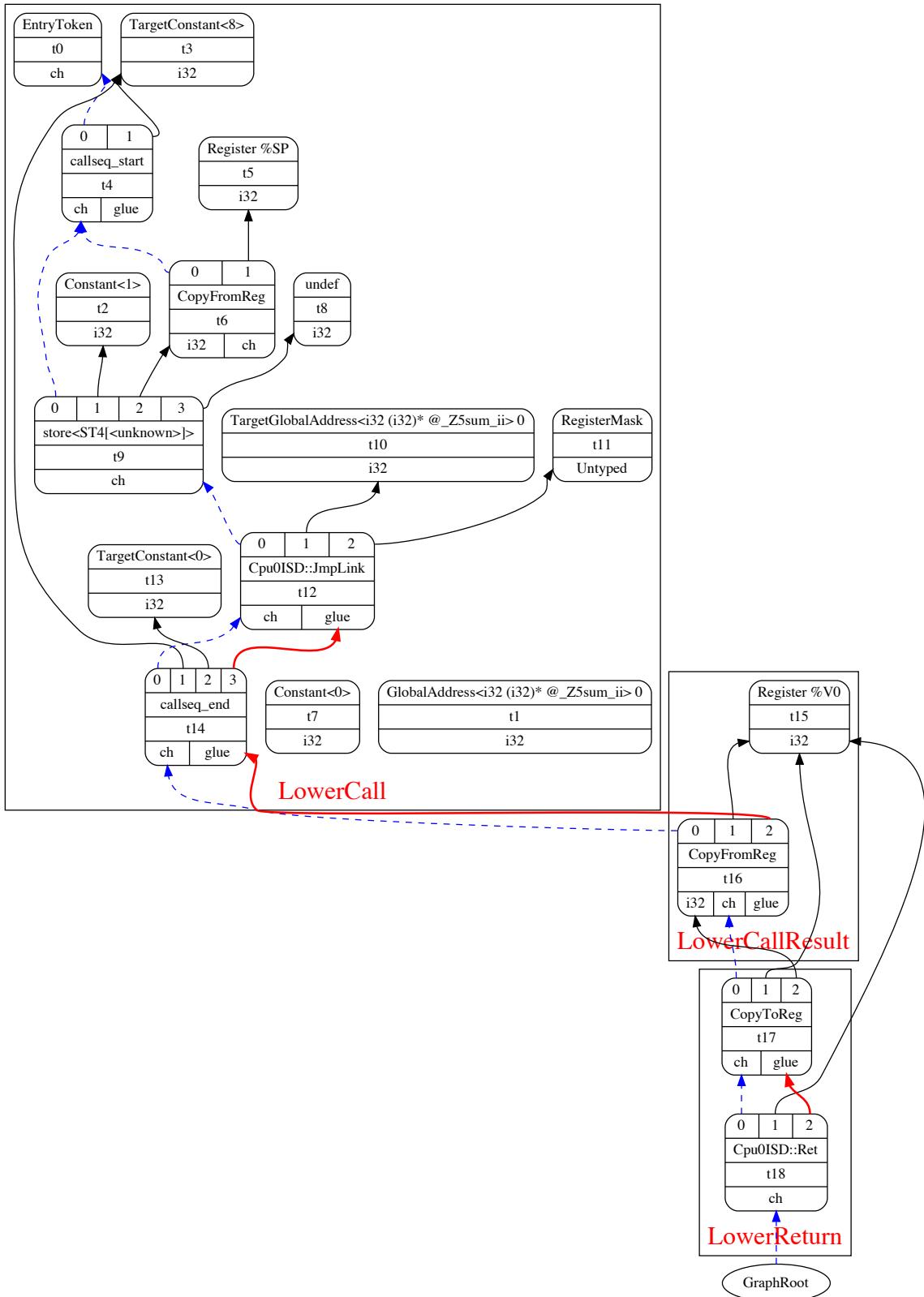
**Index/input/ch9\_outgoing.cpp**

```
extern int sum_i(int x1);

int call_sum_i() {
    return sum_i(1);
}
```

```
JonathantekiiMac:input Jonathan$ clang -O3 -target mips-unknown-linux-gnu -c
ch9_outgoing.cpp -emit-llvm -o ch9_outgoing.bc
JonathantekiiMac:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/
Debug/bin/llvm-dis ch9_outgoing.bc -o -
...
define i32 @_Z10call_sum_iv() #0 {
    %1 = tail call i32 @_Z5sum_ii(i32 1)
    ret i32 %1
}
JonathantekiiMac:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/
Debug/bin/llc -march=cpu0 -mcpu=cpu032I -view-dag-combine1-dags -relocation-
model=static -filetype=asm ch9_outgoing.bc -o -
    .text
    .section .mdebug.abis32
    .previous
    .file   "ch9_outgoing.bc"
Writing '/var/folders/rf/8bgdgt9d6vgf5sn8h8_zycd0000gn/T/dag._Z10call_sum_iv-
```

```
0dfa1.dot'... done.  
Running 'Graphviz' program...
```


 Figure Outgoing arguments DAG (A) created for `ch9_outgoing.cpp` with `-cpu0-s32-calls=true`

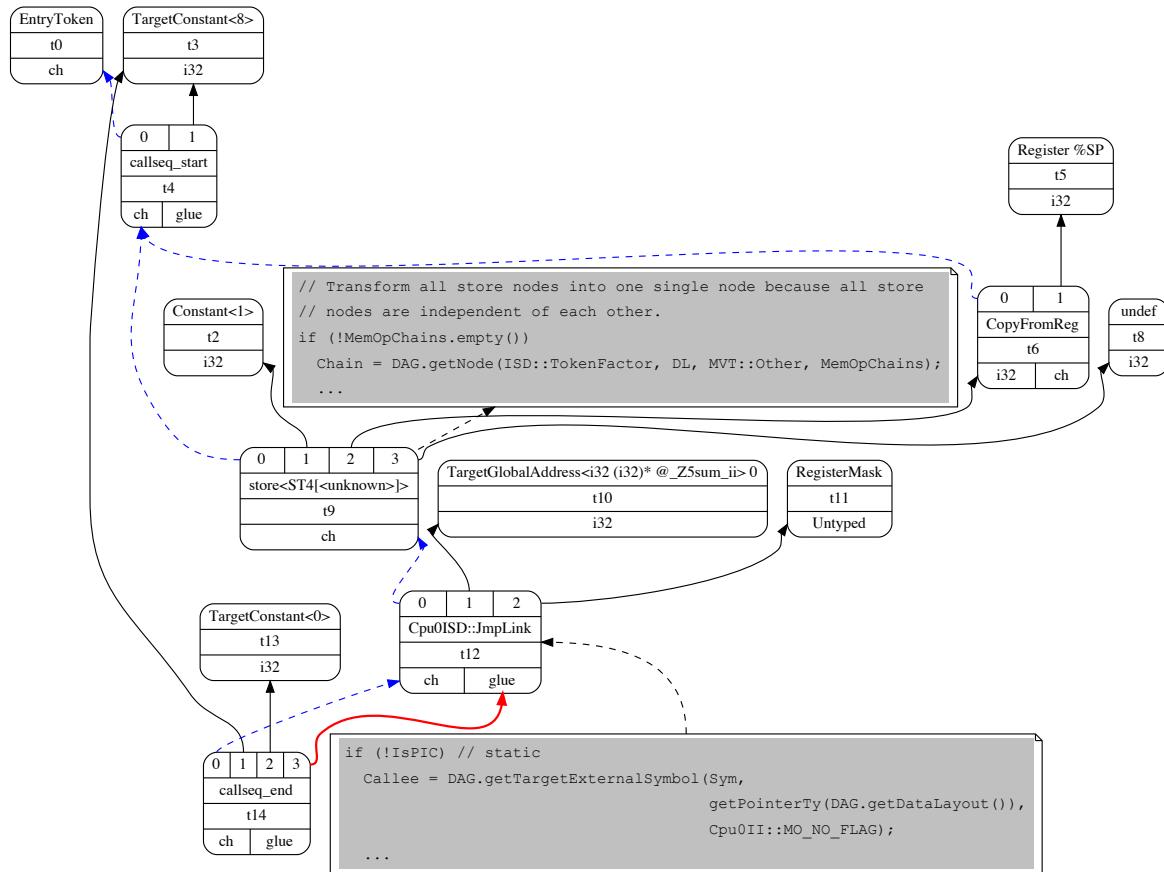


Figure Outgoing arguments DAG (B) created by LowerCall() for ch9\_outgoing.cpp with -cpu0-s32-calls=true

Mentioned in last section, option `llc -cpu0-s32-calls=true` uses S32 calling convention which passes all arguments at registers while option `llc -cpu0-s32-calls=false` uses O32 pass first two arguments at registers and other arguments at stack. The result as follows,

```
118-165-78-230:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/
Debug/bin/llc -march=cpu0 -mcpu=cpu032I -cpu0-s32-calls=true
-relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm ch9_1.bc -o -
.text
.section .mdebug.abiS32
.previous
.file "ch9_1.bc"
.globl _Z5sum_iiiiii
.align 2
.type _Z5sum_iiiiii,@function
.ent _Z5sum_iiiiii      # @_Z5sum_iiiiii
_Z5sum_iiiiii:
.frame $fp,32,$lr
.mask 0x00000000,0
.set noreorder
.cupload $t9
.set nomacro
# BB#0:
    addiu $sp, $sp, -32
    ld    $2, 52($sp)
```

```

ld    $3, 48($sp)
ld    $4, 44($sp)
ld    $5, 40($sp)
ld    $t9, 36($sp)
ld    $7, 32($sp)
st    $7, 28($sp)
st    $t9, 24($sp)
st    $5, 20($sp)
st    $4, 16($sp)
st    $3, 12($sp)
lui   $3, %got_hi(gI)
addu $3, $3, $gp
st    $2, 8($sp)
ld    $3, %got_lo(gI)($3)
ld    $3, 0($3)
ld    $4, 28($sp)
addu $3, $3, $4
ld    $4, 24($sp)
addu $3, $3, $4
ld    $4, 20($sp)
addu $3, $3, $4
ld    $4, 16($sp)
addu $3, $3, $4
ld    $4, 12($sp)
addu $3, $3, $4
addu $2, $3, $2
st    $2, 4($sp)
addiu $sp, $sp, 32
ret   $lr
nop
.set macro
.set reorder
.end _Z5sum_iuiuii

$tmp0:
.size _Z5sum_iuiuii, ($tmp0)-_Z5sum_iuiuii

.globl main
.align 2
.type main,@function
.ent main # @main
main:
.frame $fp,40,$lr
.mask 0x00004000,-4
.set noreorder
.cupload $t9
.set nomacro
# BB#0:
addiu $sp, $sp, -40
st    $lr, 36($sp)      # 4-byte Folded Spill
addiu $2, $zero, 0
st    $2, 32($sp)
addiu $2, $zero, 6
st    $2, 20($sp)
addiu $2, $zero, 5
st    $2, 16($sp)
addiu $2, $zero, 4
st    $2, 12($sp)
addiu $2, $zero, 3

```

```

        st    $2, 8($sp)
        addiu $2, $zero, 2
        st    $2, 4($sp)
        addiu $2, $zero, 1
        st    $2, 0($sp)
        ld    $t9, %call16(_Z5sum_iiiiii) ($gp)
        jalr $t9
        nop
        st    $2, 28($sp)
        ld    $lr, 36($sp)           # 4-byte Folded Reload
        addiu $sp, $sp, 40
        ret   $lr
        nop
        .set  macro
        .set  reorder
        .end  main
$tmp1:
.size main, ($tmp1)-main

.type gI,@object          # @gI
.data
.globl      gI
.align     2
gI:
.4byte     100             # 0x64
.size gI, 4

118-165-78-230:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/
Debug/bin/llc -march=cpu0 -mcpu=cpu032II -cpu0-s32-calls=false
-relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm ch9_1.bc -o -
...
.globl      main
.align     2
.type main,@function
.ent   main                 # @main
main:
.frame      $fp,40,$lr
.mask       0x00004000,-4
.set  noreorder
.cupload    $t9
.set  nomacro
# BB#0:
addiu $sp, $sp, -40
st    $lr, 36($sp)           # 4-byte Folded Spill
addiu $2, $zero, 0
st    $2, 32($sp)
addiu $2, $zero, 6
st    $2, 20($sp)
addiu $2, $zero, 5
st    $2, 16($sp)
addiu $2, $zero, 4
st    $2, 12($sp)
addiu $2, $zero, 3
st    $2, 8($sp)
ld    $t9, %call16(_Z5sum_iiiiii) ($gp)
addiu $4, $zero, 1
addiu $5, $zero, 2
jalr $t9

```

```
nop
st    $2, 28($sp)
ld    $lr, 36($sp)          # 4-byte Folded Reload
addiu $sp, $sp, 40
ret    $lr
nop
.set  macro
.set  reorder
.end  main
```

### 9.3.3 Long and short string initialization

The last section mentioned the “JSUB texternalsym” pattern. Run Chapter9\_2 with ch9\_1\_2.cpp to get the result as below. For long string, llvm call memcpy() to initialize string (char str[81] = “Hello world” in this case). For short string, the “call memcpy” is translated into “store with contant” in stages of optimization.

## Ibdex/input/ch9\_1\_2.cpp

```
int main()
{
    char str[81] = "Hello world";
    char s[6] = "Hello";
    return 0;
}
```

```
Jonathan@tekiiMac:~/Documents$ clang -target mips-unknown-linux-gnu -c ch9_1_2.cpp -emit-llvm -o ch9_1_2.bc
```

```
Jonathan@tekiiMac:~/Documents$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build
```

```
/Debug/bin/llc -march=cpu0 -mcpu=cpu032II -cpu0-s32-calls=true  
-relocation-model=static -filetype=asm ch9_1_2.bc -o -  
.section .mdebug.abi32  
...  
    lui    $2, %hi($_ZZ4mainE3str)  
    ori    $2, $2, %lo($_ZZ4mainE3str)  
    st    $2, 4($sp)  
    addiu $2, $sp, 24  
    st    $2, 0($sp)  
    jsub  memcpy  
    nop  
    lui    $2, %hi($_ZZ4mainE1s)  
    ori    $2, $2, %lo($_ZZ4mainE1s)  
    lbu   $3, 4($2)  
    shl   $3, $3, 8  
    lbu   $4, 5($2)  
    or    $3, $3, $4  
    sh    $3, 20($sp)  
    lbu   $3, 2($2)  
    shl   $3, $3, 8  
    lbu   $4, 3($2)  
    or    $3, $3, $4  
    lbu   $4, 1($2)  
    lbu   $2, 0($2)  
    shl   $2, $2, 8  
    or    $2, $2, $4  
    shl   $2, $2, 16  
    or    $2, $2, $3  
    st    $2, 16($sp)  
...  
.type  $_ZZ4mainE3str,@object  # @_ZZ4mainE3str  
.section .rodata,"a",@progbits  
$_ZZ4mainE3str:  
    .asciz      "Hello"  
→world\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000  
\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000  
\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000  
\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000\000  
.size $_ZZ4mainE3str, 81  
.type  $_ZZ4mainE1s,@object  # @_ZZ4mainE1s  
.section .rodata.str1.1,"aMS",@progbits,1  
$_ZZ4mainE1s:  
    .asciz      "Hello"  
.size $_ZZ4mainE1s, 6
```

The “call memcpy” for short string is optimized by llvm before “DAG->DAG Pattern Instruction Selection” stage and translates it into “store with content” as follows,

```
JonathantekeiMac:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build  
/Debug/bin/llc -march=cpu0 -mcpu=cpu032II -cpu0-s32-calls=true  
-relocation-model=static -filetype=asm ch9_1_2.bc -debug -o -  
  
Initial selection DAG: BB#0 'main:entry'  
SelectionDAG has 35 nodes:  
...  
    0x7fd909030810: <multiple use>  
    0x7fd909030c10: i32 = Constant<1214606444> // 1214606444=0x48656c6c="Hell"
```

```

0x7fd909030910: <multiple use>
0x7fd90902d810: <multiple use>
0x7fd909030d10: ch = store 0x7fd909030810, 0x7fd909030c10, 0x7fd909030910,
0x7fd90902d810<ST4[%1]>

0x7fd909030810: <multiple use>
0x7fd909030e10: i16 = Constant<28416>           // 28416=0x6f00="o\0"

...
0x7fd90902d810: <multiple use>
0x7fd909031210: ch = store 0x7fd909030810, 0x7fd909030e10, 0x7fd909031010,
0x7fd90902d810<ST2[%1+4] (align=4)>
...

```

The incoming arguments is the formal arguments defined in compiler and program language books. The outgoing arguments is the actual arguments. Summary as Table: Callee incoming arguments and caller outgoing arguments.

Table 9.1: Callee incoming arguments and caller outgoing arguments

Description	Callee	Caller
Charged Function	LowerFormalArguments()	LowerCall()
Charged Function Created	Create load vectors for incoming arguments	Create store vectors for outgoing arguments

## 9.4 Structure type support

### 9.4.1 Ordinary struct type

The following code in Chapter9\_1/ and Chapter3\_4/ support the ordinary structure type in function call.

#### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter9\_1/Cpu0ISelLowering.cpp

```

/// LowerFormalArguments - transform physical registers into virtual registers
/// and generate load operations for arguments places on the stack.
SDValue
Cpu0TargetLowering::LowerFormalArguments(SDValue Chain,
                                         CallingConv::ID CallConv,
                                         bool IsVarArg,
                                         const SmallVectorImpl<ISD::InputArg> &Ins,
                                         const SDLoc &DL, SelectionDAG &DAG,
                                         SmallVectorImpl<SDValue> &InVals)
                                         const {

```

```

for (unsigned i = 0, e = ArgLocs.size(); i != e; ++i) {
    // The cpu0 ABIs for returning structs by value requires that we copy
    // the sret argument into $v0 for the return. Save the argument into
    // a virtual register so that we can access it from the return points.
    if (Ins[i].Flags.isSRet()) {
        unsigned Reg = Cpu0FI->getSRetReturnReg();
        if (!Reg) {

```

```

        Reg = MF.getRegInfo().createVirtualRegister(
            getRegClassFor(MVT::i32));
        Cpu0FI->setSRetReturnReg(Reg);
    }
    SDValue Copy = DAG.getCopyToReg(DAG.getEntryNode(), DL, Reg, InVals[i]);
    Chain = DAG.getNode(ISD::TokenFactor, DL, MVT::Other, Copy, Chain);
    break;
}
}

```

```
}
```

```

SDValue
Cpu0TargetLowering::LowerReturn(SDValue Chain,
                                CallingConv::ID CallConv, bool IsVarArg,
                                const SmallVectorImpl<ISD::OutputArg> &Outs,
                                const SmallVectorImpl<SDValue> &OutVals,
                                const SDLoc &DL, SelectionDAG &DAG) const {

```

```

// The cpu0 ABIs for returning structs by value requires that we copy
// the sret argument into $v0 for the return. We saved the argument into
// a virtual register in the entry block, so now we copy the value out
// and into $v0.
if (MF.getFunction()->hasStructRetAttr()) {
    Cpu0FunctionInfo *Cpu0FI = MF.getInfo<Cpu0FunctionInfo>();
    unsigned Reg = Cpu0FI->getSRetReturnReg();

    if (!Reg)
        llvm_unreachable("sret virtual register not created in the entry block");
    SDValue Val =
        DAG.getCopyFromReg(Chain, DL, Reg, getPointerTy(DAG.getDataLayout()));
    unsigned V0 = Cpu0::V0;

    Chain = DAG.getCopyToReg(Chain, DL, V0, Val, Flag);
    Flag = Chain.getValue(1);
    RetOps.push_back(DAG.getRegister(V0, getPointerTy(DAG.getDataLayout())));
}

```

```
}
```

In addition to above code, we defined the calling convention in early chapter as follows,

### [Index/chapters/Chapter3\\_4/Cpu0CallingConv.td](#)

```

def RetCC_Cpu0EABI : CallingConv<[
    // i32 are returned in registers V0, V1, A0, A1
    CCIfType<i32>, CCAssignToReg<[V0, V1, A0, A1]>>
]>;

```

It meaning for the return value, we keep it in registers V0, V1, A0, A1 if the size of return value doesn't over 4 registers; If it over 4 registers, cpu0 will save them in memory with a pointer of memory in register. For explanation, let's run Chapter9\_2/ with ch9\_1\_struct.cpp and explain with this example.

**Ibdex/input/ch9\_1\_struct.cpp**

```
extern "C" int printf(const char *format, ...);

struct Date
{
    int year;
    int month;
    int day;
    int hour;
    int minute;
    int second;
};

static Date gDate = {2012, 10, 12, 1, 2, 3};

struct Time
{
    int hour;
    int minute;
    int second;
};

static Time gTime = {2, 20, 30};

static Date getDate()
{
    return gDate;
}

static Date copyDate(Date date)
{
    return date;
}

static Date copyDate(Date* date)
{
    return *date;
}

static Time copyTime(Time time)
{
    return time;
}

static Time copyTime(Time* time)
{
    return *time;
}

int test_func_arg_struct()
{
    Time time1 = {1, 10, 12};
    Date date1 = getDate();
    Date date2 = copyDate(date1);
    Date date3 = copyDate(&date1);
    Time time2 = copyTime(time1);
    Time time3 = copyTime(&time1);
    if (!(date1.year == 2012 && date1.month == 10 && date1.day == 12 && date1.hour
          == 1 && date1.minute == 2 && date1.second == 3))
}
```

```

        return 1;
if (!(date2.year == 2012 && date2.month == 10 && date2.day == 12 && date2.hour
    == 1 && date2.minute == 2 && date2.second == 3))
    return 1;
if (!(time2.hour == 1 && time2.minute == 10 && time2.second == 12))
    return 1;
if (!(time3.hour == 1 && time3.minute == 10 && time3.second == 12))
    return 1;

#endif PRINT_TEST
printf("date1 = %d %d %d %d %d", date1.year, date1.month, date1.day,
    date1.hour, date1.minute, date1.second); // date1 = 2012 10 12 1 2 3
if (date1.year == 2012 && date1.month == 10 && date1.day == 12 && date1.hour
    == 1 && date1.minute == 2 && date1.second == 3)
    printf(", PASS\n");
else
    printf(", FAIL\n");
printf("date2 = %d %d %d %d %d", date2.year, date2.month, date2.day,
    date2.hour, date2.minute, date2.second); // date2 = 2012 10 12 1 2 3
if (date2.year == 2012 && date2.month == 10 && date2.day == 12 && date2.hour
    == 1 && date2.minute == 2 && date2.second == 3)
    printf(", PASS\n");
else
    printf(", FAIL\n");
// time2 = 1 10 12
printf("time2 = %d %d %d", time2.hour, time2.minute, time2.second);
if (time2.hour == 1 && time2.minute == 10 && time2.second == 12)
    printf(", PASS\n");
else
    printf(", FAIL\n");
// time3 = 1 10 12
printf("time3 = %d %d %d", time3.hour, time3.minute, time3.second);
if (time3.hour == 1 && time3.minute == 10 && time3.second == 12)
    printf(", PASS\n");
else
    printf(", FAIL\n");
#endif
return 0;
}

```

```

JonathantekiiMac:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/
Debug/bin/llc -march=cpu0 -mcpu=cpu032I -relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm
ch9_1_struct.bc -o -
.section .mdebug.abi32
.previous
.file "ch9_1_struct.bc"
.text
.globl _Z7getDatev
.align 2
.type _Z7getDatev,@function
.ent _Z7getDatev           # @_Z7getDatev
_Z7getDatev:
.cfi_startproc
.frame $sp,0,$lr
.mask 0x00000000,0
.set noreorder
.cupload $t9

```

```

.set nomacro
# BB#0:
    lui    $2, %got_hi(gDate)
    addu   $2, $2, $gp
    ld     $3, %got_lo(gDate) ($2)
    ld     $2, 0($sp)
    ld     $4, 20($3)           // save gDate contents to 212..192($sp)
    st     $4, 20($2)
    ld     $4, 16($3)
    st     $4, 16($2)
    ld     $4, 12($3)
    st     $4, 12($2)
    ld     $4, 8($3)
    st     $4, 8($2)
    ld     $4, 4($3)
    st     $4, 4($2)
    ld     $3, 0($3)
    st     $3, 0($2)
    ret   $lr
    nop
.set macro
.set reorder
.end _Z7getDatev
$tmp0:
.size _Z7getDatev, ($tmp0)-_Z7getDatev
.cfi_endproc
...
.globl _Z20test_func_arg_structv
.align 2
.type _Z20test_func_arg_structv, @function
.ent _Z20test_func_arg_structv          # @main
_Z20test_func_arg_structv:
.cfi_startproc
.frame $sp, 248, $lr
.mask 0x00004180, -4
.set noreorder
.cupload $t9
.set nomacro
# BB#0:
    addiu $sp, $sp, -200
    st    $lr, 196($sp)           # 4-byte Folded Spill
    st    $8, 192($sp)           # 4-byte Folded Spill
    ld    $2, %got($_Z20test_func_arg_structvE5time1) ($gp)
    ori   $2, $2, %lo($_Z20test_func_arg_structvE5time1)
    ld    $3, 8($2)
    st    $3, 184($sp)
    ld    $3, 4($2)
    st    $3, 180($sp)
    ld    $2, 0($2)
    st    $2, 176($sp)
    addiu $8, $sp, 152
    st    $8, 0($sp)
    ld    $t9, %call16(_Z7getDatev) ($gp) // copy gDate contents to date1, 176..
→152($sp)
    jalr $t9
    nop
    ld    $gp, 176($sp)
    ld    $2, 172($sp)

```

```

st    $2, 124($sp)
ld    $2, 168($sp)
st    $2, 120($sp)
ld    $2, 164($sp)
st    $2, 116($sp)
ld    $2, 160($sp)
st    $2, 112($sp)
ld    $2, 156($sp)
st    $2, 108($sp)
ld    $2, 152($sp)
st    $2, 104($sp)
...

```

The ch9\_1\_constructor.cpp includes C++ class “Date” implementation. It can be translated into cpu0 backend too since the frontend (clang in this example) translate them into C language form. If you mark the “if hasStructRetAttr()” part from both of above functions, the output of cpu0 code for ch9\_1\_struct.cpp will use \$3 instead of \$2 as return register as follows,

```

.text
.section .mdebug.abis32
.previous
.file "ch9_1_struct.bc"
.globl _Z7getDatev
.align 2
.type _Z7getDatev,@function
.ent _Z7getDatev      # @_Z7getDatev
_Z7getDatev:
.frame $fp,0,$lr
.mask 0x00000000,0
.set noreorder
.cupload $t9
.set nomacro
# BB#0:
    lui $2, %got_hi(gDate)
    addu $2, $2, $gp
    ld $2, %got_lo(gDate) ($2)
    ld $3, 0($sp)
    ld $4, 20($2)
    st $4, 20($3)
    ld $4, 16($2)
    st $4, 16($3)
    ld $4, 12($2)
    st $4, 12($3)
    ld $4, 8($2)
    st $4, 8($3)
    ld $4, 4($2)
    st $4, 4($3)
    ld $2, 0($2)
    st $2, 0($3)
    ret $lr
    nop
...

```

Mips ABI asks “return struct variable address” to be set at \$2.

## 9.4.2 byval struct type

The following code in Chapter9\_1/ and Chapter9\_2/ support the byval structure type in function call.

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter9\_1/Cpu0ISelLowering.cpp

```
void Cpu0TargetLowering::
copyByValRegs(SDValue Chain, const SDLoc &DL, std::vector<SDValue> &OutChains,
              SelectionDAG &DAG, const ISD::ArgFlagsTy &Flags,
              SmallVectorImpl<SDValue> &InVals, const Argument *FuncArg,
              const Cpu0CC &CC, const ByValArgInfo &ByVal) const {
    MachineFunction &MF = DAG.getMachineFunction();
    MachineFrameInfo *MFI = MF.getFrameInfo();
    unsigned RegAreaSize = ByVal.NumRegs * CC.regSize();
    unsigned FrameObjSize = std::max(Flags.getByValSize(), RegAreaSize);
    int FrameObjOffset;

    const ArrayRef<MCPhysReg> ByValArgRegs = CC.intArgRegs();

    if (RegAreaSize)
        FrameObjOffset = (int)CC.reservedArgArea() -
            (int)((CC.numIntArgRegs() - ByVal.FirstIdx) * CC.regSize());
    else
        FrameObjOffset = ByVal.Address;

    // Create frame object.
    EVT PtrTy = getPointerTy(DAG.getDataLayout());
    int FI = MFI->CreateFixedObject(FrameObjSize, FrameObjOffset, true);
    SDValue FIN = DAG.getFrameIndex(FI, PtrTy);
    InVals.push_back(FIN);

    if (!ByVal.NumRegs)
        return;

    // Copy arg registers.
    MVT RegTy = MVT::getIntegerVT(CC.regSize() * 8);
    const TargetRegisterClass *RC = getRegClassFor(RegTy);

    for (unsigned I = 0; I < ByVal.NumRegs; ++I) {
        unsigned ArgReg = ByValArgRegs[ByVal.FirstIdx + I];
        unsigned VReg = addLiveIn(MF, ArgReg, RC);
        unsigned Offset = I * CC.regSize();
        SDValue StorePtr = DAG.getNode(ISD::ADD, DL, PtrTy, FIN,
                                       DAG.getConstant(Offset, DL, PtrTy));
        SDValue Store = DAG.getStore(Chain, DL, DAG.getRegister(VReg, RegTy),
                                     StorePtr, MachinePointerInfo(FuncArg, Offset));
        OutChains.push_back(Store);
    }
}
```

```
/// LowerFormalArguments - transform physical registers into virtual registers
/// and generate load operations for arguments places on the stack.
SDValue
Cpu0TargetLowering::LowerFormalArguments(SDValue Chain,
                                         CallingConv::ID CallConv,
                                         bool IsVarArg,
```

```

        const SmallVectorImpl<ISD::InputArg> &Ins,
        const SDLoc &DL, SelectionDAG &DAG,
        SmallVectorImpl<SDValue> &InVals)
        const {

for (unsigned i = 0, e = ArgLocs.size(); i != e; ++i) {

    if (Flags.isByVal()) {
        assert(Flags.getByValSize() &&
            "ByVal args of size 0 should have been ignored by front-end.");
        assert(ByValArg != Cpu0CCInfo.byval_end());
        copyByValRegs(Chain, DL, OutChains, DAG, Flags, InVals, &*FuncArg,
                      Cpu0CCInfo, *ByValArg);
        ++ByValArg;
        continue;
    }

    ...
}

for (unsigned i = 0, e = ArgLocs.size(); i != e; ++i) {
    // The cpu0 ABIs for returning structs by value requires that we copy
    // the sret argument into $v0 for the return. Save the argument into
    // a virtual register so that we can access it from the return points.
    if (Ins[i].Flags.isSRet()) {
        unsigned Reg = Cpu0FI->getSRetReturnReg();
        if (!Reg) {
            Reg = MF.getRegInfo().createVirtualRegister(
                getRegClassFor(MVT::i32));
            Cpu0FI->setSRetReturnReg(Reg);
        }
        SDValue Copy = DAG.getCopyToReg(DAG.getEntryNode(), DL, Reg, InVals[i]);
        Chain = DAG.getNode(ISD::TokenFactor, DL, MVT::Other, Copy, Chain);
        break;
    }
}

...
}

```

### [Index/chapters/Chapter9\\_2/Cpu0ISelLowering.cpp](#)

```

// Copy ByVal arg to registers and stack.
void Cpu0TargetLowering::
passByValArg(SDValue Chain, const SDLoc &DL,
             std::deque< std::pair<unsigned, SDValue> > &RegsToPass,
             SmallVectorImpl<SDValue> &MemOpChains, SDValue StackPtr,
             MachineFrameInfo *MFI, SelectionDAG &DAG, SDValue Arg,
             const Cpu0CC &CC, const ByValArgInfo &ByVal,
             const ISD::ArgFlagsTy &Flags, bool isLittle) const {
    unsigned ByValSizeInBytes = Flags.getByValSize();
    unsigned OffsetInBytes = 0; // From beginning of struct
    unsigned RegSizeInBytes = CC.regSize();
    unsigned Alignment = std::min(Flags.getByValAlign(), RegSizeInBytes);
}

```

```

EVT PtrTy = getPointerTy(DAG.getDataLayout()),
RegTy = MVT::getIntegerVT(RegSizeInBytes * 8);

if (ByVal.NumRegs) {
    const ArrayRef<MCPhysReg> ArgRegs = CC.intArgRegs();
    bool LeftoverBytes = (ByVal.NumRegs * RegSizeInBytes > ByValSizeInBytes);
    unsigned I = 0;

    // Copy words to registers.
    for (; I < ByVal.NumRegs - LeftoverBytes;
          ++I, OffsetInBytes += RegSizeInBytes) {
        SDValue LoadPtr = DAG.getNode(ISD::ADD, DL, PtrTy, Arg,
                                      DAG.getConstant(OffsetInBytes, DL, PtrTy));
        SDValue LoadVal = DAG.getLoad(RegTy, DL, Chain, LoadPtr,
                                      MachinePointerInfo());
        MemOpChains.push_back(LoadVal.getValue(1));
        unsigned ArgReg = ArgRegs[ByVal.FirstIdx + I];
        RegsToPass.push_back(std::make_pair(ArgReg, LoadVal));
    }

    // Return if the struct has been fully copied.
    if (ByValSizeInBytes == OffsetInBytes)
        return;

    // Copy the remainder of the byval argument with sub-word loads and shifts.
    if (LeftoverBytes) {
        assert((ByValSizeInBytes > OffsetInBytes) &&
                 (ByValSizeInBytes < OffsetInBytes + RegSizeInBytes) &&
                 "Size of the remainder should be smaller than RegSizeInBytes.");
        SDValue Val;

        for (unsigned LoadSizeInBytes = RegSizeInBytes / 2, TotalBytesLoaded = 0;
              OffsetInBytes < ByValSizeInBytes; LoadSizeInBytes /= 2) {
            unsigned RemainingSizeInBytes = ByValSizeInBytes - OffsetInBytes;

            if (RemainingSizeInBytes < LoadSizeInBytes)
                continue;

            // Load subword.
            SDValue LoadPtr = DAG.getNode(ISD::ADD, DL, PtrTy, Arg,
                                          DAG.getConstant(OffsetInBytes, DL, PtrTy));
            SDValue LoadVal = DAG.getExtLoad(
                ISD::ZEXTLOAD, DL, RegTy, Chain, LoadPtr, MachinePointerInfo(),
                MVT::getIntegerVT(LoadSizeInBytes * 8), Alignment);
            MemOpChains.push_back(LoadVal.getValue(1));

            // Shift the loaded value.
            unsigned Shamt;

            if (isLittle)
                Shamt = TotalBytesLoaded * 8;
            else
                Shamt = (RegSizeInBytes - (TotalBytesLoaded + LoadSizeInBytes)) * 8;

            SDValue Shift = DAG.getNode(ISD::SHL, DL, RegTy, LoadVal,
                                         DAG.getConstant(Shamt, DL, MVT::i32));

            if (Val.getNode())

```

```

    Val = DAG.getNode(ISD::OR, DL, RegTy, Val, Shift);
else
    Val = Shift;

    OffsetInBytes += LoadSizeInBytes;
    TotalBytesLoaded += LoadSizeInBytes;
    Alignment = std::min(Alignment, LoadSizeInBytes);
}

unsigned ArgReg = ArgRegs[ByVal.FirstIdx + I];
RegsToPass.push_back(std::make_pair(ArgReg, Val));
return;
}
}

// Copy remainder of byval arg to it with memcpy.
unsigned MemCopySize = ByValSizeInBytes - OffsetInBytes;
SDValue Src = DAG.getNode(ISD::ADD, DL, PtrTy, Arg,
                           DAG.getConstant(OffsetInBytes, DL, PtrTy));
SDValue Dst = DAG.getNode(ISD::ADD, DL, PtrTy, StackPtr,
                           DAG.getIntPtrConstant(ByVal.Address, DL));
Chain = DAG.getMemcpy(Chain, DL, Dst, Src,
                      DAG.getConstant(MemCopySize, DL, PtrTy),
                      Alignment, /*isVolatile=*/false, /*AlwaysInline=*/false,
                      /*isTailCall=*/false,
                      MachinePointerInfo(), MachinePointerInfo());
MemOpChains.push_back(Chain);
}
}

```

```

/// LowerCall - functions arguments are copied from virtual regs to
/// (physical regs)/(stack frame), CALLSEQ_START and CALLSEQ_END are emitted.
SDValue
Cpu0TargetLowering::LowerCall(TargetLowering::CallLoweringInfo &CLI,
                               SmallVectorImpl<SDValue> &InVals) const {

```

```

// Walk the register/memloc assignments, inserting copies/loads.
for (unsigned i = 0, e = ArgLocs.size(); i != e; ++i) {

    if (Flags.isByVal()) {
        assert(Flags.getByValSize() &&
               "ByVal args of size 0 should have been ignored by front-end.");
        assert(ByValArg != Cpu0CCInfo.byval_end());
        assert(!IsTailCall &&
               "Do not tail-call optimize if there is a byval argument.");
        passByValArg(Chain, DL, RegsToPass, MemOpChains, StackPtr, MFI, DAG, Arg,
                     Cpu0CCInfo, *ByValArg, Flags, Subtarget.isLittle());
        ++ByValArg;
        continue;
    }

    ...
}
...
}
```

In LowerCall(), Flags.isByVal() will be true if it meets **byval** for struct type in caller function as follows,

**Ibdex/input/tailcall.ll**

```
define internal fastcc i32 @caller9_1() nounwind noinline {
entry:
...
%call = tail call i32 @callee9(%struct.S* byval @gs1) nounwind
ret i32 %call
}
```

In LowerFormalArguments(), Flags.isByVal() will be true when it meets **byval** in callee function as follows,

**Ibdex/input/tailcall.ll**

```
define i32 @caller12(%struct.S* nocapture byval %a0) nounwind {
entry:
...
}
```

At this point, I don't know how to create a make clang to generate byval IR with C language.

## 9.5 Function call optimization

### 9.5.1 Tail call optimization

Tail call optimization is used in some situation of function call. For some situation, the caller and callee stack can share the same memory stack. When this situation applied in recursive function call, it often asymptotically reduces stack space requirements from linear, or  $O(n)$ , to constant, or  $O(1)$ <sup>5</sup>. LLVM IR supports tailcall here<sup>6</sup>.

The **tailcall** appeared in Cpu0ISelLowering.cpp and Cpu0InstrInfo.td are used to make tail call optimization.

**Ibdex/input/ch9\_2\_tailcall.cpp**

```
int factorial(int x)
{
    if (x > 0)
        return x*factorial(x-1);
    else
        return 1;
}

int test_tailcall(int a)
{
    return factorial(a);
}
```

Run Chapter9\_2/ with ch9\_2\_tailcall.cpp will get the following result.

<sup>5</sup> [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Tail\\_call](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Tail_call)

<sup>6</sup> <http://llvm.org/docs/CodeGenerator.html#tail-call-optimization>

```

JonathantekiiMac:input Jonathan$ clang -O1 -target mips-unknown-linux-gnu -c
ch9_2_tailcall.cpp -emit-llvm -o ch9_2_tailcall.bc
JonathantekiiMac:input Jonathan$ ~/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/bin/
llvm-dis ch9_2_tailcall.bc -o -
...
; Function Attrs: nounwind readnone
define i32 @_Z9factoriali(i32 %x) #0 {
    %1 = icmp sgt i32 %x, 0
    br i1 %1, label %tailrecuse, label %tailrecuse._crit_edge

tailrecuse:                                ; preds = %tailrecuse, %0
    %x.tr2 = phi i32 [ %2, %tailrecuse ], [ %x, %0 ]
    %accumulator.tr1 = phi i32 [ %3, %tailrecuse ], [ 1, %0 ]
    %2 = add nsw i32 %x.tr2, -1
    %3 = mul nsw i32 %x.tr2, %accumulator.tr1
    %4 = icmp sgt i32 %2, 0
    br i1 %4, label %tailrecuse, label %tailrecuse._crit_edge

tailrecuse._crit_edge:                      ; preds = %tailrecuse, %0
    %accumulator.tr.lcssa = phi i32 [ 1, %0 ], [ %3, %tailrecuse ]
    ret i32 %accumulator.tr.lcssa
}

; Function Attrs: nounwind readnone
define i32 @_Z13test_tailcalli(i32 %a) #0 {
    %1 = tail call i32 @_Z9factoriali(i32 %a)
    ret i32 %1
}
...
JonathantekiiMac:input Jonathan$ ~/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/bin/
llc -march=cpu0 -mcpu=cpu032II -relocation-model=static -filetype=asm
-enable-cpu0-tail-calls ch9_2_tailcall.bc -stats -o -
    .text
    .section .mdebug.abi32
    .previous
    .file "ch9_2_tailcall.bc"
    .globl _Z9factoriali
    .align 2
    .type _Z9factoriali,@function
    .ent _Z9factoriali      # @_Z9factoriali
_Z9factoriali:
    .frame $sp,0,$lr
    .mask 0x00000000,0
    .set noreorder
    .set nomacro
# BB#0:
    addiu $2, $zero, 1
    slt $3, $4, $2
    bne $3, $zero, $BB0_2
    nop
$BB0_1:                                # %tailrecuse
                                         # =>This Inner Loop Header: Depth=1
    mul $2, $4, $2
    addiu $4, $4, -1
    addiu $3, $zero, 0
    slt $3, $3, $4
    bne $3, $zero, $BB0_1
    nop

```

```

$BB0_2:                                # %tailrecuse._crit_edge
    ret    $lr
    nop
    .set   macro
    .set   reorder
    .end   _Z9factoriali

$tmp0:
    .size  _Z9factoriali, ($tmp0)-_Z9factoriali

    .globl      _Z13test_tailcalli
    .align     2
    .type   _Z13test_tailcalli,@function
    .ent    _Z13test_tailcalli      # @_Z13test_tailcalli

_Z13test_tailcalli:
    .frame     $sp,0,$lr
    .mask      0x00000000,0
    .set      noreorder
    .set      nomacro

# BB#0:
    jmp     _Z9factoriali
    nop
    .set   macro
    .set   reorder
    .end   _Z13test_tailcalli

$tmp1:
    .size  _Z13test_tailcalli, ($tmp1)-_Z13test_tailcalli

=====
          ... Statistics Collected ...
=====

...
1 cpu0-lower      - Number of tail calls
...

```

The tail call optimization shares caller's and callee's stack and it is applied in cpu032II only for this example (it uses “jmp \_Z9factoriali” instead of “jsub \_Z9factoriali”). Then cpu032I (pass all arguments in stack) doesn't satisfy the statement, NextStackOffset <= FI.getIncomingArgSize() in isEligibleForTailCallOptimization(), and return false for the function as follows,

### [Index/chapters/Chapter9\\_2/Cpu0SEISelLowering.cpp](#)

```

bool Cpu0SEITargetLowering::
isEligibleForTailCallOptimization(const Cpu0CC &Cpu0CCInfo,
                                  unsigned NextStackOffset,
                                  const Cpu0FunctionInfo& FI) const {
    if (!EnableCpu0TailCalls)
        return false;

    // Return false if either the callee or caller has a byval argument.
    if (Cpu0CCInfo.hasByValArg() || FI.hasByvalArg())
        return false;

    // Return true if the callee's argument area is no larger than the
    // caller's.

```

```
    return NextStackOffset <= FI.getIncomingArgSize();
}
```

### Index/chapters/Chapter9\_2/Cpu0ISelLowering.cpp

```
/// LowerCall - functions arguments are copied from virtual regs to
/// (physical regs)/(stack frame), CALLSEQ_START and CALLSEQ_END are emitted.
SDValue
Cpu0TargetLowering::LowerCall(TargetLowering::CallLoweringInfo &CLI,
                               SmallVectorImpl<SDValue> &InVals) const {
```

```
// Check if it's really possible to do a tail call.
if (IsTailCall)
    IsTailCall =
        isEligibleForTailCallOptimization(Cpu0CCInfo, NextStackOffset,
                                           *MF.getInfo<Cpu0FunctionInfo>());

if (!IsTailCall && CLI.CS && CLI.CS->isMustTailCall())
    report_fatal_error("failed to perform tail call elimination on a call "
                      "site marked musttail");

if (IsTailCall)
    ++NumTailCalls;
```

```
if (!IsTailCall)
    Chain = DAG.getCALLSEQ_START(Chain, NextStackOffsetVal, DL);
```

```
if (IsTailCall)
    return DAG.getNode(Cpu0ISD::TailCall, DL, MVT::Other, Ops);
```

```
...
}
```

Since tailcall optimization will translate jmp instruction directly instead of jsub. The callseq\_start, callseq\_end, and the DAG nodes created in LowerCallResult() and LowerReturn() are needless. It creates DAGs for ch9\_2\_tailcall.cpp as the following figure,

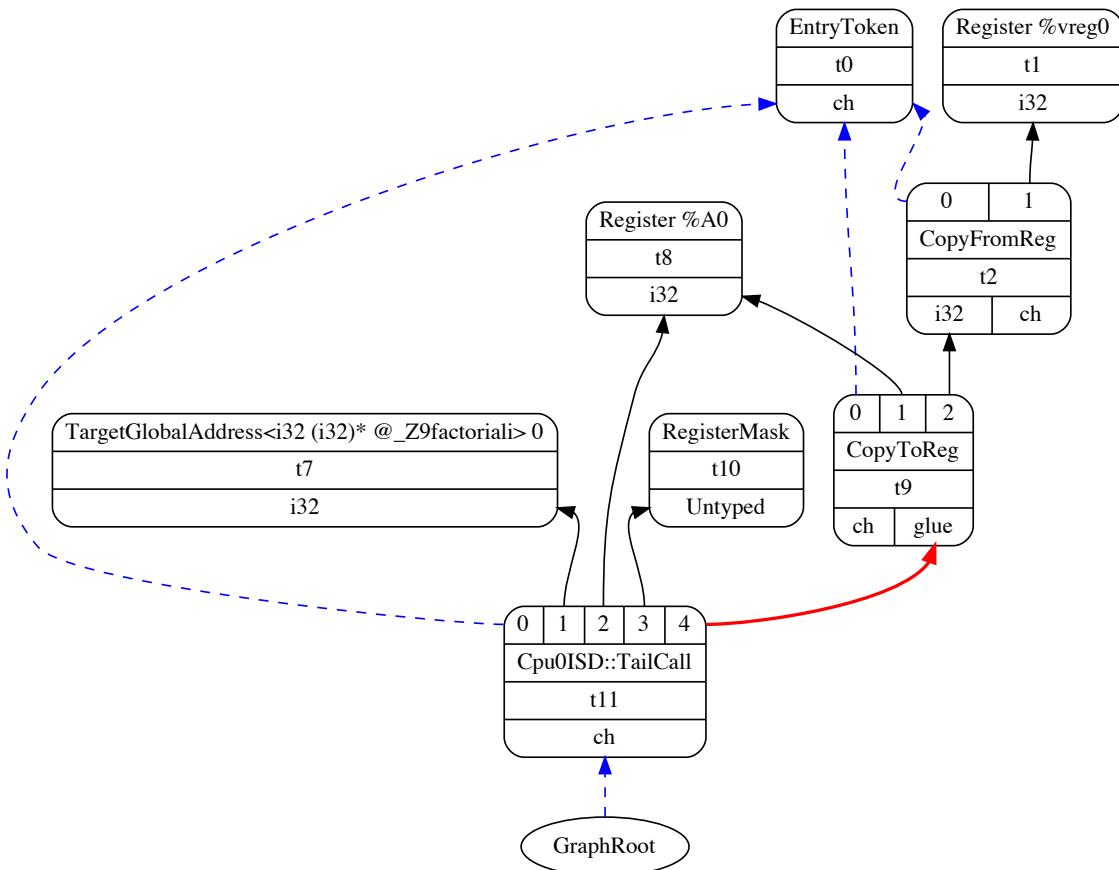


Figure: Outgoing arguments DAGs created for ch9\_2\_tailcall.cpp

Finally, listing the DAGs translation of tail call as the following table.

Table 9.2: the DAGs translation of tail call

Stage	DAG	Function
Backend lowering	Cpu0ISD::TailCall	LowerCall()
Instruction selection	TAILCALL	note 1
Instruction Print	JMP	note 2

note 1: by Cpu0InstrInfo.td as follows,

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter9\_1/Cpu0InstrInfo.td

```
// Tail call
def Cpu0TailCall : SDNode<"Cpu0ISD::TailCall", SDT_Cpu0JmpLink,
    [SDNPHasChain, SDNPOptInGlue, SDNPVariadic]>;
```

```
def : Pat<(Cpu0TailCall (iPTR tglobaladdr:$dst)),
    (TAILCALL tglobaladdr:$dst)>;
```

```
def : Pat<(Cpu0TailCall (iPTR texternalsym:$dst))>,
      (TAILCALL texternalsym:$dst)>;
```

note 2: by Cpu0InstrInfo.td and emitPseudoExpansionLowering() of Cpu0AsmPrinter.cpp as follows,

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter9\_1/Cpu0InstrInfo.td

```
let isCall = 1, isTerminator = 1, isReturn = 1, isBarrier = 1, hasDelaySlot = 1,
    hasExtraSrcRegAllocReq = 1, Defs = [AT] in {
  class TailCall<Instruction JumpInst> :
    PseudoSE<(outs), (ins calltarget:$target), [], IIBranch>,
    PseudoInstExpansion<(JumpInst jmptarget:$target)>;
  class TailCallReg<RegisterClass RO, Instruction JRInst,
    RegisterClass ResRO = RO> :
    PseudoSE<(outs), (ins RO:$rs), [(Cpu0TailCall RO:$rs)], IIBranch>,
    PseudoInstExpansion<(JRInst ResRO:$rs)>;
}
```

```
let Predicates = [Ch9_1] in {
  def TAILCALL : TailCall<JMP>;
  def TAILCALL_R : TailCallReg<GPROut, JR>;
}
```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter9\_1/Cpu0AsmPrinter.h

```
// tblgen'reated function.
bool emitPseudoExpansionLowering(MCStreamer &OutStreamer,
                                  const MachineInstr *MI);
```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter9\_1/Cpu0AsmPrinter.cpp

```
//- EmitInstruction() must exists or will have run time error.
void Cpu0AsmPrinter::EmitInstruction(const MachineInstr *MI) {
  // @EmitInstruction body {
  if (MI->isDebugValue()) {
    SmallString<128> Str;
    raw_svector_ostream OS(Str);

    PrintDebugValueComment(MI, OS);
    return;
  }

  // @print out instruction:
  // Print out both ordinary instruction and boudle instruction
  MachineBasicBlock::const_instr_iterator I = MI->getIterator();
  MachineBasicBlock::const_instr_iterator E = MI->getParent()->instr_end();

  do {
    // Do any auto-generated pseudo lowerings.
    if (emitPseudoExpansionLowering(*OutStreamer, &I))

```

```

    continue;

    if (I->isPseudo() && !isLongBranchPseudo(I->getOpcode()))
        llvm_unreachable("Pseudo opcode found in EmitInstruction()");

    MCInst TmpInst0;
    MCInstLowering.Lower(&*I, TmpInst0);
    OutStreamer->EmitInstruction(TmpInst0, getSubtargetInfo());
} while ((++I != E) && I->isInsideBundle()); // Delay slot check
}

```

Function emitPseudoExpansionLowering() is generated by TableGen and exists in Cpu0GenMCPseudoLowering.inc.

## 9.5.2 Recursion optimization

As last section, cpu032I cannot does tail call optimization in ch9\_2\_tailcall.cpp since the limitation of arguments size is not satisfied. If runnig with clang -O3 option, it can get the same or better performance than tail call as follows,

```

JonathantekiiMac:input Jonathan$ clang -O1 -target mips-unknown-linux-gnu -c
ch9_2_tailcall.cpp -emit-llvm -o ch9_2_tailcall.bc
JonathantekiiMac:input Jonathan$ ~/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/bin/
llvm-dis ch9_2_tailcall.bc -o -
...
; Function Attrs: nounwind readnone
define i32 @_Z9factoriali(i32 %x) #0 {
    %1 = icmp sgt i32 %x, 0
    br i1 %1, label %tailrecurse.preheader, label %tailrecurse._crit_edge

tailrecurse.preheader:                                ; preds = %0
    br label %tailrecurse

tailrecurse:                                         ; preds = %tailrecurse,
%tailrecurse.preheader
    %x.tr2 = phi i32 [ %2, %tailrecurse ], [ %x, %tailrecurse.preheader ]
    %accumulator.tr1 = phi i32 [ %3, %tailrecurse ], [ 1, %tailrecurse.preheader ]
    %2 = add nsw i32 %x.tr2, -1
    %3 = mul nsw i32 %x.tr2, %accumulator.tr1
    %4 = icmp sgt i32 %2, 0
    br i1 %4, label %tailrecurse, label %tailrecurse._crit_edge.loopexit

tailrecurse._crit_edge.loopexit:                      ; preds = %tailrecurse
    %.lcssa = phi i32 [ %3, %tailrecurse ]
    br label %tailrecurse._crit_edge

tailrecurse._crit_edge:                            ; preds = %tailrecurse._crit
    _edge.loopexit, %0
    %accumulator.tr.lcssa = phi i32 [ 1, %0 ], [ %.lcssa, %tailrecurse._crit_edge
    .loopexit ]
    ret i32 %accumulator.tr.lcssa
}

; Function Attrs: nounwind readnone
define i32 @_Z13test_tailcalli(i32 %a) #0 {
    %1 = icmp sgt i32 %a, 0
    br i1 %1, label %tailrecurse.i.preheader, label %_Z9factoriali.exit

tailrecurse.i.preheader:                           ; preds = %0

```

```

br label %tailrecurse.i

tailrecurse.i:                                ; preds = %tailrecurse.i,
%tailrecurse.i.preheader
%x.tr2.i = phi i32 [ %2, %tailrecurse.i ], [ %a, %tailrecurse.i.preheader ]
%accumulator.tr1.i = phi i32 [ %3, %tailrecurse.i ], [ 1, %tailrecurse.i.
preheader ]
%2 = add nsw i32 %x.tr2.i, -1
%3 = mul nsw i32 %accumulator.tr1.i, %x.tr2.i
%4 = icmp sgt i32 %2, 0
br i1 %4, label %tailrecurse.i, label %_Z9factoriali.exit.loopexit

_Z9factoriali.exit.loopexit:                   ; preds = %tailrecurse.i
%.lcssa = phi i32 [ %3, %tailrecurse.i ]
br label %_Z9factoriali.exit

_Z9factoriali.exit:                           ; preds = %_Z9factoriali.
exit.loopexit, %0
%accumulator.tr.lcssa.i = phi i32 [ 1, %0 ], [ %.lcssa, %_Z9factoriali.
exit.loopexit ]
ret i32 %accumulator.tr.lcssa.i
}

...
Jonathan@ekimac:~/input Jonathan$ ~/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/bin/
llc -march=cpu0 -mcpu=cpu032I -relocation-model=static -filetype=asm
ch9_2_tailcall.bc -o -
.text
.section .mdebug.abiS32
.previous
.file "ch9_2_tailcall.bc"
.globl _Z9factoriali
.align 2
.type _Z9factoriali,@function
.ent _Z9factoriali           # @_Z9factoriali
_Z9factoriali:
.frame $sp,0,$lr
.mask 0x00000000,0
.set noreorder
.set nomacro
# BB#0:
addiu $2, $zero, 1
ld    $3, 0($sp)
cmp   $sw, $3, $2
jlt   $sw, $BB0_2
nop
$BB0_1:                                     # %tailrecurse
# =>This Inner Loop Header: Depth=1
mul   $2, $3, $2
addiu $3, $3, -1
addiu $4, $zero, 0
cmp   $sw, $3, $4
jgt   $sw, $BB0_1
nop
$BB0_2:                                     # %tailrecurse._crit_edge
ret   $lr
nop
.set macro
.set reorder

```

```

        .end _Z9factoriali
$tmp0:
.size _Z9factoriali, ($tmp0)-_Z9factoriali

.globl _Z13test_tailcalli
.align 2
.type _Z13test_tailcalli,@function
.ent _Z13test_tailcalli      # @_Z13test_tailcalli
_Z13test_tailcalli:
.frame $sp,0,$lr
.mask 0x00000000,0
.set noreorder
.set nomacro
# BB#0:
addiu $2, $zero, 1
ld    $3, 0($sp)
cmp   $sw, $3, $2
jlt   $sw, $BB1_2
nop
$BB1_1:          # %tailrecuse.i
# =>This Inner Loop Header: Depth=1
mul   $2, $2, $3
addiu $3, $3, -1
addiu $4, $zero, 0
cmp   $sw, $3, $4
jgt   $sw, $BB1_1
nop
$BB1_2:          # %_Z9factoriali.exit
ret   $lr
nop
.set macro
.set reorder
.end _Z13test_tailcalli
$tmp1:
.size _Z13test_tailcalli, ($tmp1)-_Z13test_tailcalli

```

According above llvm IR, clang -O3 option replace recursion with loop by inline the callee recursion function. This is a frontend optimization through cross over function analysis.

Cpu0 doesn't support fastcc<sup>7</sup> but it can pass the fastcc keyword of IR. Mips supports fastcc by using as more registers as possible without following ABI specification.

## 9.6 Other features supporting

This section supports features for “\$gp register caller saved register in PIC addressing mode”, “variable number of arguments” and “dynamic stack allocation”.

Run Chapter9\_2/ with ch9\_3\_vararg.cpp to get the following error,

### Ibdex/input/ch9\_3\_vararg.cpp

```
#include <stdarg.h>
```

<sup>7</sup> <http://llvm.org/docs/LangRef.html#calling-conventions>

```

int sum_i(int amount, ...)
{
    int i = 0;
    int val = 0;
    int sum = 0;

    va_list vl;
    va_start(vl, amount);
    for (i = 0; i < amount; i++)
    {
        val = va_arg(vl, int);
        sum += val;
    }
    va_end(vl);

    return sum;
}

int test_vararg()
{
    int a = sum_i(6, 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5);

    return a;
}

```

```

118-165-78-230:input Jonathan$ clang -target mips-unknown-linux-gnu -c
ch9_3_vararg.cpp -emit-llvm -o ch9_3_vararg.bc
118-165-78-230:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/
Debug/bin/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm ch9_3_vararg.bc - -
...
LLVM ERROR: Cannot select: 0x7f8b6902fd10: ch = vastart 0x7f8b6902fa10,
0x7f8b6902fb10, 0x7f8b6902fc10 [ORD=9] [ID=22]
  0x7f8b6902fb10: i32 = FrameIndex<5> [ORD=7] [ID=9]
In function: _Z5sum_iiz

```

### Ibdex/input/ch9\_3\_alloc.cpp

```

// This file needed compile without option, -target mips-unknown-linux-gnu, so
// it is verified by build-run_backend2.sh or verified in lld linker support
// (build-slinker.sh).

##include <alloca.h>
##include <stdlib.h>

int sum(int x1, int x2, int x3, int x4, int x5, int x6)
{
    int sum = x1 + x2 + x3 + x4 + x5 + x6;

    return sum;
}

int weight_sum(int x1, int x2, int x3, int x4, int x5, int x6)
{
//  int *b = (int*)alloca(sizeof(int) * 1 * x1);

```

```

int* b = (int*)__builtin_alloca(sizeof(int) * 1 * x1);
int *a = b;
*b = x3;

int weight = sum(3*x1, x2, x3, x4, 2*x5, x6);

return (weight + (*a));
}

int test_alloc()
{
    int a = weight_sum(1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6); // 31

    return a;
}

```

Run Chapter9\_2 with ch9\_3\_alloc.cpp will get the following error.

```

118-165-72-242:input Jonathan$ clang -target mips-unknown-linux-gnu -c
ch9_3_alloc.cpp -emit-llvm -o ch9_3_alloc.bc
118-165-72-242:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/
Debug/bin/llc -march=cpu0 -mcpu=cpu032I -cpu0-s32-calls=false
-relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm ch9_3_alloc.bc -o -
...
LLVM ERROR: Cannot select: 0x7ffd8b02ff10: i32, ch = dynamic_stackalloc
0x7ffd8b02f910:1, 0x7ffd8b02fe10, 0x7ffd8b02c010 [ORD=12] [ID=48]
0x7ffd8b02fe10: i32 = and 0x7ffd8b02fc10, 0x7ffd8b02fd10 [ORD=12] [ID=47]
0x7ffd8b02fc10: i32 = add 0x7ffd8b02fa10, 0x7ffd8b02fb10 [ORD=12] [ID=46]
0x7ffd8b02fa10: i32 = shl 0x7ffd8b02f910, 0x7ffd8b02f510 [ID=45]
0x7ffd8b02f910: i32, ch = load 0x7ffd8b02ee10, 0x7ffd8b02e310,
0x7ffd8b02b310<LD4[%1]> [ID=44]
0x7ffd8b02e310: i32 = FrameIndex<1> [ORD=3] [ID=10]
0x7ffd8b02b310: i32 = undef [ORD=1] [ID=2]
0x7ffd8b02f510: i32 = Constant<2> [ID=25]
0x7ffd8b02fb10: i32 = Constant<7> [ORD=12] [ID=16]
0x7ffd8b02fd10: i32 = Constant<-8> [ORD=12] [ID=17]
0x7ffd8b02c010: i32 = Constant<0> [ORD=12] [ID=8]
In function: _Z5sum_iiiiiii

```

## 9.6.1 The \$gp register caller saved register in PIC addressing mode

According the original cpu0 web site information, it only supports “**jsub**” of 24-bit address range access. We add “**jalr**” to cpu0 and expand it to 32 bit address. We do this change for two reasons. One is that cpu0 can be expanded to 32 bit address space by only adding this instruction, and the other is cpu0 and this book are designed for tutorial. We reserve “**jalr**” as PIC mode for dynamic linking function to demonstrates:

1. How caller handles the caller saved register \$gp in calling the function.
2. How the code in the shared libray function uses \$gp to access global variable address.
3. The jalr for dynamic linking function is easier in implementation and faster. As we have depicted in section “pic mode” of chapter “Global variables, structs and arrays, other type”. This solution is popular in reality and deserve changing cpu0 official design as a compiler book.

In chapter “Global variable”, we mentioned two link type, the static link and dynamic link. The option `-relocation-model=static` is for static link function while option `-relocation-model=pic` is for dynamic link function. One instance of dynamic link function is used is for calling functions of share library. Share library includes a lots of dynamic link

functions usually can be loaded at run time. Since share library can be loaded in different memory address, the global variable address be accessed cannot be decided at link time. Whatever, he distance between the global variable address and the start address of shared library function can be calculated when it has been loaded.

Let's run Chapter9\_3/ with ch9\_gprestore.cpp to get the following result. We putting the comments in the result for explanation.

### Ibdex/input/ch9\_gprestore.cpp

```
extern int sum_i(int x1);

int call_sum_i() {
    int a = sum_i(1);
    a += sum_i(2);
    return a;
}
```

```
118-165-78-230:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/
Debug/bin/llc -march=cpu0 -mcpu=cpu032II-cpu0-s32-calls=true
-relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm ch9_gprestore.bc -o -
...
.cupload $t9
.set nomacro
# BB#0:                                # %entry
addiu $sp, $sp, -24
$tmp0:
.cfi_def_cfa_offset 24
st $lr, 12($sp)           # 4-byte Folded Spill
st $fp, 16($sp)           # 4-byte Folded Spill
$tmp1:
.cfi_offset 14, -4
$tmp2:
.cfi_offset 12, -8
.cprestore 8 // save $gp to 8($sp)
ld $t9, %call16(_Z5sum_ii)($gp)
addiu $4, $zero, 1
jalr $t9
nop
ld $gp, 8($sp) // restore $gp from 8($sp)
add $8, $zero, $2
ld $t9, %call16(_Z5sum_ii)($gp)
addiu $4, $zero, 2
jalr $t9
nop
ld $gp, 8($sp) // restore $gp from 8($sp)
addu $2, $2, $8
ld $8, 8($sp)           # 4-byte Folded Reload
ld $lr, 12($sp)           # 4-byte Folded Reload
addiu $sp, $sp, 16
ret $lr
nop
```

As above code comment, “**.cprestore 8**” is a pseudo instruction for saving **\$gp** to **8(\$sp)** while Instruction “**ld \$gp, 8(\$sp)**” restore the **\$gp**, refer to Table 8-1 of “MIPSpro TM Assembly Language Programmer’s Guide”<sup>2</sup>. In other words, **\$gp** is a caller saved register, so main() need to save/restore **\$gp** before/after call the shared library **\_Z5sum\_ii()** function. In llvm Mips 3.5, it removed the .cprestore in mode PIC which meaning **\$gp** is not a caller saved register in

PIC anymore. However, it is still existed in Cpu0 and this feature can be removed by not defining it in Cpu0Config.h. The #ifdef ENABLE\_GPRESTORE part of code in Cpu0 can be removed but it comes with the cost of reserving \$gp register as a specific register and cannot be allocated for the program variable in PIC mode. As explained in early chapter Global variable, the PIC is not critical function and the performance advantage can be ignored in dynamic link, so we keep this feature in Cpu0. Reserving \$gp as a specific register in PIC will save a lot of code in programming. When reserving \$gp, .cprestore can be disabled by option “-cpu0-reserve-gp”. The .cupload is needed even reserving \$gp (considering that programmers implement a boot code function with C and assembly mixed, programmer can set \$gp value through .cupload be issued).

If enabling “-cpu0-no-cupload”, and undefining ENABLE\_GPRESTORE or enable “-cpu0-reserve-gp”, .cupload and \$gp save/restore won’t be issued as follow,

```
118-165-78-230:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/
Debug/bin/llc -march=cpu0 -mcpu=cpu032II-cpu0-s32-calls=true
-relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm ch9_gprestore.bc -cpu0-no-cupload
-cpu0-reserve-gp -o -
...
# BB#0:
addiu $sp, $sp, -24
$tmp0:
.cfi_def_cfa_offset 24
st $lr, 20($sp)           # 4-byte Folded Spill
st $fp, 16($sp)           # 4-byte Folded Spill
$tmp1:
.cfi_offset 14, -4
$tmp2:
.cfi_offset 12, -8
move $fp, $sp
$tmp3:
.cfi_def_cfa_register 12
ld $t9, %call16(_Z5sum_ii)($gp)
addiu $4, $zero, 1
jalr $t9
nop
st $2, 12($fp)
addiu $4, $zero, 2
ld $t9, %call16(_Z5sum_ii)($gp)
jalr $t9
nop
ld $3, 12($fp)
addu $2, $3, $2
st $2, 12($fp)
move $sp, $fp
ld $fp, 16($sp)           # 4-byte Folded Reload
ld $lr, 20($sp)           # 4-byte Folded Reload
addiu $sp, $sp, 24
ret $lr
nop
```

LLVM Mips 3.1 issues the .cupload and .cprestore and Cpu0 borrows it from that version. But now, llvm Mips replace .cupload with real instructions and remove .cprestore. It treats \$gp as reserved register in PIC mode. Since the Mips assembly document which I reference say \$gp is “caller save register”, Cpu0 follows this document at this point and provides reserving \$gp register as option.

```
118-165-78-230:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/
Debug/bin/llc -march=mips -relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm ch9_gprestore.bc
-o -
...
```

```

# BB#0:                                     # %entry
    lui $2, %hi(_gp_disp)
    ori $2, $2, %lo(_gp_disp)
    addiu $sp, $sp, -32
$tmp0:
    .cfi_def_cfa_offset 32
    sw  $ra, 28($sp)           # 4-byte Folded Spill
    sw  $fp, 24($sp)           # 4-byte Folded Spill
    sw  $16, 20($sp)           # 4-byte Folded Spill
$tmp1:
    .cfi_offset 31, -4
$tmp2:
    .cfi_offset 30, -8
$tmp3:
    .cfi_offset 16, -12
    move  $fp, $sp
$tmp4:
    .cfi_def_cfa_register 30
    addu $16, $2, $25
    lw   $25, %call16(_Z5sum_ii)($16)
    addiu $4, $zero, 1
    jalr $25
    move  $gp, $16
    sw   $2, 16($fp)
    lw   $25, %call16(_Z5sum_ii)($16)
    jalr $25
    addiu $4, $zero, 2
    lw   $1, 16($fp)
    addu $2, $1, $2
    sw   $2, 16($fp)
    move  $sp, $fp
    lw   $16, 20($sp)          # 4-byte Folded Reload
    lw   $fp, 24($sp)          # 4-byte Folded Reload
    lw   $ra, 28($sp)          # 4-byte Folded Reload
    jr   $ra
    addiu $sp, $sp, 32

```

The following code added in Chapter9\_3/ issues “**.cprestore**” or the corresponding machine code before the first time of PIC function call.

### **Index/chapters/Chapter9\_3/Cpu0ISelLowering.cpp**

```

/// LowerCall - functions arguments are copied from virtual regs to
/// (physical regs)/(stack frame), CALLSEQ_START and CALLSEQ_END are emitted.
SDValue
Cpu0TargetLowering::LowerCall(TargetLowering::CallLoweringInfo &CLI,
                               SmallVectorImpl<SDValue> &InVals) const {

```

```

#ifndef ENABLE_GPRESTORE
if (!Cpu0ReserveGP) {
    // If this is the first call, create a stack frame object that points to
    // a location to which .cprestore saves $gp.
    if (IsPIC && Cpu0FI->globalBaseRegFixed() && !Cpu0FI->getGPF() )
        Cpu0FI->setGPF(MFI->CreateFixedObject(4, 0, true));
    if (Cpu0FI->needGPSaveRestore())
        MFI->setObjectOffset(Cpu0FI->getGPF(), NextStackOffset);
}

```

```
}
```

```
...
```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter9\_3/Cpu0MachineFunction.h

```
#ifdef ENABLE_GPRESTORE
    bool needGPSaveRestore() const { return getGPFI(); }
#endif
```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter9\_3/Cpu0SEFrameLowering.cpp

```
void Cpu0SEFrameLowering::emitPrologue(MachineFunction &MF,
                                         MachineBasicBlock &MBB) const {
```

```
#ifdef ENABLE_GPRESTORE
    // Restore GP from the saved stack location
    if (Cpu0FI->needGPSaveRestore()) {
        unsigned Offset = MFI->getOffset(Cpu0FI->getGPFI());
        BuildMI(MBB, MBBI, dl, TII.get(Cpu0::CPRESTORE))
            .addImm(Offset)
            .addReg(Cpu0::GP);
    }
#endif
```

```
}
```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter9\_3/Cpu0RegisterInfo.cpp

```
//- If no eliminateFrameIndex(), it will hang on run.
// pure virtual method
// FrameIndex represent objects inside a abstract stack.
// We must replace FrameIndex with an stack/frame pointer
// direct reference.
void Cpu0RegisterInfo::
eliminateFrameIndex(MachineBasicBlock::iterator II, int SPAdj,
                    unsigned FIOperandNum, RegScavenger *RS) const {
```

```
#ifdef ENABLE_GPRESTORE //2
    if (Cpu0FI->isOutArgFI(FrameIndex) || Cpu0FI->isGPFI(FrameIndex) ||
        Cpu0FI->isDynAllocFI(FrameIndex))
        Offset = spOffset;
    else
#endif
```

```
...
```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter9\_3/Cpu0InstrInfo.td

```
// When handling PIC code the assembler needs .cupload and .cprestore
// directives. If the real instructions corresponding these directives
// are used, we have the same behavior, but get also a bunch of warnings
// from the assembler.
let hasSideEffects = 0 in
def CPRESTORE : Cpu0Pseudo<(outs), (ins i32imm:$loc, CPUREgs:$gp),
    ".cprestore\t$loc", []>;
```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter9\_3/Cpu0AsmPrinter.cpp

```
#ifdef ENABLE_GPRESTORE
void Cpu0AsmPrinter::EmitInstrWithMacroNoAT(const MachineInstr *MI) {
    MCInst TmpInst;

    MCInstLowering.Lower(MI, TmpInst);
    OutStreamer->EmitRawText(StringRef("\t.set\tmacro"));
    if (Cpu0FI->get.EmitNOAT())
        OutStreamer->EmitRawText(StringRef("\t.set\tat"));
    OutStreamer->EmitInstruction(TmpInst, getSubtargetInfo());
    if (Cpu0FI->get.EmitNOAT())
        OutStreamer->EmitRawText(StringRef("\t.set\tnoat"));
    OutStreamer->EmitRawText(StringRef("\t.set\tnomacro"));
}
#endif
```

```
#ifdef ENABLE_GPRESTORE
void Cpu0AsmPrinter::emitPseudoCPRestore(MCStreamer &OutStreamer,
                                         const MachineInstr *MI) {
    unsigned Opc = MI->getOpcode();
    SmallVector<MCInst, 4> MCInsts;
    const MachineOperand &MO = MI->getOperand(0);
    assert(MO.isImm() && "CPRESTORE's operand must be an immediate.");
    int64_t Offset = MO.getImm();

    if (OutStreamer.hasRawTextSupport()) {
        // output assembly
        if (!isInt<16>(Offset)) {
            EmitInstrWithMacroNoAT(MI);
            return;
        }
        MCInst TmpInst0;
        MCInstLowering.Lower(MI, TmpInst0);
        OutStreamer.EmitInstruction(TmpInst0, getSubtargetInfo());
    } else {
        // output elf
        MCInstLowering.LowerCPRESTORE(Offset, MCInsts);

        for (SmallVector<MCInst, 4>::iterator I = MCInsts.begin();
             I != MCInsts.end(); ++I)
            OutStreamer.EmitInstruction(*I, getSubtargetInfo());

        return;
    }
}
```

```
}
```

```
//- EmitInstruction() must exists or will have run time error.
void Cpu0AsmPrinter::EmitInstruction(const MachineInstr *MI) {
```

```
#ifdef ENABLE_GPRESTORE
    if (I->getOpcode() == Cpu0::CPRESTORE) {
        emitPseudoCPRestore(*OutStreamer, &I);
        continue;
    }
#endif
```

```
...
```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter9\_3/Cpu0MCInstLower.h

```
#ifdef ENABLE_GPRESTORE
    void LowerCPRESTORE(int64_t Offset, SmallVector<MCInst, 4>& MCInsts);
#endif
```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter9\_3/Cpu0MCInstLower.cpp

```
#ifdef ENABLE_GPRESTORE
// Lower ".cprestore offset" to "st $gp, offset($sp)".
void Cpu0MCInstLower::LowerCPRESTORE(int64_t Offset,
                                      SmallVector<MCInst, 4>& MCInsts) {
    assert(isInt<32>(Offset) && (Offset >= 0) &&
           "Imm operand of .cprestore must be a non-negative 32-bit value.");

    MCOperand SPReg = MCOperand::createReg(Cpu0::SP), BaseReg = SPReg;
    MCOperand GPRReg = MCOperand::createReg(Cpu0::GP);
    MCOperand ZEROReg = MCOperand::createReg(Cpu0::ZERO);

    if (!isInt<16>(Offset)) {
        unsigned Hi = ((Offset + 0x8000) >> 16) & 0xffff;
        Offset &= 0xffff;
        MCOperand ATReg = MCOperand::createReg(Cpu0::AT);
        BaseReg = ATReg;

        // lui at,hi
        // add at,at,sp
        MCInsts.resize(2);
        CreateMCInst(MCInsts[0], Cpu0::LUI, ATReg, ZEROReg, MCOperand::createImm(Hi));
        CreateMCInst(MCInsts[1], Cpu0::ADD, ATReg, ATReg, SPReg);
    }

    MCInst St;
    CreateMCInst(St, Cpu0::ST, GPRReg, BaseReg, MCOperand::createImm(Offset));
    MCInsts.push_back(St);
}
#endif
```

The added code of Cpu0AsmPrinter.cpp as above will call the LowerCPRESTORE() when user run program with llc -filetype=obj . The added code of Cpu0MCInstLower.cpp as above takes care the .cprestore machine instructions.

```
118-165-76-131:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/
cmake_debug_build/Debug/bin/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=
obj ch9_1.bc -o ch9_1.cpu0.o
118-165-76-131:input Jonathan$ hexdump ch9_1.cpu0.o
...
// .cprestore machine instruction " 01 ad 00 18"
00000d0 01 ad 00 18 09 20 00 00 01 2d 00 40 09 20 00 06
...
118-165-67-25:input Jonathan$ cat ch9_1.cpu0.s
...
.ent _Z5sum_iiiiiii # @_Z5sum_iiiiiii
_Z5sum_iiiiiii:
...
.cupload $t9 // assign $gp = $t9 by loader when loader load re-entry function
               // (shared library) of _Z5sum_iiiiiii
.set nomacro
# BB#0:
...
.ent main # @main
...
.cprestore 24 // save $gp to 24($sp)
...
```

Run llc -static will call jsub instruction instead of jalr as follows,

```
118-165-76-131:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/
cmake_debug_build/Debug/bin/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=static -filetype=
asm ch9_1.bc -o ch9_1.cpu0.s
118-165-76-131:input Jonathan$ cat ch9_1.cpu0.s
...
jsub _Z5sum_iiiiiii
...
```

Run ch9\_1.bc with llc -filetype=obj , you will find the Cx of “**jsub Cx**” is 0 since the Cx is calculated by linker as below. Mips has the same 0 in it’s jal instruction.

```
// jsub _Z5sum_iiiiiii translate into 2B 00 00 00
00F0: 2B 00 00 00 01 2D 00 34 00 ED 00 3C 09 DD 00 40
```

The following code will emit “ld \$gp, (\$gp save slot on stack)” after jalr by creating file Cpu0EmitGPRestore.cpp which run as a function pass.

### [Index/chapters/Chapter9\\_3/CMakeLists.txt](#)

```
Cpu0EmitGPRestore.cpp
```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter9\_3/Cpu0TargetMachine.cpp

```
/// Cpu0 Code Generator Pass Configuration Options.
class Cpu0PassConfig : public TargetPassConfig {

#ifndef ENABLE_GPRESTORE
    void addPreRegAlloc() override;
#endif

#ifndef ENABLE_GPRESTORE
void Cpu0PassConfig::addPreRegAlloc() {
    if (!Cpu0ReserveGP) {
        // $gp is a caller-saved register.
        addPass(createCpu0EmitGPRestorePass(getCpu0TargetMachine()));
    }
    return;
}
#endif
}
```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter9\_3/Cpu0.h

```
#ifndef ENABLE_GPRESTORE
    FunctionPass *createCpu0EmitGPRestorePass(Cpu0TargetMachine &TM);
#endif
```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter9\_3/Cpu0EmitGPRestore.cpp

```
===== Cpu0EmitGPRestore.cpp - Emit GP Restore Instruction =====
//
// The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure
//
// This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source
// License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.
//
//=====
// This pass emits instructions that restore $gp right
// after jalr instructions.
//
//=====

#include "Cpu0.h"
#if CH >= CH9_3
#ifndef ENABLE_GPRESTORE

#include "Cpu0TargetMachine.h"
#include "Cpu0MachineFunction.h"
#include "llvm/CodeGen/MachineFunctionPass.h"
#include "llvm/CodeGen/MachineInstrBuilder.h"
#include "llvm/Target/TargetInstrInfo.h"
#include "llvm/ADT/Statistic.h"

using namespace llvm;
```

```
#define DEBUG_TYPE "emit-gp-restore"

namespace {
    struct Inserter : public MachineFunctionPass {

        TargetMachine &TM;

        static char ID;
        Inserter(TargetMachine &tm)
            : MachineFunctionPass(ID), TM(tm) { }

        virtual const char *getPassName() const {
            return "Cpu0 Emit GP Restore";
        }

        bool runOnMachineFunction(MachineFunction &F);
    };
    char Inserter::ID = 0;
} // end of anonymous namespace

bool Inserter::runOnMachineFunction(MachineFunction &F) {
    Cpu0FunctionInfo *Cpu0FI = F.getInfo<Cpu0FunctionInfo>();
    const TargetSubtargetInfo *STI = TM.getSubtargetImpl(*F.getFunction());
    const TargetInstrInfo *TII = STI->getInstrInfo();

    if ((TM.getRelocationModel() != Reloc::PIC_) ||
        (!Cpu0FI->globalBaseRegFixed()))
        return false;

    bool Changed = false;
    int FI = Cpu0FI->getGPFI();

    for (MachineFunction::iterator MFI = F.begin(), MFE = F.end();
         MFI != MFE; ++MFI) {
        MachineBasicBlock& MBB = *MFI;
        MachineBasicBlock::iterator I = MFI->begin();

        /// isEHPad - Indicate that this basic block is entered via an
        /// exception handler.
        // If MBB is a landing pad, insert instruction that restores $gp after
        // EH_LABEL.
        if (MBB.isEHPad()) {
            // Find EH_LABEL first.
            for (; I->getOpcode() != TargetOpcode::EH_LABEL; ++I) ;

            // Insert ld.
            ++I;
            DebugLoc dl = I != MBB.end() ? I->getDebugLoc() : DebugLoc();
            BuildMI(MBB, I, dl, TII->get(Cpu0::LD), Cpu0::GP).addFrameIndex(FI)
                .addImm(0);
            Changed = true;
        }

        while (I != MFI->end()) {
            if (I->getOpcode() != Cpu0::JALR) {
                ++I;
                continue;
            }
        }
    }
}
```

```

    }

    DebugLoc dl = I->getDebugLoc();
    // emit ld $gp, ($gp save slot on stack) after jalr
    BuildMI(MBB, ++I, dl, TII->get(Cpu0::LD), Cpu0::GP).addFrameIndex(FI)
        .addImm(0);

    Changed = true;
}
}

return Changed;
}

/// createCpu0EmitGPRestorePass - Returns a pass that emits instructions that
/// restores $gp clobbered by jalr instructions.
FunctionPass *llvm::createCpu0EmitGPRestorePass(Cpu0TargetMachine &tm) {
    return new Inserter(tm);
}

#endif

#endif

```

## 9.6.2 Variable number of arguments

Until now, we support fixed number of arguments in formal function definition (Incoming Arguments). This subsection supports variable number of arguments since C language supports this feature.

Run Chapter9\_3/ with ch9\_3\_vararg.cpp as well as clang option, **clang -target mips-unknown-linux-gnu**, to get the following result,

```

118-165-76-131:input Jonathan$ clang -target mips-unknown-linux-gnu -c
ch9_3_vararg.cpp -emit-llvm -o ch9_3_vararg.bc
118-165-76-131:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/
cmake_debug_build/Debug/bin/llc -march=cpu0 -mcpu=cpu032I -cpu0-s32-calls=false
-relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm ch9_3_vararg.bc -o ch9_3_vararg.cpu0.s
118-165-76-131:input Jonathan$ cat ch9_3_vararg.cpu0.s
.section .mdebug.abi32
.previous
.file "ch9_3_vararg.bc"
.text
.globl _Z5sum_iiz
.align 2
.type _Z5sum_iiz,@function
.ent _Z5sum_iiz          # @_Z5sum_iiz
_Z5sum_iiz:
.frame $fp,24,$lr
.mask 0x00001000,-4
.set noreorder
.set nomacro
# BB#0:
addiu $sp, $sp, -24
st $fp, 20($sp)          # 4-byte Folded Spill
move $fp, $sp
ld $2, 24($fp)           // amount
st $2, 16($fp)           // amount

```

```

addiu $2, $zero, 0
st $2, 12($fp)      // i
st $2, 8($fp)       // val
st $2, 4($fp)       // sum
addiu $3, $fp, 28
st $3, 0($fp)       // arg_ptr = 2nd argument = &arg[1],
                     // since &arg[0] = 24($sp)
st $2, 12($fp)
$BB0_1:                      # =>This Inner Loop Header: Depth=1
    ld $2, 16($fp)
    ld $3, 12($fp)
    cmp $sw, $3, $2      // compare(i, amount)
    jge $BB0_4
    nop
    jmp $BB0_2
    nop
$BB0_2:                      #   in Loop: Header=BB0_1 Depth=1
    // i < amount
    ld $2, 0($fp)
    addiu $3, $2, 4     // arg_ptr + 4
    st $3, 0($fp)
    ld $2, 0($2)        // *arg_ptr
    st $2, 8($fp)
    ld $3, 4($fp)       // sum
    add $2, $3, $2       // sum += *arg_ptr
    st $2, 4($fp)
# BB#3:                      #   in Loop: Header=BB0_1 Depth=1
    // i >= amount
    ld $2, 12($fp)
    addiu $2, $2, 1      // i++
    st $2, 12($fp)
    jmp $BB0_1
    nop
$BB0_4:
    ld $2, 4($fp)
    move $sp, $fp
    ld $fp, 20($sp)      # 4-byte Folded Reload
    addiu $sp, $sp, 24
    ret $lr
    .set macro
    .set reorder
    .end _Z5sum_iiz
$tmp1:
.size _Z5sum_iiz, ($tmp1)-_Z5sum_iiz

.globl _Z11test_varargs
.align 2
.type _Z11test_varargs,@function
.ent _Z11test_varargs          # @_Z11test_varargs
_Z11test_varargs:
.frame $sp,88,$lr
.mask 0x00004000,-4
.set noreorder
.cupload $t9
.set nomacro
# BB#0:
.addiu $sp, $sp, -48
.st $lr, 44($sp)             # 4-byte Folded Spill

```

```

st $fp, 40($sp)          # 4-byte Folded Spill
move $fp, $sp
.cprestore 32
addiu $2, $zero, 5
st $2, 24($sp)
addiu $2, $zero, 4
st $2, 20($sp)
addiu $2, $zero, 3
st $2, 16($sp)
addiu $2, $zero, 2
st $2, 12($sp)
addiu $2, $zero, 1
st $2, 8($sp)
addiu $2, $zero, 0
st $2, 4($sp)
addiu $2, $zero, 6
st $2, 0($sp)
ld $t9, %call16(_Z5sum_iiz)($gp)
jalr $t9
nop
ld $gp, 28($fp)
st $2, 36($fp)
move $sp, $fp
ld $fp, 40($sp)          # 4-byte Folded Reload
ld $lr, 44($sp)          # 4-byte Folded Reload
addiu $sp, $sp, 48
ret $lr
nop
.set macro
.set reorder
.end _Z11test_varargv
$tmp1:
.size _Z11test_varargv, ($tmp1)-_Z11test_varargv

```

The analysis of output ch9\_3\_vararg.cpu0.s as above in comment. As above code in # BB#0, we get the first argument “**amount**” from “**ld \$2, 24(\$fp)**” since the stack size of the callee function “**\_Z5sum\_iiz()**” is 24. And then setting argument pointer, arg\_ptr, to 0(\$fp), &arg[1]. Next, checking i < amount in block \$BB0\_1. If i < amount, than entering into \$BB0\_2. In \$BB0\_2, it does sum += \*arg\_ptr and arg\_ptr+=4. In # BB#3, it does i+=1.

To support variable number of arguments, the following code needed to add in Chapter9\_3/. The ch9\_3\_template.cpp is C++ template example code, it can be translated into cpu0 backend code too.

## Ibdex/chapters/Chapter9\_3/Cpu0ISelLowering.h

```

class Cpu0TargetLowering : public TargetLowering {
public:
    /// Cpu0CC - This class provides methods used to analyze formal and call
    /// arguments and inquire about calling convention information.
    class Cpu0CC {
public:
    /// Return the function that analyzes variable argument list functions.
    llvm::CCAssignFn *varArgFn() const;
    ...
};

```

```
SDValue lowerVASTART(SDValue Op, SelectionDAG &DAG) const;
SDValue lowerFRAMEADDR(SDValue Op, SelectionDAG &DAG) const;
SDValue lowerRETURNADDR(SDValue Op, SelectionDAG &DAG) const;
SDValue lowerEH_RETURN(SDValue Op, SelectionDAG &DAG) const;
SDValue lowerADD(SDValue Op, SelectionDAG &DAG) const;
```

```
/// writeVarArgRegs - Write variable function arguments passed in registers
/// to the stack. Also create a stack frame object for the first variable
/// argument.
void writeVarArgRegs(std::vector<SDValue> &OutChains, const Cpu0CC &CC,
                     SDValue Chain, const SDLoc &DL, SelectionDAG &DAG) const;
```

```
...  
. };
```

### [Index/chapters/Chapter9\\_3/Cpu0ISelLowering.cpp](#)

```
Cpu0TargetLowering::Cpu0TargetLowering(const Cpu0TargetMachine &TM,
                                       const Cpu0Subtarget &STI)
: TargetLowering(TM), Subtarget(STI), ABI(TM.getABI()) {
```

```
setOperationAction(ISD::VASTART, MVT::Other, Custom);
```

```
// Support va_arg(): variable numbers (not fixed numbers) of arguments
// (parameters) for function all
setOperationAction(ISD::VAARG, MVT::Other, Expand);
setOperationAction(ISD::VACOPY, MVT::Other, Expand);
setOperationAction(ISD::VAEND, MVT::Other, Expand);

//@llvm.stacksave
// Use the default for now
setOperationAction(ISD::STACKSAVE, MVT::Other, Expand);
setOperationAction(ISD::STACKRESTORE, MVT::Other, Expand);
```

```
...  
}
```

```
SDValue Cpu0TargetLowering::
LowerOperation(SDValue Op, SelectionDAG &DAG) const
{
    switch (Op.getOpcode())
    {
```

```
case ISD::VASTART: return lowerVASTART(Op, DAG);
```

```
}
```

```
SDValue Cpu0TargetLowering::lowerVASTART(SDValue Op, SelectionDAG &DAG) const {
    MachineFunction &MF = DAG.getMachineFunction();
```

```

Cpu0FunctionInfo *FuncInfo = MF.getInfo<Cpu0FunctionInfo>();

SDLoc DL = SDLoc(Op);
SDValue FI = DAG.getFrameIndex(FuncInfo->getVarArgsFrameIndex(),
                                getPointerTy(MF.getDataLayout()));

// vastart just stores the address of the VarArgsFrameIndex slot into the
// memory location argument.
const Value *SV = cast<SrcValueSDNode>(Op.getOperand(2))->getValue();
return DAG.getStore(Op.getOperand(0), DL, FI, Op.getOperand(1),
                     MachinePointerInfo(SV));
}

```

```

/// LowerFormalArguments - transform physical registers into virtual registers
/// and generate load operations for arguments places on the stack.
SDValue
Cpu0TargetLowering::LowerFormalArguments(SDValue Chain,
                                         CallingConv::ID CallConv,
                                         bool IsVarArg,
                                         const SmallVectorImpl<ISD::InputArg> &Ins,
                                         const SDLoc &DL, SelectionDAG &DAG,
                                         SmallVectorImpl<SDValue> &InVals)
                                         const {

if (IsVarArg)
    writeVarArgRegs(OutChains, Cpu0CCInfo, Chain, DL, DAG);
}

```

```

void Cpu0TargetLowering::Cpu0CC::
analyzeCallOperands(const SmallVectorImpl<ISD::OutputArg> &Args,
                     bool IsVarArg, bool IsSoftFloat, const SDNode *CallNode,
                     std::vector<ArgListEntry> &FuncArgs) {

```

```

    llvm::CCAssignFn *VarFn = varArgFn();

    for (unsigned I = 0; I != NumOpnds; ++I) {

        if (IsVarArg && !Args[I].IsFixed)
            R = VarFn(I, ArgVT, ArgVT, CCValAssign::Full, ArgFlags, CCInfo);
        else

        ...
    }
    ...
}

    ...
}

```

```

    llvm::CCAssignFn *Cpu0TargetLowering::Cpu0CC::varArgFn() const {
        if (IsO32)
            return CC_Cpu0O32;
        else // IsS32
            return CC_Cpu0S32;
    }
}

```

```

void Cpu0TargetLowering::writeVarArgRegs(std::vector<SDValue> &OutChains,
                                         const Cpu0CC &CC, SDValue Chain,
                                         const SDLoc &DL, SelectionDAG &DAG) const {
    unsigned NumRegs = CC.numIntArgRegs();
    const ArrayRef<MCPhysReg> ArgRegs = CC.intArgRegs();
    const CCState &CCInfo = CC.getCCInfo();
    unsigned Idx = CCInfo.getFirstUnallocated(ArgRegs);
    unsigned RegSize = CC.regSize();
    MVT RegTy = MVT::getIntegerVT(RegSize * 8);
    const TargetRegisterClass *RC = getRegClassFor(RegTy);
    MachineFunction &MF = DAG.getMachineFunction();
    MachineFrameInfo *MFI = MF.getFrameInfo();
    Cpu0FunctionInfo *Cpu0FI = MF.getInfo<Cpu0FunctionInfo>();

    // Offset of the first variable argument from stack pointer.
    int VaArgOffset;

    if (NumRegs == Idx)
        VaArgOffset = alignTo(CCInfo.getNextStackOffset(), RegSize);
    else
        VaArgOffset = (int)CC.reservedArgArea() - (int)(RegSize * (NumRegs - Idx));

    // Record the frame index of the first variable argument
    // which is a value necessary to VASTART.
    int FI = MFI->CreateFixedObject(RegSize, VaArgOffset, true);
    Cpu0FI->setVarArgsFrameIndex(FI);

    // Copy the integer registers that have not been used for argument passing
    // to the argument register save area. For O32, the save area is allocated
    // in the caller's stack frame, while for N32/64, it is allocated in the
    // callee's stack frame.
    for (unsigned I = Idx; I < NumRegs; ++I, VaArgOffset += RegSize) {
        unsigned Reg = addLiveIn(MF, ArgRegs[I], RC);
        SDValue ArgValue = DAG.getCopyFromReg(Chain, DL, Reg, RegTy);
        FI = MFI->CreateFixedObject(RegSize, VaArgOffset, true);
        SDValue PtrOff = DAG.getFrameIndex(FI, getPointerTy(DAG.getDataLayout()));
        SDValue Store = DAGgetStore(Chain, DL, ArgValue, PtrOff,
                                     MachinePointerInfo());
        cast<StoreSDNode>(Store.getNode())->getMemOperand()->setValue(
            (Value *)nullptr);
        OutChains.push_back(Store);
    }
}

```

### lbdex/input/ch9\_3\_template.cpp

```

#include <stdarg.h>

template<class T>
T sum(T amount, ...)
{
    T i = 0;
    T val = 0;
    T sum = 0;

    va_list vl;

```

```

va_start(vl, amount);
for (i = 0; i < amount; i++)
{
    val = va_arg(vl, T);
    sum += val;
}
va_end(vl);

return sum;
}

int test_template()
{
    int a = sum<int>(6, 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5);

    return a;
}

```

Mips qemu reference <sup>8</sup>, you can download and run it with gcc to verify the result with printf() function at this point. We will verify the correction of the code in chapter “Verify backend on Verilog simulator” through the CPU0 Verilog language machine.

### 9.6.3 Dynamic stack allocation support

Even though C language is very rare using dynamic stack allocation, there are languages use it frequently. The following C example code uses it.

Chapter9\_3 supports dynamic stack allocation with the following code added.

#### **Index/chapters/Chapter9\_2/Cpu0FrameLowering.cpp**

```

// Eliminate ADJCALLSTACKDOWN, ADJCALLSTACKUP pseudo instructions
MachineBasicBlock::iterator Cpu0FrameLowering::
eliminateCallFramePseudoInstr(MachineFunction &MF, MachineBasicBlock &MBB,
                               MachineBasicBlock::iterator I) const {
#if CH >= CH9_3 // dynamic alloc
    unsigned SP = Cpu0::SP;

    if (!hasReservedCallFrame(MF)) {
        int64_t Amount = I->getOperand(0).getImm();
        if (I->getOpcode() == Cpu0::ADJCALLSTACKDOWN)
            Amount = -Amount;

        STI.getInstrInfo()->adjustStackPtr(SP, Amount, MBB, I);
    }
#endif // dynamic alloc

    return MBB.erase(I);
}

```

<sup>8</sup> <http://developer.mips.com/clang-llvm/>

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter9\_3/Cpu0SEFrameLowering.cpp

```

void Cpu0SEFrameLowering::emitPrologue(MachineFunction &MF,
                                       MachineBasicBlock &MBB) const {

    unsigned FP = Cpu0::FP;
    unsigned ZERO = Cpu0::ZERO;
    unsigned ADDu = Cpu0::ADDu;

    // if framepointer enabled, set it to point to the stack pointer.
    if (hasFP(MF)) {
        if (Cpu0FI->callsEhDwarf()) {
            BuildMI(MBB, MBBI, dl, TII.get(ADDu), Cpu0::V0).addReg(FP).addReg(ZERO)
                .setMIFlag(MachineInstr::FrameSetup);
        }
        // @ Insert instruction "move $fp, $sp" at this location.
        BuildMI(MBB, MBBI, dl, TII.get(ADDu), FP).addReg(SP).addReg(ZERO)
            .setMIFlag(MachineInstr::FrameSetup);

        // emit ".cfi_def_cfa_register $fp"
        unsigned CFIIndex = MMI.addFrameInst(MCCFIInstruction::createDefCfaRegister(
            nullptr, MRI->getDwarfRegNum(FP, true)));
        BuildMI(MBB, MBBI, dl, TII.get(TargetOpcode::CFI_INSTRUCTION))
            .addCFIIndex(CFIIndex);
    }

}

```

```

void Cpu0SEFrameLowering::emitEpilogue(MachineFunction &MF,
                                       MachineBasicBlock &MBB) const {

    unsigned FP = Cpu0::FP;
    unsigned ZERO = Cpu0::ZERO;
    unsigned ADDu = Cpu0::ADDu;

    // if framepointer enabled, restore the stack pointer.
    if (hasFP(MF)) {
        // Find the first instruction that restores a callee-saved register.
        MachineBasicBlock::iterator I = MBBI;

        for (unsigned i = 0; i < MFI->getCalleeSavedInfo().size(); ++i)
            --I;

        // Insert instruction "move $sp, $fp" at this location.
        BuildMI(MBB, I, dl, TII.get(ADDu), SP).addReg(FP).addReg(ZERO);
    }

}

unsigned FP = Cpu0::FP;

// Mark $fp as used if function has dedicated frame pointer.
if (hasFP(MF))
    setAliasRegs(MF, SavedRegs, FP);

```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter9\_3/Cpu0ISelLowering.cpp

```
Cpu0TargetLowering::Cpu0TargetLowering(const Cpu0TargetMachine &TM,
                                      const Cpu0Subtarget &STI)
: TargetLowering(TM), Subtarget(STI), ABI(TM.getABI()) {

    setOperationAction(ISD::DYNAMIC_STACKALLOC, MVT::i32, Expand);

    setStackPointerRegisterToSaveRestore(Cpu0::SP);

}
```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter9\_3/Cpu0RegisterInfo.cpp

```
BitVector Cpu0RegisterInfo::
getReservedRegs(const MachineFunction &MF) const {

    // Reserve FP if this function should have a dedicated frame pointer register.
    if (MF.getSubtarget().getFrameLowering() -> hasFP(MF)) {
        Reserved.set(Cpu0::FP);
    }

    // If no eliminateFrameIndex(), it will hang on run.
    // pure virtual method
    // FrameIndex represent objects inside a abstract stack.
    // We must replace FrameIndex with an stack/frame pointer
    // direct reference.
    void Cpu0RegisterInfo::
    eliminateFrameIndex(MachineBasicBlock::iterator II, int SPAdj,
                        unsigned FIOperandNum, RegScavenger *RS) const {

        if (Cpu0FI->isOutArgFI(FrameIndex) || Cpu0FI->isGPFI(FrameIndex) ||
            Cpu0FI->isDynAllocFI(FrameIndex))
            Offset = spOffset;
    }
}
```

Run Chapter9\_3 with ch9\_3\_alloc.cpp will get the following correct result.

```
118-165-72-242:input Jonathan$ clang -target mips-unknown-linux-gnu -c
ch9_3_alloc.cpp -emit-llvm -o ch9_3_alloc.bc
118-165-72-242:input Jonathan$ llvm-dis ch9_3_alloc.bc -o ch9_3_alloc.ll
118-165-72-242:input Jonathan$ cat ch9_3_alloc.ll
; ModuleID = 'ch9_3_alloc.bc'
target datalayout = "e-p:64:64:64-i1:8:8-i8:8:8-i16:16:16-i32:32:32-i64:64:64-
f32:32:32-f64:64:64-v64:64:64-v128:128:128-a0:0:64-s0:64:f80:128:128-n8:16:
32:64-S128"
target triple = "x86_64-apple-macosx10.8.0"
```

```

define i32 @_Z5sum_iiiiii(i32 %x1, i32 %x2, i32 %x3, i32 %x4, i32 %x5, i32 %x6)
noundwind uwtable ssp {
    ...
    %9 = alloca i8, i32 %8          // int* b = (int*)__builtin_alloca(sizeof(int) * 1 * x1);
    %10 = bitcast i8* %9 to i32*
    store i32* %10, i32** %b, align 4
    ...
}
...
118-165-72-242:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/
Debug/bin/llc -march=cpu0 -mcpu=cpu032I -cpu0-s32-calls=false
-relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm ch9_3_alloc.bc -o ch9_3_alloc.cpu0.s
118-165-72-242:input Jonathan$ cat ch9_3_alloc.cpu0.s
...
.globl _Z10weight_sumiiiii
.align 2
.type _Z10weight_sumiiiii,@function
.ent _Z10weight_sumiiiii      # @_Z10weight_sumiiiii
_Z10weight_sumiiiii:
.frame $fp,48,$lr
.mask 0x00005000,-4
.set noreorder
.cupload $t9
.set nomacro
# BB#0:
addiu $sp, $sp, -48
st $lr, 44($sp)           # 4-byte Folded Spill
st $fp, 40($sp)           # 4-byte Folded Spill
move $fp, $sp
.cprestore 24
ld $2, 68($fp)
ld $3, 64($fp)
ld $t9, 60($fp)
ld $7, 56($fp)
st $4, 36($fp)
st $5, 32($fp)
st $7, 28($fp)
st $t9, 24($fp)
st $3, 20($fp)
st $2, 16($fp)
shl $2, $2, 2    // $2 = sizeof(int) * 1 * x2;
addiu $2, $2, 7
addiu $3, $zero, -8
and $2, $2, $3
addiu $sp, $sp, 0
subu $2, $sp, $2
addu $sp, $zero, $2 // set sp to the bottom of alloca area
addiu $sp, $sp, 0
st $2, 12($fp)
st $2, 8($fp)
ld $2, 12($fp)
ld $3, 28($fp)
st $3, 0($2)    // *b = x3
ld $5, 32($fp)
ld $2, 36($fp)

```

```

ld $3, 20($fp)
ld $4, 28($fp)
ld $t9, 24($fp)
ld $7, 16($fp)
addiu $sp, $sp, -24
st $7, 20($sp)
st $t9, 12($sp)
st $4, 8($sp)
shl $3, $3, 1
st $3, 16($sp)
addiu $3, $zero, 3
mul $4, $2, $3
ld $t9, %call16(_Z3sumiiiiii)($gp)
jalr $t9
nop
ld $gp, 24($fp)
addiu $sp, $sp, 24
st $2, 4($fp)
ld $3, 8($fp)
ld $3, 0($3)
addu $2, $2, $3
move $sp, $fp
ld $fp, 40($sp)           # 4-byte Folded Reload
ld $lr, 44($sp)           # 4-byte Folded Reload
addiu $sp, $sp, 48
ret $lr
nop
.set macro
.set reorder
.end _Z10weight_sumiiii
$func_end1:
.size _Z10weight_sumiiii, ($func_end1)-_Z10weight_sumiiii
...

```

As you can see, the dynamic stack allocation needs frame pointer register **fp** support. As above assembly, the sp is adjusted to (sp - 48) when it enter the function as usual by instruction **addiu \$sp, \$sp, -48**. Next, the fp is set to sp where the position is just above alloca() spaces area as Fig. 9.3 when meets instruction **move \$fp, \$sp**. After that, the sp is changed to the area just below of alloca(). Remind, the alloca() area where the b point to, “**\*b = (int\*)\_\_builtin\_alloca(sizeof(int) \* 2 \* x6)**”, is allocated at run time since the size of the space which depends on x1 variable and cannot be calculated at link time.

Fig. 9.4 depict how the stack pointer changes back to the caller stack bottom. As above, the **fp** is set to the address just above of alloca(). The first step is changing the sp to fp by instruction **move \$sp, \$fp**. Next, sp is changed back to caller stack bottom by instruction **addiu \$sp, \$sp, 40**.

Using fp to keep the old stack pointer value is not the only solution. Actually, we can keep the size of alloca() spaces on a specific memory address and the sp can be set back to the the old sp by adding the size of alloca() spaces. Most ABI like Mips and ARM access the above area of alloca() by fp and the below area of alloca() by sp, as Fig. 9.5 depicted. The reason for this definition is the speed for local variable access. Since the RISC CPU use immediate offset for load and store as below, using fp and sp for access both areas of local variables have better performance comparing to use the sp only.

```

ld      $2, 64($fp)
st      $3, 4($sp)

```

Cpu0 uses fp and sp to access the above and below areas of alloca() too. As ch9\_3\_alloc.cpu0.s, it accesses local variables (above of alloca()) by fp offset and outgoing arguments (below of alloca()) by sp offset.

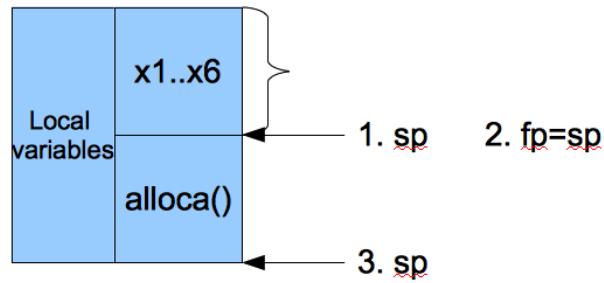


Fig. 9.3: Frame pointer changes when enter function

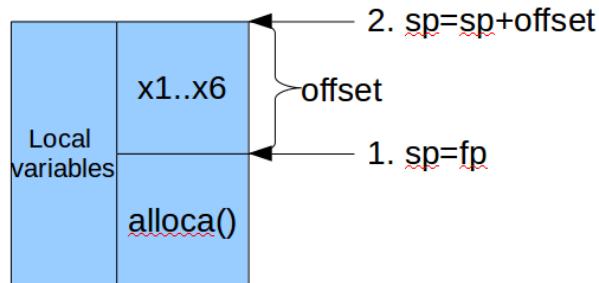


Fig. 9.4: Stack pointer changes when exit function

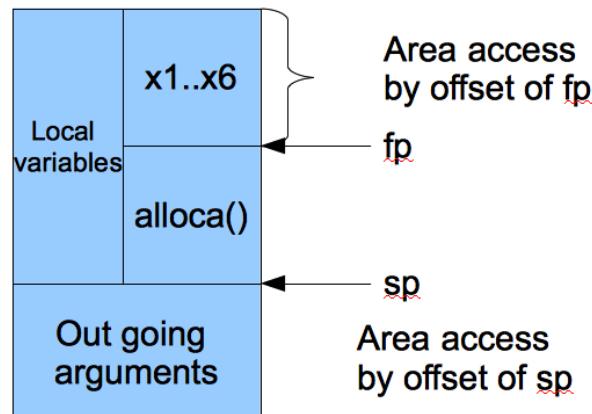


Fig. 9.5: fp and sp access areas

And more, the “move \$sp, \$fp” is the alias instruction of “addu \$fp, \$sp, \$zero”. The machine code is the latter one, and the former is only for easy understanding by user. This alias comes from code added in Chapter3\_2 and Chapter3\_5 as follows,

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter3\_2/InstPrinter/Cpu0InstPrinter.cpp

```
void Cpu0InstPrinter::printInst(const MCInst *MI, raw_ostream &O,
                                StringRef Annot, const MCSubtargetInfo &STI) {
    // Try to print any aliases first.
    if (!printAliasInstr(MI, O))
```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter3\_5/Cpu0InstrInfo.td

```
class Cpu0InstAlias<string Asm, dag Result, bit Emit = 0b1> :
    InstAlias<Asm, Result, Emit>;
```

```
let Predicates = [Ch3_5] in {
//=====
// Instruction aliases
//=====
def : Cpu0InstAlias<"move $dst, $src",
                    (ADDu GPROut:$dst, GPROut:$src, ZERO), 1>;
}
```

Finally the MFI->hasVarSizedObjects() defined in hasReservedCallFrame() of Cpu0SEFrameLowering.cpp is true when it meets “%9 = alloca i8, i32 %8” of IR which corresponding “(int\*)\_\_builtin\_alloca(sizeof(int) \* 1 \* x1);” of C. It will generate asm “addiu \$sp, \$sp, -24” for ch9\_3\_alloc.cpp by calling “adjustStackPtr()” in eliminateCallFramePseudoInstr() of Cpu0FrameLowering.cpp.

File ch9\_3\_longlongshift.cpp is for type “long long shift operations” which can be tested now as follows.

### Ibdex/input/ch9\_3\_longlongshift.cpp

```
#include "debug.h"

long long test_longlong_shift1()
{
    long long a = 4;
    long long b = 0x12;
    long long c;
    long long d;

    c = (b >> a); // cc = 0x1
    d = (b << a); // cc = 0x120

    return (c+d); // 0x121 = 289
}

long long test_longlong_shift2()
{
    long long a = 48;
    long long b = 0x001666660000000a;
```

```
long long c;

c = (b >> a);

return c; // 22
}
```

```
114-37-150-209:input Jonathan$ clang -O0 -target mips-unknown-linux-gnu
-c ch9_3_longlongshift.cpp -emit-llvm -o ch9_3_longlongshift.bc

114-37-150-209:input Jonathan$ ~/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/Debug/bin/
 llvm-dis ch9_3_longlongshift.bc -o -
...
; Function Attrs: nounwind
define i64 @_Z19test_longlong_shiftv() #0 {
    %a = alloca i64, align 8
    %b = alloca i64, align 8
    %c = alloca i64, align 8
    %d = alloca i64, align 8
    store i64 4, i64* %a, align 8
    store i64 18, i64* %b, align 8
    %1 = load i64* %b, align 8
    %2 = load i64* %a, align 8
    %3 = ashtr i64 %1, %2
    store i64 %3, i64* %c, align 8
    %4 = load i64* %b, align 8
    %5 = load i64* %a, align 8
    %6 = shl i64 %4, %5
    store i64 %6, i64* %d, align 8
    %7 = load i64* %c, align 8
    %8 = load i64* %d, align 8
    %9 = add nsw i64 %7, %8
    ret i64 %9
}
...
114-37-150-209:input Jonathan$ ~/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/Debug/bin/llc
-march=cpu0 -mcpu=cpu032I -relocation-model=static -filetype=asm
ch9_3_longlongshift.bc -o -
.text
.section .mdebug.abi32
.previous
.file "ch9_3_longlongshift.bc"
.globl _Z20test_longlong_shift1v
.align 2
.type _Z20test_longlong_shift1v,@function
.ent _Z20test_longlong_shift1v # @_Z20test_longlong_shift1v
_Z20test_longlong_shift1v:
.frame $fp,56,$lr
.mask 0x00005000,-4
.set noreorder
.set nomacro
# BB#0:
addiu $sp, $sp, -56
st $lr, 52($sp)          # 4-byte Folded Spill
st $fp, 48($sp)          # 4-byte Folded Spill
move $fp, $sp
addiu $2, $zero, 4
```

```

st $2, 44($fp)
addiu $4, $zero, 0
st $4, 40($fp)
addiu $5, $zero, 18
st $5, 36($fp)
st $4, 32($fp)
ld $2, 44($fp)
st $2, 8($sp)
jsub __lshrdi3
nop
st $3, 28($fp)
st $2, 24($fp)
ld $2, 44($fp)
st $2, 8($sp)
ld $4, 32($fp)
ld $5, 36($fp)
jsub __ashldi3
nop
st $3, 20($fp)
st $2, 16($fp)
ld $4, 28($fp)
addu $4, $4, $3
cmp $sw, $4, $3
andi $3, $sw, 1
addu $2, $3, $2
ld $3, 24($fp)
addu $2, $3, $2
addu $3, $zero, $4
move $sp, $fp
ld $fp, 48($sp)           # 4-byte Folded Reload
ld $lr, 52($sp)           # 4-byte Folded Reload
addiu $sp, $sp, 56
ret $lr
nop
.set macro
.set reorder
.end _Z20test_longlong_shift1v
$tmp0:
.size _Z20test_longlong_shift1v, ($tmp0)-_Z20test_longlong_shift1v

.globl _Z20test_longlong_shift2v
.align 2
.type _Z20test_longlong_shift2v,@function
.ent _Z20test_longlong_shift2v # @_Z20test_longlong_shift2v
_Z20test_longlong_shift2v:
.frame $fp,48,$lr
.mask 0x00005000,-4
.set noreorder
.set nomacro
# BB#0:
addiu $sp, $sp, -48
st $lr, 44($sp)           # 4-byte Folded Spill
st $fp, 40($sp)           # 4-byte Folded Spill
move $fp, $sp
addiu $2, $zero, 48
st $2, 36($fp)
addiu $2, $zero, 0
st $2, 32($fp)

```

```
addiu $5, $zero, 10
st $5, 28($fp)
lui $2, 22
ori $4, $2, 26214
st $4, 24($fp)
ld $2, 36($fp)
st $2, 8($sp)
jsub __lshrdi3
nop
st $3, 20($fp)
st $2, 16($fp)
move $sp, $fp
ld $fp, 40($sp)           # 4-byte Folded Reload
ld $lr, 44($sp)           # 4-byte Folded Reload
addiu $sp, $sp, 48
ret $lr
nop
.set macro
.set reorder
.end _Z20test_longlong_shift2v
$tmp1:
.size _Z20test_longlong_shift2v, ($tmp1)-_Z20test_longlong_shift2v
```

### 9.6.4 Variable sized array support

LLVM supports variable sized arrays in C99<sup>9</sup>. The following code added for this support. Set them to expand, meaning llvm uses other DAGs replace them.

#### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter9\_3/Cpu0ISelLowering.cpp

```
SDValue Cpu0TargetLowering::
LowerOperation(SDValue Op, SelectionDAG &DAG) const
{
    switch (Op.getOpcode())
    {
        // Use the default for now
        setOperationAction(ISD::STACKSAVE,           MVT::Other, Expand);
        setOperationAction(ISD::STACKRESTORE,         MVT::Other, Expand);

        ...
    }
}
```

#### Ibdex/input/ch9\_3\_stacksave.cpp

```
int test_stacksaverestore(unsigned x) {
    // CHECK: call i8* @_llvm.stacksave()
    char s1[x];
```

<sup>9</sup> <http://www.llvm.org/docs/LangRef.html#llvm-stacksave-intrinsic>

```
s1[x] = 5;

return s1[x];
// CHECK: call void @llvm.stackrestore(i8*
}
```

```
JonathantekiiMac:input Jonathan$ clang -target mips-unknown-linux-gnu -c
ch9_3_stacksave.cpp -emit-llvm -o ch9_3_stacksave.bc
JonathantekiiMac:input Jonathan$ llvm-dis ch9_3_stacksave.bc -o -

define i32 @_Z21test_stacksaverestorej(i32 zeroext %x) #0 {
    %1 = alloca i32, align 4
    %2 = alloca i8*
    %3 = alloca i32
    store i32 %x, i32* %1, align 4
    %4 = load i32, i32* %1, align 4
    %5 = call i8* @llvm.stacksave()
    store i8* %5, i8** %2
    %6 = alloca i8, i32 %4, align 1
    %7 = load i32, i32* %1, align 4
    %8 = getelementptr inbounds i8, i8* %6, i32 %7
    store i8 5, i8* %8, align 1
    %9 = load i32, i32* %1, align 4
    %10 = getelementptr inbounds i8, i8* %6, i32 %9
    %11 = load i8, i8* %10, align 1
    %12 = sext i8 %11 to i32
    store i32 1, i32* %3
    %13 = load i8*, i8** %2
    call void @llvm.stackrestore(i8* %13)
    ret i32 %12
}


```

```
JonathantekiiMac:input Jonathan$ ~/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/Debug/bin/llc
-march=cpu0 -mcpu=cpu032I -relocation-model=static -filetype=asm
ch9_3_stacksave.bc -o -
...
```

## 9.6.5 Function related Intrinsics support

I think these llvm instinsic IRs are for the implementation of exception handle <sup>10</sup> [#returnaddr]. With these IRs, programmer can record the frame address and return address to be used in implementing program of exception handler by C++ as the example below. In order to support these llvm intrinsic IRs, the following code added to Cpu0 backend.

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter9\_3/Cpu0ISelLowering.cpp

```
Cpu0TargetLowering::Cpu0TargetLowering(const Cpu0TargetMachine &TM,
                                         const Cpu0Subtarget &STI)
    : TargetLowering(TM), Subtarget(STI), ABI(TM.getABI()) {
```

```
setOperationAction(ISD::EH_RETURN, MVT::Other, Custom);
```

<sup>10</sup> <http://llvm.org/docs/ExceptionHandling.html#overview>

```

setOperationAction(ISD::ADD, MVT::i32, Custom);

}

SDValue Cpu0TargetLowering::
LowerOperation(SDValue Op, SelectionDAG &DAG) const
{
    switch (Op.getOpcode())
    {

case ISD::FRAMEADDR:           return lowerFRAMEADDR(Op, DAG);
case ISD::RETURNADDR:          return lowerRETURNADDR(Op, DAG);
case ISD::EH_RETURN:           return lowerEH_RETURN(Op, DAG);
case ISD::ADD:                 return lowerADD(Op, DAG);

}

    ...
}

SDValue Cpu0TargetLowering::
lowerFRAMEADDR(SDValue Op, SelectionDAG &DAG) const {
    // check the depth
    assert((cast<ConstantSDNode>(Op.getOperand(0))->getZExtValue() == 0) &&
           "Frame address can only be determined for current frame.");

    MachineFrameInfo *MFI = DAG.getMachineFunction().getFrameInfo();
    MFI->setFrameAddressIsTaken(true);
    EVT VT = Op.getValueType();
    SDLoc DL(Op);
    SDValue FrameAddr = DAG.getCopyFromReg(
        DAG.getEntryNode(), DL, Cpu0::FP, VT);
    return FrameAddr;
}

SDValue Cpu0TargetLowering::lowerRETURNADDR(SDValue Op,
                                            SelectionDAG &DAG) const {
    if (verifyReturnAddressArgumentIsConstant(Op, DAG))
        return SDValue();

    // check the depth
    assert((cast<ConstantSDNode>(Op.getOperand(0))->getZExtValue() == 0) &&
           "Return address can be determined only for current frame.");

    MachineFunction &MF = DAG.getMachineFunction();
    MachineFrameInfo *MFI = MF.getFrameInfo();
    MVT VT = Op.getSimpleValueType();
    unsigned LR = Cpu0::LR;
    MFI->setReturnAddressIsTaken(true);

    // Return LR, which contains the return address. Mark it an implicit live-in.
    unsigned Reg = MF.addLiveIn(LR, getRegClassFor(VT));
    return DAG.getCopyFromReg(DAG.getEntryNode(), SDLoc(Op), Reg, VT);
}

```

```

// An EH_RETURN is the result of lowering llvm.eh.return which in turn is
// generated from __builtin_eh_return (offset, handler)
// The effect of this is to adjust the stack pointer by "offset"
// and then branch to "handler".
SDValue Cpu0TargetLowering::lowerEH_RETURN(SDValue Op, SelectionDAG &DAG)
    const {
    MachineFunction &MF = DAG.getMachineFunction();
    Cpu0FunctionInfo *Cpu0FI = MF.getInfo<Cpu0FunctionInfo>();

    Cpu0FI->setCallsEhReturn();
    SDValue Chain      = Op.getOperand(0);
    SDValue Offset     = Op.getOperand(1);
    SDValue Handler   = Op.getOperand(2);
    SDLoc DL(Op);
    EVT Ty = MVT::i32;

    // Store stack offset in V1, store jump target in V0. Glue CopyToReg and
    // EH_RETURN nodes, so that instructions are emitted back-to-back.
    unsigned OffsetReg = Cpu0::V1;
    unsigned AddrReg = Cpu0::V0;
    Chain = DAG.getCopyToReg(Chain, DL, OffsetReg, Offset, SDValue());
    Chain = DAG.getCopyToReg(Chain, DL, AddrReg, Handler, Chain.getValue(1));
    return DAG.getNode(Cpu0ISD::EH_RETURN, DL, MVT::Other, Chain,
                       DAG.getRegister(OffsetReg, Ty),
                       DAG.getRegister(AddrReg, getPointerTy(MF.getDataLayout())),
                       Chain.getValue(1));
}

SDValue Cpu0TargetLowering::lowerADD(SDValue Op, SelectionDAG &DAG) const {
    if (Op->getOperand(0).getOpcode() != ISD::FRAMEADDR
        || cast<ConstantSDNode>
            (Op->getOperand(0).getOperand(0))->getZExtValue() != 0
        || Op->getOperand(1).getOpcode() != ISD::FRAME_TO_ARGS_OFFSET)
        return SDValue();

    MachineFunction &MF = DAG.getMachineFunction();
    Cpu0FunctionInfo *Cpu0FI = MF.getInfo<Cpu0FunctionInfo>();

    Cpu0FI->setCallsEhDwarf();
    return Op;
}

```

## frameaddress and returnaddress intrinsics

Run with the following input to get the following result.

### [lbdex/input/ch9\\_3\\_frame\\_return\\_addr.cpp](#)

```

int display_frameaddress() {
    return (int)__builtin_frame_address(0);
}

extern int fn();

int display_returnaddress() {

```

```
int a = (int) __builtin_return_address(0);
fn();
return a;
}
```

```
JonathantekiiMac:input Jonathan$ ~/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/Debug/bin/
 llvm-dis ch9_3_frame_return_addr.bc -o -
...
; Function Attrs: nounwind
define i32 @_Z20display_frameaddressv() #0 {
    %1 = call i8* @llvm.frameaddress(i32 0)
    %2 = ptrtoint i8* %1 to i32
    ret i32 %2
}

; Function Attrs: nounwind readnone
declare i8* @llvm.frameaddress(i32) #1

define i32 @_Z22display_returnaddressv() #2 {
    %a = alloca i32, align 4
    %1 = call i8* @llvm.returnaddress(i32 0)
    %2 = ptrtoint i8* %1 to i32
    store i32 %2, i32* %a, align 4
    %3 = call i32 @_Z2fnv()
    %4 = load i32, i32* %a, align 4
    ret i32 %4
}

JonathantekiiMac:input Jonathan$ ~/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/Debug/bin/llc
-march=cpu0 -relocation-model=static -filetype=asm ch9_3_frame_return_addr.bc
-o -
.text
.section .mdebug.abi032
.previous
.file "ch9_3_frame_return_addr.bc"
.globl _Z20display_frameaddressv
.align 2
.type _Z20display_frameaddressv,@function
.ent _Z20display_frameaddressv # @_Z20display_frameaddressv
_Z20display_frameaddressv:
.frame $fp,8,$lr
.mask 0x00001000,-4
.set noreorder
.set nomacro
# BB#0:
    addiu $sp, $sp, -8
    st $fp, 4($sp)                                # 4-
→byte Folded Spill
    move $fp, $sp
    addu $2, $zero, $fp
    move $sp, $fp
    ld $fp, 4($sp)                                # 4-
→byte Folded Reload
    addiu $sp, $sp, 8
    ret $lr
    nop
    .set macro
    .set reorder
```

```

.end      _Z20display_frameaddressv
$func_end0:
.size _Z20display_frameaddressv, ($func_end0)-_Z20display_frameaddressv

.globl _Z22display_returnaddresslv
.align 2
.type _Z22display_returnaddresslv,@function
.ent _Z22display_returnaddresslv # @_Z22display_returnaddresslv
_Z22display_returnaddresslv:
.cfi_startproc
.frame $fp,24,$lr
.mask 0x00005000,-4
.set noreorder
.set nomacro
# BB#0:
addiu $sp, $sp, -24
$tmp0:
.cfi_def_cfa_offset 24
st $lr, 20($sp)                                # 4-byte Folded_
→Spill
st $fp, 16($sp)                                # 4-byte Folded_
→Spill
$tmp1:
.cfi_offset 14, -4
$tmp2:
.cfi_offset 12, -8
move $fp, $sp
$tmp3:
.cfi_def_cfa_register 12
st $lr, 12($fp)
jsub _Z2fnv
nop
ld $2, 12($fp)
move $sp, $fp
ld $fp, 16($sp)                                # 4-byte Folded_
→Reload
ld $lr, 20($sp)                                # 4-byte Folded_
→Reload
addiu $sp, $sp, 24
ret $lr
nop
.set macro
.set reorder
.end _Z22display_returnaddresslv
$func_end1:
.size _Z22display_returnaddresslv, ($func_end1)-_Z22display_returnaddresslv
.cfi_endproc

```

The asm “ld \$2, 12(\$fp)” in function `_Z22display_returnaddresslv` reloads \$lr to \$2 after “jsub `_Z3fnv`”. The reason that Cpu0 doesn’t produce “addiu \$2, \$zero, \$lr” is if a bug program in `_Z3fnv` changes \$lr value without following ABI then it will get the wrong \$lr to \$2. The following code kills \$lr register and make the reference to \$lr by loading from stack slot rather than uses register directly.

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter9\_1/Cpu0SEFrameLowering.cpp

```

bool Cpu0SEFrameLowering::
spillCalleeSavedRegisters(MachineBasicBlock &MBB,
                           MachineBasicBlock::iterator MI,
                           const std::vector<CalleeSavedInfo> &CSI,
                           const TargetRegisterInfo *TRI) const {
    ...
    for (unsigned i = 0, e = CSI.size(); i != e; ++i) {
        // Add the callee-saved register as live-in. Do not add if the register is
        // LR and return address is taken, because it has already been added in
        // method Cpu0TargetLowering::LowerRETURNADDR.
        // It's killed at the spill, unless the register is LR and return address
        // is taken.
        unsigned Reg = CSI[i].getReg();
        bool IsRAAndRetAddrIsTaken = (Reg == Cpu0::LR)
            && MF->getFrameInfo()->isReturnAddressTaken();
        if (!IsRAAndRetAddrIsTaken)
            EntryBlock->addLiveIn(Reg);

        // Insert the spill to the stack frame.
        bool IsKill = !IsRAAndRetAddrIsTaken;
        const TargetRegisterClass *RC = TRI->getMinimalPhysRegClass(Reg);
        TII.storeRegToStackSlot(*EntryBlock, MI, Reg, IsKill,
                               CSI[i].getFrameIdx(), RC, TRI);
    }
    ...
}

```

### eh.return intrinsic

Beside lowerRETURNADDR() in Cpu0ISelLowering, the following code is for eh.return supporting only, and it can run with input ch9\_3\_detect\_exception.cpp as below.

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter9\_3/Cpu0SEFrameLowering.cpp

```

void Cpu0SEFrameLowering::emitPrologue(MachineFunction &MF,
                                       MachineBasicBlock &MBB) const {

    if (Cpu0FI->callsEhReturn()) {
        // Insert instructions that spill eh data registers.
        for (int I = 0; I < ABI.EhDataRegSize(); ++I) {
            if (!MBB.isLiveIn(ABI.GetEhDataReg(I)))
                MBB.addLiveIn(ABI.GetEhDataReg(I));
            TII.storeRegToStackSlot(MBB, MBBI, ABI.GetEhDataReg(I), false,
                                   Cpu0FI->getEhDataRegFI(I), RC, &RegInfo);
        }

        // Emit .cfi_offset directives for eh data registers.
        for (int I = 0; I < ABI.EhDataRegSize(); ++I) {
            int64_t Offset = MFI->getObjectOffset(Cpu0FI->getEhDataRegFI(I));
            unsigned Reg = MRI->getDwarfRegNum(ABI.GetEhDataReg(I), true);
            unsigned CFIIIndex = MMI.addFrameInst(
                MCCFIIInstruction::createOffset(nullptr, Reg, Offset));
        }
    }
}

```

```
        BuildMI(MBB, MBBI, dl, TII.get(TargetOpcode::CFI_INSTRUCTION))
            .addCFIIndex(CFIIndex);
    }
}
```

...  
}

```
if (Cpu0FI->callsEhReturn()) {
    const TargetRegisterClass *RC = &Cpu0::GPROutRegClass;

    // Find first instruction that restores a callee-saved register.
    MachineBasicBlock::iterator I = MBBI;
    for (unsigned i = 0; i < MFI->getCalleeSavedInfo().size(); ++i)
        --I;

    // Insert instructions that restore eh data registers.
    for (int J = 0; J < ABI.EhDataRegSize(); ++J) {
        TII.loadRegFromStackSlot(MBB, I, ABI.GetEhDataReg(J),
                                Cpu0FI->getEhDataRegFI(J), RC, &RegInfo);
    }
}
```

• • •

```
// Create spill slots for eh data registers if function calls eh_return.  
if (Cpu0FI->callsEhReturn())  
    Cpu0FI->createEhDataRegsFI();
```

...  
}

[Ibdex](#)/[chapters](#)/[Chapter9](#) 3/Cpu0InstrInfo.td

```
// Exception handling related node and instructions.  
// The conversion sequence is:  
// ISD::EH_RETURN -> Cpu0ISD::EH_RETURN ->  
// CPU0eh_return -> (stack change + indirect branch)  
//  
// CPU0eh_return takes the place of regular return instruction  
// but takes two arguments (V1, V0) which are used for storing  
// the offset and return address respectively.
```

```
def SDT_Cpu0EHRET : SDTypeProfile<0, 2, [SDTCisInt<0>, SDTCisPtrTy<1>]>;  
  
def CPU0ehret : SDNode<"Cpu0ISD::EH_RETURN", SDT_Cpu0EHRET,  
                     [SDNPHasChain, SDNPOptInGlue, SDNPVariadic]>;  
  
let Uses = [V0, V1], isTerminator = 1, isReturn = 1, isBarrier = 1 in {  
    def CPU0eh_return32 : Cpu0Pseudo<(outs), (ins GPROut:$spoff, GPROut:$dst), "",  
                                         [(CPU0ehret GPROut:$spoff, GPROut:$dst)]>;  
}
```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter9\_3/Cpu0SEInstrInfo.h

```
void expandEhReturn(MachineBasicBlock &MBB,  
                     MachineBasicBlock::iterator I) const;
```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter9\_3/Cpu0SEInstrInfo.cpp

```
/// Expand Pseudo instructions into real backend instructions  
bool Cpu0SEInstrInfo::expandPostRAPseudo(MachineInstr &MI) const {  
  
    case Cpu0::CPU0eh_return32:  
        expandEhReturn(MBB, MI);  
        break;  
  
    ...  
}  
  
void Cpu0SEInstrInfo::expandEhReturn(MachineBasicBlock &MBB,  
                                     MachineBasicBlock::iterator I) const {  
    // This pseudo instruction is generated as part of the lowering of  
    // ISD::EH_RETURN. We convert it to a stack increment by OffsetReg, and  
    // indirect jump to TargetReg  
    unsigned ADDU = Cpu0::ADDU;  
    unsigned SP = Cpu0::SP;  
    unsigned LR = Cpu0::LR;  
    unsigned T9 = Cpu0::T9;  
    unsigned ZERO = Cpu0::ZERO;  
    unsigned OffsetReg = I->getOperand(0).getReg();  
    unsigned TargetReg = I->getOperand(1).getReg();  
  
    // addu $lr, $v0, $zero  
    // addu $sp, $sp, $v1  
    // jr $lr (via RetLR)  
    const TargetMachine &TM = MBB.getParent()->getTarget();  
    if (TM.isPositionIndependent())  
        BuildMI(MBB, I, I->getDebugLoc(), get(ADDU), T9)  
            .addReg(TargetReg)  
            .addReg(ZERO);  
    BuildMI(MBB, I, I->getDebugLoc(), get(ADDU), LR)  
        .addReg(TargetReg)  
        .addReg(ZERO);  
    BuildMI(MBB, I, I->getDebugLoc(), get(ADDU), SP).addReg(SP).addReg(OffsetReg);
```

```
    expandRetLR(MBB, I);
}
```

**lbdex/input/ch9\_3\_detect\_exception.cpp**

```
bool exceptionOccur = false;
void* returnAddr;

// Even though __builtin_frame_address is useless in this example, I believe
// it will be used in real exception handler implementation. Because in real
// implementation, the exception handler keeps a table and decide which function
// should be triggered for a specific exception and hand over to it.
// The hand over process needs unwinding the stack frame. The stack frame address
// can be gotten by calling __builtin_frame_address in the charged function.
void exception_handler() {
    exceptionOccur = true;
    int frameaddr = (int) __builtin_frame_address(0);
    __builtin_eh_return(0, returnAddr); // no warning, eh_return never returns.
}

__attribute__((weak))
int test_detect_exception(bool exception) {
    exceptionOccur = false;
    void* handler = (void*)(&exception_handler);
    if (exception) {
        returnAddr = __builtin_return_address(0);
        __builtin_eh_return(0, handler); // no warning, eh_return never returns.
    }
    else {
        return 0;
    }
}
```

```
114-37-150-48:input Jonathan$ clang -target mips-unknown-linux-gnu -c
ch9_3_detect_exception.cpp -emit-llvm -o ch9_3_detect_exception.bc
114-37-150-48:input Jonathan$ ~/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/Debug/bin/llvm-dis
ch9_3_detect_exception.bc -o -
; ModuleID = 'ch9_3_detect_exception.bc'
target datalayout = "E-m:m-p:32:32-i8:8:32-i16:16:32-i64:64-n32-S64"
target triple = "mips-unknown-linux-gnu"

@exceptionOccur = global i8 0, align 1
@returnAddr = global i8* null, align 4

; Function Attrs: nounwind
define void @_Z17exception_handlerv() #0 {
    %frameaddr = alloca i32, align 4
    store i32 1, i8* @exceptionOccur, align 1
    %1 = call i8* @llvm.frameaddress(i32 0)
    %2 = ptrtoint i8* %1 to i32
    store i32 %2, i32* %frameaddr, align 4
    %3 = load i8*, i8** @returnAddr, align 4
    call void @llvm.eh.return.i32(i32 0, i8* %3)
    unreachable
```

```

; No predecessors!
ret void
}

; Function Attrs: nounwind readnone
declare i8* @llvm.frameaddress(i32) #1

; Function Attrs: nounwind
declare void @llvm.eh.return.i32(i32, i8*) #2

define weak i32 @_Z21test_detect_exceptionb(il zeroext %exception) #3 {
    %1 = alloca i8, align 1
    %handler = alloca i8*, align 4
    %2 = zext il %exception to i8
    store i8 %2, i8* %1, align 1
    store i8 0, i8* @exceptionOccur, align 1
    store i8* bitcast (void ()* @_Z17exception_handler to i8*), i8** %handler, align 4
    %3 = load i8, i8* %1, align 1
    %4 = trunc i8 %3 to il
    br il %4, label %5, label %8

; <label>:5                                ; preds = %0
    %6 = call i8* @llvm.returnaddress(i32 0)
    store i8* %6, i8** @returnAddr, align 4
    %7 = load i8*, i8** %handler, align 4
    call void @llvm.eh.return.i32(i32 0, i8* %7)
    unreachable

; <label>:8                                ; preds = %0
    ret i32 0
}

; Function Attrs: nounwind readnone
declare i8* @llvm.returnaddress(i32) #1

attributes #0 = { nounwind ... }
attributes #1 = { nounwind readnone }
attributes #2 = { nounwind }
attributes #3 = { "less-precise-fpmad"="false" ... }
...

114-37-150-48:input Jonathan$ ~/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/Debug/bin/llc
-march=cpu0 -mcpu=cpu032II -relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm
ch9_3_detect_exception.bc -o -
.text
.section .mdebug.abi032
.previous
.file "ch9_3_detect_exception.bc"
.globl _Z17exception_handlerv
.align 2
.type _Z17exception_handlerv,@function
.ent _Z17exception_handlerv # @_Z17exception_handlerv
_Z17exception_handlerv:
.frame $fp,16,$lr
.mask 0x00001000,-4
.set noreorder
.cupload $t9
.set nomacro

```

```

# BB#0:
addiu $sp, $sp, -16
st $fp, 12($sp)           # 4-byte Folded Spill
st $4, 4($fp)
st $5, 0($fp)
move $fp, $sp
lui $2, %got_hi(exceptionOccur)
addu $2, $2, $gp
ld $2, %got_lo(exceptionOccur) ($2)
addiu $3, $zero, 1
sb $3, 0($2)
st $fp, 8($fp)
lui $2, %got_hi(returnAddr)
addu $2, $2, $gp
ld $2, %got_lo(returnAddr) ($2)
ld $2, 0($2)
addiu $3, $zero, 0
move $sp, $fp
ld $4, 4($fp)
ld $5, 0($fp)
ld $fp, 12($sp)           # 4-byte Folded Reload
addiu $sp, $sp, 16
move $t9, $2
move $lr, $2
addu $sp, $sp, $3
ret $lr
nop
.set macro
.set reorder
.end _Z17exception_handlerv
$func_end0:
.size _Z17exception_handlerv, ($func_end0)-_Z17exception_handlerv

.weak _Z21test_detect_exceptionb
.align 2
.type _Z21test_detect_exceptionb,@function
.ent _Z21test_detect_exceptionb # @_Z21test_detect_exceptionb
_Z21test_detect_exceptionb:
.cfi_startproc
.frame $fp,24,$lr
.mask 0x00001000,-4
.set noreorder
.cupload $t9
.set nomacro
# BB#0:
addiu $sp, $sp, -24
$tmp0:
.cfi_def_cfa_offset 24
st $fp, 20($sp)           # 4-byte Folded Spill
$tmp1:
.cfi_offset 12, -4
st $4, 8($fp)
st $5, 4($fp)
$tmp2:
.cfi_offset 4, -16
$tmp3:
.cfi_offset 5, -20
move $fp, $sp

```

```

$tmp4:
.cfi_def_cfa_register 12
sb $4, 16($fp)
lui $2, %got_hi(exceptionOccur)
addu $2, $2, $gp
ld $2, %got_lo(exceptionOccur) ($2)
addiu $3, $zero, 0
sb $3, 0($2)
lui $2, %got_hi(_Z17exception_handlerv)
addu $2, $2, $gp
ld $2, %got_lo(_Z17exception_handlerv) ($2)
st $2, 12($fp)
lbu $2, 16($fp)
andi $2, $2, 1
beq $2, $zero, .LBB1_2
nop
jmp .LBB1_1
nop
.LBB1_2:
addiu $2, $zero, 0
move $sp, $fp
ld $4, 8($fp)
ld $5, 4($fp)
ld $fp, 20($sp)           # 4-byte Folded Reload
addiu $sp, $sp, 24
ret $lr
nop
.LBB1_1:
lui $2, %got_hi(returnAddr)
addu $2, $2, $gp
ld $2, %got_lo(returnAddr) ($2)
st $lr, 0($2)
ld $2, 12($fp)
addiu $3, $zero, 0
move $sp, $fp
ld $4, 8($fp)
ld $5, 4($fp)
ld $fp, 20($sp)           # 4-byte Folded Reload
addiu $sp, $sp, 24
move $t9, $2
move $lr, $2
addu $sp, $sp, $3
ret $lr
nop
.set macro
.set reorder
.end _Z21test_detect_exceptionb
$func_end1:
.size _Z21test_detect_exceptionb, ($func_end1)-_Z21test_detect_exceptionb
.cfi_endproc

.type exceptionOccur,@object  # @exceptionOccur
.bss
.globl exceptionOccur
exceptionOccur:
.byte 0                      # 0x0
.size exceptionOccur, 1

```

```

.type returnAddr,@object      # @returnAddr
.globl  returnAddr
.align  2
returnAddr:
    .4byte 0
.size  returnAddr, 4
...

```

If you disable “`__attribute__ ((weak))`” in the C file, then the IR will has “nounwind” in attributes #3. The side effect in asm output is “No .cfi\_offset issued” like function exception\_handler().

This example code of exception handler implementation can get frame, return and call exception handler by call `__builtin_xxx` in clang in C language, without introducing any assembly instruction. And this example can be verified in the Chapter “Cpu0 ELF linker” of the other book “llvm tool chain for Cpu0” <sup>12</sup>. Through examining global variable, exceptionOccur, is true or false, program will set the control flow to exception\_handler() or not to correctly.

### eh.dwarf intrinsic

Beside lowerADD() in Cpu0ISelLowering, the following code is for the eh.dwarf supporting only, and it can run with input eh-dwarf-cfa.ll as below.

#### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter9\_3/Cpu0SEFrameLowering.cpp

```

// if framepointer enabled, set it to point to the stack pointer.
if (hasFP(MF)) {
    if (Cpu0FI->callsEhDwarf()) {
        BuildMI(MBB, MBBI, dl, TII.get(ADDu), Cpu0::V0).addReg(FP).addReg(ZERO)
            .setMIFlag(MachineInstr::FrameSetup);
    }
}

...

```

#### Ibdex/input/eh-dwarf-cfa.ll

```

; RUN: llc -march=cpu0el -mcpu=cpu032II < %s | FileCheck %s

declare i8* @llvm.eh.dwarf.cfa(i32) nounwind
declare i8* @llvm.frameaddress(i32) nounwind readnone

define i8* @f1() nounwind {
entry:
    %x = alloca [32 x i8], align 1
    %0 = call i8* @llvm.eh.dwarf.cfa(i32 0)
    ret i8* %0

; CHECK:      addiu    $sp, $sp, -40
; CHECK:      addu    $2, $zero, $fp
}

```

<sup>12</sup> <http://jonathan2251.github.io/lbt/lld.html>

```

define i8* @f2() nounwind {
entry:
%0 = alloca [65536 x i8], align 1
%0 = call i8* @llvm.eh.dwarf.cfa(i32 0)
ret i8* %0

; check stack size (65536 + 8)
; CHECK:          lui      $[[R0:[a-z0-9]+]], 65535
; CHECK:          addiu   $[[R0]], $[[R0]], -8
; CHECK:          addu    $sp, $sp, $[[R0]]

; check return value ($sp + stack size)
; CHECK:          addu    $2, $zero, $fp
}

define i32 @f3() nounwind {
entry:
%0 = alloca [32 x i8], align 1
%0 = call i8* @llvm.eh.dwarf.cfa(i32 0)
%1 = ptrtoint i8* %0 to i32
%2 = call i8* @llvm.frameaddress(i32 0)
%3 = ptrtoint i8* %2 to i32
%add = add i32 %1, %3
ret i32 %add

; CHECK:          addiu   $sp, $sp, -40

; check return value ($fp + stack size + $fp)
; CHECK:          move    $fp, $sp
; CHECK:          addu    $2, $fp, $fp
}

```

## bswap intrinsic

Cpu0 supports llvm intrinsics bswap intrinsic<sup>13</sup>.

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter12\_1/Cpu0ISelLowering.cpp

```

Cpu0TargetLowering::Cpu0TargetLowering(const Cpu0TargetMachine &TM,
                                       const Cpu0Subtarget &STI)
  : TargetLowering(TM), Subtarget(STI), ABI(TM.getABI()) {

```

```

setOperationAction(ISD::BSWAP, MVT::i32, Expand);
setOperationAction(ISD::BSWAP, MVT::i64, Expand);

```

```

...
}
```

<sup>13</sup> <http://llvm.org/docs/LangRef.html#llvm-bswap-intrinsics>

**Ibdex/input/ch9\_3\_bswap.cpp**

```

int test_bswap16() {
    volatile int a = 0x1234;
    int result = (__builtin_bswap16(a) ^ 0x3412);

    return result;
}

int test_bswap32() {
    volatile int a = 0x1234;
    int result = (__builtin_bswap32(a) ^ 0x34120000);

    return result;
}

int test_bswap64() {
    volatile int a = 0x1234;
    int result = (__builtin_bswap64(a) ^ 0x3412000000000000);

    return result;
}

int test_bswap() {
    int result = test_bswap16() + test_bswap32() + test_bswap64();

    return result;
}

```

```

114-37-150-48:input Jonathan$ clang -target mips-unknown-linux-gnu -c
ch9_3_bswap.cpp -emit-llvm -o ch9_3_bswap.bc
114-37-150-48:input Jonathan$ ~/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/Debug/bin/llvm-dis
ch9_3_bswap.bc -o -
...
define i32 @_Z12test_bswap16v() #0 {
    %a = alloca i32, align 4
    %result = alloca i32, align 4
    store volatile i32 4660, i32* %a, align 4
    %1 = load volatile i32, i32* %a, align 4
    %2 = trunc i32 %1 to i16
    %3 = call i16 @llvm.bswap.i16(i16 %2)
    %4 = zext i16 %3 to i32
    %5 = xor i32 %4, 13330
    store i32 %5, i32* %result, align 4
    %6 = load i32, i32* %result, align 4
    ret i32 %6
}
...

```

**9.6.6 Add specific backend intrinsic function**

LLVM intrinsic functions is designed to extend llvm IRs for hardware acceleration in compiler design <sup>14</sup>. Many cpu implement their intrinsic functions for their speedup hardware instructions. Some gpu apply llvm infrastructure as their OpenGL/CL backend compiler using many llvm extended intrinsic functions. To demonstrate how to use

<sup>14</sup> <https://llvm.org/docs/ExtendingLLVM.html>

backend proprietary intrinsic functions to support their specific instructions to getting better performance in some domain language, Cpu0 add a intrinsic function @llvm.cpu0.gcd for its gcd(greatest common divider) instruction. This instruction explaining how to do it in llvm only, it is not added in Verilog Cpu0 implementation. The code as follows,

### Ibdex/src/modify/src/include/llvm/IR/Intrinsics.td

```
...  
include "llvm/IR/IntrinsicsCpu0.td"  
...
```

### Ibdex/src/modify/src/include/llvm/IR/IntrinsicsCpu0.td

```
===== IntrinsicsCpu0.td - Defines Mips intrinsics -----*/  
//  
// The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure  
//  
// This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source  
// License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.  
//  
//-----/  
//  
// This file defines all of the CPU0-specific intrinsics.  
//  
//=====
```

```
def int_cpu0_gcd : GCCBuiltin<"__builtin_cpu0_gcd">,  
    Intrinsic<[llvm_i32_ty], [llvm_i32_ty, llvm_i32_ty],  
    [Commutative, IntrNoMem]>;
```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter9\_3/Cpu0InstrInfo.td

```
class IntrinsicArithLogicR<bits<8> op, string instr_asm, SDPatternOperator OpNode,  
    InstrItinClass itin, RegisterClass RC, bit isComm = 0>:  
    FA<op, (outs GPROut:$ra), (ins RC:$rb, RC:$rc),  
    !strconcat(instr_asm, "\t$ra, $rb, $rc"),  
    [(set GPROut:$ra, (OpNode RC:$rb, RC:$rc))], itin> {  
    let shamt = 0;  
    let isCommutable = isComm;           // e.g. add rb rc = add rc rb  
    let isReMaterializable = 1;  
}
```

```
def GCD : IntrinsicArithLogicR<0x60, "gcd", int_cpu0_gcd, IIAlu, CPURegs, 1>;
```

When running llc with cpu0\_gcd.ll, it gets the gcd machine instruction, meanwhile, when running cpu0\_gcd\_soft.ll, it gets the “call llvm.cpu0.gcd.soft” function. In other words, “@llvm.cpu0.gcd” is intrinsic function for “gcd” machine instruction; “@llvm.cpu0.gcd.soft” is intrinsic function for hand-written function code.

## **9.7 Summary**

Now, Cpu0 backend code can take care both the integer function call and control statement just like the example code of llvm frontend tutorial does. It can translate some of the C++ OOP language into Cpu0 instructions also without much effort in backend, because the most complex things in language, such as C++ syntax, is handled by frontend. LLVM is a real structure following the compiler theory, any backend of LLVM can get benefit from this structure. The best part of 3 tiers compiler structure is that backend will grow up automatically in languages support as the frontend supporting languages more and more when the frontend doesn't add any new IR for a new language.



## ELF SUPPORT

- *ELF format*
  - *ELF header and Section header table*
  - *Relocation Record*
  - *Cpu0 ELF related files*
- *llvm-objdump*
  - *llvm-objdump -t -r*
  - *llvm-objdump -d*

Cpu0 backend generated the ELF format of obj. The ELF (Executable and Linkable Format) is a common standard file format for executables, object code, shared libraries and core dumps. First published in the System V Application Binary Interface specification, and later in the Tool Interface Standard, it was quickly accepted among different vendors of Unixsystems. In 1999 it was chosen as the standard binary file format for Unix and Unix-like systems on x86 by the x86open project. Please reference <sup>1</sup>.

The binary encode of Cpu0 instruction set in obj has been checked in the previous chapters. But we didn't dig into the ELF file format like elf header and relocation record at that time. This chapter will use the binutils which has been installed in “sub-section Install other tools on iMac” of Appendix A: “Installing LLVM” <sup>2</sup> to check the generated cpu0 ELF file. You will learn the objdump, readelf, ..., tools and understand the ELF file format itself through using these tools to analyze the cpu0 generated obj in this chapter. LLVM has the llvm-objdump tool which like objdump. We will make cpu0 support llvm-objdump tool further in this chapter. The binutils is a cross compiler tool chains include a couple of CPU ELF dump function support. Linux platform has binutils already and no need to install it further. The reason we use Linux binutils in this chapter just because my iMac will display Chinese text. The iMac corresponding binutils have no problem except it add g in command name and and display with your area language instead of pure English on iMac. For example, when using gobjdump instead of objdump, I have the result of Chinese language unicode display instead of pure English on my iMac.

The binutils tool we use is not a part of llvm tools, but it's a powerful tool in ELF analysis. This chapter introduce the tool to readers since we think it is a valuable knowledge in this popular ELF format and the ELF binutils analysis tool. An LLVM compiler engineer has the responsibility to make sure his backend has generated a right obj since the obj is needed to be handled by linker or loader later. With this tool, you can verify your generated ELF format.

The cpu0 author has published a “System Software” book which introduces the topics of assembler, linker, loader, compiler and OS in concept, and at same time demonstrates how to use binutils and gcc to analysis ELF through the example code in his book. It's a Chinese book of “System Software” in concept and practice. This book does

---

<sup>1</sup> [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Executable\\_and\\_Linkable\\_Format](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Executable_and_Linkable_Format)

<sup>2</sup> <http://jonathan2251.github.io/lbd/install.html#install-other-tools-on-imac>

the real analysis through binutils. The “System Software”<sup>3</sup> written by Beck is a famous book in concept of telling readers what about the compiler output, what about the linker output, what about the loader output, and how they work together. But it covers the concept only. You can reference it to understand how the “**Relocation Record**” works if you need to refresh or learning this knowledge for this chapter.

<sup>4</sup>, <sup>5</sup>, <sup>6</sup> are the Chinese documents available from the cpu0 author on web site.

## 10.1 ELF format

ELF is a format used in both obj and executable file. So, there are two views in it as Fig. 10.1.

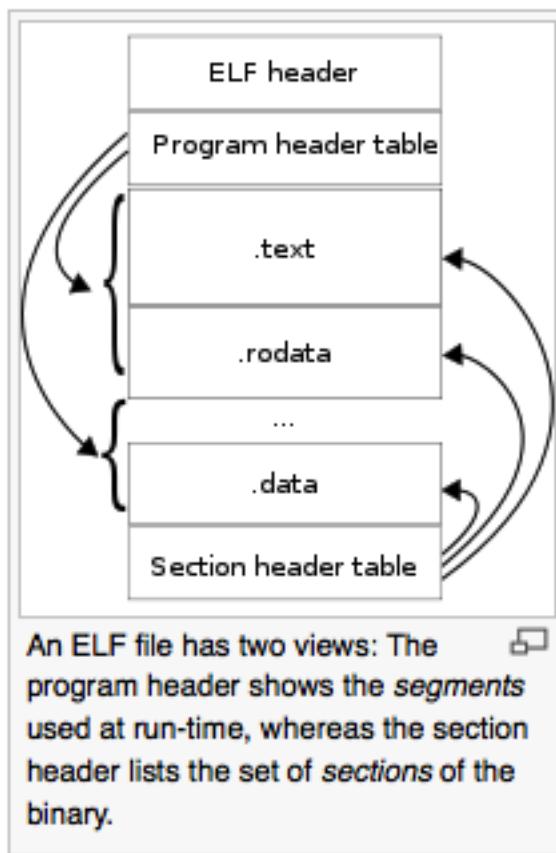


Fig. 10.1: ELF file format overview

As Fig. 10.1, the “Section header table” include sections .text, .rodata, ..., .data which are sections layout for code, read only data, ..., and read/write data, respectively. “Program header table” include segments for run time code and data. The definition of segments is the run time layout for code and data while sections is the link time layout for code and data.

<sup>3</sup> Leland Beck, System Software: An Introduction to Systems Programming.

<sup>4</sup> <http://ccckmit.wikidot.com/lk:aout>

<sup>5</sup> <http://ccckmit.wikidot.com/lk:objfile>

<sup>6</sup> <http://ccckmit.wikidot.com/lk:elf>

### 10.1.1 ELF header and Section header table

Let's run Chapter9\_3/ with ch6\_1.cpp, and dump ELF header information by `readelf -h` to see what information the ELF header contains.

```
[Gamma@localhost input]$ ~/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/bin/llc -march=cpu0
-relocation-model=pic -filetype=obj ch6_1.bc -o ch6_1.cpu0.o

[Gamma@localhost input]$ readelf -h ch6_1.cpu0.o
Magic: 7f 45 4c 46 01 02 01 03 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
Class: ELF32
Data: 2's complement, big endian
Version: 1 (current)
OS/ABI: UNIX - GNU
ABI Version: 0
Type: REL (Relocatable file)
Machine: <unknown>: 0xc9
Version: 0x1
Entry point address: 0x0
Start of program headers: 0 (bytes into file)
Start of section headers: 176 (bytes into file)
Flags: 0x0
Size of this header: 52 (bytes)
Size of program headers: 0 (bytes)
Number of program headers: 0
Size of section headers: 40 (bytes)
Number of section headers: 8
Section header string table index: 5
[Gamma@localhost input]$
```

```
[Gamma@localhost input]$ ~/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/bin/llc
-march=mips -relocation-model=pic -filetype=obj ch6_1.bc -o ch6_1.mips.o

[Gamma@localhost input]$ readelf -h ch6_1.mips.o
ELF Header:
Magic: 7f 45 4c 46 01 02 01 03 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
Class: ELF32
Data: 2's complement, big endian
Version: 1 (current)
OS/ABI: UNIX - GNU
ABI Version: 0
Type: REL (Relocatable file)
Machine: MIPS R3000
Version: 0x1
Entry point address: 0x0
Start of program headers: 0 (bytes into file)
Start of section headers: 200 (bytes into file)
Flags: 0x50001007, noreorder, pic, cpic, o32, mips32
Size of this header: 52 (bytes)
Size of program headers: 0 (bytes)
Number of program headers: 0
Size of section headers: 40 (bytes)
Number of section headers: 9
Section header string table index: 6
[Gamma@localhost input]$
```

As above ELF header display, it contains information of magic number, version, ABI, ... . The Machine field of cpu0 is unknown while mips is known as MIPS R3000. It is unknown because cpu0 is not a popular CPU recognized by

utility readelf. Let's check ELF segments information as follows,

```
[Gamma@localhost input]$ readelf -l ch6_1.cpu0.o
```

There are no program headers in this file.

```
[Gamma@localhost input]$
```

The result is in expectation because cpu0 obj is for link only, not for execution. So, the segments is empty. Check ELF sections information as follows. Every section contains offset and size information.

```
[Gamma@localhost input]$ readelf -S ch6_1.cpu0.o
```

There are 10 section headers, starting at offset 0xd4:

Section Headers:

[Nr]	Name	Type	Addr	Off	Size	ES	Flg	Lk	Inf	Al
[ 0]		NULL	00000000	000000	000000	00		0	0	0
[ 1]	.text	PROGBITS	00000000	000034	000034	00	AX	0	0	4
[ 2]	.rel.text	REL	00000000	000310	000018	08		8	1	4
[ 3]	.data	PROGBITS	00000000	000068	000004	00	WA	0	0	4
[ 4]	.bss	NOBITS	00000000	00006c	000000	00	WA	0	0	4
[ 5]	.eh_frame	PROGBITS	00000000	00006c	000028	00	A	0	0	4
[ 6]	.rel.eh_frame	REL	00000000	000328	000008	08		8	5	4
[ 7]	.shstrtab	STRTAB	00000000	000094	00003e	00		0	0	1
[ 8]	.symtab	SYMTAB	00000000	000264	000090	10		9	6	4
[ 9]	.strtab	STRTAB	00000000	0002f4	00001b	00		0	0	1

Key to Flags:

W (write), A (alloc), X (execute), M (merge), S (strings)  
I (info), L (link order), G (group), T (TLS), E (exclude), x (unknown)  
O (extra OS processing required) o (OS specific), p (processor specific)

```
[Gamma@localhost input]$
```

### 10.1.2 Relocation Record

Cpu0 backend translate global variable as follows,

```
[Gamma@localhost input]$ clang -target mips-unknown-linux-gnu -c ch6_1.cpp  
-emit-llvm -o ch6_1.bc  
[Gamma@localhost input]$ ~/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/  
bin/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm ch6_1.bc -o ch6_1.cpu0.s  
[Gamma@localhost input]$ cat ch6_1.cpu0.s  
.section .mdebug.abi32  
.previous  
.file "ch6_1.bc"  
.text  
...  
.cfi_startproc  
.frame $sp,8,$lr  
.mask 0x00000000,0  
.set noreorder  
.cupload $t9  
...  
lui $2, %got_hi(gI)  
addu $2, $2, $gp  
ld $2, %got_lo(gI)($2)  
...  
.type gI,@object # @gI  
.data
```

```

.globl  gI
.align  2
gI:
    .4byte 100          # 0x64
    .size gI, 4

[Gamma@localhost input]$ ~/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/
bin/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=obj ch6_1.bc -o ch6_1.cpu0.o
[Gamma@localhost input]$ objdump -s ch6_1.cpu0.o

ch6_1.cpu0.o:      file format elf32-big

Contents of section .text:
// .cpupload machine instruction
0000 0fa00000 0daaa0000 13aa6000 ..... .
...
0020 002a0000 00220000 012d0000 0ddd0008 .*...".-.....
...
[Gamma@localhost input]$ Jonathan$

[Gamma@localhost input]$ readelf -tr ch6_1.cpu0.o
There are 8 section headers, starting at offset 0xb0:

Section Headers:
[Nr] Name           Type     Addr     Off      Size     ES   Lk Inf Al
[ 0] NULL           NOBITS  00000000 000000 000000 00   0   0   0
      [00000000]:
[ 1] .text          PROGBITS 00000000 000034 000044 00   0   0   4
      [00000006]: ALLOC, EXEC
[ 2] .rel.text      REL      00000000 0002a8 000020 08   6   1   4
      [00000000]:
[ 3] .data          PROGBITS 00000000 000078 000008 00   0   0   4
      [00000003]: WRITE, ALLOC
[ 4] .bss           NOBITS  00000000 000080 000000 00   0   0   4
      [00000003]: WRITE, ALLOC
[ 5] .shstrtab     STRTAB   00000000 000080 000030 00   0   0   1
      [00000000]:
[ 6] .symtab        SYMTAB   00000000 0001f0 000090 10   7   5   4
      [00000000]:
[ 7] .strtab        STRTAB   00000000 000280 000025 00   0   0   1
      [00000000]:

Relocation section '.rel.text' at offset 0x2a8 contains 4 entries:
Offset  Info  Type      Sym. Value  Sym. Name
00000000  00000805 unrecognized: 5      00000000  _gp_disp
00000004  00000806 unrecognized: 6      00000000  _gp_disp
00000020  00000616 unrecognized: 16     00000004  gI

```

```

00000028 00000617 unrecognized: 17          00000004    gI

[Gamma@localhost input]$ readelf -tr ch6_1.mips.o
There are 9 section headers, starting at offset 0xc8:

Section Headers:
[Nr] Name           Type        Addr     Off      Size     ES   Lk Inf Al
[ 0] NULL          PROGBITS    00000000 000000 000000 00   0   0   0
     [00000000]:
[ 1] .text          PROGBITS    00000000 000034 000038 00   0   0   4
     [00000006]: ALLOC, EXEC
[ 2] .rel.text      REL         00000000 0002f8 000018 08   7   1   4
     [00000000]:
[ 3] .data          PROGBITS    00000000 00006c 000008 00   0   0   4
     [00000003]: WRITE, ALLOC
[ 4] .bss           NOBITS     00000000 000074 000000 00   0   0   4
     [00000003]: WRITE, ALLOC
[ 5] .reginfo       MIPS_REGINFO 00000000 000074 000018 00   0   0   1
     [00000002]: ALLOC
[ 6] .shstrtab      STRTAB     00000000 00008c 000039 00   0   0   1
     [00000000]:
[ 7] .symtab        SYMTAB     00000000 000230 0000a0 10   8   6   4
     [00000000]:
[ 8] .strtab        STRTAB     00000000 0002d0 000025 00   0   0   1
     [00000000]:

Relocation section '.rel.text' at offset 0x2f8 contains 3 entries:
Offset  Info  Type        Sym.Value  Sym. Name
00000000  00000905 R_MIPS_HI16    00000000  _gp_disp
00000004  00000906 R_MIPS_LO16    00000000  _gp_disp
0000001c  00000709 R_MIPS_GOT16  00000004  gI

```

As depicted in section Handle \$gp register in PIC addressing mode, it translates “**.cupload %reg**” into the following.

```

// Lower ".cupload $reg" to
// "lui $gp, %hi(_gp_disp)"
// "ori $gp, $gp, %lo(_gp_disp)"
// "addu $gp, $gp, $t9"

```

The `_gp_disp` value is determined by loader. So, it's undefined in obj. You can find both the Relocation Records for offset 0 and 4 of `.text` section refer to `_gp_disp` value. The offset 0 and 4 of `.text` section are instructions “`lui $gp, %hi(_gp_disp)`” and “`ori $gp, $gp, %lo(_gp_disp)`” which their corresponding obj encode are `0fa00000` and `0daa0000`, respectively. The obj translates the `%hi(_gp_disp)` and `%lo(_gp_disp)` into 0 since when loader loads this obj into memory, loader will know the `_gp_disp` value at run time and will update these two offset relocation records to the correct offset value. You can check if the `cpu0` of `%hi(_gp_disp)` and `%lo(_gp_disp)` are correct by above

mips Relocation Records of R\_MIPS\_HI(\_gp\_disp) and R\_MIPS\_LO(\_gp\_disp) even though the cpu0 is not a CPU recognized by readelf utilitly. The instruction “**l**d \$2, %got(gI)(\$gp)” is same since we don’t know what the address of .data section variable will load to. So, Cpu0 translate the address to 0 and made a relocation record on 0x00000020 of .text section. Linker or Loader will change this address when this program is linked or loaded depends on the program is static link or dynamic link.

### 10.1.3 Cpu0 ELF related files

Files Cpu0ELFOBJECTWrite.cpp and Cpu0MC\*.cpp are the files take care the obj format. Most obj code translation about specific instructions are defined by Cpu0InstrInfo.td and Cpu0RegisterInfo.td. With these td description, LLVM translate Cpu0 instructions into obj format automatically.

## 10.2 llvm-objdump

### 10.2.1 llvm-objdump -t -r

In iMac, gobjdump -tr can display the information of relocation records like readelf -tr . LLVM tool llvm-objdump is the same tool as objdump. Let’s run gobjdump and llvm-objdump commands as follows to see the differences.

```
118-165-83-12:input Jonathan$ clang -target mips-unknown-linux-gnu -c
ch9_3.cpp -emit-llvm -o ch9_3.bc
118-165-83-10:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/
Debug/bin/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=obj ch9_3.bc -o
ch9_3.cpu0.o

118-165-78-12:input Jonathan$ gobjdump -t -r ch9_3.cpu0.o

ch9_3.cpu0.o:      file format elf32-big

SYMBOL TABLE:
00000000 l    df *ABS*      00000000 ch9_3.bc
00000000 l    d  .text       00000000 .text
00000000 l    d  .data       00000000 .data
00000000 l    d  .bss        00000000 .bss
00000000 g    F  .text       00000084 _Z5sum_iiz
00000084 g    F  .text       00000080 main
00000000           *UND*      00000000 _gp_disp

RELOCATION RECORDS FOR [.text]:
OFFSET   TYPE          VALUE
00000084 UNKNOWN      _gp_disp
00000088 UNKNOWN      _gp_disp
000000e0 UNKNOWN      _Z5sum_iiz

118-165-83-10:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/
Debug/bin/llvm-objdump -t -r ch9_3.cpu0.o

ch9_3.cpu0.o: file format ELF32-CPU0

RELOCATION RECORDS FOR [.text]:
132 R_CPU0_HI16 _gp_disp
```

```
136 R_CPU0_LO16 _gp_disp
224 R_CPU0_CALL16 _Z5sum_iiz

SYMBOL TABLE:
00000000 1    df *ABS*      00000000 ch9_3.bc
00000000 1    d .text       00000000 .text
00000000 1    d .data       00000000 .data
00000000 1    d .bss        00000000 .bss
00000000 g    F .text       00000084 _Z5sum_iiz
00000084 g    F .text       00000080 main
00000000     *UND*        00000000 _gp_disp
```

The llvmbfdump can display the file format and relocation records information well while the objdump cannot since we add the relocation records information in ELF.h as follows,

### include/llvm/support/ELF.h

```
// Machine architectures
enum {
    ...
    EM_CPU0          = 998, // Document LLVM Backend Tutorial Cpu0
    EM_CPU0_LE       = 999 // EM_CPU0_LE: little endian; EM_CPU0: big endian
}
```

### lib/object/ELF.cpp

```
...

StringRef getELFRelocationTypeName(uint32_t Machine, uint32_t Type) {
    switch (Machine) {
        ...
        case ELF::EM_CPU0:
            switch (Type) {
#include "llvm/Support/ELFRelocs/Cpu0.def"
                default:
                    break;
                }
                break;
        ...
    }
}
```

### include/llvm/Support/ELFRelocs/Cpu0.def

```
#ifndef ELF_RELOC
#error "ELF_RELOC must be defined"
#endif

ELF_RELOC(R_CPU0_NONE, 0)
ELF_RELOC(R_CPU0_32, 2)
ELF_RELOC(R_CPU0_HI16, 5)
ELF_RELOC(R_CPU0_LO16, 6)
```

ELF_RELOC(R_CPU0_GPREL16,	7)
ELF_RELOC(R_CPU0_LITERAL,	8)
ELF_RELOC(R_CPU0_GOT16,	9)
ELF_RELOC(R_CPU0_PC16,	10)
ELF_RELOC(R_CPU0_CALL16,	11)
ELF_RELOC(R_CPU0_GPREL32,	12)
ELF_RELOC(R_CPU0_PC24,	13)
ELF_RELOC(R_CPU0_GOT_HI16,	22)
ELF_RELOC(R_CPU0_GOT_LO16,	23)
ELF_RELOC(R_CPU0_RELGOT,	36)
ELF_RELOC(R_CPU0_TLS_GD,	42)
ELF_RELOC(R_CPU0_TLS_LDM,	43)
ELF_RELOC(R_CPU0_TLS_DTP_HI16,	44)
ELF_RELOC(R_CPU0_TLS_DTP_LO16,	45)
ELF_RELOC(R_CPU0_TLS_GOTTPREL,	46)
ELF_RELOC(R_CPU0_TLS_TPREL32,	47)
ELF_RELOC(R_CPU0_TLS_TP_HI16,	49)
ELF_RELOC(R_CPU0_TLS_TP_LO16,	50)
ELF_RELOC(R_CPU0_GLOB_DAT,	51)
ELF_RELOC(R_CPU0_JUMP_SLOT,	127)

## include/llvm/Object/ELFOBJECTFILE.H

```

template<support::endianness target_endianness, bool is64Bits>
error_code ELFOBJECTFILE<target_endianness, is64Bits>
    ::getRelocationValueString(DataRefImpl Rel,
                               SmallVectorImpl<char> &Result) const {
    ...
    case ELF::EM_CPU0: // llvm-objdump -t -r
        res = symname;
        break;
    ...
}

template<support::endianness target_endianness, bool is64Bits>
StringRef ELFOBJECTFILE<target_endianness, is64Bits>
    ::getFileFormatName() const {
    switch(Header->e_ident[ELF::EI_CLASS]) {
    case ELF::ELFCLASS32:
        switch(Header->e_machine) {
        ...
        case ELF::EM_CPU0: // llvm-objdump -t -r
            return "ELF32-CPU0";
        ...
    }
}

template<support::endianness target_endianness, bool is64Bits>
unsigned ELFOBJECTFILE<target_endianness, is64Bits>::getArch() const {
    switch(Header->e_machine) {
    ...
    case ELF::EM_CPU0: // llvm-objdump -t -r
        return (target_endianness == support::little) ?
            Triple::cpu0el : Triple::cpu0;
    ...
}

```

In addition to `llvm-objdump -t -r`, the `llvm-readobj -h` can display the Cpu0 elf header information with above EM\_CPU0 defined.

### 10.2.2 llvm-objdump -d

Run the last Chapter example code with command `llvm-objdump -d` for dumping file from elf to hex as follows,

```
JonathantekiiMac:input Jonathan$ clang -target mips-unknown-linux-gnu -c ch8_1_1.cpp -emit-llvm -o ch8_1_1.bc
JonathantekiiMac:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/Debug/bin/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=obj ch8_1_1.bc -o ch8_1_1.cpu0.o
JonathantekiiMac:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/Debug/bin/llvm-objdump -d ch8_1_1.cpu0.o

ch8_1_1.cpu0.o: file format ELF32-unknown

Disassembly of section .text:error: no disassembler for target cpu0-unknown-unknown
```

To support `llvm-objdump`, the following code added to `Chapter10_1/` (the `DecoderMethod` for `brtarget24` has been added in previous chapter).

#### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter10\_1/CMakeLists.txt

```
tablegen(LLVM Cpu0GenDisassemblerTables.inc -gen-disassembler)

add_subdirectory(Disassembler)
```

#### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter10\_1/LLVMBuild.txt

```
subdirectories =
Disassembler
has_disassembler = 1
```

#### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter10\_1/Cpu0InstrInfo.td

```
let isBranch=1, isTerminator=1, isBarrier=1, imm16=0, hasDelaySlot = 1,
    isIndirectBranch = 1 in
class JumpFR<bits<8> op, string instr_asm, RegisterClass RC>:
    FL<op, (outs), (ins RC:$ra),
        !strconcat(instr_asm, "\t$ra"), [(brind RC:$ra)], IIBranch> {
    let rb = 0;
    let imm16 = 0;
//#if CH >= CH10_1 1.5
    let DecoderMethod = "DecodeJumpFR";
//#endif
}
```

```

class JumpLink<bits<8> op, string instr_asm>:
    FJ<op, (outs), (ins calltarget:$target, variable_ops),
        !strconcat(instr_asm, "\t$target"), [(Cpu0JmpLink imm:$target)],
        IIBranch> {
//#if CH >= CH10_1 2
    let DecoderMethod = "DecodeJumpTarget";
//#endif
}

```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter10\_1/Disassembler/CMakeLists.txt

```

add_llvm_library(LLVMCpu0Disassembler
    Cpu0Disassembler.cpp
)

```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter10\_1/Disassembler/LLVMBuild.txt

```

;===== ./lib/Target/Cpu0/Disassembler/LLVMBuild.txt -----*-- Conf -*---;;
;
;                               The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure
;
; This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source
; License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.
;
;=====;
;
; This is an LLVMBuild description file for the components in this subdirectory.
;
; For more information on the LLVMBuild system, please see:
;
;   http://llvm.org/docs/LLVMBuild.html
;
;=====;

[component_0]
type = Library
name = Cpu0Disassembler
parent = Cpu0
required_libraries = MCDisassembler Support Cpu0Info
add_to_library_groups = Cpu0

```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter10\_1/Disassembler/Cpu0Disassembler.cpp

```

//===== Cpu0Disassembler.cpp - Disassembler for Cpu0 -----*-- C++ -*---// 
//
//                               The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure
//
// This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source
// License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.
//
//=====;

```

```
//  
// This file is part of the Cpu0 Disassembler.  
//  
//=====//  
  
#include "Cpu0.h"  
  
#include "Cpu0RegisterInfo.h"  
#include "Cpu0Subtarget.h"  
#include "llvm/MC/MCDisassembler/MCDisassembler.h"  
#include "llvm/MC/MCFixedLenDisassembler.h"  
#include "llvm/MC/MCInst.h"  
#include "llvm/MC/MCSubtargetInfo.h"  
#include "llvm/Support/MathExtras.h"  
#include "llvm/Support/TargetRegistry.h"  
  
using namespace llvm;  
  
#define DEBUG_TYPE "cpu0-disassembler"  
  
typedef MCDisassembler::DecodeStatus DecodeStatus;  
  
namespace {  
  
/// Cpu0DisassemblerBase - a disassembler class for Cpu0.  
class Cpu0DisassemblerBase : public MCDisassembler {  
public:  
    /// Constructor      - Initializes the disassembler.  
    ///  
    Cpu0DisassemblerBase(const MCSubtargetInfo &STI, MCContext &Ctx,  
                         bool bigEndian) :  
        MCDisassembler(STI, Ctx),  
        IsBigEndian(bigEndian) {}  
  
    virtual ~Cpu0DisassemblerBase() {}  
  
protected:  
    bool IsBigEndian;  
};  
  
/// Cpu0Disassembler - a disassembler class for Cpu032.  
class Cpu0Disassembler : public Cpu0DisassemblerBase {  
public:  
    /// Constructor      - Initializes the disassembler.  
    ///  
    Cpu0Disassembler(const MCSubtargetInfo &STI, MCContext &Ctx, bool bigEndian)  
        : Cpu0DisassemblerBase(STI, Ctx, bigEndian) {}  
  
    /// getInstruction - See MCDisassembler.  
    DecodeStatus getInstruction(MCInst &Instr, uint64_t &Size,  
                               ArrayRef<uint8_t> Bytes, uint64_t Address,  
                               raw_ostream &VStream,  
                               raw_ostream &CStream) const override;  
};  
  
} // end anonymous namespace
```

```

// Decoder tables for GPR register
static const unsigned CPUREgsTable[] = {
    Cpu0::ZERO, Cpu0::AT, Cpu0::V0, Cpu0::V1,
    Cpu0::A0, Cpu0::A1, Cpu0::T9, Cpu0::T0,
    Cpu0::T1, Cpu0::S0, Cpu0::S1, Cpu0::GP,
    Cpu0::FP, Cpu0::SP, Cpu0::LR, Cpu0::SW
};

// Decoder tables for co-processor 0 register
static const unsigned C0RegsTable[] = {
    Cpu0::PC, Cpu0::EPC
};

static DecodeStatus DecodeCPUREgsRegisterClass(MCInst &Inst,
                                              unsigned RegNo,
                                              uint64_t Address,
                                              const void *Decoder);
static DecodeStatus DecodeGPROutRegisterClass(MCInst &Inst,
                                              unsigned RegNo,
                                              uint64_t Address,
                                              const void *Decoder);
static DecodeStatus DecodeSRRegisterClass(MCInst &Inst,
                                         unsigned RegNo,
                                         uint64_t Address,
                                         const void *Decoder);
static DecodeStatus DecodeC0RegsRegisterClass(MCInst &Inst,
                                              unsigned RegNo,
                                              uint64_t Address,
                                              const void *Decoder);
static DecodeStatus DecodeBranch16Target(MCInst &Inst,
                                         unsigned Insn,
                                         uint64_t Address,
                                         const void *Decoder);
static DecodeStatus DecodeBranch24Target(MCInst &Inst,
                                         unsigned Insn,
                                         uint64_t Address,
                                         const void *Decoder);
static DecodeStatus DecodeJumpTarget(MCInst &Inst,
                                     unsigned Insn,
                                     uint64_t Address,
                                     const void *Decoder);
static DecodeStatus DecodeJumpFR(MCInst &Inst,
                                 unsigned Insn,
                                 uint64_t Address,
                                 const void *Decoder);

static DecodeStatus DecodeMem(MCInst &Inst,
                             unsigned Insn,
                             uint64_t Address,
                             const void *Decoder);
static DecodeStatus DecodeSimm16(MCInst &Inst,
                                unsigned Insn,
                                uint64_t Address,
                                const void *Decoder);

namespace llvm {
extern Target TheCpu0elTarget, TheCpu0Target, TheCpu064Target,
    TheCpu064elTarget;
}

```

```
}

static MCDisassembler *createCpu0Disassembler(
    const Target &T,
    const MCSubtargetInfo &STI,
    MCContext &Ctx) {
    return new Cpu0Disassembler(STI, Ctx, true);
}

static MCDisassembler *createCpu0elDisassembler(
    const Target &T,
    const MCSubtargetInfo &STI,
    MCContext &Ctx) {
    return new Cpu0Disassembler(STI, Ctx, false);
}

extern "C" void LLVMInitializeCpu0Disassembler() {
    // Register the disassembler.
    TargetRegistry::RegisterMCDisassembler(TheCpu0Target,
                                            createCpu0Disassembler);
    TargetRegistry::RegisterMCDisassembler(TheCpu0elTarget,
                                            createCpu0elDisassembler);
}

#include "Cpu0GenDisassemblerTables.inc"

/// Read four bytes from the ArrayRef and return 32 bit word sorted
/// according to the given endianess
static DecodeStatus readInstruction32(ArrayRef<uint8_t> Bytes, uint64_t Address,
                                      uint64_t &Size, uint32_t &Insn,
                                      bool IsBigEndian) {
    // We want to read exactly 4 Bytes of data.
    if (Bytes.size() < 4) {
        Size = 0;
        return MCDisassembler::Fail;
    }

    if (IsBigEndian) {
        // Encoded as a big-endian 32-bit word in the stream.
        Insn = (Bytes[3] << 0) |
               (Bytes[2] << 8) |
               (Bytes[1] << 16) |
               (Bytes[0] << 24);
    } else {
        // Encoded as a small-endian 32-bit word in the stream.
        Insn = (Bytes[0] << 0) |
               (Bytes[1] << 8) |
               (Bytes[2] << 16) |
               (Bytes[3] << 24);
    }

    return MCDisassembler::Success;
}

DecodeStatus
Cpu0Disassembler::getInstruction(MCInst &Instr, uint64_t &Size,
                                ArrayRef<uint8_t> Bytes,
```

```

        uint64_t Address,
        raw_ostream &VStream,
        raw_ostream &CStream) const {
    uint32_t Insn;

    DecodeStatus Result;

    Result = readInstruction32(Bytes, Address, Size, Insn, IsBigEndian);

    if (Result == MCDisassembler::Fail)
        return MCDisassembler::Fail;

    // Calling the auto-generated decoder function.
    Result = decodeInstruction(DecoderTableCpu032, Instr, Insn, Address,
                               this, STI);
    if (Result != MCDisassembler::Fail) {
        Size = 4;
        return Result;
    }

    return MCDisassembler::Fail;
}

static DecodeStatus DecodeCPURegsRegisterClass(MCInst &Inst,
                                              unsigned RegNo,
                                              uint64_t Address,
                                              const void *Decoder) {
    if (RegNo > 15)
        return MCDisassembler::Fail;

    Inst.addOperand(MCOperand::createReg(CPURegsTable[RegNo]));
    return MCDisassembler::Success;
}

static DecodeStatus DecodeGPROutRegisterClass(MCInst &Inst,
                                             unsigned RegNo,
                                             uint64_t Address,
                                             const void *Decoder) {
    return DecodeCPURegsRegisterClass(Inst, RegNo, Address, Decoder);
}

static DecodeStatus DecodeSRRegisterClass(MCInst &Inst,
                                         unsigned RegNo,
                                         uint64_t Address,
                                         const void *Decoder) {
    return DecodeCPURegsRegisterClass(Inst, RegNo, Address, Decoder);
}

static DecodeStatus DecodeC0RegsRegisterClass(MCInst &Inst,
                                             unsigned RegNo,
                                             uint64_t Address,
                                             const void *Decoder) {
    if (RegNo > 1)
        return MCDisassembler::Fail;

    Inst.addOperand(MCOperand::createReg(C0RegsTable[RegNo]));
    return MCDisassembler::Success;
}

```

```
//@DecodeMem {
static DecodeStatus DecodeMem(MCInst &Inst,
                            unsigned Insn,
                            uint64_t Address,
                            const void *Decoder) {
//@DecodeMem body {
    int Offset = SignExtend32<16>(Insn & 0xffff);
    int Reg = (int)fieldFromInstruction(Insn, 20, 4);
    int Base = (int)fieldFromInstruction(Insn, 16, 4);

    Inst.addOperand(MCOperand::createReg(CPURegsTable[Reg]));
    Inst.addOperand(MCOperand::createReg(CPURegsTable[Base]));
    Inst.addOperand(MCOperand::createImm(Offset));

    return MCDisassembler::Success;
}

static DecodeStatus DecodeBranch16Target(MCInst &Inst,
                                         unsigned Insn,
                                         uint64_t Address,
                                         const void *Decoder) {
    int BranchOffset = fieldFromInstruction(Insn, 0, 16);
    if (BranchOffset > 0xffff)
        BranchOffset = -1*(0x10000 - BranchOffset);
    Inst.addOperand(MCOperand::createImm(BranchOffset));
    return MCDisassembler::Success;
}

/* CBranch instruction define $ra and then imm24; The printOperand() print
operand 1 (operand 0 is $ra and operand 1 is imm24), so we Create register
operand first and create imm24 next, as follows,

// Cpu0InstrInfo.td
class CBranch<bits<8> op, string instr_asm, RegisterClass RC,
              list<Register> UseRegs>:
FJ<op, (outs), (ins RC:$ra, brtarget:$addr),
      !strconcat(instr_asm, "\t$addr"),
      [(brcond RC:$ra, bb:$addr)], IIBranch> {

// Cpu0AsmWriter.inc
void Cpu0InstPrinter::printInstruction(const MCInst *MI, raw_ostream &O) {
...
case 3:
    // CMP, JEQ, JGE, JGT, JLE, JLT, JNE
    printOperand(MI, 1, O);
    break;
*/
static DecodeStatus DecodeBranch24Target(MCInst &Inst,
                                         unsigned Insn,
                                         uint64_t Address,
                                         const void *Decoder) {
    int BranchOffset = fieldFromInstruction(Insn, 0, 24);
    if (BranchOffset > 0xffff)
        BranchOffset = -1*(0x1000000 - BranchOffset);
    Inst.addOperand(MCOperand::createReg(Cpu0::SW));
    Inst.addOperand(MCOperand::createImm(BranchOffset));
    return MCDisassembler::Success;
```

```

}

static DecodeStatus DecodeJumpTarget(MCInst &Inst,
                                    unsigned Insn,
                                    uint64_t Address,
                                    const void *Decoder) {

    unsigned JumpOffset = fieldFromInstruction(Insn, 0, 24);
    Inst.addOperand(MCOperand::createImm(JumpOffset));
    return MCDisassembler::Success;
}

static DecodeStatus DecodeJumpFR(MCInst &Inst,
                                unsigned Insn,
                                uint64_t Address,
                                const void *Decoder) {
    int Reg_a = (int)fieldFromInstruction(Insn, 20, 4);
    Inst.addOperand(MCOperand::createReg(CPURegsTable[Reg_a]));
// exapin in http://jonathan2251.github.io/lbd/llvmstructure.html#jr-note
    if (CPURegsTable[Reg_a] == Cpu0::LR)
        Inst.setOpcode(Cpu0::RET);
    else
        Inst.setOpcode(Cpu0::JR);
    return MCDisassembler::Success;
}

static DecodeStatus DecodeSimm16(MCInst &Inst,
                                unsigned Insn,
                                uint64_t Address,
                                const void *Decoder) {
    Inst.addOperand(MCOperand::createImm(SignExtend32<16>(Insn)));
    return MCDisassembler::Success;
}

```

As above code, it adds directory Disassembler to handle the reverse translation from obj to assembly. So, add Disassembler/Cpu0Disassembler.cpp and modify the CMakeList.txt and LLVMBuild.txt to build directory Disassembler, and enable the disassembler table generated by “has\_disassembler = 1”. Most of code is handled by the table defined in \*.td files. Not every instruction in \*.td can be disassembled without trouble even though they can be translated into assembly and obj successfully. For those cannot be disassembled, LLVM supply the “**let DecoderMethod**” keyword to allow programmers implement their decode function. For example in Cpu0, we define functions DecodeBranch24Target(), DecodeJumpTarget() and DecodeJumpFR() in Cpu0Disassembler.cpp and tell the llvm-tblgen by writing “**let DecoderMethod = ...**” in the corresponding instruction definitions or ISD node of Cpu0InstrInfo.td. LLVM will call these DecodeMethod when user uses Disassembler tools, such as `llvm-objdump -d`.

Finally cpu032II include all cpu032I instruction set and adds some instructions. When `llvm-objdump -d` is invoked, function selectCpu0ArchFeature() as the following will be called through createCpu0MCSubtargetInfo(). The `llvm-objdump` cannot set `cpu` option like `llc -mcpu=cpu032I`, so the variable `CPU` in `selectCpu0ArchFeature()` is empty when invoked by `llvm-objdump -d`. Set `Cpu0ArchFeature` to “+cpu032II” than it can disassemble all instructions (cpu032II include all cpu032I instructions and add some new instructions).

## Ibdex/chapters/Chapter10\_1/MCTargetDesc/Cpu0MCTargetDesc.cpp

```

/// Select the Cpu0 Architecture Feature for the given triple and cpu name.
/// The function will be called at command 'llvm-objdump -d' for Cpu0 elf input.

```

```
static std::string selectCpu0ArchFeature(const Triple &TT, StringRef CPU) {
    std::string Cpu0ArchFeature;
    if (CPU.empty() || CPU == "generic") {
        if (TT.getArch() == Triple::cpu0 || TT.getArch() == Triple::cpu0el) {
            if (CPU.empty() || CPU == "cpu032II") {
                Cpu0ArchFeature = "+cpu032II";
            }
        }  
    }  
    else {  
        if (CPU == "cpu032I") {  
            Cpu0ArchFeature = "+cpu032I";  
        }  
    }  
}  
return Cpu0ArchFeature;  
}
```

Now, run Chapter10\_1/ with command `llvm-objdump -d ch8_1_1.cpu0.o` will get the following result.

```
JonathantekiiMac:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_debug_
build/Debug/bin/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=obj
ch8_1_1.bc -o ch8_1_1.cpu0.o
JonathantekiiMac:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_debug_
build/Debug/bin/llvm-objdump -d ch8_1_1.cpu0.o

ch8_1_1.cpu0.o:      file format ELF32-CPU0

Disassembly of section .text:
_Z13test_controllv:
 0: 09 dd ff d8          addiu $sp, $sp, -40
 4: 09 30 00 00          addiu $3, $zero, 0
 8: 02 3d 00 24          st   $3, 36($sp)
 c: 09 20 00 01          addiu $2, $zero, 1
10: 02 2d 00 20          st   $2, 32($sp)
14: 09 40 00 02          addiu $4, $zero, 2
18: 02 4d 00 1c          st   $4, 28($sp)
  ..
```

## ASSEMBLER

- *AsmParser support*
  - *Code structure explanation*
  - *Code list and some detail functions explanation*
- *Inline assembly*

This chapter include the assembly programming support in Cpu0 backend.

When it comes to assembly language programming, there are two type of writting in C/C++ as follows,

### ordinary assembly

```
asm("ld      $2, 8($sp)");
```

### inline assembly

```
int foo = 10;
const int bar = 15;

__asm__ __volatile__("addu %0,%1,%2"
                     :"=r"(foo) // 5
                     :"r"(foo), "r"(bar)
                     );
```

In llvm, the first is supported by LLVM AsmParser, and the second is inline assembly handler. With AsmParser and inline assembly support in Cpu0 backend, we can hand-code the assembly language in C/C++ file and translate it into obj (elf format).

## 11.1 AsmParser support

This section lists all the AsmParser code for Cpu0 backend with only a few explanation. Please refer here <sup>1</sup> for more AsmParser explanation.

Run Chapter10\_1/ with ch11\_1.cpp will get the following error message.

---

<sup>1</sup> <http://www.embecosm.com/appnotes/ean10/ean10-howto-llvmas-1.0.html>

### Ibdex/input/ch11\_1.cpp

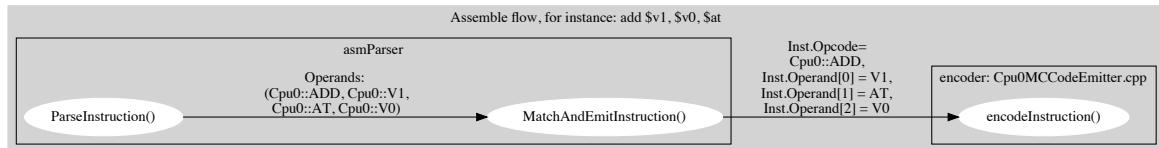
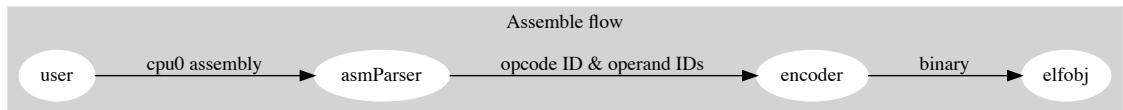
```
asm("ld      $2, 8($sp)");
asm("st      $0, 4($sp)");
asm("addiu $3,      $ZERO, 0");
asm("add $v1, $at, $v0");
asm("sub $3, $2, $3");
asm("mul $2, $1, $3");
asm("div $3, $2");
asm("divu $2, $3");
asm("and $2, $1, $3");
asm("or $3, $1, $2");
asm("xor $1, $2, $3");
asm("mult $4, $3");
asm("multu $3, $2");
asm("mfhi $3");
asm("mflo $2");
asm("mthi $2");
asm("mtlo $2");
asm("sra $2, $2, 2");
asm("rol $2, $1, 3");
asm("ror $3, $3, 4");
asm("shl $2, $2, 2");
asm("shr $2, $3, 5");
asm("cmp $sw, $2, $3");
asm("jeq $sw, 20");
asm("jne $sw, 16");
asm("jlt $sw, -20");
asm("jle $sw, -16");
asm("jgt $sw, -4");
asm("jge $sw, -12");
asm("jsub 0x000010000");
asm("jr $4");
asm("ret $lr");
asm("jalr $t9");
asm("li $3, 0x00700000");
asm("la $3, 0x00800000($6)");
asm("la $3, 0x00900000");
```

```
JonathantekiiMac:input Jonathan$ clang -c ch11_1.cpp -emit-llvm -o
ch11_1.bc
JonathantekiiMac:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_debug_
build/Debug/bin/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=obj ch11_1.bc
-o ch11_1.cpu0.o
LLVM ERROR: Inline asm not supported by this streamer because we don't have
an asm parser for this target
```

Since we havn't implemented Cpu0 assembler, it has the error message as above. The Cpu0 can translate LLVM IR into assembly and obj directly, but it cannot translate hand-code assembly instructions into obj.

### 11.1.1 Code structure explanation

Directory AsmParser handle the assembly to obj translation. The assembling Data Flow Diagram (DFD) as follows,



Given an example of assembly instruction “add \$v1, \$v0, \$at”, llvm AsmParser kernel call backend ParseInstruction() of Cpu0AsmParser.cpp when it parses and recognises that the first token at the beginning of line is identifier. ParseInstruction() parses one assembly instruction, creates Operands and return to llvm AsmParser. Then AsmParser calls backend MatchAndEmitInstruction() to set Opcode and Operands to MCInst, then encoder can encode binary instruction from MCInst with the information come from Cpu0InstrInfo.td which includes binary value for Opcode ID and Operand IDs of the instruction.

List the key functions and data structure of MatchAndEmitInstruction() and encodeInstruction(), explaining in comments which begin with ///.

#### Ilvm/cmake\_debug\_build/lib/Target/Cpu0/Cpu0GenAsmMatcher.inc

```

enum InstructionConversionKind {
    Convert_Reg1_0_Reg1_1_Reg1_2,
    Convert_Reg1_0_Reg1_1_Imm1_2,
    ...
    CVT_NUM_SIGNATURES
};

} // end anonymous namespace

struct MatchEntry {
    uint16_t Mnemonic;
    uint16_t Opcode;
    uint8_t ConvertFn;
    uint32_t RequiredFeatures;
    uint8_t Classes[3];
    StringRef getMnemonic() const {
        return StringRef(MnemonicTable + Mnemonic + 1,
                         MnemonicTable[Mnemonic]);
    }
};

static const MatchEntry MatchTable0[] = {
    { 0 /* add */, Cpu0::ADD, Convert_Reg1_0_Reg1_1_Reg1_2, 0, { MCK_CPUREgs, MCK_
    ↪CPUREgs, MCK_CPUREgs }, },
}

```

```

{ 4 /* addiu */, Cpu0::ADDiu, Convert_Regl_0_Regl_1_Imm1_2, 0, { MCK_CPURegs,
    ↪MCK_CPURegs, MCK_Imm }, },
    ...
};

unsigned Cpu0AsmParser::
MatchInstructionImpl(const OperandVector &Operands,
                    MCInst &Inst, uint64_t &ErrorInfo,
                    bool matchingInlineAsm, unsigned VariantID) {
    ...
    // Find the appropriate table for this asm variant.
    const MatchEntry *Start, *End;
    switch (VariantID) {
        default: llvm_unreachable("invalid variant!");
        case 0: Start = std::begin(MatchTable0); End = std::end(MatchTable0); break;
    }
    // Search the table.
    auto MnemonicRange = std::equal_range(Start, End, Mnemonic, LessOpcode());
    ...
    for (const MatchEntry *it = MnemonicRange.first, *ie = MnemonicRange.second;
          it != ie; ++it) {
        ...
        // We have selected a definite instruction, convert the parsed
        // operands into the appropriate MCInst.

        /// For instance ADD , V1, AT, V0
        /// MnemonicRange.first = &MatchTable0[0]
        /// MnemonicRange.second = &MatchTable0[1]
        /// it.ConvertFn = Convert_Regl_0_Regl_1_Regl_2

        convertToMCInst(it->ConvertFn, Inst, it->Opcode, Operands);
        ...
    }
    ...
}

static const uint8_t ConversionTable[CVT_NUM_SIGNATURES][9] = {
    // Convert_Regl_0_Regl_1_Regl_2
    { CVT_95_Reg, 1, CVT_95_Reg, 2, CVT_95_Reg, 3, CVT_Done },
    // Convert_Regl_0_Regl_1_Imm1_2
    { CVT_95_Reg, 1, CVT_95_Reg, 2, CVT_95_addImmOperands, 3, CVT_Done },
    ...
};

/// When kind = Convert_Regl_0_Regl_1_Regl_2, ConversionTable[Kind] is equal to_
// ↪CVT_95_Reg
/// For Operands[1], Operands[2], Operands[3] do the following:
/// static_cast<Cpu0Operand&>(*Operands[OpIdx]).addRegOperands(Inst, 1);
/// Since p = 0, 2, 4, then OpIdx = 1, 2, 3 when OpIdx=>(p+1).
/// Since, Operands[1] = V1, Operands[2] = AT, Operands[3] = V0,
/// for "ADD , V1, AT, V0" which created by ParseInstruction().
/// Inst.Opcode = ADD, Inst.Operand[0] = V1, Inst.Operand[1] = AT,
/// Inst.Operand[2] = V0.
void Cpu0AsmParser::
convertToMCInst(unsigned Kind, MCInst &Inst, unsigned Opcode,
               const OperandVector &Operands) {
    assert(Kind < CVT_NUM_SIGNATURES && "Invalid signature!");
    const uint8_t *Converter = ConversionTable[Kind];
}

```

```

unsigned OpIdx;
Inst.setOpcode(Opcode);
for (const uint8_t *p = Converter; *p; p+= 2) {
    OpIdx = *(p + 1);
    switch (*p) {
        default: llvm_unreachable("invalid conversion entry!");
        case CVT_Reg:
            static_cast<Cpu0Operand&>(*Operands[OpIdx]).addRegOperands(Inst, 1);
            break;
        ...
    }
}
}

```

**Ibdex/chapters/Chapter11\_1/AsmParser/Cpu0AsmParser.cpp**

```

/// For "ADD , V1, AT, V0", ParseInstruction() set Operands[1].Reg.RegNum = V1,
/// Operands[2].Reg.RegNum = AT, ..., by Cpu0Operand::CreateReg(RegNo, S,
/// Parser.getTok().getLoc()) in calling ParseOperand().
/// So, after (*Operands[1..3]).addRegOperands(Inst, 1),
/// Inst.Opcode = ADD, Inst.Operand[0] = V1, Inst.Operand[1] = AT,
/// Inst.Operand[2] = V0.
class Cpu0Operand : public MCParsedAsmOperand {
    ...
    void addRegOperands(MCInst &Inst, unsigned N) const {
        assert(N == 1 && "Invalid number of operands!");
        Inst.addOperand(MCOperand::createReg(getReg()));
    }
    ...
    unsigned getReg() const override {
        assert((Kind == k_Register) && "Invalid access!");
        return Reg.RegNum;
    }
    ...
}

```

**Ibdex/chapters/Chapter11\_1/MCTargetDesc/Cpu0MCCodeEmitter.cpp**

```

void Cpu0MCCodeEmitter::
encodeInstruction(const MCInst &MI, raw_ostream &OS,
                  SmallVectorImpl<MCFixup> &Fixups,
                  const MCSubtargetInfo &STI) const
{
    uint32_t Binary = getBinaryCodeForInstr(MI, Fixups, STI);
    ...
    EmitInstruction(Binary, Size, OS);
}

```

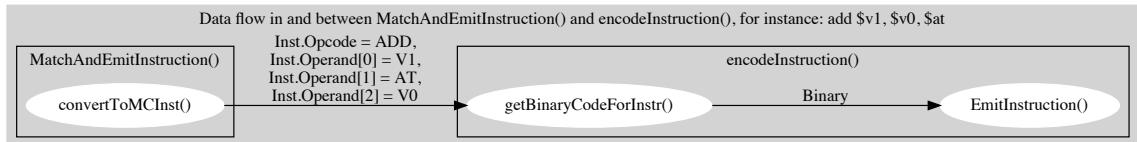
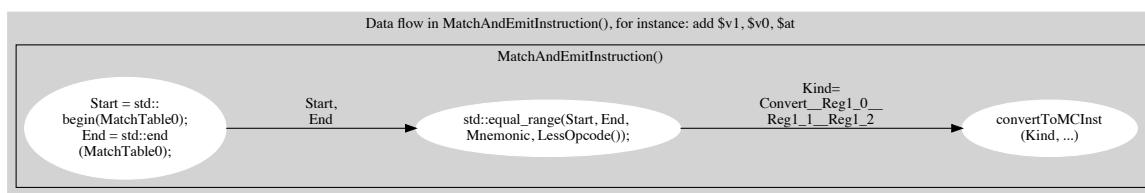
### Ilvm/cmake\_debug\_build/lib/Target/Cpu0/Cpu0GenMCCodeEmitter.inc

```

uint64_t Cpu0MCCodeEmitter::getBinaryCodeForInstr(const MCInst &MI,
    SmallVectorImpl<MCFixup> &Fixups,
    const MCSubtargetInfo &STI) const {
    static const uint64_t InstBits[] = {
        ...
        UINT64_C(318767104),           // ADD /// 318767104=0x13000000
        ...
    };
    ...

    const unsigned opcode = MI.getOpcode();
    ...
    switch (opcode) {
        case Cpu0::ADD:
        ...
        // op: ra
        op = getMachineOpValue(MI, MI.getOperand(0), Fixups, STI);
        Value |= (op & UINT64_C(15)) << 20;
        // op: rb
        op = getMachineOpValue(MI, MI.getOperand(1), Fixups, STI);
        Value |= (op & UINT64_C(15)) << 16;
        // op: rc
        op = getMachineOpValue(MI, MI.getOperand(2), Fixups, STI);
        Value |= (op & UINT64_C(15)) << 12;
        break;
    }
    ...
}
return Value;
}

```



MatchTable0 include all the possible combinations of opcode and operands type. Even the assembly instruction of user input may pass Cpu0AsmParser in syntax check, the MatchAndEmitInstruction() still can be fail. For example, instruction “asm(“move \$3, \$2);” can pass but “asm(“move \$3, \$2, \$1”);” will fail.

### 11.1.2 Code list and some detail functions explanation

The Chapter11\_1/ include AsmParser implementation as follows,

#### [Index/chapters/Chapter11\\_1/AsmParser/Cpu0AsmParser.cpp](#)

```
//===== Cpu0AsmParser.cpp - Parse Cpu0 assembly to MCInst instructions =====//
//
//          The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure
//
// This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source
// License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.
//
//=====

#include "Cpu0.h"
#if CH >= CH11_1

#include "MCTargetDesc/Cpu0MCExpr.h"
#include "MCTargetDesc/Cpu0MCTargetDesc.h"
#include "Cpu0RegisterInfo.h"
#include "llvm/ADT/APInt.h"
#include "llvm/ADT/StringSwitch.h"
#include "llvm/MC/MCContext.h"
#include "llvm/MC/MCExpr.h"
#include "llvm/MC/MCInst.h"
#include "llvm/MC/MCInstBuilder.h"
#include "llvm/MC/MCParser/MCAsmLexer.h"
#include "llvm/MC/MCParser/MCParsedAsmOperand.h"
#include "llvm/MC/MCParser/MCTargetAsmParser.h"
#include "llvm/MC/MCStreamer.h"
#include "llvm/MC/MCSubtargetInfo.h"
#include "llvm/MC/MCSymbol.h"
#include "llvm/MC/MCParser/MCAsmLexer.h"
#include "llvm/MC/MCParser/MCParsedAsmOperand.h"
#include "llvm/MC/MCValue.h"
#include "llvm/Support/Debug.h"
#include "llvm/Support/MathExtras.h"
#include "llvm/Support/TargetRegistry.h"

using namespace llvm;

#define DEBUG_TYPE "cpu0-assembler"

namespace {
class Cpu0AssemblerOptions {
public:
    Cpu0AssemblerOptions():
        reorder(true), macro(true) {}

    bool isReorder() {return reorder;}
    void setReorder() {reorder = true;}
    void setNoreorder() {reorder = false;}

    bool isMacro() {return macro;}
    void setMacro() {macro = true;}
}
```

```
void setNomacro() {macro = false;}

private:
    bool reorder;
    bool macro;
};

namespace {
class Cpu0AsmParser : public MCTargetAsmParser {
    MCAsmParser &Parser;
    Cpu0AssemblerOptions Options;

#define GET_ASSEMBLER_HEADER
#include "Cpu0GenAsmMatcher.inc"

    bool MatchAndEmitInstruction(SMLoc IDLoc, unsigned &Opcode,
                                OperandVector &Operands, MCStreamer &Out,
                                uint64_t &ErrorInfo,
                                bool MatchingInlineAsm) override;

    bool ParseRegister(unsigned &RegNo, SMLoc &StartLoc, SMLoc &EndLoc) override;

    bool ParseInstruction(ParseInstructionInfo &Info, StringRef Name,
                          SMLoc NameLoc, OperandVector &Operands) override;

    bool parseMathOperation(StringRef Name, SMLoc NameLoc,
                           OperandVector &Operands);

    bool ParseDirective(AsmToken DirectiveID) override;

    Cpu0AsmParser::OperandMatchResultTy parseMemOperand(OperandVector &);

    bool ParseOperand(OperandVector &Operands, StringRef Mnemonic);

    int tryParseRegister(StringRef Mnemonic);

    bool tryParseRegisterOperand(OperandVector &Operands,
                               StringRef Mnemonic);

    bool needsExpansion(MCInst &Inst);

    void expandInstruction(MCInst &Inst, SMLoc IDLoc,
                          SmallVectorImpl<MCInst> &Instructions);
    void expandLoadImm(MCInst &Inst, SMLoc IDLoc,
                       SmallVectorImpl<MCInst> &Instructions);
    void expandLoadAddressImm(MCInst &Inst, SMLoc IDLoc,
                             SmallVectorImpl<MCInst> &Instructions);
    void expandLoadAddressReg(MCInst &Inst, SMLoc IDLoc,
                             SmallVectorImpl<MCInst> &Instructions);
    bool reportParseError(StringRef ErrorMsg);

    bool parseMemOffset(const MCEexpr *&Res);
    bool parseRelocOperand(const MCEexpr *&Res);

    const MCEexpr *evaluateRelocExpr(const MCEexpr *Expr, StringRef RelocStr);
}
```

```

    bool parseDirectiveSet();

    bool parseSetAtDirective();
    bool parseSetNoAtDirective();
    bool parseSetMacroDirective();
    bool parseSetNoMacroDirective();
    bool parseSetReorderDirective();
    bool parseSetNoReorderDirective();

    int matchRegisterName(StringRef Symbol);

    int matchRegisterByNumber(unsigned RegNum, StringRef Mnemonic);

    unsigned getReg(int RC,int RegNo);

public:
    Cpu0AsmParser(const MCSubtargetInfo &sti, MCAsmParser &parser,
                  const MCInstrInfo &MII, const MCTargetOptions &Options)
        : MCTargetAsmParser(Options, sti), Parser(parser) {
        // Initialize the set of available features.
        setAvailableFeatures(ComputeAvailableFeatures(getSTI().getFeatureBits()));
    }

    MCAsmParser &getParser() const { return Parser; }
    MCAsmLexer &getLexer() const { return Parser.getLexer(); }

};

}

namespace {

/// Cpu0Operand - Instances of this class represent a parsed Cpu0 machine
/// instruction.
class Cpu0Operand : public MCParsedAsmOperand {

    enum KindTy {
        k_Immediate,
        k_Memory,
        k_Register,
        k_Token
    } Kind;

public:
    Cpu0Operand(KindTy K) : MCParsedAsmOperand(), Kind(K) {}

    struct Token {
        const char *Data;
        unsigned Length;
    };
    struct PhysRegOp {
        unsigned RegNum; // Register Number
    };
    struct ImmOp {
        const MCExpr *Val;
    };
    struct MemOp {
        unsigned Base;
        const MCExpr *Off;
    };
}

```

```

};

union {
    struct Token Tok;
    struct PhysRegOp Reg;
    struct ImmOp Imm;
    struct MemOp Mem;
};

SMLoc StartLoc, EndLoc;

public:
    void addRegOperands(MCInst &Inst, unsigned N) const {
        assert(N == 1 && "Invalid number of operands!");
        Inst.addOperand(MCOperand::createReg(getReg()));
    }

    void addExpr(MCInst &Inst, const MCExpr *Expr) const{
        // Add as immediate when possible. Null MCExpr = 0.
        if (Expr == 0)
            Inst.addOperand(MCOperand::createImm(0));
        else if (const MCConstantExpr *CE = dyn_cast<MCConstantExpr>(Expr))
            Inst.addOperand(MCOperand::createImm(CE->getValue()));
        else
            Inst.addOperand(MCOperand::createExpr(Expr));
    }

    void addImmOperands(MCInst &Inst, unsigned N) const {
        assert(N == 1 && "Invalid number of operands!");
        const MCExpr *Expr = getImm();
        addExpr(Inst, Expr);
    }

    void addMemOperands(MCInst &Inst, unsigned N) const {
        assert(N == 2 && "Invalid number of operands!");

        Inst.addOperand(MCOperand::createReg(getMemBase()));

        const MCExpr *Expr = getMemOff();
        addExpr(Inst, Expr);
    }

    bool isReg() const override { return Kind == k_Register; }
    bool isImm() const override { return Kind == k_Immediate; }
    bool isToken() const override { return Kind == k_Token; }
    bool isMem() const override { return Kind == k_Memory; }

    StringRef getToken() const {
        assert(Kind == k_Token && "Invalid access!");
        return StringRef(Tok.Data, Tok.Length);
    }

    unsigned getReg() const override {
        assert((Kind == k_Register) && "Invalid access!");
        return Reg.RegNum;
    }

    const MCExpr *getImm() const {

```

```

    assert((Kind == k_Immediate) && "Invalid access!");
    return Imm.Val;
}

unsigned getMemBase() const {
    assert((Kind == k_Memory) && "Invalid access!");
    return Mem.Base;
}

const MCExpr *getMemOff() const {
    assert((Kind == k_Memory) && "Invalid access!");
    return Mem.Off;
}

static std::unique_ptr<Cpu0Operand> CreateToken(StringRef Str, SMLoc S) {
    auto Op = make_unique<Cpu0Operand>(k_Token);
    Op->Tok.Data = Str.data();
    Op->Tok.Length = Str.size();
    Op->StartLoc = S;
    Op->EndLoc = S;
    return Op;
}

/// Internal constructor for register kinds
static std::unique_ptr<Cpu0Operand> CreateReg(unsigned RegNum, SMLoc S,
                                              SMLoc E) {
    auto Op = make_unique<Cpu0Operand>(k_Register);
    Op->Reg.RegNum = RegNum;
    Op->StartLoc = S;
    Op->EndLoc = E;
    return Op;
}

static std::unique_ptr<Cpu0Operand> CreateImm(const MCExpr *Val, SMLoc S, SMLoc E) {
    auto Op = make_unique<Cpu0Operand>(k_Immediate);
    Op->Imm.Val = Val;
    Op->StartLoc = S;
    Op->EndLoc = E;
    return Op;
}

static std::unique_ptr<Cpu0Operand> CreateMem(unsigned Base, const MCExpr *Off,
                                              SMLoc S, SMLoc E) {
    auto Op = make_unique<Cpu0Operand>(k_Memory);
    Op->Mem.Base = Base;
    Op->Mem.Off = Off;
    Op->StartLoc = S;
    Op->EndLoc = E;
    return Op;
}

/// getStartLoc - Get the location of the first token of this operand.
SMLoc getStartLoc() const override { return StartLoc; }
/// getEndLoc - Get the location of the last token of this operand.
SMLoc getEndLoc() const override { return EndLoc; }

void print(raw_ostream &OS) const override {
    switch (Kind) {

```

```

        case k_Immediate:
            OS << "Imm<";
            OS << *Imm.Val;
            OS << ">";
            break;
        case k_Memory:
            OS << "Mem<";
            OS << Mem.Base;
            OS << ", ";
            OS << *Mem.Off;
            OS << ">";
            break;
        case k_Register:
            OS << "Register<" << Reg.RegNum << ">";
            break;
        case k_Token:
            OS << Tok.Data;
            break;
    }
}
};

void printCpu0Operands(OperandVector &Operands) {
    for (size_t i = 0; i < Operands.size(); i++) {
        Cpu0Operand* op = static_cast<Cpu0Operand*>(&*Operands[i]);
        assert(op != nullptr);
        DEBUG(dbgs() << "<" << *op << ">");
    }
    DEBUG(dbgs() << "\n");
}

//@1 {
bool Cpu0AsmParser::needsExpansion(MCInst &Inst) {

    switch(Inst.getOpcode()) {
        case Cpu0::LoadImm32Reg:
        case Cpu0::LoadAddr32Imm:
        case Cpu0::LoadAddr32Reg:
            return true;
        default:
            return false;
    }
}

void Cpu0AsmParser::expandInstruction(MCInst &Inst, SMLoc IDLoc,
                                      SmallVectorImpl<MCInst> &Instructions) {
    switch(Inst.getOpcode()) {
        case Cpu0::LoadImm32Reg:
            return expandLoadImm(Inst, IDLoc, Instructions);
        case Cpu0::LoadAddr32Imm:
            return expandLoadAddressImm(Inst, IDLoc, Instructions);
        case Cpu0::LoadAddr32Reg:
            return expandLoadAddressReg(Inst, IDLoc, Instructions);
    }
}

//@1 }

```

```

void Cpu0AsmParser::expandLoadImm(MCInst &Inst, SMLoc IDLoc,
                                  SmallVectorImpl<MCInst> &Instructions) {
    MCInst tmpInst;
    const MCOperand &ImmOp = Inst.getOperand(1);
    assert(ImmOp.isImm() && "expected immediate operand kind");
    const MCOperand &RegOp = Inst.getOperand(0);
    assert(RegOp.isReg() && "expected register operand kind");

    int ImmValue = ImmOp.getImm();
    tmpInst.setLoc(IDLoc);
    if (0 <= ImmValue && ImmValue <= 65535) {
        // for 0 <= j <= 65535.
        // li d,j => ori d,$zero,j
        tmpInst.setOpcode(Cpu0::ORI);
        tmpInst.addOperand(MCOperand::createReg(RegOp.getReg()));
        tmpInst.addOperand(
            MCOperand::createReg(Cpu0::ZERO));
        tmpInst.addOperand(MCOperand::createImm(ImmValue));
        Instructions.push_back(tmpInst);
    } else if (ImmValue < 0 && ImmValue >= -32768) {
        // for -32768 <= j < 0.
        // li d,j => addiu d,$zero,j
        tmpInst.setOpcode(Cpu0::ADDIU); //TODO: no ADDIU64 in td files?
        tmpInst.addOperand(MCOperand::createReg(RegOp.getReg()));
        tmpInst.addOperand(
            MCOperand::createReg(Cpu0::ZERO));
        tmpInst.addOperand(MCOperand::createImm(ImmValue));
        Instructions.push_back(tmpInst);
    } else {
        // for any other value of j that is representable as a 32-bit integer.
        // li d,j => lui d,hi16(j)
        //          ori d,d,lo16(j)
        tmpInst.setOpcode(Cpu0::LUI);
        tmpInst.addOperand(MCOperand::createReg(RegOp.getReg()));
        tmpInst.addOperand(MCOperand::createImm((ImmValue & 0xffff0000) >> 16));
        Instructions.push_back(tmpInst);
        tmpInst.clear();
        tmpInst.setOpcode(Cpu0::ORI);
        tmpInst.addOperand(MCOperand::createReg(RegOp.getReg()));
        tmpInst.addOperand(MCOperand::createReg(RegOp.getReg()));
        tmpInst.addOperand(MCOperand::createImm(ImmValue & 0xffff));
        tmpInst.setLoc(IDLoc);
        Instructions.push_back(tmpInst);
    }
}

void Cpu0AsmParser::expandLoadAddressReg(MCInst &Inst, SMLoc IDLoc,
                                         SmallVectorImpl<MCInst> &Instructions) {
    MCInst tmpInst;
    const MCOperand &ImmOp = Inst.getOperand(2);
    assert(ImmOp.isImm() && "expected immediate operand kind");
    const MCOperand &SrcRegOp = Inst.getOperand(1);
    assert(SrcRegOp.isReg() && "expected register operand kind");
    const MCOperand &DstRegOp = Inst.getOperand(0);
    assert(DstRegOp.isReg() && "expected register operand kind");
    int ImmValue = ImmOp.getImm();
    if (-32768 <= ImmValue && ImmValue <= 32767) {
        // for -32768 <= j < 32767.
    }
}

```

```

//la d,j(s) => addiu d,s,j
tmpInst.setOpcode(Cpu0::ADDiu); //TODO: no ADDiu64 in td files?
tmpInst.addOperand(MCOperand::createReg(DstRegOp.getReg()));
tmpInst.addOperand(MCOperand::createReg(SrcRegOp.getReg()));
tmpInst.addOperand(MCOperand::createImm(ImmValue));
Instructions.push_back(tmpInst);
} else {
    // for any other value of j that is representable as a 32-bit integer.
    // la d,j(s) => lui d,hi16(j)
    //           ori d,d,lo16(j)
    //           add d,d,s
    tmpInst.setOpcode(Cpu0::LUI);
    tmpInst.addOperand(MCOperand::createReg(DstRegOp.getReg()));
    tmpInst.addOperand(MCOperand::createImm((ImmValue & 0xffff0000) >> 16));
    Instructions.push_back(tmpInst);
    tmpInst.clear();
    tmpInst.setOpcode(Cpu0::ORI);
    tmpInst.addOperand(MCOperand::createReg(DstRegOp.getReg()));
    tmpInst.addOperand(MCOperand::createReg(DstRegOp.getReg()));
    tmpInst.addOperand(MCOperand::createImm(ImmValue & 0xffff));
    Instructions.push_back(tmpInst);
    tmpInst.clear();
    tmpInst.setOpcode(Cpu0::ADD);
    tmpInst.addOperand(MCOperand::createReg(DstRegOp.getReg()));
    tmpInst.addOperand(MCOperand::createReg(DstRegOp.getReg()));
    tmpInst.addOperand(MCOperand::createReg(SrcRegOp.getReg()));
    Instructions.push_back(tmpInst);
}
}

void Cpu0AsmParser::expandLoadAddressImm(MCInst &Inst, SMLoc IDLoc,
                                         SmallVectorImpl<MCInst> &Instructions) {
    MCInst tmpInst;
    const MCOperand &ImmOp = Inst.getOperand(1);
    assert(ImmOp.isImm() && "expected immediate operand kind");
    const MCOperand &RegOp = Inst.getOperand(0);
    assert(RegOp.isReg() && "expected register operand kind");
    int ImmValue = ImmOp.getImm();
    if (-32768 <= ImmValue && ImmValue <= 32767) {
        // for -32768 <= j < 32767.
        //la d,j => addiu d,$zero,j
        tmpInst.setOpcode(Cpu0::ADDiu);
        tmpInst.addOperand(MCOperand::createReg(RegOp.getReg()));
        tmpInst.addOperand(
            MCOperand::createReg(Cpu0::ZERO));
        tmpInst.addOperand(MCOperand::createImm(ImmValue));
        Instructions.push_back(tmpInst);
    } else {
        // for any other value of j that is representable as a 32-bit integer.
        // la d,j => lui d,hi16(j)
        //           ori d,d,lo16(j)
        tmpInst.setOpcode(Cpu0::LUI);
        tmpInst.addOperand(MCOperand::createReg(RegOp.getReg()));
        tmpInst.addOperand(MCOperand::createImm((ImmValue & 0xffff0000) >> 16));
        Instructions.push_back(tmpInst);
        tmpInst.clear();
        tmpInst.setOpcode(Cpu0::ORI);
        tmpInst.addOperand(MCOperand::createReg(RegOp.getReg()));
    }
}

```

```

        tmpInst.addOperand(MCOperand::createReg(RegOp.getReg())));
        tmpInst.addOperand(MCOperand::createImm(ImmValue & 0xffff));
        Instructions.push_back(tmpInst);
    }
}

//@2 {
bool Cpu0AsmParser::MatchAndEmitInstruction(SMLoc IDLoc, unsigned &Opcode,
                                             OperandVector &Operands,
                                             MCStreamer &Out,
                                             uint64_t &ErrorInfo,
                                             bool MatchingInlineAsm) {
    printCpu0Operands(Operands);
    MCInst Inst;
    unsigned MatchResult = MatchInstructionImpl(Operands, Inst, ErrorInfo,
                                                MatchingInlineAsm);
    switch (MatchResult) {
    default: break;
    case Match_Success: {
        if (needsExpansion(Inst)) {
            SmallVector<MCInst, 4> Instructions;
            expandInstruction(Inst, IDLoc, Instructions);
            for(unsigned i =0; i < Instructions.size(); i++) {
                Out.EmitInstruction(Instructions[i], getSTI());
            }
        } else {
            Inst.setLoc(IDLoc);
            Out.EmitInstruction(Inst, getSTI());
        }
        return false;
    }
}
//@2 }
case Match_MissingFeature:
    Error(IDLoc, "instruction requires a CPU feature not currently enabled");
    return true;
case Match_InvalidOperand: {
    SMLoc ErrorLoc = IDLoc;
    if (ErrorInfo != ~0U) {
        if (ErrorInfo >= Operands.size())
            return Error(IDLoc, "too few operands for instruction");

        ErrorLoc = ((Cpu0Operand &)*Operands[ErrorInfo]).getStartLoc();
        if (ErrorLoc == SMLoc()) ErrorLoc = IDLoc;
    }

    return Error(ErrorLoc, "invalid operand for instruction");
}
case Match_MnemonicFail:
    return Error(IDLoc, "invalid instruction");
}
return true;
}

int Cpu0AsmParser::matchRegisterName(StringRef Name) {

    int CC;
    CC = StringSwitch<unsigned>(Name)
        .Case("zero", Cpu0::ZERO)

```

```
.Case("at",    Cpu0::AT)
.Case("v0",    Cpu0::V0)
.Case("v1",    Cpu0::V1)
.Case("a0",    Cpu0::A0)
.Case("a1",    Cpu0::A1)
.Case("t9",    Cpu0::T9)
.Case("t0",    Cpu0::T0)
.Case("t1",    Cpu0::T1)
.Case("s0",    Cpu0::S0)
.Case("s1",    Cpu0::S1)
.Case("sw",    Cpu0::SW)
.Case("gp",    Cpu0::GP)
.Case("fp",    Cpu0::FP)
.Case("sp",    Cpu0::SP)
.Case("lr",    Cpu0::LR)
.Case("pc",    Cpu0::PC)
.Case("hi",    Cpu0::HI)
.Case("lo",    Cpu0::LO)
.Case("epc",   Cpu0::EPC)
.Default(-1);

if (CC != -1)
    return CC;

return -1;
}

unsigned Cpu0AsmParser::getReg(int RC,int RegNo) {
    return *(getContext().getRegisterInfo()->getRegClass(RC).begin() + RegNo);
}

int Cpu0AsmParser::matchRegisterByNumber(unsigned RegNum, StringRef Mnemonic) {
    if (RegNum > 15)
        return -1;

    return getReg(Cpu0::CPUREgsRegClassID, RegNum);
}

int Cpu0AsmParser::tryParseRegister(StringRef Mnemonic) {
    const AsmToken &Tok = Parser.getTok();
    int RegNum = -1;

    if (Tok.is(AsmToken::Identifier)) {
        std::string lowerCase = Tok.getString().lower();
        RegNum = matchRegisterName(lowerCase);
    } else if (Tok.is(AsmToken::Integer))
        RegNum = matchRegisterByNumber(static_cast<unsigned>(Tok.getIntVal()),
                                       Mnemonic.lower());
    else
        return RegNum; //error
    return RegNum;
}

bool Cpu0AsmParser::
tryParseRegisterOperand(OperandVector &Operands,
                      StringRef Mnemonic){

    SMLoc S = Parser.getTok().getLoc();
```

```

int RegNo = -1;

RegNo = tryParseRegister(Mnemonic);
if (RegNo == -1)
    return true;

Operands.push_back(Cpu0Operand::CreateReg(RegNo, S,
    Parser.getTok().getLoc()));
Parser.Lex(); // Eat register token.
return false;
}

bool Cpu0AsmParser::ParseOperand(OperandVector &Operands,
                               StringRef Mnemonic) {
DEBUG(dbgs() << "ParseOperand\n");
// Check if the current operand has a custom associated parser, if so, try to
// custom parse the operand, or fallback to the general approach.
OperandMatchResultTy ResTy = MatchOperandParserImpl(Operands, Mnemonic);
if (ResTy == MatchOperand_Success)
    return false;
// If there wasn't a custom match, try the generic matcher below. Otherwise,
// there was a match, but an error occurred, in which case, just return that
// the operand parsing failed.
if (ResTy == MatchOperand_ParseFail)
    return true;

DEBUG(dbgs() << "... Generic Parser\n");

switch (getLexer().getKind()) {
default:
    Error(Parser.getTok().getLoc(), "unexpected token in operand");
    return true;
case AsmToken::Dollar: {
    // parse register
    SMLoc S = Parser.getTok().getLoc();
    Parser.Lex(); // Eat dollar token.
    // parse register operand
    if (!tryParseRegisterOperand(Operands, Mnemonic)) {
        if (getLexer().is(AsmToken::LParen)) {
            // check if it is indexed addressing operand
            Operands.push_back(Cpu0Operand::CreateToken("(", S));
            Parser.Lex(); // eat parenthesis
            if (getLexer().isNot(AsmToken::Dollar))
                return true;

            Parser.Lex(); // eat dollar
            if (tryParseRegisterOperand(Operands, Mnemonic))
                return true;

            if (!getLexer().is(AsmToken::RParen))
                return true;
        }

        S = Parser.getTok().getLoc();
        Operands.push_back(Cpu0Operand::CreateToken(")", S));
        Parser.Lex();
    }
    return false;
}
}

```

```

// maybe it is a symbol reference
StringRef Identifier;
if (Parser.parseIdentifier(Identifier))
    return true;

SMLoc E = SMLoc::getFromPointer(Parser.getTok().getLoc().getPointer() - 1);

MCSymbol *Sym = getContext().getOrCreateSymbol("$" + Identifier);

// Otherwise create a symbol ref.
const MCExpr *Res = MCSymbolRefExpr::create(Sym, MCSymbolRefExpr::VK_None,
                                             getContext());

Operands.push_back(Cpu0Operand::CreateImm(Res, S, E));
return false;
}
case AsmToken::Identifier:
case AsmToken::LParen:
case AsmToken::Minus:
case AsmToken::Plus:
case AsmToken::Integer:
case AsmToken::String: {
    // quoted label names
    const MCExpr *IdVal;
    SMLoc S = Parser.getTok().getLoc();
    if (getParser().parseExpression(IdVal))
        return true;
    SMLoc E = SMLoc::getFromPointer(Parser.getTok().getLoc().getPointer() - 1);
    Operands.push_back(Cpu0Operand::CreateImm(IdVal, S, E));
    return false;
}
case AsmToken::Percent: {
    // it is a symbol reference or constant expression
    const MCExpr *IdVal;
    SMLoc S = Parser.getTok().getLoc(); // start location of the operand
    if (parseRelocOperand(IdVal))
        return true;

    SMLoc E = SMLoc::getFromPointer(Parser.getTok().getLoc().getPointer() - 1);

    Operands.push_back(Cpu0Operand::CreateImm(IdVal, S, E));
    return false;
} // case AsmToken::Percent
} // switch(getLexer().getKind())
return true;
}

const MCExpr *Cpu0AsmParser::evaluateRelocExpr(const MCExpr *Expr,
                                                StringRef RelocStr) {
    Cpu0MCExpr::Cpu0ExprKind Kind =
        StringSwitch<Cpu0MCExpr::Cpu0ExprKind>(RelocStr)
            .Case("call16", Cpu0MCExpr::CEK_GOT_CALL)
            .Case("call_hi", Cpu0MCExpr::CEK_CALL_HI16)
            .Case("call_lo", Cpu0MCExpr::CEK_CALL_LO16)
            .Case("dtp_hi", Cpu0MCExpr::CEK_DTP_HI)
            .Case("dtp_lo", Cpu0MCExpr::CEK_DTP_LO)
            .Case("got", Cpu0MCExpr::CEK_GOT)
            .Case("got_hi", Cpu0MCExpr::CEK_GOT_HI16)
}

```

```

.Case("got_lo", Cpu0MCE Expr::CEK_GOT_LO16)
.Case("gottprel", Cpu0MCE Expr::CEK_GOTTPREL)
.Case("gp_rel", Cpu0MCE Expr::CEK_GPREL)
.Case("hi", Cpu0MCE Expr::CEK_ABS_HI)
.Case("lo", Cpu0MCE Expr::CEK_ABS_LO)
.Case("tlsgd", Cpu0MCE Expr::CEK_TLSDG)
.Case("tlsldm", Cpu0MCE Expr::CEK_TLSLDM)
.Case("tp_hi", Cpu0MCE Expr::CEK_TP_HI)
.Case("tp_lo", Cpu0MCE Expr::CEK_TP_LO)
.Default(Cpu0MCE Expr::CEK_None);

assert(Kind != Cpu0MCE Expr::CEK_None);
return Cpu0MCE Expr::create(Kind, Expr, getContext());
}

bool Cpu0AsmParser::parseRelocOperand(const MCE Expr *&Res) {
    Parser.Lex(); // eat % token
    const AsmToken &Tok = Parser.getTok(); // get next token, operation
    if (Tok.isNot(AsmToken::Identifier))
        return true;

    std::string Str = Tok.getIdentifier().str();

    Parser.Lex(); // eat identifier
    // now make expression from the rest of the operand
    const MCE Expr *IdVal;
    SMLoc EndLoc;

    if (getLexer().getKind() == AsmToken::LParen) {
        while (1) {
            Parser.Lex(); // eat '(' token
            if (getLexer().getKind() == AsmToken::Percent) {
                Parser.Lex(); // eat % token
                const AsmToken &nextTok = Parser.getTok();
                if (nextTok.isNot(AsmToken::Identifier))
                    return true;
                Str += "(%";
                Str += nextTok.getIdentifier();
                Parser.Lex(); // eat identifier
                if (getLexer().getKind() != AsmToken::LParen)
                    return true;
            } else
                break;
        }
        if (getParser().parseParenExpression(IdVal, EndLoc))
            return true;
    }

    while (getLexer().getKind() == AsmToken::RParen)
        Parser.Lex(); // eat ')' token

    } else
        return true; // parenthesis must follow reloc operand
}

Res = evaluateRelocExpr(IdVal, Str);
return false;
}

```

```
bool Cpu0AsmParser::ParseRegister(unsigned &RegNo, SMLoc &StartLoc,
                                    SMLoc &EndLoc) {

    StartLoc = Parser.getTok().getLoc();
    RegNo = tryParseRegister("");
    EndLoc = Parser.getTok().getLoc();
    return (RegNo == (unsigned)-1);
}

bool Cpu0AsmParser::parseMemOffset(const MCExpr *&Res) {

    SMLoc S;

    switch(getLexer().getKind()) {
    default:
        return true;
    case AsmToken::Integer:
    case AsmToken::Minus:
    case AsmToken::Plus:
        return (getParser().parseExpression(Res));
    case AsmToken::Percent:
        return parseRelocOperand(Res);
    case AsmToken::LParen:
        return false; // it's probably assuming 0
    }
    return true;
}

// eg, 12($sp) or 12(la)
Cpu0AsmParser::OperandMatchResultTy Cpu0AsmParser::parseMemOperand(
    OperandVector &Operands) {

    const MCExpr *IdVal = 0;
    SMLoc S;
    // first operand is the offset
    S = Parser.getTok().getLoc();

    if (parseMemOffset(IdVal))
        return MatchOperand_ParseFail;

    const AsmToken &Tok = Parser.getTok(); // get next token
    if (Tok.isNot(AsmToken::LParen)) {
        Cpu0Operand &Mnemonic = static_cast<Cpu0Operand &>(*Operands[0]);
        if (Mnemonic.getToken() == "la") {
            SMLoc E = SMLoc::getFromPointer(Parser.getTok().getLoc().getPointer()-1);
            Operands.push_back(Cpu0Operand::CreateImm(IdVal, S, E));
            return MatchOperand_Success;
        }
        Error(Parser.getTok().getLoc(), "'(' expected");
        return MatchOperand_ParseFail;
    }

    ParserLex(); // Eat '(' token.

    const AsmToken &Tok1 = Parser.getTok(); // get next token
    if (Tok1.is(AsmToken::Dollar)) {
        ParserLex(); // Eat '$' token.
        if (tryParseRegisterOperand(Operands, ""))
            return MatchOperand_Success;
    }
}
```

```

        Error(Parser.getTok().getLoc(), "unexpected token in operand");
        return MatchOperand_ParseFail;
    }

} else {
    Error(Parser.getTok().getLoc(), "unexpected token in operand");
    return MatchOperand_ParseFail;
}

const AsmToken &Tok2 = Parser.getTok(); // get next token
if (Tok2.isNot(AsmToken::RParen)) {
    Error(Parser.getTok().getLoc(), '\'' expected");
    return MatchOperand_ParseFail;
}

SMLoc E = SMLoc::getFromPointer(Parser.getTok().getLoc().getPointer() - 1);

Parser.Lex(); // Eat ')' token.

if (!IdVal)
    IdVal = MCConstantExpr::create(0, getContext());

// Replace the register operand with the memory operand.
std::unique_ptr<Cpu0Operand> op(
    static_cast<Cpu0Operand *>(Operands.back().release()));
int RegNo = op->getReg();
// remove register from operands
Operands.pop_back();
// and add memory operand
Operands.push_back(Cpu0Operand::CreateMem(RegNo, IdVal, S, E));
return MatchOperand_Success;
}

bool Cpu0AsmParser::
parseMathOperation(StringRef Name, SMLoc NameLoc,
                  OperandVector &Operands) {
    // split the format
    size_t Start = Name.find('.'), Next = Name.rfind('.');
    StringRef Format1 = Name.slice(Start, Next);
    // and add the first format to the operands
    Operands.push_back(Cpu0Operand::CreateToken(Format1, NameLoc));
    // now for the second format
    StringRef Format2 = Name.slice(Next,StringRef::npos);
    Operands.push_back(Cpu0Operand::CreateToken(Format2, NameLoc));

    // set the format for the first register
    // setFpFormat(Format1);

    // Read the remaining operands.
    if (getLexer().isNot(AsmToken::EndOfStatement)) {
        // Read the first operand.
        if (ParseOperand(Operands, Name)) {
            SMLoc Loc = getLexer().getLoc();
            Parser.eatToEndOfStatement();
            return Error(Loc, "unexpected token in argument list");
        }
    }

    if (getLexer().isNot(AsmToken::Comma)) {
}

```

```
    SMLoc Loc = getLexer().getLoc();
    Parser.eatToEndOfStatement();
    return Error(Loc, "unexpected token in argument list");

}

Parser.Lex(); // Eat the comma.

// Parse and remember the operand.
if (ParseOperand(Operands, Name)) {
    SMLoc Loc = getLexer().getLoc();
    Parser.eatToEndOfStatement();
    return Error(Loc, "unexpected token in argument list");
}
}

if (getLexer().isNot(AsmToken::EndOfStatement)) {
    SMLoc Loc = getLexer().getLoc();
    Parser.eatToEndOfStatement();
    return Error(Loc, "unexpected token in argument list");
}

Parser.Lex(); // Consume the EndOfStatement
return false;
}

bool Cpu0AsmParser:::
ParseInstruction(ParseInstructionInfo &Info, StringRef Name, SMLoc NameLoc,
                  OperandVector &Operands) {

    // Create the leading tokens for the mnemonic, split by '.' characters.
    size_t Start = 0, Next = Name.find('.');
    StringRef Mnemonic = Name.slice(Start, Next);
    // Refer to the explanation in source code of function DecodeJumpFR(...) in
    // Cpu0Disassembler.cpp
    if (Mnemonic == "ret")
        Mnemonic = "jr";

    Operands.push_back(Cpu0Operand::CreateToken(Mnemonic, NameLoc));

    // Read the remaining operands.
    if (getLexer().isNot(AsmToken::EndOfStatement)) {
        // Read the first operand.
        if (ParseOperand(Operands, Name)) {
            SMLoc Loc = getLexer().getLoc();
            Parser.eatToEndOfStatement();
            return Error(Loc, "unexpected token in argument list");
        }
    }

    while (getLexer().is(AsmToken::Comma) ) {
        Parser.Lex(); // Eat the comma.

        // Parse and remember the operand.
        if (ParseOperand(Operands, Name)) {
            SMLoc Loc = getLexer().getLoc();
            Parser.eatToEndOfStatement();
            return Error(Loc, "unexpected token in argument list");
        }
    }
}
```

```

}

if (getLexer().isNot(AsmToken::EndOfStatement)) {
    SMLoc Loc = getLexer().getLoc();
    Parser.eatToEndOfStatement();
    return Error(Loc, "unexpected token in argument list");
}

Parser.Lex(); // Consume the EndOfStatement
return false;
}

bool Cpu0AsmParser::reportParseError(StringRef ErrorMsg) {
    SMLoc Loc = getLexer().getLoc();
    Parser.eatToEndOfStatement();
    return Error(Loc, ErrorMsg);
}

bool Cpu0AsmParser::parseSetReorderDirective() {
    Parser.Lex();
    // if this is not the end of the statement, report error
    if (getLexer().isNot(AsmToken::EndOfStatement)) {
        reportParseError("unexpected token in statement");
        return false;
    }
    Options.setReorder();
    Parser.Lex(); // Consume the EndOfStatement
    return false;
}

bool Cpu0AsmParser::parseSetNoReorderDirective() {
    Parser.Lex();
    // if this is not the end of the statement, report error
    if (getLexer().isNot(AsmToken::EndOfStatement)) {
        reportParseError("unexpected token in statement");
        return false;
    }
    Options.setNoreorder();
    Parser.Lex(); // Consume the EndOfStatement
    return false;
}

bool Cpu0AsmParser::parseSetMacroDirective() {
    Parser.Lex();
    // if this is not the end of the statement, report error
    if (getLexer().isNot(AsmToken::EndOfStatement)) {
        reportParseError("unexpected token in statement");
        return false;
    }
    Options.setMacro();
    Parser.Lex(); // Consume the EndOfStatement
    return false;
}

bool Cpu0AsmParser::parseSetNoMacroDirective() {
    Parser.Lex();
    // if this is not the end of the statement, report error
    if (getLexer().isNot(AsmToken::EndOfStatement)) {

```

```
    reportParseError("`noreorder' must be set before `nomacro'");
    return false;
}
if (Options.isReorder()) {
    reportParseError("`noreorder' must be set before `nomacro'");
    return false;
}
Options.setNomacro();
Parser.Lex(); // Consume the EndOfStatement
return false;
}
bool Cpu0AsmParser::parseDirectiveSet() {

    // get next token
    const AsmToken &Tok = Parser.getTok();

    if (Tok.getString() == "reorder") {
        return parseSetReorderDirective();
    } else if (Tok.getString() == "noreorder") {
        return parseSetNoReorderDirective();
    } else if (Tok.getString() == "macro") {
        return parseSetMacroDirective();
    } else if (Tok.getString() == "nomacro") {
        return parseSetNoMacroDirective();
    }
    return true;
}

bool Cpu0AsmParser::ParseDirective(AsmToken DirectiveID) {

    if (DirectiveID.getString() == ".ent") {
        // ignore this directive for now
        Parser.Lex();
        return false;
    }

    if (DirectiveID.getString() == ".end") {
        // ignore this directive for now
        Parser.Lex();
        return false;
    }

    if (DirectiveID.getString() == ".frame") {
        // ignore this directive for now
        Parser.eatToEndOfStatement();
        return false;
    }

    if (DirectiveID.getString() == ".set") {
        return parseDirectiveSet();
    }

    if (DirectiveID.getString() == ".fmask") {
        // ignore this directive for now
        Parser.eatToEndOfStatement();
        return false;
    }
}
```

```

if (DirectiveID.getString() == ".mask") {
    // ignore this directive for now
    Parser.eatToEndOfStatement();
    return false;
}

if (DirectiveID.getString() == ".gpword") {
    // ignore this directive for now
    Parser.eatToEndOfStatement();
    return false;
}

return true;
}

extern "C" void LLVMInitializeCpu0AsmParser() {
    RegisterMCAsmParser<Cpu0AsmParser> X(TheCpu0Target);
    RegisterMCAsmParser<Cpu0AsmParser> Y(TheCpu0elTarget);
}

#define GET_REGISTER_MATCHER
#define GET_MATCHER_IMPLEMENTATION
#include "Cpu0GenAsmMatcher.inc"

#else // #if CH >= CH11_1
extern "C" void LLVMInitializeCpu0AsmParser() {}
#endif

```

**Index/chapters/Chapter11\_1/AsmParser/CMakeLists.txt**

```

add_llvm_library(LLVMCpu0AsmParser
    Cpu0AsmParser.cpp
)

```

**Index/chapters/Chapter11\_1/AsmParser/LLVMBuild.txt**

```

===== ./lib/Target/Cpu0/AsmParser/LLVMBuild.txt -----*-- Conf -*---=;
;
;                               The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure
;
; This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source
; License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.
;
=====;
;
; This is an LLVMBuild description file for the components in this subdirectory.
;
; For more information on the LLVMBuild system, please see:
;
;   http://llvm.org/docs/LLVMBuild.html
;
=====;
[component_0]

```

```
type = Library
name = Cpu0AsmParser
parent = Cpu0
required_libraries = Cpu0Desc Cpu0Info MC MCParser Support
add_to_library_groups = Cpu0
```

The Cpu0AsmParser.cpp contains one thousand lines of code which do the assembly language parsing. You can understand it with a little patience only. To let files in directory of AsmParser be built, modify CMakeLists.txt and LLVMBuild.txt as follows,

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter11\_1/CMakeLists.txt

```
set(LLVM_TARGET_DEFINITIONS Cpu0Asm.td)
tablegen(LLVM Cpu0GenAsmMatcher.inc -gen-asn-matcher)
```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter11\_1/LLVMBuild.txt

```
subdirectories =
```

```
AsmParser
```

```
has_asmparser = 1
```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter11\_1/Cpu0Asm.td

```
===== Cpu0Asm.td - Describe the Cpu0 Target Machine -----*/ tablegen -*-*/
//
// The LLVM Compiler Infrastructure
//
// This file is distributed under the University of Illinois Open Source
// License. See LICENSE.TXT for details.
//
//-----*/
// This is the top level entry point for the Cpu0 target.
//-----*/
//-----*/
// Target-independent interfaces
//-----*/
include "llvm/Target/Target.td"

//-----*/
// Target-dependent interfaces
//-----*/

include "Cpu0RegisterInfo.td"
include "Cpu0RegisterInfoGPROutForAsm.td"
include "Cpu0.td"
```

**Ibdex/chapters/Chapter11\_1/Cpu0RegisterInfoGPROutForAsm.td**

```
//=====
// Register Classes
//=====

def GPROut : RegisterClass<"Cpu0", [i32], 32, (add CPURegs);
```

The CMakeLists.txt adds code as above to generate Cpu0GenAsmMatcher.inc used by Cpu0AsmParser.cpp. Cpu0Asm.td include Cpu0RegisterInfoGPROutForAsm.td which define GPROut to CPURegs while Cpu0Other.td include Cpu0RegisterInfoGPROutForOther.td which define GPROut to CPURegs exclude SW. Cpu0Other.td is used when translating llvm IR to Cpu0 instruction. In latter case, the register SW is reserved for keeping the CPU status and not allowed to be allocated as a general purpose register. For example, if setting GPROut to include SW, when compile with C statement “a = (b & c);”, it may generate instruction “and \$sw, \$1, \$2”, as a result that interrupt status in \$sw will be destroyed. When programming in assembly, instruction “andi \$sw, \$sw, 0xffff” is allowed. This assembly program is accepted and Cpu0 backend treats it safe since assembler programmer can disable trace debug message by “andi \$sw, \$sw, 0xffff” and enable debug message by “ori \$sw, \$sw, 0x0020”. In addition, the interrupt bits can also be enabled or disabled by “ori” and “andi” instructions.

The EPC must set to CPURegs as follows, otherwise, MatchInstructionImpl() of MatchAndEmitInstruction() will return fail for “asm(“mfcc \$pc, \$epc”);”.

**Ibdex/chapters/Chapter2/Cpu0RegisterInfo.td**

```
def CPURegs : RegisterClass<"Cpu0", [i32], 32, (add
...
, PC, EPC);
```

**Ibdex/chapters/Chapter11\_1/Cpu0.td**

```
def Cpu0AsmParser : AsmParser {
    let ShouldEmitMatchRegisterName = 0;
}

def Cpu0AsmParserVariant : AsmParserVariant {
    int Variant = 0;

    // Recognize hard coded registers.
    string RegisterPrefix = "$";
}

def Cpu0 : Target {
    ...

    let AssemblyParsers = [Cpu0AsmParser];
    let AssemblyParserVariants = [Cpu0AsmParserVariant];
}
```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter11\_1/Cpu0InstrFormats.td

```
// Pseudo-instructions for alternate assembly syntax (never used by codegen).
// These are aliases that require C++ handling to convert to the target
// instruction, while InstAliases can be handled directly by tblgen.
class Cpu0AsmPseudoInst<dag outs, dag ins, string asmstr>:
    Cpu0Inst<outs, ins, asmstr, [], IIPseudo, Pseudo> {
        let isPseudo = 1;
        let Pattern = [];
    }
```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter11\_1/Cpu0InstrInfo.td

```
def Cpu0MemAsmOperand : AsmOperandClass {
    let Name = "Mem";
    let ParserMethod = "parseMemOperand";
}
```

```
// Address operand
def mem : Operand<i32> {
    ...
    let ParserMatchClass = Cpu0MemAsmOperand;
}
...
```

```
=====/
// Pseudo Instruction definition
=====/
```

```
let Predicates = [Ch11_1] in {
class LoadImm32< string instr_asm, Operand Od, RegisterClass RC > :
    Cpu0AsmPseudoInst<(outs RC:$ra), (ins Od:$imm32),
        !strconcat(instr_asm, "\t$ra, $imm32")> ;
def LoadImm32Reg : LoadImm32<"li", sham, GPROut>;

class LoadAddress<string instr_asm, Operand MemOpnd, RegisterClass RC > :
    Cpu0AsmPseudoInst<(outs RC:$ra), (ins MemOpnd:$addr),
        !strconcat(instr_asm, "\t$ra, $addr")> ;
def LoadAddr32Reg : LoadAddress<"la", mem, GPROut>;

class LoadAddressImm<string instr_asm, Operand Od, RegisterClass RC > :
    Cpu0AsmPseudoInst<(outs RC:$ra), (ins Od:$imm32),
        !strconcat(instr_asm, "\t$ra, $imm32")> ;
def LoadAddr32Imm : LoadAddressImm<"la", sham, GPROut>;
}
```

Above Cpu0InstrInfo.td declare the **let ParserMethod = “parseMemOperand”** and implement the parseMemOperand() in Cpu0AsmParser.cpp to handle the “mem” operand which used in Cpu0 instructions ld and st. For example, ld \$2, 4(\$sp), the **mem** operand is 4(\$sp). Accompany with “**let ParserMatchClass = Cpu0MemAsmOperand;**”, LLVM will call parseMemOperand() of Cpu0AsmParser.cpp when it meets the assembly **mem** operand 4(\$sp). With above “**let**” assignment, TableGen will generate the following structure and functions in Cpu0GenAsmMatcher.inc.

**[cmake\\_debug\\_build/lib/Target/Cpu0/Cpu0GenAsmMatcher.inc](#)**

```

enum OperandMatchResultTy {
    MatchOperand_Success,      // operand matched successfully
    MatchOperand_NoMatch,     // operand did not match
    MatchOperand_ParseFail    // operand matched but had errors
};
OperandMatchResultTy MatchOperandParserImpl(
    OperandVector &Operands,
    StringRef Mnemonic);
OperandMatchResultTy tryCustomParseOperand(
    OperandVector &Operands,
    unsigned MCK);
...
Cpu0AsmParser::OperandMatchResultTy Cpu0AsmParser::
tryCustomParseOperand(OperandVector &Operands,
    unsigned MCK) {

    switch(MCK) {
        case MCK_Mem:
            return parseMemOperand(Operands);
        default:
            return MatchOperand_NoMatch;
    }
    return MatchOperand_NoMatch;
}

Cpu0AsmParser::OperandMatchResultTy Cpu0AsmParser::
MatchOperandParserImpl(OperandVector &Operands,
    StringRef Mnemonic) {
    ...
}

/// MatchClassKind - The kinds of classes which participate in
/// instruction matching.
enum MatchClassKind {
    ...
    MCK_Mem, // user defined class 'Cpu0MemAsmOperand'
    ...
};

```

Above three Pseudo Instruction definitions in Cpu0InstrInfo.td, such as LoadImm32Reg, are handled by Cpu0AsmParser.cpp as follows,

**[Index/chapters/Chapter11\\_1/AsmParser/Cpu0AsmParser.cpp](#)**

```

bool Cpu0AsmParser::needsExpansion(MCInst &Inst) {

    switch(Inst.getOpcode()) {
        case Cpu0::LoadImm32Reg:
        case Cpu0::LoadAddr32Imm:
        case Cpu0::LoadAddr32Reg:
            return true;
        default:
            return false;
    }
}

```

```

}

void Cpu0AsmParser::expandInstruction(MCInst &Inst, SMLoc IDLoc,
                                      SmallVectorImpl<MCInst> &Instructions) {
    switch(Inst.getOpcode()) {
        case Cpu0::LoadImm32Reg:
            return expandLoadImm(Inst, IDLoc, Instructions);
        case Cpu0::LoadAddr32Imm:
            return expandLoadAddressImm(Inst, IDLoc, Instructions);
        case Cpu0::LoadAddr32Reg:
            return expandLoadAddressReg(Inst, IDLoc, Instructions);
    }
}

```

```

bool Cpu0AsmParser::MatchAndEmitInstruction(SMLoc IDLoc, unsigned &Opcode,
                                            OperandVector &Operands,
                                            MCStreamer &Out,
                                            uint64_t &ErrorInfo,
                                            bool MatchingInlineAsm) {
    printCpu0Operands(Operands);
    MCInst Inst;
    unsigned MatchResult = MatchInstructionImpl(Operands, Inst, ErrorInfo,
                                                MatchingInlineAsm);
    switch (MatchResult) {
        default: break;
        case Match_Success: {
            if (needsExpansion(Inst)) {
                SmallVector<MCInst, 4> Instructions;
                expandInstruction(Inst, IDLoc, Instructions);
                for (unsigned i = 0; i < Instructions.size(); i++) {
                    Out.EmitInstruction(Instructions[i], getSTI());
                }
            } else {
                Inst.setLoc(IDLoc);
                Out.EmitInstruction(Inst, getSTI());
            }
            return false;
        }
    }
}

```

```

...
}
```

Finally, remind that the CPURegs as below must follow the order of register number because AsmParser uses them when do register number encoding.

### [Index/chapters/Chapter11\\_1/Cpu0RegisterInfo.td](#)

```

//=====
// The register string, such as "9" or "gp" will show on "llvm-objdump -d"
// @ All registers definition
let Namespace = "Cpu0" in {
    // @ General Purpose Registers
    def ZERO : Cpu0GPRReg<0, "zero">, DwarfRegNum<[0]>;
    def AT : Cpu0GPRReg<1, "1">, DwarfRegNum<[1]>;
    def V0 : Cpu0GPRReg<2, "2">, DwarfRegNum<[2]>;
}

```

```

def V1 : Cpu0GPRReg<3>, "3">, DwarfRegNum<[3]>;
def A0 : Cpu0GPRReg<4>, "4">, DwarfRegNum<[4]>;
def A1 : Cpu0GPRReg<5>, "5">, DwarfRegNum<[5]>;
def T9 : Cpu0GPRReg<6>, "t9">, DwarfRegNum<[6]>;
def T0 : Cpu0GPRReg<7>, "7">, DwarfRegNum<[7]>;
def T1 : Cpu0GPRReg<8>, "8">, DwarfRegNum<[8]>;
def S0 : Cpu0GPRReg<9>, "9">, DwarfRegNum<[9]>;
def S1 : Cpu0GPRReg<10>, "10">, DwarfRegNum<[10]>;
def GP : Cpu0GPRReg<11>, "gp">, DwarfRegNum<[11]>;
def FP : Cpu0GPRReg<12>, "fp">, DwarfRegNum<[12]>;
def SP : Cpu0GPRReg<13>, "sp">, DwarfRegNum<[13]>;
def LR : Cpu0GPRReg<14>, "lr">, DwarfRegNum<[14]>;
def SW : Cpu0GPRReg<15>, "sw">, DwarfRegNum<[15]>;
// def MAR : Register< 16, "mar">, DwarfRegNum<[16]>;
// def MDR : Register< 17, "mdr">, DwarfRegNum<[17]>;

//#if CH >= CH4_1
// Hi/Lo registers number and name
def HI : Cpu0Reg<0, "ac0">, DwarfRegNum<[18]>;
def LO : Cpu0Reg<0, "ac0">, DwarfRegNum<[19]>;
//#endif
def PC : Cpu0C0Reg<0, "pc">, DwarfRegNum<[20]>;
def EPC : Cpu0C0Reg<1, "epc">, DwarfRegNum<[21]>;
}

//=====
//@Register Classes
//=====

def CPUREgs : RegisterClass<"Cpu0", [i32], 32, (add
// Reserved
ZERO, AT,
// Return Values and Arguments
V0, V1, A0, A1,
// Not preserved across procedure calls
T9, T0, T1,
// Callee save
S0, S1,
// Reserved
GP, FP,
SP, LR, SW)>;

```

Run Chapter11\_1/ with ch11\_1.cpp to get the correct result as follows,

```

JonathantekiiMac:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_debug_
build/Debug/bin/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=obj ch11_1.bc -o
ch11_1.cpu0.o
JonathantekiiMac:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_debug_
build/Debug/bin/llvm-objdump -d ch11_1.cpu0.o

ch11_1.cpu0.o: file format ELF32-unknown

Disassembly of section .text:
.text:
    0:      01 2d 00 08          ld      $2, 8($sp)
        4:      02 0d 00 04          st      $zero, 4($sp)
        8:      09 30 00 00          addiu $3, $zero, 0

```

c:	13 31 20 00		add	\$3, \$1, \$2
10:	14 32 30 00		sub	\$3, \$2, \$3
...				

The instructions cmp and jeg printed with explicit \$sw displayed in assembly and disassembly. You can change the code in AsmParser and Dissasembly (the last chapter) to hide the \$sw printed in these instructions (such as “jeq 20” rather than “jeq \$sw, 20”).

Both AsmParser and Cpu0AsmParser inherited from MCAsmParser as follows,

### src/lib/MC/MCParser/AsmParser.cpp

```
class AsmParser : public MCAsmParser {
    ...
}
```

AsmParser will call functions ParseInstruction() and MatchAndEmitInstruction() of Cpu0AsmParser as follows,

### src/lib/MC/MCParser/AsmParser.cpp

```
bool AsmParser::parseStatement(ParseStatementInfo &Info) {
    ...
    // Directives start with "."
    if (IDVal[0] == '.' && IDVal != ".") {
        // First query the target-specific parser. It will return 'true' if it
        // isn't interested in this directive.
        if (!getTargetParser().ParseDirective(ID))
            return false;
        ...
    }
    ...
    bool HadError = getTargetParser().ParseInstruction(IInfo, OpcodeStr, IDLoc,
                                                       Info.ParsedOperands);
    ...
    // If parsing succeeded, match the instruction.
    if (!HadError) {
        unsigned ErrorInfo;
        getTargetParser().MatchAndEmitInstruction(IDLoc, Info.Opcode,
                                                Info.ParsedOperands, Out,
                                                ErrorInfo, ParsingInlineAsm);
    }
    ...
}
```

The other functions in Cpu0AsmParser called as follows,

- ParseDirective() -> parseDirectiveSet() -> parseSetReorderDirective(), parseSetNoReorderDirective(), parseSetMacroDirective(), parseSetNoMacroDirective() -> reportParseError()
- ParseInstruction() -> ParseOperand() -> MatchOperandParserImpl() of Cpu0GenAsmMatcher.inc -> tryCustomParseOperand() of Cpu0GenAsmMatcher.inc -> parseMemOperand() -> parseMemOffset(), tryParseRegisterOperand()

- MatchAndEmitInstruction() -> MatchInstructionImpl() of Cpu0GenAsmMatcher.inc, needsExpansion(), expandInstruction()
- parseMemOffset() -> parseRelocOperand() -> getVariantKind()
- tryParseRegisterOperand() -> tryParseRegister() -> matchRegisterName() -> getReg(), matchRegisterByName()
- expandInstruction() -> expandLoadImm(), expandLoadAddressImm(), expandLoadAddressReg() -> EmitInstruction() of Cpu0AsmPrint.cpp

## 11.2 Inline assembly

Run Chapter11\_1 with ch11\_2 will get the following error.

### Ibdex/input/ch11\_2.cpp

```
extern "C" int printf(const char *format, ...);
int inlineasm_addu(void)
{
    int foo = 10;
    const int bar = 15;

//  call i32 asm sideeffect "addu $0,$1,$2", "=r,r,r"(i32 %1, i32 %2) #1, !srcloc !1
    __asm__ __volatile__("addu %0,%1,%2"
                        : "=r" (foo) // 5
                        : "r" (foo), "r" (bar)
                        );

    return foo;
}

int inlineasm_longlong(void)
{
    int a, b;
    const long long bar = 0x0000000500000006;
    int* p = (int*)&bar;
//  int* q = (p+1); // Do not set q here.

//  call i32 asm sideeffect "ld $0,$1", "=r,*m"(i32* %2) #2, !srcloc !2
    __asm__ __volatile__("ld %0,%1"
                        : "=r" (a) // 0x700070007000700b
                        : "m" (*p)
                        );
    int* q = (p+1); // Set q just before inline asm refer to avoid register clobbered.
//  call i32 asm sideeffect "ld $0,$1", "=r,*m"(i32* %6) #2, !srcloc !3
    __asm__ __volatile__("ld %0,%1"
                        : "=r" (b) // 11
                        : "m" (*q)
//          Or use :"m" (*(p+1)) to avoid register clobbered.
                        );

    return (a+b);
}
```

```

int inlineasm_constraint(void)
{
    int foo = 10;
    const int n_5 = -5;
    const int n5 = 5;
    const int n0 = 0;
    const unsigned int un5 = 5;
    const int n65536 = 0x10000;
    const int n_65531 = -65531;

//    call i32 asm sideeffect "addiu $0,$1,$2", "=r,r,I"(i32 %1, i32 15) #1, !srcloc !2
    __asm__ __volatile__("addiu %0,%1,%2"
                        : "=r"(foo) // 15
                        : "r"(foo), "I"(n_5)
                        );

    __asm__ __volatile__("addiu %0,%1,%2"
                        : "=r"(foo) // 15
                        : "r"(foo), "J"(n0)
                        );

    __asm__ __volatile__("addiu %0,%1,%2"
                        : "=r"(foo) // 10
                        : "r"(foo), "K"(n5)
                        );

    __asm__ __volatile__("ori %0,%1,%2"
                        : "=r"(foo) // 10
                        : "r"(foo), "L"(n65536) // 0x10000 = 65536
                        );

    __asm__ __volatile__("addiu %0,%1,%2"
                        : "=r"(foo) // 15
                        : "r"(foo), "N"(n_65531)
                        );

    __asm__ __volatile__("addiu %0,%1,%2"
                        : "=r"(foo) // 10
                        : "r"(foo), "O"(n_5)
                        );

    __asm__ __volatile__("addiu %0,%1,%2"
                        : "=r"(foo) // 15
                        : "r"(foo), "P"(un5)
                        );

    return foo;
}

int inlineasm_arg(int u, int v)
{
    int w;

    __asm__ __volatile__("subu %0,%1,%2"
                        : "=r"(w)
                        : "r"(u), "r"(v)
                        );
}

```

```

    return w;
}

int g[3] = {1,2,3};

int inlineasm_global()
{
    int c, d;
    __asm__ __volatile__("ld %0,%1"
                        : "=r"(c) // c=3
                        : "m"(g[2])
                        );
    __asm__ __volatile__("addiu %0,%1,1"
                        : "=r"(d) // d=4
                        : "r"(c)
                        );
    return d;
}

#ifdef TESTSOFTFLOATLIB
// test_float() will call soft float library
int inlineasm_float()
{
    float a = 2.2;
    float b = 3.3;

    int c = (int)(a + b);

    int d;
    __asm__ __volatile__("addiu %0,%1,1"
                        : "=r"(d)
                        : "r"(c)
                        );
    return d;
}
#endif

int test_inlineasm()
{
    int a, b, c, d, e, f;

    a = inlineasm_addu(); // 25
    b = inlineasm_longlong(); // 11
    c = inlineasm_constraint(); // 15
    d = inlineasm_arg(1, 10); // -9
    e = inlineasm_arg(6, 3); // 3
    __asm__ __volatile__("addiu %0,%1,1"
                        : "=r"(f) // e=4
                        : "r"(e)
                        );
    return (a+b+c+d+e+f); // 25+11+15-9+3+4=49
}

```

```
1-160-129-73:input Jonathan$ ~/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/Debug/bin/llc
-march=cpu0 -relocation-model=static -filetype=asm ch11_2.bc -o -
.section .mdebug.abi32
.previous
.file "ch11_2.bc"
error: couldn't allocate output register for constraint 'r'
```

The ch11\_2.cpp is a inline assembly example. The clang supports inline assembly like gcc. The inline assembly used in C/C++ when program need to access the specific allocated register or memory for the C/C++ variable. For example, the variable foo of ch11\_2.cpp may be allocated by compiler to register \$2, \$3 or any other register. The inline assembly fills the gap between high level language and assembly language. Reference here <sup>2</sup>. Chapter11\_2 supports inline assembly as follows,

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter11\_2/Cpu0AsmPrinter.h

```
bool PrintAsmOperand(const MachineInstr *MI, unsigned OpNo,
                      unsigned AsmVariant, const char *ExtraCode,
                      raw_ostream &O) override;
bool PrintAsmMemoryOperand(const MachineInstr *MI, unsigned OpNum,
                           unsigned AsmVariant, const char *ExtraCode,
                           raw_ostream &O) override;
void printOperand(const MachineInstr *MI, int opNum, raw_ostream &O);
```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter11\_2/Cpu0AsmPrinter.cpp

```
// Print out an operand for an inline asm expression.
bool Cpu0AsmPrinter::PrintAsmOperand(const MachineInstr *MI, unsigned OpNum,
                                      unsigned AsmVariant, const char *ExtraCode,
                                      raw_ostream &O) {
    // Does this asm operand have a single letter operand modifier?
    if (ExtraCode && ExtraCode[0]) {
        if (ExtraCode[1] != 0) return true; // Unknown modifier.

        const MachineOperand &MO = MI->getOperand(OpNum);
        switch (ExtraCode[0]) {
        default:
            // See if this is a generic print operand
            return AsmPrinter::PrintAsmOperand(MI, OpNum, AsmVariant, ExtraCode, O);
        case 'X': // hex const int
            if ((MO.getType()) != MachineOperand::MO_Immediate)
                return true;
            O << "0x" << StringRef(utohexstr(MO.getImm())).lower();
            return false;
        case 'x': // hex const int (low 16 bits)
            if ((MO.getType()) != MachineOperand::MO_Immediate)
                return true;
            O << "0x" << StringRef(utohexstr(MO.getImm() & 0xffff)).lower();
            return false;
        case 'd': // decimal const int
            if ((MO.getType()) != MachineOperand::MO_Immediate)
                return true;
            O << MO.getImm();
        }
    }
}
```

<sup>2</sup> <http://www.ibiblio.org/gferg/ldp/GCC-Inline-Assembly-HOWTO.html>

```

        return false;
    case 'm': // decimal const int minus 1
        if ((MO.getType()) != MachineOperand::MO_Immediate)
            return true;
        O << MO.getImm() - 1;
        return false;
    case 'z': {
        // $0 if zero, regular printing otherwise
        if (MO.getType() != MachineOperand::MO_Immediate)
            return true;
        int64_t Val = MO.getImm();
        if (Val)
            O << Val;
        else
            O << "$0";
        return false;
    }
}
}

printOperand(MI, OpNum, O);
return false;
}

bool Cpu0AsmPrinter::PrintAsmMemoryOperand(const MachineInstr *MI,
                                            unsigned OpNum, unsigned AsmVariant,
                                            const char *ExtraCode,
                                            raw_ostream &O) {
    int Offset = 0;
    // Currently we are expecting either no ExtraCode or 'D'
    if (ExtraCode) {
        return true; // Unknown modifier.
    }

    const MachineOperand &MO = MI->getOperand(OpNum);
    assert(MO.isReg() && "unexpected inline asm memory operand");
    O << Offset << "(" << Cpu0InstPrinter::getRegisterName(MO.getReg()) << ")";

    return false;
}

void Cpu0AsmPrinter::printOperand(const MachineInstr *MI, int opNum,
                                  raw_ostream &O) {
    const MachineOperand &MO = MI->getOperand(opNum);
    bool closeP = false;

    if (MO.getTargetFlags())
        closeP = true;

    switch(MO.getTargetFlags()) {
    case Cpu0II::MO_GPREL:   O << "%gp_rel("; break;
    case Cpu0II::MO_GOT_CALL: O << "%call16("; break;
    case Cpu0II::MO_GOT:     O << "%got(";      break;
    case Cpu0II::MO_ABS_HI:  O << "%hi(";       break;
    case Cpu0II::MO_ABS_LO:  O << "%lo(";       break;
    case Cpu0II::MO_GOT_HI16: O << "%got_hi16("; break;
    case Cpu0II::MO_GOT_LO16: O << "%got_lo16("; break;
    }
}

```

```
switch (MO.getType()) {
    case MachineOperand::MO_Register:
        O << '$'
        << StringRef(Cpu0InstPrinter::getRegisterName(MO.getReg())).lower();
        break;

    case MachineOperand::MO_Immediate:
        O << MO.getImm();
        break;

    case MachineOperand::MO_MachineBasicBlock:
        O << *MO.getMBB()->getSymbol();
        return;

    case MachineOperand::MO_GlobalAddress:
        O << *getSymbol(MO.getGlobal());
        break;

    case MachineOperand::MO_BlockAddress: {
        MCSymbol *BA = GetBlockAddressSymbol(MO.getBlockAddress());
        O << BA->getName();
        break;
    }

    case MachineOperand::MO_ExternalSymbol:
        O << *GetExternalSymbolSymbol(MO.getSymbolName());
        break;

    case MachineOperand::MO_JumpTableIndex:
        O << MAI->getPrivateGlobalPrefix() << "JTI" << getFunctionNumber()
            << '_' << MO.getIndex();
        break;

    case MachineOperand::MO_ConstantPoolIndex:
        O << MAI->getPrivateGlobalPrefix() << "CPI"
            << getFunctionNumber() << "_" << MO.getIndex();
        if (MO.getOffset())
            O << "+" << MO.getOffset();
        break;

    default:
        llvm_unreachable("<unknown operand type>");
    }

    if (closeP) O << ")";
}
```

### Index/chapters/Chapter11\_2/Cpu0InstrInfo.cpp

```
/// Return the number of bytes of code the specified instruction may be.
unsigned Cpu0InstrInfo::GetInstSizeInBytes(const MachineInstr &MI) const {
```

```
case TargetOpcode::INLINEASM: {           // Inline Asm: Variable size.
    const MachineFunction *MF = MI.getParent()->getParent();
```

```
const char *AsmStr = MI.getOperand(0).getSymbolName();
return getInlineAsmLength(AsmStr, *MF->getTarget().getMCAsmInfo());
}
```

**Ibdex/chapters/Chapter11\_2/Cpu0ISelDAGToDAG.h**

```
bool SelectInlineAsmMemoryOperand(const SDValue &Op,
                                  unsigned ConstraintID,
                                  std::vector<SDValue> &OutOps) override;
```

**Ibdex/chapters/Chapter11\_2/Cpu0ISelDAGToDAG.cpp**

```
// inlineasm begin
bool Cpu0DAGToDAGISel::
SelectInlineAsmMemoryOperand(const SDValue &Op, unsigned ConstraintID,
                             std::vector<SDValue> &OutOps) {
    // All memory constraints can at least accept raw pointers.
    switch(ConstraintID) {
        default:
            llvm_unreachable("Unexpected asm memory constraint");
        case InlineAsm::Constraint_m:
            OutOps.push_back(Op);
            return false;
    }
    return true;
}
// inlineasm end
```

**Ibdex/chapters/Chapter11\_2/Cpu0ISelLowering.h**

```
// Inline asm support
ConstraintType getConstraintType(StringRef Constraint) const override;

/// Examine constraint string and operand type and determine a weight value.
/// The operand object must already have been set up with the operand type.
ConstraintWeight getSingleConstraintMatchWeight(
    AsmOperandInfo &info, const char *constraint) const override;

/// This function parses registers that appear in inline-asm constraints.
/// It returns pair (0, 0) on failure.
std::pair<unsigned, const TargetRegisterClass *>
parseRegForInlineAsmConstraint(const StringRef &C, MVT VT) const;

std::pair<unsigned, const TargetRegisterClass *>
getRegForInlineAsmConstraint(const TargetRegisterInfo *TRI,
                            StringRef Constraint, MVT VT) const override;

/// LowerAsmOperandForConstraint - Lower the specified operand into the Ops
/// vector. If it is invalid, don't add anything to Ops. If hasMemory is
/// true it means one of the asm constraint of the inline asm instruction
/// being processed is 'm'.
```

```
void LowerAsmOperandForConstraint(SDValue Op,
                                    std::string &Constraint,
                                    std::vector<SDValue> &Ops,
                                    SelectionDAG &DAG) const override;

bool isLegalAddressingMode(const DataLayout &DL, const AddrMode &AM,
                           Type *Ty, unsigned AS) const override;
```

### Index/chapters/Chapter11\_2/Cpu0ISelLowering.cpp

```
//=====//  
//          Cpu0 Inline Assembly Support  
//=====//  
  
/// getConstraintType - Given a constraint letter, return the type of  
/// constraint it is for this target.  
Cpu0TargetLowering::ConstraintType  
Cpu0TargetLowering::getConstraintType(StringRef Constraint) const  
{  
    // Cpu0 specific constraints  
    // GCC config/mips/constraints.md  
    // 'c' : A register suitable for use in an indirect  
    //        jump. This will always be $t9 for -mabicalls.  
    if (Constraint.size() == 1) {  
        switch (Constraint[0]) {  
            default : break;  
            case 'c':  
                return C_RegisterClass;  
            case 'R':  
                return C_Memory;  
        }  
    }  
    return TargetLowering::getConstraintType(Constraint);  
}  
  
/// Examine constraint type and operand type and determine a weight value.  
/// This object must already have been set up with the operand type  
/// and the current alternative constraint selected.  
TargetLowering::ConstraintWeight  
Cpu0TargetLowering::getSingleConstraintMatchWeight(  
    AsmOperandInfo &info, const char *constraint) const {  
    ConstraintWeight weight = CW_Invalid;  
    Value *CallOperandVal = info.CallOperandVal;  
    // If we don't have a value, we can't do a match,  
    // but allow it at the lowest weight.  
    if (!CallOperandVal)  
        return CW_Default;  
    Type *type = CallOperandVal->getType();  
    // Look at the constraint type.  
    switch (*constraint) {  
        default:  
            weight = TargetLowering::getSingleConstraintMatchWeight(info, constraint);  
            break;  
        case 'c': // $t9 for indirect jumps  
            if (type->isIntegerTy())  
                weight = CW_SpecificReg;
```

```

        break;
    case 'I': // signed 16 bit immediate
    case 'J': // integer zero
    case 'K': // unsigned 16 bit immediate
    case 'L': // signed 32 bit immediate where lower 16 bits are 0
    case 'N': // immediate in the range of -65535 to -1 (inclusive)
    case 'O': // signed 15 bit immediate (+- 16383)
    case 'P': // immediate in the range of 65535 to 1 (inclusive)
        if (isa<ConstantInt>(CallOperandVal))
            weight = CW_Constant;
        break;
    case 'R':
        weight = CW_Memory;
        break;
    }
    return weight;
}

/// This is a helper function to parse a physical register string and split it
/// into non-numeric and numeric parts (Prefix and Reg). The first boolean flag
/// that is returned indicates whether parsing was successful. The second flag
/// is true if the numeric part exists.
static std::pair<bool, bool>
parsePhysicalReg(const StringRef &C, std::string &Prefix,
                 unsigned long long &Reg) {
    if (C.front() != '{' || C.back() != '}')
        return std::make_pair(false, false);

    // Search for the first numeric character.
    StringRef::const_iterator I, B = C.begin() + 1, E = C.end() - 1;
    I = std::find_if(B, E, std::ptr_fun(isdigit));

    Prefix.assign(B, I - B);

    // The second flag is set to false if no numeric characters were found.
    if (I == E)
        return std::make_pair(true, false);

    // Parse the numeric characters.
    return std::make_pair(!getAsUnsignedInteger(StringRef(I, E - I), 10, Reg),
                         true);
}

std::pair<unsigned, const TargetRegisterClass *> Cpu0TargetLowering::
parseRegForInlineAsmConstraint(const StringRef &C, MVT VT) const {
    const TargetRegisterClass *RC;
    std::string Prefix;
    unsigned long long Reg;

    std::pair<bool, bool> R = parsePhysicalReg(C, Prefix, Reg);

    if (!R.first)
        return std::make_pair(0U, nullptr);
    if (!R.second)
        return std::make_pair(0U, nullptr);

    // Parse $0-$15.
    assert(Prefix == "$");
}

```

```

RC = getRegClassFor((VT == MVT::Other) ? MVT::i32 : VT);

assert(Reg < RC->getNumRegs());
return std::make_pair(*(RC->begin() + Reg), RC);
}

/// Given a register class constraint, like 'r', if this corresponds directly
/// to an LLVM register class, return a register of 0 and the register class
/// pointer.
std::pair<unsigned, const TargetRegisterClass *>
Cpu0TargetLowering::getRegForInlineAsmConstraint(const TargetRegisterInfo *TRI,
                                                StringRef Constraint,
                                                MVT VT) const
{
    if (Constraint.size() == 1) {
        switch (Constraint[0]) {
        case 'r':
            if (VT == MVT::i32 || VT == MVT::i16 || VT == MVT::i8) {
                return std::make_pair(0U, &Cpu0::CPURegsRegClass);
            }
            if (VT == MVT::i64)
                return std::make_pair(0U, &Cpu0::CPURegsRegClass);
            // This will generate an error message
            return std::make_pair(0U, static_cast<const TargetRegisterClass*>(0));
        case 'c': // register suitable for indirect jump
            if (VT == MVT::i32)
                return std::make_pair((unsigned)Cpu0::T9, &Cpu0::CPURegsRegClass);
            assert("Unexpected type.");
        }
    }

    std::pair<unsigned, const TargetRegisterClass *> R;
    R = parseRegForInlineAsmConstraint(Constraint, VT);

    if (R.second)
        return R;

    return TargetLowering::getRegForInlineAsmConstraint(TRI, Constraint, VT);
}

/// LowerAsmOperandForConstraint - Lower the specified operand into the Ops
/// vector. If it is invalid, don't add anything to Ops.
void Cpu0TargetLowering::LowerAsmOperandForConstraint(SDValue Op,
                                                      std::string &Constraint,
                                                      std::vector<SDValue>&Ops,
                                                      SelectionDAG &DAG) const {
    SDLoc DL(Op);
    SDValue Result;

    // Only support length 1 constraints for now.
    if (Constraint.length() > 1) return;

    char ConstraintLetter = Constraint[0];
    switch (ConstraintLetter) {
    default: break; // This will fall through to the generic implementation
    case 'I': // Signed 16 bit constant
        // If this fails, the parent routine will give an error
        if (ConstantSDNode *C = dyn_cast<ConstantSDNode>(Op)) {

```

```

EVT Type = Op.getValueType();
int64_t Val = C->getSExtValue();
if (isInt<16>(Val)) {
    Result = DAG.getTargetConstant(Val, DL, Type);
    break;
}
}
return;
case 'J': // integer zero
if (ConstantSDNode *C = dyn_cast<ConstantSDNode>(Op)) {
    EVT Type = Op.getValueType();
    int64_t Val = C->getZExtValue();
    if (Val == 0) {
        Result = DAG.getTargetConstant(0, DL, Type);
        break;
    }
}
return;
case 'K': // unsigned 16 bit immediate
if (ConstantSDNode *C = dyn_cast<ConstantSDNode>(Op)) {
    EVT Type = Op.getValueType();
    uint64_t Val = (uint64_t)C->getZExtValue();
    if (isUInt<16>(Val)) {
        Result = DAG.getTargetConstant(Val, DL, Type);
        break;
    }
}
return;
case 'L': // signed 32 bit immediate where lower 16 bits are 0
if (ConstantSDNode *C = dyn_cast<ConstantSDNode>(Op)) {
    EVT Type = Op.getValueType();
    int64_t Val = C->getSExtValue();
    if ((isInt<32>(Val)) && ((Val & 0xffff) == 0)) {
        Result = DAG.getTargetConstant(Val, DL, Type);
        break;
    }
}
return;
case 'N': // immediate in the range of -65535 to -1 (inclusive)
if (ConstantSDNode *C = dyn_cast<ConstantSDNode>(Op)) {
    EVT Type = Op.getValueType();
    int64_t Val = C->getSExtValue();
    if ((Val >= -65535) && (Val <= -1)) {
        Result = DAG.getTargetConstant(Val, DL, Type);
        break;
    }
}
return;
case 'O': // signed 15 bit immediate
if (ConstantSDNode *C = dyn_cast<ConstantSDNode>(Op)) {
    EVT Type = Op.getValueType();
    int64_t Val = C->getSExtValue();
    if ((isInt<15>(Val))) {
        Result = DAG.getTargetConstant(Val, DL, Type);
        break;
    }
}
return;

```

```

        case 'P': // immediate in the range of 1 to 65535 (inclusive)
        if (ConstantSDNode *C = dyn_cast<ConstantSDNode>(Op)) {
            EVT Type = Op.getValueType();
            int64_t Val = C->getSExtValue();
            if ((Val <= 65535) && (Val >= 1)) {
                Result = DAG.getTargetConstant(Val, DL, Type);
                break;
            }
        }
        return;
    }

    if (Result.getNode()) {
        Ops.push_back(Result);
        return;
    }

    TargetLowering::LowerAsmOperandForConstraint(Op, Constraint, Ops, DAG);
}

bool Cpu0TargetLowering::isLegalAddressingMode(const DataLayout &DL,
                                              const AddrMode &AM, Type *Ty,
                                              unsigned AS) const {
    // No global is ever allowed as a base.
    if (AM.BaseGV)
        return false;

    switch (AM.Scale) {
    case 0: // "r+i" or just "i", depending on HasBaseReg.
        break;
    case 1:
        if (!AM.HasBaseReg) // allow "r+i".
            break;
        return false; // disallow "r+r" or "r+r+i".
    default:
        return false;
    }

    return true;
}
    
```

Same with backend structure, the structure of inline assembly can be divided by file name as Table: the structure of inline assembly.

Table 11.1: inline assembly functions

File	Function
Cpu0ISelLowering.cpp	inline asm DAG node create
Cpu0ISelDAGToDAG.cpp	save OP code
Cpu0AsmPrinter.cpp,	inline asm instructions printing
Cpu0InstrInfo.cpp	•

Except Cpu0ISelDAGToDAG.cpp, the other functions are same with backend's compile code. The Cpu0ISelLowering.cpp inline asm is explained after the result of running with ch11\_2.cpp. Cpu0ISelDAGToDAG.cpp just save OP code in SelectInlineAsmMemoryOperand(). Since the the OP code is Cpu0 inline assembly instruction, no llvm IR DAG translation needed further, just save OP directly and return false to notify llvm system that Cpu0

backend has finished processing this inline assembly instruction.

Run Chapter11\_2 with ch11\_2.cpp will get the following result.

```
1-160-129-73:input Jonathan$ clang -target mips-unknown-linux-gnu -c
ch11_2.cpp -emit-llvm -o ch11_2.bc

1-160-129-73:input Jonathan$ ~/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/Debug/bin/
llvm-dis ch11_2.bc -o -
...
target triple = "mips-unknown-linux-gnu"

@g = global [3 x i32] [i32 1, i32 2, i32 3], align 4

; Function Attrs: nounwind
define i32 @_Z14inlineasm_adduv() #0 {
    %foo = alloca i32, align 4
    %bar = alloca i32, align 4
    store i32 10, i32* %foo, align 4
    store i32 15, i32* %bar, align 4
    %1 = load i32* %foo, align 4
    %2 = call i32 asm sideeffect "addu $0,$1,$2", "=r,r,r"(i32 %1, i32 15) #1,
!srcloc !1
    store i32 %2, i32* %foo, align 4
    %3 = load i32* %foo, align 4
    ret i32 %3
}

; Function Attrs: nounwind
define i32 @_Z18inlineasm_longlongv() #0 {
    %a = alloca i32, align 4
    %b = alloca i32, align 4
    %bar = alloca i64, align 8
    %p = alloca i32**, align 4
    %q = alloca i32**, align 4
    store i64 21474836486, i64* %bar, align 8
    %1 = bitcast i64* %bar to i32*
    store i32* %1, i32** %p, align 4
    %2 = load i32** %p, align 4
    %3 = call i32 asm sideeffect "ld $0,$1", "=r,*m"(i32* %2) #1, !srcloc !2
    store i32 %3, i32* %a, align 4
    %4 = load i32** %p, align 4
    %5 = getelementptr inbounds i32* %4, i32 1
    store i32* %5, i32** %q, align 4
    %6 = load i32** %q, align 4
    %7 = call i32 asm sideeffect "ld $0,$1", "=r,*m"(i32* %6) #1, !srcloc !3
    store i32 %7, i32* %b, align 4
    %8 = load i32* %a, align 4
    %9 = load i32* %b, align 4
    %10 = add nsw i32 %8, %9
    ret i32 %10
}

; Function Attrs: nounwind
define i32 @_Z20inlineasm_constraintv() #0 {
    %foo = alloca i32, align 4
    %n_5 = alloca i32, align 4
    %n5 = alloca i32, align 4
    %n0 = alloca i32, align 4
```

```
%un5 = alloca i32, align 4
%n65536 = alloca i32, align 4
%n_65531 = alloca i32, align 4
store i32 10, i32* %foo, align 4
store i32 -5, i32* %n_5, align 4
store i32 5, i32* %n5, align 4
store i32 0, i32* %n0, align 4
store i32 5, i32* %un5, align 4
store i32 65536, i32* %n65536, align 4
store i32 -65531, i32* %n_65531, align 4
%1 = load i32* %foo, align 4
%2 = call i32 asm sideeffect "addiu $0,$1,$2", "=r,r,I"(i32 %1, i32 -5) #1,
!srcloc !4
store i32 %2, i32* %foo, align 4
%3 = load i32* %foo, align 4
%4 = call i32 asm sideeffect "addiu $0,$1,$2", "=r,r,J"(i32 %3, i32 0) #1,
!srcloc !5
store i32 %4, i32* %foo, align 4
%5 = load i32* %foo, align 4
%6 = call i32 asm sideeffect "addiu $0,$1,$2", "=r,r,K"(i32 %5, i32 5) #1,
!srcloc !6
store i32 %6, i32* %foo, align 4
%7 = load i32* %foo, align 4
%8 = call i32 asm sideeffect "ori $0,$1,$2", "=r,r,L"(i32 %7, i32 65536) #1,
!srcloc !7
store i32 %8, i32* %foo, align 4
%9 = load i32* %foo, align 4
%10 = call i32 asm sideeffect "addiu $0,$1,$2", "=r,r,N"(i32 %9, i32 -65531)
#1, !srcloc !8
store i32 %10, i32* %foo, align 4
%11 = load i32* %foo, align 4
%12 = call i32 asm sideeffect "addiu $0,$1,$2", "=r,r,O"(i32 %11, i32 -5) #1,
!srcloc !9
store i32 %12, i32* %foo, align 4
%13 = load i32* %foo, align 4
%14 = call i32 asm sideeffect "addiu $0,$1,$2", "=r,r,P"(i32 %13, i32 5) #1,
!srcloc !10
store i32 %14, i32* %foo, align 4
%15 = load i32* %foo, align 4
ret i32 %15
}

; Function Attrs: nounwind
define i32 @_Z13inlineasm_argii(i32 %u, i32 %v) #0 {
    %1 = alloca i32, align 4
    %2 = alloca i32, align 4
    %w = alloca i32, align 4
    store i32 %u, i32* %1, align 4
    store i32 %v, i32* %2, align 4
    %3 = load i32* %1, align 4
    %4 = load i32* %2, align 4
    %5 = call i32 asm sideeffect "subu $0,$1,$2", "=r,r,r"(i32 %3, i32 %4) #1,
    !srcloc !11
    store i32 %5, i32* %w, align 4
    %6 = load i32* %w, align 4
    ret i32 %6
}
```

```

; Function Attrs: nounwind
define i32 @_Z16inlineasm_globalv() #0 {
    %c = alloca i32, align 4
    %d = alloca i32, align 4
    %1 = call i32 asm sideeffect "ld $0,$1", "=r,*m"(i32* getelementptr inbounds
([3 x i32]* @g, i32 0, i32 2)) #1, !srcloc !12
    store i32 %1, i32* %c, align 4
    %2 = load i32* %c, align 4
    %3 = call i32 asm sideeffect "addiu $0,$1,1", "=r,r"(i32 %2) #1, !srcloc !13
    store i32 %3, i32* %d, align 4
    %4 = load i32* %d, align 4
    ret i32 %4
}

; Function Attrs: nounwind
define i32 @_Z14test_inlineasmv() #0 {
    %a = alloca i32, align 4
    %b = alloca i32, align 4
    %c = alloca i32, align 4
    %d = alloca i32, align 4
    %e = alloca i32, align 4
    %f = alloca i32, align 4
    %g = alloca i32, align 4
    %1 = call i32 @_Z14inlineasm_adduv()
    store i32 %1, i32* %a, align 4
    %2 = call i32 @_Z18inlineasm_longlongv()
    store i32 %2, i32* %b, align 4
    %3 = call i32 @_Z20inlineasm_constraintv()
    store i32 %3, i32* %c, align 4
    %4 = call i32 @_Z13inlineasm_argii(i32 1, i32 10)
    store i32 %4, i32* %d, align 4
    %5 = call i32 @_Z13inlineasm_argii(i32 6, i32 3)
    store i32 %5, i32* %e, align 4
    %6 = load i32* %e, align 4
    %7 = call i32 asm sideeffect "addiu $0,$1,1", "=r,r"(i32 %6) #1, !srcloc !14
    store i32 %7, i32* %f, align 4
    %8 = call i32 @_Z16inlineasm_globalv()
    store i32 %8, i32* %g, align 4
    %9 = load i32* %a, align 4
    %10 = load i32* %b, align 4
    %11 = add nsw i32 %9, %10
    %12 = load i32* %c, align 4
    %13 = add nsw i32 %11, %12
    %14 = load i32* %d, align 4
    %15 = add nsw i32 %13, %14
    %16 = load i32* %e, align 4
    %17 = add nsw i32 %15, %16
    %18 = load i32* %f, align 4
    %19 = add nsw i32 %17, %18
    %20 = load i32* %g, align 4
    %21 = add nsw i32 %19, %20
    ret i32 %21
}
...
1-160-129-73:input Jonathan$ ~/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/Debug/bin/llc
-march=cpu0 -relocation-model=static -filetype=asm ch11_2.bc -o -
.section .mdebug.abi32
.previous

```

```
.file "ch11_2.bc"
.text
.globl _Z14inlineasm_adduv
.align 2
.type _Z14inlineasm_adduv,@function
.ent _Z14inlineasm_adduv      # @_Z14inlineasm_adduv
_Z14inlineasm_adduv:
.frame $fp,16,$lr
.mask 0x00001000,-4
.set noreorder
.set nomacro
# BB#0:
addiu $sp, $sp, -16
st $fp, 12($sp)           # 4-byte Folded Spill
addu $fp, $sp, $zero
addiu $2, $zero, 10
st $2, 8($fp)
addiu $2, $zero, 15
st $2, 4($fp)
ld $3, 8($fp)
#APP
addu $2,$3,$2
#NO_APP
st $2, 8($fp)
addu $sp, $fp, $zero
ld $fp, 12($sp)           # 4-byte Folded Reload
addiu $sp, $sp, 16
ret $lr
nop
.set macro
.set reorder
.end _Z14inlineasm_adduv
$tmp3:
.size _Z14inlineasm_adduv, ($tmp3)-_Z14inlineasm_adduv

.globl _Z18inlineasm_longlongv
.align 2
.type _Z18inlineasm_longlongv,@function
.ent _Z18inlineasm_longlongv # @_Z18inlineasm_longlongv
_Z18inlineasm_longlongv:
.frame $fp,32,$lr
.mask 0x00001000,-4
.set noreorder
.set nomacro
# BB#0:
addiu $sp, $sp, -32
st $fp, 28($sp)           # 4-byte Folded Spill
addu $fp, $sp, $zero
addiu $2, $zero, 6
st $2, 12($fp)
addiu $2, $zero, 5
st $2, 8($fp)
addiu $2, $fp, 8
st $2, 4($fp)
#APP
ld $2,0($2)
#NO_APP
st $2, 24($fp)
```

```

ld  $2, 4($fp)
addiu $2, $2, 4
st  $2, 0($fp)
#APP
ld $2,0($2)
#NO_APP
st  $2, 20($fp)
ld  $3, 24($fp)
addu $2, $3, $2
addu $sp, $fp, $zero
ld  $fp, 28($sp)           # 4-byte Folded Reload
addiu $sp, $sp, 32
ret $lr
.set macro
.set reorder
.end _Z18inlineasm_longlongv
$tmp7:
.size _Z18inlineasm_longlongv, ($tmp7)-_Z18inlineasm_longlongv

.globl _Z20inlineasm_constraintv
.align 2
.type _Z20inlineasm_constraintv,@function
.ent _Z20inlineasm_constraintv # @_Z20inlineasm_constraintv
_Z20inlineasm_constraintv:
.frame $fp,32,$lr
.mask 0x00001000,-4
.set noreorder
.set nomacro
# BB#0:
addiu $sp, $sp, -32
st  $fp, 28($sp)           # 4-byte Folded Spill
addu $fp, $sp, $zero
addiu $2, $zero, 10
st  $2, 24($fp)
addiu $2, $zero, -5
st  $2, 20($fp)
addiu $2, $zero, 5
st  $2, 16($fp)
addiu $3, $zero, 0
st  $3, 12($fp)
st  $2, 8($fp)
lui $2, 1
st  $2, 4($fp)
lui $2, 65535
ori $2, $2, 5
st  $2, 0($fp)
ld  $2, 24($fp)
#APP
addiu $2,$2,-5
#NO_APP
st  $2, 24($fp)
#APP
addiu $2,$2,0
#NO_APP
st  $2, 24($fp)
#APP
addiu $2,$2,5
#NO_APP

```

```
st $2, 24($fp)
#APP
ori $2,$2,65536
#NO_APP
st $2, 24($fp)
#APP
addiu $2,$2,-65531
#NO_APP
st $2, 24($fp)
#APP
addiu $2,$2,-5
#NO_APP
st $2, 24($fp)
#APP
addiu $2,$2,5
#NO_APP
st $2, 24($fp)
addu $sp, $fp, $zero
ld $fp, 28($sp)           # 4-byte Folded Reload
addiu $sp, $sp, 32
ret $lr
nop
.set macro
.set reorder
.end _Z20inlineasm_constraintv
$tmp11:
.size _Z20inlineasm_constraintv, ($tmp11)-_Z20inlineasm_constraintv

.globl _Z13inlineasm_argii
.align 2
.type _Z13inlineasm_argii,@function
.ent _Z13inlineasm_argii      # @_Z13inlineasm_argii
_Z13inlineasm_argii:
.frame $fp,16,$lr
.mask 0x00001000,-4
.set noreorder
.set nomacro
# BB#0:
addiu $sp, $sp, -16
st $fp, 12($sp)           # 4-byte Folded Spill
addu $fp, $sp, $zero
ld $2, 16($fp)
st $2, 8($fp)
ld $2, 20($fp)
st $2, 4($fp)
ld $3, 8($fp)
#APP
subu $2,$3,$2
#NO_APP
st $2, 0($fp)
addu $sp, $fp, $zero
ld $fp, 12($sp)           # 4-byte Folded Reload
addiu $sp, $sp, 16
ret $lr
nop
.set macro
.set reorder
.end _Z13inlineasm_argii
```

```

$tmp15:
.size _Z13inlineasm_argii, ($tmp15)-_Z13inlineasm_argii

.globl _Z16inlineasm_globalv
.align 2
.type _Z16inlineasm_globalv,@function
.ent _Z16inlineasm_globalv    # @_Z16inlineasm_globalv
_Z16inlineasm_globalv:
.frame $fp,16,$lr
.mask 0x00001000,-4
.set noreorder
.set nomacro
# BB#0:
addiu $sp, $sp, -16
st $fp, 12($sp)          # 4-byte Folded Spill
addu $fp, $sp, $zero
lui $2, %hi(g)
ori $2, $2, %lo(g)
addiu $2, $2, 8
#APP
ld $2,0($2)
#NO_APP
st $2, 8($fp)
#APP
addiu $2,$2,1
#NO_APP
st $2, 4($fp)
addu $sp, $fp, $zero
ld $fp, 12($sp)          # 4-byte Folded Reload
addiu $sp, $sp, 16
ret $lr
nop
.set macro
.set reorder
.end _Z16inlineasm_globalv
$tmp19:
.size _Z16inlineasm_globalv, ($tmp19)-_Z16inlineasm_globalv

.globl _Z14test_inlineasmv
.align 2
.type _Z14test_inlineasmv,@function
.ent _Z14test_inlineasmv    # @_Z14test_inlineasmv
_Z14test_inlineasmv:
.frame $fp,48,$lr
.mask 0x00005000,-4
.set noreorder
.set nomacro
# BB#0:
addiu $sp, $sp, -48
st $lr, 44($sp)          # 4-byte Folded Spill
st $fp, 40($sp)          # 4-byte Folded Spill
addu $fp, $sp, $zero
jsub _Z14inlineasm_adduv
nop
st $2, 36($fp)
jsub _Z18inlineasm_longlongv
nop
st $2, 32($fp)

```

```
jsub _Z20inlineasm_constraintv
nop
st $2, 28($fp)
addiu $2, $zero, 10
st $2, 4($sp)
addiu $2, $zero, 1
st $2, 0($sp)
jsub _Z13inlineasm_argii
nop
st $2, 24($fp)
addiu $2, $zero, 3
st $2, 4($sp)
addiu $2, $zero, 6
st $2, 0($sp)
jsub _Z13inlineasm_argii
nop
st $2, 20($fp)
#APP
addiu $2,$2,1
#NO_APP
st $2, 16($fp)
jsub _Z16inlineasm_globalv
nop
st $2, 12($fp)
ld $3, 32($fp)
ld $4, 36($fp)
addu $3, $4, $3
ld $4, 28($fp)
addu $3, $3, $4
ld $4, 24($fp)
addu $3, $3, $4
ld $4, 20($fp)
addu $3, $3, $4
ld $4, 16($fp)
addu $3, $3, $4
addu $2, $3, $2
addu $sp, $fp, $zero
ld $fp, 40($sp)           # 4-byte Folded Reload
ld $lr, 44($sp)           # 4-byte Folded Reload
addiu $sp, $sp, 48
ret $lr
nop
.set macro
.set reorder
.end _Z14test_inlineasmv
$tmp23:
.size _Z14test_inlineasmv, ($tmp23)-_Z14test_inlineasmv

.type g,@object          # @g
.data
.globl g
.align 2
g:
.4byte 1                 # 0x1
.4byte 2                 # 0x2
.4byte 3                 # 0x3
.size g, 12
```

Clang translates gcc style inline assembly `__asm__` into llvm IR Inline Assembler Expressions first<sup>3</sup>, then replace the variable registers of SSA form to physical registers during llc register allocation stage. From above example, functions LowerAsmOperandForConstraint() and getSingleConstraintMatchWeight() of Cpu0ISelLowering.cpp will create different range of const operand by I, J, K, L, N, O, or P, and register operand by r . For instance, the following `__asm__` will create the llvm asm immediately after it.

```
__asm__ __volatile__("addiu %0,%1,%2"
                     :"=r"(foo) // 15
                     :"r"(foo), "I"(n_5)
                     );
```

```
%2 = call i32 asm sideeffect "addiu $0,$1,$2", "=r,r,I"(i32 %1, i32 -5) #0, !srcloc !1
```

```
__asm__ __volatile__("addiu %0,%1,%2"
                     :"=r"(foo) // 15
                     :"r"(foo), "N"(n_65531)
                     );
```

```
%10 = call i32 asm sideeffect "addiu $0,$1,$2", "=r,r,N"(i32 %9, i32 -65531) #0, !
    ↪srcloc !5
```

```
__asm__ __volatile__("addiu %0,%1,%2"
                     :"=r"(foo) // 15
                     :"r"(foo), "P"(un5)
                     );
```

```
%14 = call i32 asm sideeffect "addiu $0,$1,$2", "=r,r,P"(i32 %13, i32 5) #0, !srcloc !
    ↪7
```

The r in `__asm__` will generate register, %1, in llvm IR asm while I in `__asm__` will generate const operand, -5, in llvm IR asm. Remind, the LowerAsmOperandForConstraint() limit the range of positive or negative const operand value to 16 bits since FL type immediate operand is 16 bits in Cpu0 instruction. So, the range of N is -65535 to -1 and the range of P is 65535 to 1. For any value out of the range, the code in LowerAsmOperandForConstraint() will treat it as error since FL instruction format has limitation of 16 bits.

---

<sup>3</sup> <http://llvm.org/docs/LangRef.html#inline-assembler-expressions>



## C++ SUPPORT

- *Exception handle*
- *Thread variable*
- *Atomic*

This chapter supports some C++ compiler features.

### 12.1 Exception handle

The Chapter11\_2 can be built and run with the C++ polymorphism example code of ch12\_inherit.cpp as follows,

#### Ibdex/input/ch12\_inherit.cpp

```
#ifdef COUT_TEST
#include <iostream>
using namespace std;
#endif

extern "C" int printf(const char *format, ...);
extern "C" int sprintf(char *out, const char *format, ...);

class CPolygon { // _ZTVN10__cxxabiv117__class_type_infoE for parent class
protected:
    int width, height;
public:
    void set_values (int a, int b)
    { width=a; height=b; }
//    virtual int area (void) =0; // __cxa_pure_virtual
    virtual int area (void) { return 0; };
    void printarea (void)
#endif COUT_TEST
// generate IR nvoke, landing, resume and unreachable on iMac
    { cout << this->area() << endl; }
#else
    { printf("%d\n", this->area()); }
#endif
};
```

```
// _ZTVN10__cxxabiv120__si_class_type_infoE for derived class
class CRectangle: public CPolygon {
public:
    int area (void)
    { return (width * height); }
};

class CTriangle: public CPolygon {
public:
    int area (void)
    { return (width * height / 2); }
};

class CAngle: public CPolygon {
public:
    int area (void)
    { return (width * height / 4); }
};

#if 0
int test_cpp_polymorphism() {
    CPolygon * ppoly1 = new CRectangle;           // _Znwm
    CPolygon * ppoly2 = new CTriangle;
    ppoly1->set_values (4,5);
    ppoly2->set_values (4,5);
    ppoly1->printarea();
    ppoly2->printarea();
    delete ppoly1;           // _ZdlPv
    delete ppoly2;
    return 0;
}
#else
int test_cpp_polymorphism() {
    CRectangle poly1;
    CTriangle poly2;
    CAngle poly3;

    CPolygon * ppoly1 = &poly1;
    CPolygon * ppoly2 = &poly2;
    CPolygon * ppoly3 = &poly3;

    ppoly1->set_values (4,5);
    ppoly2->set_values (4,5);
    ppoly3->set_values (4,5);
    ppoly1->printarea();
    ppoly2->printarea();
    ppoly3->printarea();
    if (ppoly1->area() == 20 && ppoly2->area() == 10 && ppoly3->area() == 5)
        return 0;

    return 0;
}
#endif
```

If using cout instead of printf in ch12\_inherit.cpp, it won't generate exception handler IRs on Linux, whereas it will generate invoke, landing, resume and unreachable exception handler IRs on iMac. Example code, ch12\_eh.cpp, which supports **try** and **catch** exception handler as the following will generate these exception handler IRs both on iMac and Linux.

**Ibdex/input/ch12\_eh.cpp**

```

class Ex1 {};
void throw_exception(int a, int b) {
    Ex1 ex1;

    if (a > b) {
        throw ex1;
    }
}

int test_try_catch() {
    try {
        throw_exception(2, 1);
    }
    catch(...) {
        return 1;
    }
    return 0;
}

```

```

JonathantekiiMac:input Jonathan$ clang -c ch12_eh.cpp -emit-llvm
-o ch12_eh.bc
JonathantekiiMac:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/
Debug/bin/llvm-dis ch12_eh.bc -o -

```

```

; ModuleID = 'ch12_eh.bc'
source_filename = "ch12_eh.bc"
target datalayout = "E-m:m-p:32:32-i8:8:32-i16:16:32-i64:64-n32-S64"
target triple = "mips-unknown-linux-gnu"

%class.Ex1 = type { i8 }

$_ZTS3Ex1 = comdat any

$_ZTI3Ex1 = comdat any

 @_ZTVN10__cxxabiv117__class_type_infoE = external global i8*
 @_ZTS3Ex1 = linkonce_ode r constant [5 x i8] c"3Ex1\00", comdat
 @_ZTI3Ex1 = linkonce_ode r constant { i8*, i8* } { i8* bitcast (i8** getelementptr
    inbounds (i8*, i8** @_ZTVN10__cxxabiv117__class_type_infoE, i32 2) to i8*), i8*
    getelementptr inbounds ([5 x i8], [5 x i8]* @_ZTS3Ex1, i32 0, i32 0) }, comdat

define void @_Z15throw_exceptionii(i32 signext %a, i32 signext %b) #0 {
    %1 = alloca i32, align 4
    %2 = alloca i32, align 4
    %ex1 = alloca %class.Ex1, align 1
    store i32 %a, i32* %1, align 4
    store i32 %b, i32* %2, align 4
    %3 = load i32, i32* %1, align 4
    %4 = load i32, i32* %2, align 4
    %5 = icmp sgt i32 %3, %4
    br i1 %5, label %6, label %9

; <label>:6:                                     ; preds = %0
    %7 = call i8* @_cxa_allocate_exception(i32 1) #1

```

```
%8 = bitcast i8* %7 to %class.Ex1*
call void @_cxa_throw(i8* %7, i8* bitcast ({ i8*, i8* }* @_ZTI3Ex1 to i8*), i
8* null) #2
unreachable

; <label>:9:                                     ; preds = %0
ret void
}

declare i8* @_cxa_allocate_exception(i32)

declare void @_cxa_throw(i8*, i8*, i8*)

define i32 @_Z14test_try_catchv() #0 personality i8* bitcast (i32 (...)* @_gxx_
personality_v0 to i8*) {
    %1 = alloca i32, align 4
    %2 = alloca i8*
    %3 = alloca i32
    %4 = alloca i32
    invoke void @_Z15throw_exceptionii(i32 signext 2, i32 signext 1)
        to label %5 unwind label %6

; <label>:5:                                     ; preds = %0
br label %13

; <label>:6:                                     ; preds = %0
%7 = landingpad { i8*, i32 }
    catch i8* null
%8 = extractvalue { i8*, i32 } %7, 0
store i8* %8, i8** %2
%9 = extractvalue { i8*, i32 } %7, 1
store i32 %9, i32* %3
br label %10

; <label>:10:                                    ; preds = %6
%11 = load i8*, i8** %2
%12 = call i8* @_cxa_begin_catch(i8* %11) #1
store i32 1, i32* %1
store i32 1, i32* %4
call void @_cxa_end_catch()
br label %14

; <label>:13:                                    ; preds = %5
store i32 0, i32* %1
br label %14

; <label>:14:                                    ; preds = %13, %10
%15 = load i32, i32* %1
ret i32 %15
}

declare i32 @_gxx_personality_v0(...)

declare i8* @_cxa_begin_catch(i8*)

declare void @_cxa_end_catch()

attributes #0 = { "less-precise-fpmad"="false" "no-frame-pointer-elim"="true" "n
```

```

o-frame-pointer-elim-non-leaf" "no-infs-fp-math"="false" "no-nans-fp-math"="false"
"stack-protector-buffer-size"="8" "target-cpu"="mips32r2" "target-features"=
+mips32r2" "unsafe-fp-math"="false" "use-soft-float"="false" }
attributes #1 = { nounwind }
attributes #2 = { noreturn }

!llvm.ident = !{!0}

!0 = !{!"Apple LLVM version 7.0.0 (clang-700.1.76)"}

```

```

JonathantekiiMac:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/
Debug/bin/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=static -filetype=asm ch12_eh.bc -o -
    .section .mdebug.abi32
    .previous
    .file "ch12_eh.bc"
llc: /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/src/lib/CodeGen/LiveVariables.cpp:133: void llvm:::
LiveVariables::HandleVirtRegUse(unsigned int, llvm::MachineBasicBlock *, llvm
::MachineInstr *): Assertion `MRI->getVRegDef(reg) && "Register use before
def!"' failed.

```

About the IRs of LLVM exception handling, please reference here<sup>1</sup>. Chapter12\_1 supports the llvm IRs of corresponding **try** and **catch** exception C++ keywords. It can compile ch12\_eh.bc as follows,

### **Index/chapters/Chapter12\_1/Cpu0ISelLowering.h**

```

/// If a physical register, this returns the register that receives the
/// exception address on entry to an EH pad.
unsigned
getExceptionPointerRegister(const Constant *PersonalityFn) const override {
    return Cpu0::A0;
}

/// If a physical register, this returns the register that receives the
/// exception typeid on entry to a landing pad.
unsigned
getExceptionSelectorRegister(const Constant *PersonalityFn) const override {
    return Cpu0::A1;
}

```

```

JonathantekiiMac:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/
Debug/bin/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=static -filetype=asm ch12_eh.bc -o -

```

```

.text
.section .mdebug.abi032
.previous
.file "ch12_eh.bc"
.globl _Z15throw_exceptionii
.p2align 2
.type _Z15throw_exceptionii,@function
.ent _Z15throw_exceptionii    # @_Z15throw_exceptionii
_Z15throw_exceptionii:
.cfi_startproc
.frame $fp,40,$lr

```

---

<sup>1</sup> <http://llvm.org/docs/ExceptionHandling.html>

```
.mask    0x00005000,-4
.set    noreorder
.set    nomacro
# BB#0:
addiu  $sp, $sp, -40
$tmp0:
.cfi_def_cfa_offset 40
st    $lr, 36($sp)           # 4-byte Folded Spill
st    $fp, 32($sp)           # 4-byte Folded Spill
$tmp1:
.cfi_offset 14, -4
$tmp2:
.cfi_offset 12, -8
move   $fp, $sp
$tmp3:
.cfi_def_cfa_register 12
st    $4, 28($fp)
st    $5, 24($fp)
ld    $2, 28($fp)
cmp   $sw, $2, $5
jle   $sw, $BB0_2
nop
jmp   $BB0_1
$BB0_2:
move   $sp, $fp
ld    $fp, 32($sp)           # 4-byte Folded Reload
ld    $lr, 36($sp)           # 4-byte Folded Reload
addiu $sp, $sp, 40
ret   $lr
nop
$tmp0:
.addiu $4, $zero, 1
jsub  __cxa_allocate_exception
nop
.addiu $3, $zero, 0
st    $3, 8($sp)
lui   $3, %hi(_ZTI3Ex1)
ori   $5, $3, %lo(_ZTI3Ex1)
addu $4, $zero, $2
jsub  __cxa_throw
nop
.set  macro
.set  reorder
.end  _Z15throw_exceptionii
$func_end0:
.size  _Z15throw_exceptionii, ($func_end0)-_Z15throw_exceptionii
.cfi_endproc

.globl _Z14test_tryCatchv
.p2align 2
.type  _Z14test_tryCatchv,@function
.ent   _Z14test_tryCatchv      # @_Z14test_tryCatchv
_Z14test_tryCatchv:
$tmp7:
$func_begin0 = ($tmp7)
.cfi_startproc
.cfi_personality 0, __gxx_personality_v0
.cfi_lsda 0, $exception
```

```

.frame $fp,40,$lr
.mask 0x00005200,-4
.set noreorder
.set nomacro
# BB#0:
addiu $sp, $sp, -40
$tmp8:
.cfi_def_cfa_offset 40
st $lr, 36($sp)          # 4-byte Folded Spill
st $fp, 32($sp)          # 4-byte Folded Spill
st $9, 28($sp)           # 4-byte Folded Spill
$tmp9:
.cfi_offset 14, -4
$tmp10:
.cfi_offset 12, -8
$tmp11:
.cfi_offset 9, -12
move $fp, $sp
$tmp12:
.cfi_def_cfa_register 12
$tmp4:
addiu $4, $zero, 2
addiu $9, $zero, 1
addu $5, $zero, $9
jsub _Z15throw_exceptionii
nop
$tmp5:
# BB#2:
addiu $2, $zero, 0
st $2, 24($fp)
$BB1_3:
ld $2, 24($fp)
move $sp, $fp
ld $9, 28($sp)           # 4-byte Folded Reload
ld $fp, 32($sp)           # 4-byte Folded Reload
ld $lr, 36($sp)           # 4-byte Folded Reload
addiu $sp, $sp, 40
ret $lr
nop
$BB1_1:
$tmp6:
st $4, 20($fp)
st $5, 16($fp)
ld $4, 20($fp)
jsub __cxa_begin_catch
nop
st $9, 24($fp)
st $9, 12($fp)
jsub __cxa_end_catch
nop
jmp $BB1_3
.set macro
.set reorder
.end _Z14test_tryCatchv
$func_end1:
.size _Z14test_tryCatchv, ($func_end1)-_Z14test_tryCatchv
.cfi_endproc
.section .gcc_except_table, "a", @progbits

```

```
.p2align 2
GCC_except_table1:
$exception0:
    .byte 255          # @LPStart Encoding = omit
    .byte 0            # @TType Encoding = absprt
    .asciz "\242\200\200"      # @TType base offset
    .byte 3            # Call site Encoding = udata4
    .byte 26           # Call site table length
    .4byte ($tmp4)-($func_begin0) # >> Call Site 1 <<
    .4byte ($tmp5)-($tmp4)        #   Call between $tmp4 and $tmp5
    .4byte ($tmp6)-($func_begin0) #     jumps to $tmp6
    .byte 1            #   On action: 1
    .4byte ($tmp5)-($func_begin0) # >> Call Site 2 <<
    .4byte ($func_end1)-($tmp5)  #   Call between $tmp5 and $func_end1
    .4byte 0            #     has no landing pad
    .byte 0            #   On action: cleanup
    .byte 1            # >> Action Record 1 <<
                           #     Catch TypeInfo 1
    .byte 0            #   No further actions
                           # >> Catch TypeInfos <<
    .4byte 0            # TypeInfo 1
.p2align 2

.type _ZTS3Ex1,@object      # @_ZTS3Ex1
.section .rodata._ZTS3Ex1,"aG",@progbits,_ZTS3Ex1,comdat
.weak _ZTS3Ex1
.p2align 2
_ZTS3Ex1:
    .asciz "3Ex1"
    .size _ZTS3Ex1, 5

.type _ZTI3Ex1,@object      # @_ZTI3Ex1
.section .rodata._ZTI3Ex1,"aG",@progbits,_ZTI3Ex1,comdat
.weak _ZTI3Ex1
.p2align 3
_ZTI3Ex1:
    .4byte _ZTVN10__cxxabiv117__class_type_infoE+8
    .4byte _ZTS3Ex1
    .size _ZTI3Ex1, 8

.ident "Apple LLVM version 7.0.0 (clang-700.1.76)"
.section ".note.GNU-stack","",@progbits
```

## 12.2 Thread variable

C++ support thread variable as the following file ch12\_thread\_var.cpp.

### Index/input/ch12\_thread\_var.cpp

```
__thread int a = 0;
thread_local int b = 0; // need option -std=c++11
int test_thread_var()
{
```

```

        a = 2;
        return a;
    }

int test_thread_var_2()
{
    b = 3;
    return b;
}

```

While global variable is a single instance shared by all threads in a process, thread variable has different instances for each different thread in a process. The same thread share the thread variable but different threads have their own thread variable with the same name<sup>2</sup>.

To support thread variable, tlsgd, tlsldm, dtp\_hi, dtp\_lo, gottp, tp\_hi and tp\_lo in both evaluateRelocExpr() of Cpu0AsmParser.cpp and printImpl() of Cpu0MCExpr.cpp are needed, and the following code are required. Most of them are for relocation record handle and display since the thread variable created by OS or language library which support multi-threads programming.

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter12\_1/MCTargetDesc/Cpu0AsmBackend.cpp

```

const MCFixupKindInfo &Cpu0AsmBackend::  

getFixupKindInfo(MCFixupKind Kind) const {
    const static MCFixupKindInfo Infos[Cpu0::NumTargetFixupKinds] = {  

        // This table *must* be in same the order of fixup_* kinds in  

        // Cpu0FixupKinds.h.  

        //  

        // name                  offset  bits  flags

```

{ "fixup_Cpu0_TLSGD",	0,	16,	0 },
{ "fixup_Cpu0_GOTTP",	0,	16,	0 },
{ "fixup_Cpu0_TP_HI",	0,	16,	0 },
{ "fixup_Cpu0_TP_LO",	0,	16,	0 },
{ "fixup_Cpu0_TLSLDM",	0,	16,	0 },
{ "fixup_Cpu0_DTP_HI",	0,	16,	0 },
{ "fixup_Cpu0_DTP_LO",	0,	16,	0 },

```

    ...
};

...
}
```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter12\_1/MCTargetDesc/Cpu0BaseInfo.h

```

namespace Cpu0II {
    /// Target Operand Flag enum.
    enum TOF {
        //=====
        // Cpu0 Specific MachineOperand flags.

```

<sup>2</sup> [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Thread-local\\_storage](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Thread-local_storage)

```
/// MO_TLSGD - Represents the offset into the global offset table at which
// the module ID and TSL block offset reside during execution (General
// Dynamic TLS).
MO_TLSGD,
  
/// MO_TLSLDM - Represents the offset into the global offset table at which
// the module ID and TSL block offset reside during execution (Local
// Dynamic TLS).
MO_TLSLDM,
MO_DTP_HI,
MO_DTP_LO,
  
/// MO_GOTTPREL - Represents the offset from the thread pointer (Initial
// Exec TLS).
MO_GOTTPREL,
  
/// MO_TPREL_HI/LO - Represents the hi and low part of the offset from
// the thread pointer (Local Exec TLS).
MO_TP_HI,
MO_TP_LO,
```

```
...
};  
...
```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter12\_1/MCTargetDesc/Cpu0ELFObjectWriter.cpp

```
unsigned Cpu0ELFObjectWriter::getRelocType(MCContext &Ctx,
                                         const MCValue &Target,
                                         const MCFixup &Fixup,
                                         bool IsPCRel) const {
    // determine the type of the relocation
    unsigned Type = (unsigned)ELF::R_CPU0_NONE;
    unsigned Kind = (unsigned)Fixup.getKind();

    switch (Kind) {
        case Cpu0::fixup_Cpu0_TLSGD:
            Type = ELF::R_CPU0_TLS_GD;
            break;
        case Cpu0::fixup_Cpu0_GOTTPREL:
            Type = ELF::R_CPU0_TLS_GOTTPREL;
            break;
        ...
    }
}
```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter12\_1/MCTargetDesc/Cpu0FixupKinds.h

```
enum Fixups {
```

```

// resulting in - R_CPU0_TLS_GD.
fixup_Cpu0_TLSGD,

// resulting in - R_CPU0_TLS_GOTTPREL.
fixup_Cpu0_GOTTPREL,

// resulting in - R_CPU0_TLS_TPREL_HI16.
fixup_Cpu0_TP_HI,

// resulting in - R_CPU0_TLS_TPREL_LO16.
fixup_Cpu0_TP_LO,

// resulting in - R_CPU0_TLS_LDM.
fixup_Cpu0_TLSLDM,

// resulting in - R_CPU0_TLS_DTP_HI16.
fixup_Cpu0_DTP_HI,

// resulting in - R_CPU0_TLS_DTP_LO16.
fixup_Cpu0_DTP_LO,

```

```

}; ...

```

## Ibdex/chapters/Chapter12\_1/MCTargetDesc/Cpu0MCCodeEmitter.cpp

```

unsigned Cpu0MCCodeEmitter::
getExprOpValue(const MCExpr *Expr, SmallVectorImpl<MCFixup> &Fixups,
               const MCSubtargetInfo &STI) const {

```

```

    case Cpu0MCExpr::CEK_TLSGD:
        FixupKind = Cpu0::fixup_Cpu0_TLSGD;
        break;
    case Cpu0MCExpr::CEK_TLSLDM:
        FixupKind = Cpu0::fixup_Cpu0_TLSLDM;
        break;
    case Cpu0MCExpr::CEK_DTP_HI:
        FixupKind = Cpu0::fixup_Cpu0_DTP_HI;
        break;
    case Cpu0MCExpr::CEK_DTP_LO:
        FixupKind = Cpu0::fixup_Cpu0_DTP_LO;
        break;
    case Cpu0MCExpr::CEK_GOTTPREL:
        FixupKind = Cpu0::fixup_Cpu0_GOTTPREL;
        break;
    case Cpu0MCExpr::CEK_TP_HI:
        FixupKind = Cpu0::fixup_Cpu0_TP_HI;
        break;
    case Cpu0MCExpr::CEK_TP_LO:
        FixupKind = Cpu0::fixup_Cpu0_TP_LO;
        break;

```

```

}; ...

```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter12\_1/Cpu0InstrInfo.td

```
// TlsGd node is used to handle General Dynamic TLS
Cpu0TlsGd : SDNode<"Cpu0ISD::TlsGd", SDTIntUnaryOp>;
```

```
// TpHi and TpLo nodes are used to handle Local Exec TLS
Cpu0TpHi : SDNode<"Cpu0ISD::TpHi", SDTIntUnaryOp>;
Cpu0TpLo : SDNode<"Cpu0ISD::TpLo", SDTIntUnaryOp>;
```

```
let Predicates = [Ch12_1] in {
def : Pat<(Cpu0Hi tglobaltlsaddr:$in), (LUI tglobaltlsaddr:$in)>;
}
```

```
let Predicates = [Ch12_1] in {
def : Pat<(Cpu0Lo tglobaltlsaddr:$in), (ORi ZERO, tglobaltlsaddr:$in)>;
}
```

```
let Predicates = [Ch12_1] in {
def : Pat<(add CPURegs:$hi, (Cpu0Lo tglobaltlsaddr:$lo)),
           (ORi CPURegs:$hi, tglobaltlsaddr:$lo)>;
}
```

```
let Predicates = [Ch12_1] in {
def : WrapperPat<tglobaltlsaddr, ORi, CPURegs>;
}
```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter12\_1/Cpu0SelLowering.cpp

```
Cpu0TargetLowering::Cpu0TargetLowering(const Cpu0TargetMachine &TM,
                                         const Cpu0Subtarget &STI)
    : TargetLowering(TM), Subtarget(STI), ABI(TM.getABI()) {
```

```
    setOperationAction(ISD::GlobalTLSAddress, MVT::i32, Custom);
```

```
    ...
}
```

```
SDValue Cpu0TargetLowering::
LowerOperation(SDValue Op, SelectionDAG &DAG) const
{
    switch (Op.getOpcode())
    {
```

```
        case ISD::GlobalTLSAddress: return lowerGlobalTLSAddress(Op, DAG);
```

```
        ...
        ...
    }
```

```

SDValue Cpu0TargetLowering::
lowerGlobalTLSAddress(SDValue Op, SelectionDAG &DAG) const
{
    // If the relocation model is PIC, use the General Dynamic TLS Model or
    // Local Dynamic TLS model, otherwise use the Initial Exec or
    // Local Exec TLS Model.

    GlobalAddressSDNode *GA = cast<GlobalAddressSDNode>(Op);
    if (DAG.getTarget().Options.EmulatedTLS)
        return LowerTotLSEmulatedModel(GA, DAG);

    SDLoc DL(GA);
    const GlobalValue *GV = GA->getGlobal();
    EVT PtrVT = getPointerTy(DAG.getDataLayout());

    TLSModel::Model model = getTargetMachine().getTLSModel(GV);

    if (model == TLSModel::GeneralDynamic || model == TLSModel::LocalDynamic) {
        // General Dynamic and Local Dynamic TLS Model.
        unsigned Flag = (model == TLSModel::LocalDynamic) ? Cpu0II::MO_TLSLDMD
                                                       : Cpu0II::MO_TLSDG;

        SDValue TGA = DAG.getTargetGlobalAddress(GV, DL, PtrVT, 0, Flag);
        SDValue Argument = DAG.getNode(Cpu0ISD::Wrapper, DL, PtrVT,
                                       getGlobalReg(DAG, PtrVT), TGA);
        unsigned PtrSize = PtrVT.getSizeInBits();
        IntegerType *PtrTy = Type::getIntNTy(*DAG.getContext(), PtrSize);

        SDValue TlsGetAddr = DAG.getExternalSymbol("__tls_get_addr", PtrVT);

        ArgListTy Args;
        ArgListEntry Entry;
        Entry.Node = Argument;
        Entry.Ty = PtrTy;
        Args.push_back(Entry);

        TargetLowering::CallLoweringInfo CLI(DAG);
        CLI.setDebugLoc(DL).setChain(DAG.getEntryNode())
            .setCallee(CallingConv::C, PtrTy, TlsGetAddr, std::move(Args));
        std::pair<SDValue, SDValue> CallResult = LowerCallTo(CLI);

        SDValue Ret = CallResult.first;

        if (model != TLSModel::LocalDynamic)
            return Ret;

        SDValue TGAHi = DAG.getTargetGlobalAddress(GV, DL, PtrVT, 0,
                                                Cpu0II::MO_DTP_HI);
        SDValue Hi = DAG.getNode(Cpu0ISD::Hi, DL, PtrVT, TGAHi);
        SDValue TGALo = DAG.getTargetGlobalAddress(GV, DL, PtrVT, 0,
                                                Cpu0II::MO_DTP_LO);
        SDValue Lo = DAG.getNode(Cpu0ISD::Lo, DL, PtrVT, TGALo);
        SDValue Add = DAG.getNode(ISD::ADD, DL, PtrVT, Hi, Ret);
        return DAG.getNode(ISD::ADD, DL, PtrVT, Add, Lo);
    }

    SDValue Offset;
    if (model == TLSModel::InitialExec) {

```

```

// Initial Exec TLS Model
SDValue TGA = DAG.getTargetGlobalAddress(GV, DL, PtrVT, 0,
                                         Cpu0II::MO_GOTTPREL);
TGA = DAG.getNode(Cpu0ISD::Wrapper, DL, PtrVT, getGlobalReg(DAG, PtrVT),
                  TGA);
Offset =
    DAG.getLoad(PtrVT, DL, DAG.getEntryNode(), TGA, MachinePointerInfo());
} else {
    // Local Exec TLS Model
    assert(model == TLSModel::LocalExec);
    SDValue TGAHi = DAG.getTargetGlobalAddress(GV, DL, PtrVT, 0,
                                                Cpu0II::MO_TP_HI);
    SDValue TGALo = DAG.getTargetGlobalAddress(GV, DL, PtrVT, 0,
                                                Cpu0II::MO_TP_LO);
    SDValue Hi = DAG.getNode(Cpu0ISD::Hi, DL, PtrVT, TGAHi);
    SDValue Lo = DAG.getNode(Cpu0ISD::Lo, DL, PtrVT, TGALo);
    Offset = DAG.getNode(ISD::ADD, DL, PtrVT, Hi, Lo);
}
return Offset;
}

```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter12\_1/Cpu0ISelLowering.h

```
SDValue lowerGlobalTLSAddress(SDValue Op, SelectionDAG &DAG) const;
```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter12\_1/Cpu0MCInstLower.cpp

```

MCOperand Cpu0MCInstLower::LowerSymbolOperand(const MachineOperand &MO,
                                              MachineOperandType MOTY,
                                              unsigned Offset) const {
    MCSymbolRefExpr::VariantKind Kind = MCSymbolRefExpr::VK_None;
    Cpu0MCE Expr::Cpu0ExprKind TargetKind = Cpu0MCE Expr::CEK_None;
    const MCSymbol *Symbol;

    switch(MO.getTargetFlags()) {
        case Cpu0II::MO_TLSGD:
            TargetKind = Cpu0MCE Expr::CEK_TLSGD;
            break;
        case Cpu0II::MO_TSLDM:
            TargetKind = Cpu0MCE Expr::CEK_TSLDM;
            break;
        case Cpu0II::MO_DTP_HI:
            TargetKind = Cpu0MCE Expr::CEK_DTP_HI;
            break;
        case Cpu0II::MO_DTP_LO:
            TargetKind = Cpu0MCE Expr::CEK_DTP_LO;
            break;
        case Cpu0II::MO_GOTTPREL:
            TargetKind = Cpu0MCE Expr::CEK_GOTTPREL;
            break;
        case Cpu0II::MO_TP_HI:
            TargetKind = Cpu0MCE Expr::CEK_TP_HI;
            break;
    }
}
```

```

break;
case Cpu0II::MO_TP_LO:
    TargetKind = Cpu0MCExpr::CEK_TP_LO;
break;

```

```

...
}
...
}

```

```

JonathantekiiMac:input Jonathan$ clang -target mips-unknown-linux-gnu -c
ch12_thread_var.cpp -emit-llvm -std=c++11 -o ch12_thread_var.bc
JonathantekiiMac:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/
Debug/bin/llvm-dis ch12_thread_var.bc -o -

```

```

; ModuleID = 'ch12_thread_var.bc'
source_filename = "ch12_thread_var.bc"
target datalayout = "E-m:m-p:32:32-i8:8:32-i16:16:32-i64:64-n32-S64"
target triple = "mips-unknown-linux-gnu"

@a = thread_local global i32 0, align 4
@b = thread_local global i32 0, align 4

; Function Attrs: nounwind
define i32 @_Z15test_thread_varv() #0 {
    store i32 2, i32* @a, align 4
    %1 = load i32, i32* @a, align 4
    ret i32 %1
}

define i32 @_Z17test_thread_var_2v() #1 {
    %1 = call i32* @_ZTW1b()
    store i32 3, i32* %1, align 4
    %2 = call i32* @_ZTW1b()
    %3 = load i32, i32* %2, align 4
    ret i32 %3
}

define weak_odr hidden i32* @_ZTW1b() {
    ret i32* @b
}

attributes #0 = { nounwind "less-precise-fpmad"="false" "no-frame-pointer-elim"="true"
    "no-frame-pointer-elim-non-leaf" "no-infs-fp-math"="false" "no-nans-fp-math"="false"
    "stack-protector-buffer-size"="8" "target-cpu"="mips32r2" "target-features"="+mips32r2"
    "unsafe-fp-math"="false" "use-soft-float"="false" }
attributes #1 = { "less-precise-fpmad"="false" "no-frame-pointer-elim"="true"
    "no-frame-pointer-elim-non-leaf" "no-infs-fp-math"="false" "no-nans-fp-math"="false"
    "stack-protector-buffer-size"="8" "target-cpu"="mips32r2" "target-features"="+mips32r2"
    "unsafe-fp-math"="false" "use-soft-float"="false" }

!llvm.ident = !{!0}

!0 = !{!"Apple LLVM version 7.0.0 (clang-700.1.76)"}

```

```
JonathantekiiMac:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/
Debug/bin/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm ch12_thread_var.bc
-o -
```

```
.text
.section .mdebug.abi032
.previous
.file "ch12_thread_var.bc"
.globl _Z15test_thread_varv
.p2align 2
.type _Z15test_thread_varv,@function
.ent _Z15test_thread_varv # @_Z15test_thread_varv
_Z15test_thread_varv:
.frame $fp,16,$lr
.mask 0x00005000,-4
.set noreorder
.cupload $t9
.set nomacro
# BB#0:
addiu $sp, $sp, -16
st $lr, 12($sp)           # 4-byte Folded Spill
st $fp, 8($sp)            # 4-byte Folded Spill
move $fp, $sp
.cprestore 8
ld $t9, %call16(__tls_get_addr)($gp)
ori $4, $gp, %tlsgd(a)
jalr $t9
nop
ld $gp, 8($fp)
addiu $3, $zero, 2
st $3, 0($2)
addu $2, $zero, $3
move $sp, $fp
ld $fp, 8($sp)           # 4-byte Folded Reload
ld $lr, 12($sp)           # 4-byte Folded Reload
addiu $sp, $sp, 16
ret $lr
nop
.set macro
.set reorder
.end _Z15test_thread_varv
$func_end0:
.size _Z15test_thread_varv, ($func_end0)-_Z15test_thread_varv

.globl _Z17test_thread_var_2v
.p2align 2
.type _Z17test_thread_var_2v,@function
.ent _Z17test_thread_var_2v # @_Z17test_thread_var_2v
_Z17test_thread_var_2v:
.cfi_startproc
.frame $fp,16,$lr
.mask 0x00005000,-4
.set noreorder
.cupload $t9
.set nomacro
# BB#0:
addiu $sp, $sp, -16
$tmp0:
```

```

.cfi_def_cfa_offset 16
st $lr, 12($sp)          # 4-byte Folded Spill
st $fp, 8($sp)           # 4-byte Folded Spill
$tmp1:
.cfi_offset 14, -4
$tmp2:
.cfi_offset 12, -8
move $fp, $sp
$tmp3:
.cfi_def_cfa_register 12
.cprestore 8
ld $t9, %call16(_ZTW1b) ($gp)
jalr $t9
nop
ld $gp, 8($fp)
addiu $3, $zero, 3
st $3, 0($2)
ld $t9, %call16(_ZTW1b) ($gp)
jalr $t9
nop
ld $gp, 8($fp)
ld $2, 0($2)
move $sp, $fp
ld $fp, 8($sp)          # 4-byte Folded Reload
ld $lr, 12($sp)          # 4-byte Folded Reload
addiu $sp, $sp, 16
ret $lr
nop
.set macro
.set reorder
.end _Z17test_thread_var_2v
$func_end1:
.size _Z17test_thread_var_2v, ($func_end1)-_Z17test_thread_var_2v
.cfi_endproc

.hidden _ZTW1b
.weak _ZTW1b
.p2align 2
.type _ZTW1b,@function
.ent _ZTW1b               # @_ZTW1b
_ZTW1b:
.cfi_startproc
.frame $sp,16,$lr
.mask 0x00004000,-4
.set noreorder
.cupload $t9
.set nomacro
# BB#0:
addiu $sp, $sp, -16
$tmp4:
.cfi_def_cfa_offset 16
st $lr, 12($sp)          # 4-byte Folded Spill
$tmp5:
.cfi_offset 14, -4
.cprestore 8
ld $t9, %call16(__tls_get_addr) ($gp)
ori $4, $gp, %tlsgd(b)
jalr $t9

```

```

nop
ld $gp, 8($sp)
ld $lr, 12($sp)           # 4-byte Folded Reload
addiu $sp, $sp, 16
ret $lr
nop
.set macro
.set reorder
.end _ZTW1b
$func_end2:
.size _ZTW1b, ($func_end2)-_ZTW1b
.cfi_endproc

.type a,@object          # @a
.section .tbss,"awT",@nobits
.globl a
.p2align 2
a:
.4byte 0                 # 0x0
.size a, 4

.type b,@object          # @b
.globl b
.p2align 2
b:
.4byte 0                 # 0x0
.size b, 4

.ident "Apple LLVM version 7.0.0 (clang-700.1.76)"
.section ".note.GNU-stack","",@progbits

```

In pic mode, the `_thread` variable access by call function `__tls_get_addr` with the address of thread variable. The `c++11` standard `thread_local` variable is accessed by calling function `_ZTW1b` which also call the function `__tls_get_addr` to get the `thread_local` variable address. In static mode, the thread variable is accessed by machine instructions as follows,

```

JonathantekiiMac:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/
Debug/bin/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=static -filetype=asm
ch12_thread_var.bc -o -

```

```

.text
.section .mdebug.abi032
.previous
.file "ch12_thread_var.bc"
.globl _Z15test_thread_varv
.p2align 2
.type _Z15test_thread_varv,@function
.ent _Z15test_thread_varv    # @_Z15test_thread_varv
_Z15test_thread_varv:
.frame $fp,8,$lr
.mask 0x00001000,-4
.set noreorder
.set nomacro
# BB#0:
addiu $sp, $sp, -8
st $fp, 4($sp)           # 4-byte Folded Spill

```

```

move    $fp, $sp
lui    $2, %tp_hi(a)
ori    $3, $2, %tp_lo(a)
addiu $2, $zero, 2
st    $2, 0($3)
move   $sp, $fp
ld    $fp, 4($sp)           # 4-byte Folded Reload
addiu $sp, $sp, 8
ret    $lr
nop
.set  macro
.set  reorder
.end  _Z15test_thread_varv
$func_end0:
.size _Z15test_thread_varv, ($func_end0)-_Z15test_thread_varv

.globl _Z17test_thread_var_2v
.p2align 2
.type  _Z17test_thread_var_2v, @function
.ent   _Z17test_thread_var_2v # @_Z17test_thread_var_2v
_Z17test_thread_var_2v:
.cfi_startproc
.frame $fp,16,$lr
.mask  0x00005000,-4
.set  noreorder
.set  nomacro
# BB#0:
addiu $sp, $sp, -16
$tmp0:
.cfi_def_cfa_offset 16
st    $lr, 12($sp)          # 4-byte Folded Spill
st    $fp, 8($sp)           # 4-byte Folded Spill
$tmp1:
.cfi_offset 14, -4
$tmp2:
.cfi_offset 12, -8
move   $fp, $sp
$tmp3:
.cfi_def_cfa_register 12
jsub  _ZTW1b
nop
addiu $3, $zero, 3
st    $3, 0($2)
jsub  _ZTW1b
nop
ld    $2, 0($2)
move   $sp, $fp
ld    $fp, 8($sp)           # 4-byte Folded Reload
ld    $lr, 12($sp)          # 4-byte Folded Reload
addiu $sp, $sp, 16
ret    $lr
nop
.set  macro
.set  reorder
.end  _Z17test_thread_var_2v
$func_end1:
.size _Z17test_thread_var_2v, ($func_end1)-_Z17test_thread_var_2v
.cfi_endproc

```

```

.hidden _ZTW1b
.weak _ZTW1b
.p2align 2
.type _ZTW1b,@function
.ent _ZTW1b           # @_ZTW1b
_ZTW1b:
.cfi_startproc
.frame $sp,0,$lr
.mask 0x00000000,0
.set noreorder
.set nomacro
# BB#0:
lui $2, %tp_hi(b)
ori $2, $2, %tp_lo(b)
ret $lr
nop
.set macro
.set reorder
.end _ZTW1b
$func_end2:
.size _ZTW1b, ($func_end2)-_ZTW1b
.cfi_endproc

.type a,@object          # @a
.section .tbss,"awT",@nobits
.globl a
.p2align 2
a:
.4byte 0                 # 0x0
.size a, 4

.type b,@object          # @b
.globl b
.p2align 2
b:
.4byte 0                 # 0x0
.size b, 4

.ident "Apple LLVM version 7.0.0 (clang-700.1.76)"
.section ".note.GNU-stack","",@progbits

```

While Mips uses rdhwr instruction to access thread variable as below, Cpu0 access thread variable without inventing any new instruction. The thread variables are kept in thread variable memory location which accessed through %tp\_hi and %tp\_lo, and furthermore, this section of memory is protected through kernel mode program. Thus, the user mode program cannot access this area of memory and no space to breathe for hack program.

```

JonathantekiiMac:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/
Debug/bin/llc -march=mips -relocation-model=static -filetype=asm
ch12_thread_var.bc -o -
...
lui $1, %tprel_hi(a)
ori $1, $1, %tprel_lo(a)
.set push
.set mips32r2
rdhwr $3, $29
.set pop

```

```

addu $1, $3, $1
addiu $2, $zero, 2
sw $2, 0($1)
addiu $2, $zero, 2
...
    
```

In static mode, the thread variable is similar to global variable. In general, they are same in IRs, DAGs and machine code translation. List them in the following tables. You can check them with debug option enabled.

Table 12.1: The DAGs of thread variable of static mode

stage	DAG
IR	load i32* @a, align 4;
Legalized selection DAG	(add Cpu0ISD::Hi Cpu0ISD::Lo);
Instruction Selection	ori \$2, \$zero, %tp_lo(a);
•	lui \$3, %tp_hi(a);
•	addu \$3, \$3, \$2;

Table 12.2: The DAGs of local\_thread variable of static mode

stage	DAG
IR	ret i32* @b;
Legalized selection DAG	%0=(add Cpu0ISD::Hi Cpu0ISD::Lo);...
Instruction Selection	ori \$2, \$zero, %tp_lo(a);
•	lui \$3, %tp_hi(a);
•	addu \$3, \$3, \$2;

## 12.3 Atomic

In tradition, C uses different API which provided by OS or library to support multi-thread programming. For example, posix thread API on unix/linux, MS windows API, ..., etc. In order to achieve synchronization to solve race condition between threads, OS provide their own lock or semaphore functions to programmer. But this solution is OS dependent. After c++11, programmer can use atomic to program and run the code on every different platform since the thread and atomic are part of c++ standard. Beside of portability, the other important benefit is the compiler can generate high performance code by the target hardware instructions rather than counting on lock() function only <sup>3 4 5</sup>.

Compare-and-swap operation is used to implement synchronization primitives like semaphores and mutexes, as well as more sophisticated lock-free <sup>6</sup> and wait-free algorithms <sup>7</sup>. For atomic variables, Mips lock instructions, ll and sc, to solve the race condition problem <sup>8</sup>.

<sup>3</sup> [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Memory\\_model\\_%28programming%29](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Memory_model_%28programming%29)

<sup>4</sup> <http://stackoverflow.com/questions/6319146/c11-introduced-a-standardized-memory-model-what-does-it-mean-and-how-is-it-g>

<sup>5</sup> <http://herbsutter.com/2013/02/11/atomic-weapons-the-c-memory-model-and-modern-hardware/>

<sup>6</sup> Such as Mips LL instruction, provides programmer using it to call semaphore api function to block it on waiting queue or run other code to do something else useful when the resource/memory is occupied (LL return not success to access it). On the other hand, if hardware instruction provides WAIT instruction to block the CPU into wait until some condition (memory status) is true. Leave programmer no choice, then it is not lock-free. [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Non-blocking\\_algorithm](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Non-blocking_algorithm)

<sup>7</sup> <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Compare-and-swap>

<sup>8</sup> <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Load-link/store-conditional>

Mips sync and ARM/X86-64 memory-barrier instruction <sup>9</sup> provide synchronization mechanism very efficiently in some scenarios.

In order to support atomic in C++ and java, llvm provides the atomic IRs here <sup>10 11</sup>.

For supporting llvm atomic IRs, the following code added to Chapter12\_1.

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter12\_1/Disassembler/Cpu0Disassembler.cpp

```
static DecodeStatus DecodeMem(MCInst &Inst,
                             unsigned Insn,
                             uint64_t Address,
                             const void *Decoder) {

    if(Inst.getOpcode() == Cpu0::SC) {
        Inst.addOperand(MCOperand::createReg(Reg));
    }

    ...
}
```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter12\_1/Cpu0InstrInfo.td

```
def SDT_Sync : SDTypeProfile<0, 1, [SDTCisVT<0, i32>]>;
def Cpu0Sync : SDNode<"Cpu0ISD::Sync", SDT_Sync, [SDNPHasChain]>;
def PtrRC : Operand<iPTR> {
    let MIOperandInfo = (ops ptr_rc);
    let DecoderMethod = "DecodeCPURegsRegisterClass";
}

// Atomic instructions with 2 source operands (ATOMIC_SWAP & ATOMIC_LOAD_*).
class Atomic2Ops<PatFrag Op, RegisterClass DRC> :
    PseudoSE<(outs DRC:$dst), (ins PtrRC:$ptr, DRC:$incr),
    [(set DRC:$dst, (Op iPTR:$ptr, DRC:$incr))]>

// Atomic Compare & Swap.
class AtomicCmpSwap<PatFrag Op, RegisterClass DRC> :
    PseudoSE<(outs DRC:$dst), (ins PtrRC:$ptr, DRC:$cmp, DRC:$swap),
    [(set DRC:$dst, (Op iPTR:$ptr, DRC:$cmp, DRC:$swap))]>

class LLBase<bits<8> Opc, string opstring, RegisterClass RC, Operand Mem> :
    FMem<Opc, (outs RC:$ra), (ins Mem:$addr),
    !strconcat(opstring, "\t$ra, $addr"), [], IILoad> {
    let mayLoad = 1;
}

class SCBase<bits<8> Opc, string opstring, RegisterOperand RO, Operand Mem> :
```

<sup>9</sup> [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Memory\\_barrier](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Memory_barrier)

<sup>10</sup> <http://llvm.org/docs/Atomics.html>

<sup>11</sup> <http://llvm.org/docs/LangRef.html#ordering>

```

FMem<Opc, (outs RO:$dst), (ins RO:$ra, Mem:$addr),
    !strconcat(opstring, "\t$ra, $addr"), [], IIStore> {
let mayStore = 1;
let Constraints = "$ra = $dst";
}

```

```

let Predicates = [Ch12_1] in {
let usesCustomInserter = 1 in {
def ATOMIC_LOAD_ADD_I8      : Atomic2Ops<atomic_load_add_8, CPURegs>;
def ATOMIC_LOAD_ADD_I16     : Atomic2Ops<atomic_load_add_16, CPURegs>;
def ATOMIC_LOAD_ADD_I32     : Atomic2Ops<atomic_load_add_32, CPURegs>;
def ATOMIC_LOAD_SUB_I8      : Atomic2Ops<atomic_load_sub_8, CPURegs>;
def ATOMIC_LOAD_SUB_I16     : Atomic2Ops<atomic_load_sub_16, CPURegs>;
def ATOMIC_LOAD_SUB_I32     : Atomic2Ops<atomic_load_sub_32, CPURegs>;
def ATOMIC_LOAD_AND_I8      : Atomic2Ops<atomic_load_and_8, CPURegs>;
def ATOMIC_LOAD_AND_I16     : Atomic2Ops<atomic_load_and_16, CPURegs>;
def ATOMIC_LOAD_AND_I32     : Atomic2Ops<atomic_load_and_32, CPURegs>;
def ATOMIC_LOAD_OR_I8       : Atomic2Ops<atomic_load_or_8, CPURegs>;
def ATOMIC_LOAD_OR_I16     : Atomic2Ops<atomic_load_or_16, CPURegs>;
def ATOMIC_LOAD_OR_I32     : Atomic2Ops<atomic_load_or_32, CPURegs>;
def ATOMIC_LOAD_XOR_I8      : Atomic2Ops<atomic_load_xor_8, CPURegs>;
def ATOMIC_LOAD_XOR_I16     : Atomic2Ops<atomic_load_xor_16, CPURegs>;
def ATOMIC_LOAD_XOR_I32     : Atomic2Ops<atomic_load_xor_32, CPURegs>;
def ATOMIC_LOAD_NAND_I8      : Atomic2Ops<atomic_load_nand_8, CPURegs>;
def ATOMIC_LOAD_NAND_I16     : Atomic2Ops<atomic_load_nand_16, CPURegs>;
def ATOMIC_LOAD_NAND_I32     : Atomic2Ops<atomic_load_nand_32, CPURegs>;

def ATOMIC_SWAP_I8          : Atomic2Ops<atomic_swap_8, CPURegs>;
def ATOMIC_SWAP_I16         : Atomic2Ops<atomic_swap_16, CPURegs>;
def ATOMIC_SWAP_I32         : Atomic2Ops<atomic_swap_32, CPURegs>;

def ATOMIC_CMP_SWAP_I8      : AtomicCmpSwap<atomic_cmp_swap_8, CPURegs>;
def ATOMIC_CMP_SWAP_I16     : AtomicCmpSwap<atomic_cmp_swap_16, CPURegs>;
def ATOMIC_CMP_SWAP_I32     : AtomicCmpSwap<atomic_cmp_swap_32, CPURegs>;
}
}

```

```

let Predicates = [Ch12_1] in {
let hasSideEffects = 1 in
def SYNC : Cpu0Inst<(outs), (ins i32imm:$stype), "sync $stype",
    [(Cpu0Sync imm:$stype)], NoItinerary, FrmOther>
{
bits<5> stype;
let Opcode = 0x60;
let Inst{25-11} = 0;
let Inst{10-6} = stype;
let Inst{5-0} = 0;
}
}

```

```

/// Load-linked, Store-conditional
def LL      : LLBase<0x61, "ll", CPURegs, mem>;
def SC      : SCBase<0x62, "sc", RegisterOperand<CPURegs>, mem>;

```

```

def : Cpu0InstAlias<"sync",
    (SYNC 0), 1>;

```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter12\_1/Cpu0ISelLowering.h

```

MachineBasicBlock *
EmitInstrWithCustomInserter(MachineInstr &MI,
                            MachineBasicBlock *MBB) const override;

SDValue lowerATOMIC_FENCE(SDValue Op, SelectionDAG& DAG) const;

bool shouldInsertFencesForAtomic(const Instruction *I) const override {
    return true;
}

/// Emit a sign-extension using shl/sra appropriately.
MachineBasicBlock *emitSignExtendToI32InReg(MachineInstr &MI,
                                              MachineBasicBlock *BB,
                                              unsigned Size, unsigned DstReg,
                                              unsigned SrcReg) const;
MachineBasicBlock *emitAtomicBinary(MachineInstr &MI, MachineBasicBlock *BB,
                                    unsigned Size, unsigned BinOpcode, bool Nand = false) const;
MachineBasicBlock *emitAtomicBinaryPartword(MachineInstr &MI,
                                            MachineBasicBlock *BB, unsigned Size, unsigned BinOpcode,
                                            bool Nand = false) const;
MachineBasicBlock *emitAtomicCmpSwap(MachineInstr &MI,
                                     MachineBasicBlock *BB, unsigned Size) const;
MachineBasicBlock *emitAtomicCmpSwapPartword(MachineInstr &MI,
                                             MachineBasicBlock *BB, unsigned Size) const;

```

### Ibdex/chapters/Chapter12\_1/Cpu0SelLowering.cpp

```
const char *Cpu0TargetLowering::getTargetNodeName(unsigned Opcode) const {
```

```
    case Cpu0ISD::Sync:           return "Cpu0ISD::Sync";
```

```
    ...
}
```

```
Cpu0TargetLowering::Cpu0TargetLowering(const Cpu0TargetMachine &TM,
                                       const Cpu0Subtarget &STI)
: TargetLowering(TM), Subtarget(STI), ABI(TM.getABI()) {
```

```
    setOperationAction(ISD::ATOMIC_LOAD,      MVT::i32,      Expand);
    setOperationAction(ISD::ATOMIC_LOAD,      MVT::i64,      Expand);
    setOperationAction(ISD::ATOMIC_STORE,     MVT::i32,      Expand);
    setOperationAction(ISD::ATOMIC_STORE,     MVT::i64,      Expand);
```

```
SDValue Cpu0TargetLowering::
LowerOperation(SDValue Op, SelectionDAG &DAG) const
{
    switch (Op.getOpcode())
    {
```

```

case ISD::ATOMIC_FENCE:           return lowerATOMIC_FENCE(Op, DAG);

}

MachineBasicBlock *
Cpu0TargetLowering::EmitInstrWithCustomInserter(MachineInstr &MI,
                                                MachineBasicBlock *BB) const {
    switch (MI.getOpcode()) {
    default:
        llvm_unreachable("Unexpected instr type to insert");
    case Cpu0:::ATOMIC_LOAD_ADD_I8:
        return emitAtomicBinaryPartword(MI, BB, 1, Cpu0:::ADDu);
    case Cpu0:::ATOMIC_LOAD_ADD_I16:
        return emitAtomicBinaryPartword(MI, BB, 2, Cpu0:::ADDu);
    case Cpu0:::ATOMIC_LOAD_ADD_I32:
        return emitAtomicBinary(MI, BB, 4, Cpu0:::ADDu);

    case Cpu0:::ATOMIC_LOAD_AND_I8:
        return emitAtomicBinaryPartword(MI, BB, 1, Cpu0:::AND);
    case Cpu0:::ATOMIC_LOAD_AND_I16:
        return emitAtomicBinaryPartword(MI, BB, 2, Cpu0:::AND);
    case Cpu0:::ATOMIC_LOAD_AND_I32:
        return emitAtomicBinary(MI, BB, 4, Cpu0:::AND);

    case Cpu0:::ATOMIC_LOAD_OR_I8:
        return emitAtomicBinaryPartword(MI, BB, 1, Cpu0:::OR);
    case Cpu0:::ATOMIC_LOAD_OR_I16:
        return emitAtomicBinaryPartword(MI, BB, 2, Cpu0:::OR);
    case Cpu0:::ATOMIC_LOAD_OR_I32:
        return emitAtomicBinary(MI, BB, 4, Cpu0:::OR);

    case Cpu0:::ATOMIC_LOAD_XOR_I8:
        return emitAtomicBinaryPartword(MI, BB, 1, Cpu0:::XOR);
    case Cpu0:::ATOMIC_LOAD_XOR_I16:
        return emitAtomicBinaryPartword(MI, BB, 2, Cpu0:::XOR);
    case Cpu0:::ATOMIC_LOAD_XOR_I32:
        return emitAtomicBinary(MI, BB, 4, Cpu0:::XOR);

    case Cpu0:::ATOMIC_LOAD_NAND_I8:
        return emitAtomicBinaryPartword(MI, BB, 1, 0, true);
    case Cpu0:::ATOMIC_LOAD_NAND_I16:
        return emitAtomicBinaryPartword(MI, BB, 2, 0, true);
    case Cpu0:::ATOMIC_LOAD_NAND_I32:
        return emitAtomicBinary(MI, BB, 4, 0, true);

    case Cpu0:::ATOMIC_LOAD_SUB_I8:
        return emitAtomicBinaryPartword(MI, BB, 1, Cpu0:::SUBu);
    case Cpu0:::ATOMIC_LOAD_SUB_I16:
        return emitAtomicBinaryPartword(MI, BB, 2, Cpu0:::SUBu);
    case Cpu0:::ATOMIC_LOAD_SUB_I32:
        return emitAtomicBinary(MI, BB, 4, Cpu0:::SUBu);

    case Cpu0:::ATOMIC_SWAP_I8:
        return emitAtomicBinaryPartword(MI, BB, 1, 0);
    case Cpu0:::ATOMIC_SWAP_I16:
        return emitAtomicBinaryPartword(MI, BB, 2, 0);
}

```

```

case Cpu0::ATOMIC_SWAP_I32:
    return emitAtomicBinary(MI, BB, 4, 0);

case Cpu0::ATOMIC_CMP_SWAP_I8:
    return emitAtomicCmpSwapPartword(MI, BB, 1);
case Cpu0::ATOMIC_CMP_SWAP_I16:
    return emitAtomicCmpSwapPartword(MI, BB, 2);
case Cpu0::ATOMIC_CMP_SWAP_I32:
    return emitAtomicCmpSwap(MI, BB, 4);
}

// This function also handles Cpu0::ATOMIC_SWAP_I32 (when BinOpcode == 0), and
// Cpu0::ATOMIC_LOAD_NAND_I32 (when Nand == true)
MachineBasicBlock *Cpu0TargetLowering::emitAtomicBinary(
    MachineInstr &MI, MachineBasicBlock *BB, unsigned Size, unsigned BinOpcode,
    bool Nand) const {
assert((Size == 4) && "Unsupported size for EmitAtomicBinary.");

MachineFunction *MF = BB->getParent();
MachineRegisterInfo &RegInfo = MF->getRegInfo();
const TargetRegisterClass *RC = getRegClassFor(MVT::getIntegerVT(Size * 8));
const TargetInstrInfo *TII = Subtarget.getInstrInfo();
DebugLoc DL = MI.getDebugLoc();
unsigned LL, SC, AND, XOR, ZERO, BEQ;

LL = Cpu0::LL;
SC = Cpu0::SC;
AND = Cpu0::AND;
XOR = Cpu0::XOR;
ZERO = Cpu0::ZERO;
BEQ = Cpu0::BEQ;

unsigned OldVal = MI.getOperand(0).getReg();
unsigned Ptr = MI.getOperand(1).getReg();
unsigned Incr = MI.getOperand(2).getReg();

unsigned StoreVal = RegInfo.createVirtualRegister(RC);
unsigned AndRes = RegInfo.createVirtualRegister(RC);
unsigned AndRes2 = RegInfo.createVirtualRegister(RC);
unsigned Success = RegInfo.createVirtualRegister(RC);

// insert new blocks after the current block
const BasicBlock *LLVM_BB = BB->getBasicBlock();
MachineBasicBlock *loopMBB = MF->CreateMachineBasicBlock(LLVM_BB);
MachineBasicBlock *exitMBB = MF->CreateMachineBasicBlock(LLVM_BB);
MachineFunction::iterator It = ++BB->getIterator();
MF->insert(It, loopMBB);
MF->insert(It, exitMBB);

// Transfer the remainder of BB and its successor edges to exitMBB.
exitMBB->splice(exitMBB->begin(), BB,
                  std::next(MachineBasicBlock::iterator(MI)), BB->end());
exitMBB->transferSuccessorsAndUpdatePHIs(BB);

// thisMBB:
// ...
// fallthrough --> loopMBB

```

```

BB->addSuccessor(loopMBB);
loopMBB->addSuccessor(loopMBB);
loopMBB->addSuccessor(exitMBB);

// loopMBB:
//   ll oldval, 0(ptr)
//   <binop> storeval, oldval, incr
//   sc success, storeval, 0(ptr)
//   beq success, $0, loopMBB
BB = loopMBB;
BuildMI(BB, DL, TII->get(LL), OldVal).addReg(Ptr).addImm(0);
if (Nand) {
    // and andres, oldval, incr
    // xor storeval, $0, andres
    // xor storeval2, $0, storeval
    BuildMI(BB, DL, TII->get(AND), AndRes).addReg(OldVal).addReg(incr);
    BuildMI(BB, DL, TII->get(XOR), StoreVal).addReg(ZERO).addReg(AndRes);
    BuildMI(BB, DL, TII->get(XOR), AndRes2).addReg(ZERO).addReg(AndRes);
} else if (BinOpcode) {
    // <binop> storeval, oldval, incr
    BuildMI(BB, DL, TII->get(BinOpcode), StoreVal).addReg(OldVal).addReg(incr);
} else {
    StoreVal = Incr;
}
BuildMI(BB, DL, TII->get(SC), Success).addReg(StoreVal).addReg(Ptr).addImm(0);
BuildMI(BB, DL, TII->get(BEQ)).addReg(Success).addReg(ZERO).addMBB(loopMBB);

MI.eraseFromParent(); // The instruction is gone now.

return exitMBB;
}

MachineBasicBlock *Cpu0TargetLowering::emitSignExtendToI32InReg(
    MachineInstr &MI, MachineBasicBlock *BB, unsigned Size, unsigned DstReg,
    unsigned SrcReg) const {
    const TargetInstrInfo *TII = Subtarget.getInstrInfo();
    DebugLoc DL = MI.getDebugLoc();

    MachineFunction *MF = BB->getParent();
    MachineRegisterInfo &RegInfo = MF->getRegInfo();
    const TargetRegisterClass *RC = getRegClassFor(MVT::i32);
    unsigned ScrReg = RegInfo.createVirtualRegister(RC);

    assert(Size < 32);
    int64_t ShiftImm = 32 - (Size * 8);

    BuildMI(BB, DL, TII->get(Cpu0::SHL), ScrReg).addReg(SrcReg).addImm(ShiftImm);
    BuildMI(BB, DL, TII->get(Cpu0::SRA), DstReg).addReg(ScrReg).addImm(ShiftImm);

    return BB;
}

MachineBasicBlock *Cpu0TargetLowering::emitAtomicBinaryPartword(
    MachineInstr &MI, MachineBasicBlock *BB, unsigned Size, unsigned BinOpcode,
    bool Nand) const {
    assert((Size == 1 || Size == 2) &&
           "Unsupported size for EmitAtomicBinaryPartial.");
}

```

```

MachineFunction *MF = BB->getParent();
MachineRegisterInfo &RegInfo = MF->getRegInfo();
const TargetRegisterClass *RC = getRegClassFor(MVT::i32);
const TargetInstrInfo *TII = Subtarget.getInstrInfo();
DebugLoc DL = MI.getDebugLoc();

unsigned Dest = MI.getOperand(0).getReg();
unsigned Ptr = MI.getOperand(1).getReg();
unsigned Incr = MI.getOperand(2).getReg();

unsigned AlignedAddr = RegInfo.createVirtualRegister(RC);
unsigned ShiftAmt = RegInfo.createVirtualRegister(RC);
unsigned Mask = RegInfo.createVirtualRegister(RC);
unsigned Mask2 = RegInfo.createVirtualRegister(RC);
unsigned Mask3 = RegInfo.createVirtualRegister(RC);
unsigned NewVal = RegInfo.createVirtualRegister(RC);
unsigned OldVal = RegInfo.createVirtualRegister(RC);
unsigned Incr2 = RegInfo.createVirtualRegister(RC);
unsigned MaskLSB2 = RegInfo.createVirtualRegister(RC);
unsigned PtrLSB2 = RegInfo.createVirtualRegister(RC);
unsigned MaskUpper = RegInfo.createVirtualRegister(RC);
unsigned AndRes = RegInfo.createVirtualRegister(RC);
unsigned BinOpRes = RegInfo.createVirtualRegister(RC);
unsigned BinOpRes2 = RegInfo.createVirtualRegister(RC);
unsigned MaskedOldVal0 = RegInfo.createVirtualRegister(RC);
unsigned StoreVal = RegInfo.createVirtualRegister(RC);
unsigned MaskedOldVal1 = RegInfo.createVirtualRegister(RC);
unsigned SrlRes = RegInfo.createVirtualRegister(RC);
unsigned Success = RegInfo.createVirtualRegister(RC);

// insert new blocks after the current block
const BasicBlock *LLVM_BB = BB->getBasicBlock();
MachineBasicBlock *loopMBB = MF->CreateMachineBasicBlock(LLVM_BB);
MachineBasicBlock *sinkMBB = MF->CreateMachineBasicBlock(LLVM_BB);
MachineBasicBlock *exitMBB = MF->CreateMachineBasicBlock(LLVM_BB);
MachineFunction::iterator It = ++BB->getIterator();

MF->insert(It, loopMBB);
MF->insert(It, sinkMBB);
MF->insert(It, exitMBB);

// Transfer the remainder of BB and its successor edges to exitMBB.
exitMBB->splice(exitMBB->begin(), BB,
                  std::next(MachineBasicBlock::iterator(MI)), BB->end());
exitMBB->transferSuccessorsAndUpdatePHIs(BB);

BB->addSuccessor(loopMBB);
loopMBB->addSuccessor(loopMBB);
loopMBB->addSuccessor(sinkMBB);
sinkMBB->addSuccessor(exitMBB);

// thisMBB:
//    addiu  masklsb2,$0,-4          # 0xfffffffffc
//    and    alignedaddr,ptr,masklsb2
//    andi   ptrlsb2,ptr,3
//    sll    shiftamt,ptrlsb2,3
//    ori    maskupper,$0,255         # 0xff
//    sll    mask,maskupper,shiftamt

```

```

//      xor      mask2,$0,mask
//      xor      mask3,$0,mask2
//      sll      incr2,incr,shiftamt

int64_t MaskImm = (Size == 1) ? 255 : 65535;
BuildMI(BB, DL, TII->get(Cpu0::ADDiu), MaskLSB2)
    .addReg(Cpu0::ZERO).addImm(-4);
BuildMI(BB, DL, TII->get(Cpu0::AND), AlignedAddr)
    .addReg(Ptr).addReg(MaskLSB2);
BuildMI(BB, DL, TII->get(Cpu0::ANDi), PtrLSB2).addReg(Ptr).addImm(3);
if (Subtarget.isLittle()) {
    BuildMI(BB, DL, TII->get(Cpu0::SHL), ShiftAmt).addReg(PtrLSB2).addImm(3);
} else {
    unsigned Off = RegInfo.createVirtualRegister(RC);
    BuildMI(BB, DL, TII->get(Cpu0::XORi), Off)
        .addReg(PtrLSB2).addImm((Size == 1) ? 3 : 2);
    BuildMI(BB, DL, TII->get(Cpu0::SHL), ShiftAmt).addReg(Off).addImm(3);
}
BuildMI(BB, DL, TII->get(Cpu0::ORi), MaskUpper)
    .addReg(Cpu0::ZERO).addImm(MaskImm);
BuildMI(BB, DL, TII->get(Cpu0::SHLV), Mask)
    .addReg(MaskUpper).addReg(ShiftAmt);
BuildMI(BB, DL, TII->get(Cpu0::XOR), Mask2).addReg(Cpu0::ZERO).addReg(Mask);
BuildMI(BB, DL, TII->get(Cpu0::XOR), Mask3).addReg(Cpu0::ZERO).addReg(Mask2);
BuildMI(BB, DL, TII->get(Cpu0::SHLV), Incr2).addReg(Incr).addReg(ShiftAmt);

// atomic.load.binop
// loopMBB:
//      ll      oldval,0(alignedaddr)
//      binop  binopres,oldval,incr2
//      and    newval,binopres,mask
//      and    maskedoldval0,oldval,mask3
//      or     storeval,maskedoldval0,newval
//      sc     success,storeval,0(alignedaddr)
//      beq   success,$0,loopMBB

// atomic.swap
// loopMBB:
//      ll      oldval,0(alignedaddr)
//      and    newval,incr2,mask
//      and    maskedoldval0,oldval,mask3
//      or     storeval,maskedoldval0,newval
//      sc     success,storeval,0(alignedaddr)
//      beq   success,$0,loopMBB

BB = loopMBB;
unsigned LL = Cpu0::LL;
BuildMI(BB, DL, TII->get(LL), OldVal).addReg(AlignedAddr).addImm(0);
if (Nand) {
    // and andres, oldval, incr2
    // xor binopres, $0, andres
    // xor binopres2, $0, binopres
    // and newval, binopres, mask
    BuildMI(BB, DL, TII->get(Cpu0::AND), AndRes).addReg(OldVal).addReg(Incr2);
    BuildMI(BB, DL, TII->get(Cpu0::XOR), BinOpRes)
        .addReg(Cpu0::ZERO).addReg(AndRes);
    BuildMI(BB, DL, TII->get(Cpu0::XOR), BinOpRes2)
        .addReg(Cpu0::ZERO).addReg(BinOpRes);
}

```

```

BuildMI(BB, DL, TII->get(Cpu0::AND), NewVal).addReg(BinOpRes).addReg(Mask);
} else if (BinOpcode) {
    // <binop> binopres, oldval, incr2
    // and newval, binopres, mask
    BuildMI(BB, DL, TII->get(BinOpcode), BinOpRes).addReg(OldVal).addReg(Incr2);
    BuildMI(BB, DL, TII->get(Cpu0::AND), NewVal).addReg(BinOpRes).addReg(Mask);
} else { // atomic.swap
    // and newval, incr2, mask
    BuildMI(BB, DL, TII->get(Cpu0::AND), NewVal).addReg(Incr2).addReg(Mask);
}

BuildMI(BB, DL, TII->get(Cpu0::AND), MaskedOldVal0)
    .addReg(OldVal).addReg(Mask2);
BuildMI(BB, DL, TII->get(Cpu0::OR), StoreVal)
    .addReg(MaskedOldVal0).addReg(NewVal);
unsigned SC = Cpu0::SC;
BuildMI(BB, DL, TII->get(SC), Success)
    .addReg(StoreVal).addRegAlignedAddr().addImm(0);
BuildMI(BB, DL, TII->get(Cpu0::BEQ))
    .addReg(Success).addReg(Cpu0::ZERO).addMBB(loopMBB);

// sinkMBB:
//     and      maskedoldval1,oldval,mask
//     srl      srlres,maskedoldval1,shiftamt
//     sign_extend dest,srlres
BB = sinkMBB;

BuildMI(BB, DL, TII->get(Cpu0::AND), MaskedOldVal1)
    .addReg(OldVal).addReg(Mask);
BuildMI(BB, DL, TII->get(Cpu0::SHRV), SrlRes)
    .addReg(MaskedOldVal1).addReg(ShiftAmt);
BB = emitSignExtendToI32InReg(MI, BB, Size, Dest, SrlRes);

MI.eraseFromParent(); // The instruction is gone now.

return exitMBB;
}

MachineBasicBlock * Cpu0TargetLowering::emitAtomicCmpSwap(MachineInstr &MI,
                                                       MachineBasicBlock *BB,
                                                       unsigned Size) const {
assert((Size == 4) && "Unsupported size for EmitAtomicCmpSwap.");

MachineFunction *MF = BB->getParent();
MachineRegisterInfo &RegInfo = MF->getRegInfo();
const TargetRegisterClass *RC = getRegClassFor(MVT::getIntegerVT(Size * 8));
const TargetInstrInfo *TII = Subtarget.getInstrInfo();
DebugLoc DL = MI.getDebugLoc();
unsigned LL, SC, ZERO, BNE, BEQ;

LL = Cpu0::LL;
SC = Cpu0::SC;
ZERO = Cpu0::ZERO;
BNE = Cpu0::BNE;
BEQ = Cpu0::BEQ;

unsigned Dest      = MI.getOperand(0).getReg();
unsigned Ptr       = MI.getOperand(1).getReg();

```

```

unsigned OldVal = MI.getOperand(2).getReg();
unsigned NewVal = MI.getOperand(3).getReg();

unsigned Success = RegInfo.createVirtualRegister(RC);

// insert new blocks after the current block
const BasicBlock *LLVM_BB = BB->getBasicBlock();
MachineBasicBlock *loop1MBB = MF->CreateMachineBasicBlock(LLVM_BB);
MachineBasicBlock *loop2MBB = MF->CreateMachineBasicBlock(LLVM_BB);
MachineBasicBlock *exitMBB = MF->CreateMachineBasicBlock(LLVM_BB);
MachineFunction::iterator It = ++BB->getIterator();

MF->insert(It, loop1MBB);
MF->insert(It, loop2MBB);
MF->insert(It, exitMBB);

// Transfer the remainder of BB and its successor edges to exitMBB.
exitMBB->splice(exitMBB->begin(), BB,
                  std::next(MachineBasicBlock::iterator(MI)), BB->end());
exitMBB->transferSuccessorsAndUpdatePHIs(BB);

// thisMBB:
// ...
// fallthrough --> loop1MBB
BB->addSuccessor(loop1MBB);
loop1MBB->addSuccessor(exitMBB);
loop1MBB->addSuccessor(loop2MBB);
loop2MBB->addSuccessor(loop1MBB);
loop2MBB->addSuccessor(exitMBB);

// loop1MBB:
//   ll dest, 0(ptr)
//   bne dest, oldval, exitMBB
BB = loop1MBB;
BuildMI(BB, DL, TII->get(LL), Dest).addReg(Ptr).addImm(0);
BuildMI(BB, DL, TII->get(BNE))
    .addReg(Dest).addReg(OldVal).addMBB(exitMBB);

// loop2MBB:
//   sc success, newval, 0(ptr)
//   beq success, $0, loop1MBB
BB = loop2MBB;
BuildMI(BB, DL, TII->get(SC), Success)
    .addReg(NewVal).addReg(Ptr).addImm(0);
BuildMI(BB, DL, TII->get(BEQ))
    .addReg(Success).addReg(ZERO).addMBB(loop1MBB);

MI.eraseFromParent(); // The instruction is gone now.

return exitMBB;
}

MachineBasicBlock *
Cpu0TargetLowering::emitAtomicCmpSwapPartword(MachineInstr &MI,
                                              MachineBasicBlock *BB,
                                              unsigned Size) const {
    assert((Size == 1 || Size == 2) &&
           "Unsupported size for EmitAtomicCmpSwapPartial.");
}

```

```
MachineFunction *MF = BB->getParent();
MachineRegisterInfo &RegInfo = MF->getRegInfo();
const TargetRegisterClass *RC = getRegClassFor(MVT::i32);
const TargetInstrInfo *TII = Subtarget.getInstrInfo();
DebugLoc DL = MI.getDebugLoc();

unsigned Dest      = MI.getOperand(0).getReg();
unsigned Ptr       = MI.getOperand(1).getReg();
unsigned CmpVal   = MI.getOperand(2).getReg();
unsigned NewVal   = MI.getOperand(3).getReg();

unsigned AlignedAddr = RegInfo.createVirtualRegister(RC);
unsigned ShiftAmt = RegInfo.createVirtualRegister(RC);
unsigned Mask = RegInfo.createVirtualRegister(RC);
unsigned Mask2 = RegInfo.createVirtualRegister(RC);
unsigned Mask3 = RegInfo.createVirtualRegister(RC);
unsigned ShiftedCmpVal = RegInfo.createVirtualRegister(RC);
unsigned OldVal = RegInfo.createVirtualRegister(RC);
unsigned MaskedOldVal0 = RegInfo.createVirtualRegister(RC);
unsigned ShiftedNewVal = RegInfo.createVirtualRegister(RC);
unsigned MaskLSB2 = RegInfo.createVirtualRegister(RC);
unsigned PtrLSB2 = RegInfo.createVirtualRegister(RC);
unsigned MaskUpper = RegInfo.createVirtualRegister(RC);
unsigned MaskedCmpVal = RegInfo.createVirtualRegister(RC);
unsigned MaskedNewVal = RegInfo.createVirtualRegister(RC);
unsigned MaskedOldVal1 = RegInfo.createVirtualRegister(RC);
unsigned StoreVal = RegInfo.createVirtualRegister(RC);
unsigned SrlRes = RegInfo.createVirtualRegister(RC);
unsigned Success = RegInfo.createVirtualRegister(RC);

// insert new blocks after the current block
const BasicBlock *LLVM_BB = BB->getBasicBlock();
MachineBasicBlock *loop1MBB = MF->CreateMachineBasicBlock(LLVM_BB);
MachineBasicBlock *loop2MBB = MF->CreateMachineBasicBlock(LLVM_BB);
MachineBasicBlock *sinkMBB = MF->CreateMachineBasicBlock(LLVM_BB);
MachineBasicBlock *exitMBB = MF->CreateMachineBasicBlock(LLVM_BB);
MachineFunction::iterator It = ++BB->getIterator();

MF->insert(It, loop1MBB);
MF->insert(It, loop2MBB);
MF->insert(It, sinkMBB);
MF->insert(It, exitMBB);

// Transfer the remainder of BB and its successor edges to exitMBB.
exitMBB->splice(exitMBB->begin(), BB,
                  std::next(MachineBasicBlock::iterator(MI)), BB->end());
exitMBB->transferSuccessorsAndUpdatePHIs(BB);

BB->addSuccessor(loop1MBB);
loop1MBB->addSuccessor(sinkMBB);
loop1MBB->addSuccessor(loop2MBB);
loop2MBB->addSuccessor(loop1MBB);
loop2MBB->addSuccessor(sinkMBB);
sinkMBB->addSuccessor(exitMBB);

// FIXME: computation of newval2 can be moved to loop2MBB.
// thisMBB:
```

```

// addiu    masklsb2,$0,-4          # 0xfffffffffc
// and     alignedaddr,ptr,masklsb2
// andi   ptrlsb2,ptr,3
// shl    shiftamt,ptrlsb2,3
// ori    maskupper,$0,255          # 0xff
// shl    mask,maskupper,shiftamt
// xor    mask2,$0,mask
// xor    mask3,$0,mask2
// andi   maskedcmpval,cmpval,255
// shl    shiftedcmpval,maskedcmpval,shiftamt
// andi   maskednewval,newval,255
// shl    shiftednewval,maskednewval,shiftamt
int64_t MaskImm = (Size == 1) ? 255 : 65535;
BuildMI(BB, DL, TII->get(Cpu0::ADDiu), MaskLSB2)
    .addReg(Cpu0::ZERO).addImm(-4);
BuildMI(BB, DL, TII->get(Cpu0::AND), AlignedAddr)
    .addReg(Ptr).addReg(MaskLSB2);
BuildMI(BB, DL, TII->get(Cpu0::ANDi), PtrLSB2).addReg(Ptr).addImm(3);
if (Subtarget.isLittle()) {
    BuildMI(BB, DL, TII->get(Cpu0::SHL), ShiftAmt).addReg(PtrLSB2).addImm(3);
} else {
    unsigned Off = RegInfo.createVirtualRegister(RC);
    BuildMI(BB, DL, TII->get(Cpu0::XORi), Off)
        .addReg(PtrLSB2).addImm((Size == 1) ? 3 : 2);
    BuildMI(BB, DL, TII->get(Cpu0::SHL), ShiftAmt).addReg(Off).addImm(3);
}
BuildMI(BB, DL, TII->get(Cpu0::ORi), MaskUpper)
    .addReg(Cpu0::ZERO).addImm(MaskImm);
BuildMI(BB, DL, TII->get(Cpu0::SHLV), Mask)
    .addReg(MaskUpper).addReg(ShiftAmt);
BuildMI(BB, DL, TII->get(Cpu0::XOR), Mask2).addReg(Cpu0::ZERO).addReg(Mask);
BuildMI(BB, DL, TII->get(Cpu0::XOR), Mask3).addReg(Cpu0::ZERO).addReg(Mask2);
BuildMI(BB, DL, TII->get(Cpu0::ANDi), MaskedCmpVal)
    .addReg(CmpVal).addImm(MaskImm);
BuildMI(BB, DL, TII->get(Cpu0::SHLV), ShiftedCmpVal)
    .addReg(MaskedCmpVal).addReg(ShiftAmt);
BuildMI(BB, DL, TII->get(Cpu0::ANDi), MaskedNewVal)
    .addReg(NewVal).addImm(MaskImm);
BuildMI(BB, DL, TII->get(Cpu0::SHLV), ShiftedNewVal)
    .addReg(MaskedNewVal).addReg(ShiftAmt);

// loop1MBB:
//    ll      oldval,0(alginedaddr)
//    and    maskedoldval0,oldval,mask
//    bne    maskedoldval0,shiftedcmpval,sinkMBB
BB = loop1MBB;
unsigned LL = Cpu0::LL;
BuildMI(BB, DL, TII->get(LL), OldVal).addReg(AlignedAddr).addImm(0);
BuildMI(BB, DL, TII->get(Cpu0::AND), MaskedOldVal0)
    .addReg(OldVal).addReg(Mask);
BuildMI(BB, DL, TII->get(Cpu0::BNE))
    .addReg(MaskedOldVal0).addReg(ShiftedCmpVal).addMBB(sinkMBB);

// loop2MBB:
//    and    maskedoldval1,oldval,mask3
//    or     storeval,maskedoldval1,shiftednewval
//    sc     success,storeval,0(alignedaddr)
//    beq    success,$0,loop1MBB

```

```

BB = loop2MBB;
BuildMI(BB, DL, TII->get(Cpu0::AND), MaskedOldVal1)
    .addReg(OldVal).addReg(Mask3);
BuildMI(BB, DL, TII->get(Cpu0::OR), StoreVal)
    .addReg(MaskedOldVal1).addReg(ShiftedNewVal);
unsigned SC = Cpu0::SC;
BuildMI(BB, DL, TII->get(SC), Success)
    .addReg(StoreVal).addReg(AignedAddr).addImm(0);
BuildMI(BB, DL, TII->get(Cpu0::BEQ))
    .addReg(Success).addReg(Cpu0::ZERO).addMBB(loop1MBB);

// sinkMBB:
//     srl      srlres,maskedoldval0,shiftamt
//     sign_extend dest,srlres
BB = sinkMBB;

BuildMI(BB, DL, TII->get(Cpu0::SHRV), SrlRes)
    .addReg(MaskedOldVal0).addReg(ShiftAmt);
BB = emitSignExtendToI32InReg(MI, BB, Size, Dest, SrlRes);

MI.eraseFromParent(); // The instruction is gone now.

return exitMBB;
}

```

```

SDValue Cpu0TargetLowering::lowerATOMIC_FENCE(SDValue Op,
                                              SelectionDAG &DAG) const {
    // FIXME: Need pseudo-fence for 'singlethread' fences
    // FIXME: Set SType for weaker fences where supported/appropriate.
    unsigned SType = 0;
    SDLoc DL(Op);
    return DAG.getNode(Cpu0ISD::Sync, DL, MVT::Other, Op.getOperand(0),
                        DAG.getConstant(SType, DL, MVT::i32));
}

```

### [Index/chapters/Chapter12\\_1/Cpu0RegisterInfo.h](#)

```

/// Code Generation virtual methods...
const TargetRegisterClass *getPointerRegClass(const MachineFunction &MF,
                                              unsigned Kind) const override;

```

### [Index/chapters/Chapter12\\_1/Cpu0RegisterInfo.cpp](#)

```

const TargetRegisterClass *
Cpu0RegisterInfo::getPointerRegClass(const MachineFunction &MF,
                                     unsigned Kind) const {
    return &Cpu0::CPURegsRegClass;
}

```

**Ibdex/chapters/Chapter12\_1/Cpu0SEISelLowering.cpp**

```
Cpu0SETargetLowering::Cpu0SETargetLowering(const Cpu0TargetMachine &TM,
                                         const Cpu0Subtarget &STI)
    : Cpu0TargetLowering(TM, STI) {
    setOperationAction(ISD::ATOMIC_FENCE, MVT::Other, Custom);
    ...
}
```

**Ibdex/chapters/Chapter12\_1/Cpu0TargetMachine.cpp**

```
/// Cpu0 Code Generator Pass Configuration Options.
class Cpu0PassConfig : public TargetPassConfig {
    void addIRPasses() override;
    ...
};

void Cpu0PassConfig::addIRPasses() {
    TargetPassConfig::addIRPasses();
    addPass(createAtomicExpandPass(&getCpu0TargetMachine()));
}
```

Since SC instruction uses RegisterOperand type in Cpu0InstrInfo.td and SC uses FMem node which DecoderMethod is “DecodeMem”, the DecodeMem() of Cpu0Disassembler.cpp need to be changed as above.

The atomic node defined in “let usesCustomInserter = 1 in” of Cpu0InstrInfo.td tells llvm calling EmitInstrWithCustomInserter() of Cpu0ISelLowering.cpp. For example, “def ATOMIC\_LOAD\_ADD\_I8 : Atomic2Ops<atomic\_load\_add\_8, CPURegs>;” will calling EmitInstrWithCustomInserter() with Machine Instruction Opcode “ATOMIC\_LOAD\_ADD\_I8” when it meets IR “load atomic i8\*”.

The “setInsertFencesForAtomic(true);” in Cpu0ISelLowering.cpp will trigger addIRPasses() of Cpu0TargetMachine.cpp, then the createAtomicExpandPass() of addIRPasses() will create llvm IR ATOMIC\_FENCE. Next, the lowerATOMIC\_FENCE() of Cpu0ISelLowering.cpp will create Cpu0ISD::Sync when it meets IR ATOMIC\_FENCE since “setOperationAction(ISD::ATOMIC\_FENCE, MVT::Other, Custom);” of Cpu0SEISelLowering.cpp. Finally the pattern defined in Cpu0InstrInfo.td translate it into instruction “sync” by “def SYNC” and alias “SYNC 0”.

This part of Cpu0 backend code is same with Mips except Cpu0 has no instruction “nor”.

List the atomic IRs, corresponding DAGs and Opcode as the following table.

Table 12.3: The atomic related IRs, their corresponding DAGs and Opcode of Cpu0ISelLowering.cpp

IR	DAG	Opcode
load atomic	AtomicLoad	ATOMIC_CMP_SWAP_XXX
store atomic	AtomicStore	ATOMIC_SWAP_XXX
atomicrmw add	AtomicLoadAdd	ATOMIC_LOAD_ADD_XXX
atomicrmw sub	AtomicLoadSub	ATOMIC_LOAD_SUB_XXX
atomicrmw xor	AtomicLoadXor	ATOMIC_LOAD_XOR_XXX
atomicrmw and	AtomicLoadAnd	ATOMIC_LOAD_AND_XXX
atomicrmw nand	AtomicLoadNand	ATOMIC_LOAD_NAND_XXX
atomicrmw or	AtomicLoadOr	ATOMIC_LOAD_OR_XXX
cmpxchg	AtomicCmpSwapWithSuccess	ATOMIC_CMP_SWAP_XXX
atomicrmw xchg	AtomicLoadSwap	ATOMIC_SWAP_XXX

Input files atomics.ll and atomics-fences.ll include the llvm atomic IRs test. Input files ch12\_atomics.cpp and ch12\_atomics-fences.cpp are the C++ files for generating llvm atomic IRs. The C++ files need to run with clang options “clang++ -pthread -std=c++11”.

## VERIFY BACKEND ON VERILOG SIMULATOR

- *Create verilog simulator of Cpu0*
- *Verify backend*
- *Other llvm based tools for Cpu0 processor*

Until now, we have an llvm backend to compile C or assembly as the white part of the following figure. If without global variable, the elf obj can be dumped to hex file via `llvm-objdump -d` which finished in Chapter ELF Support.

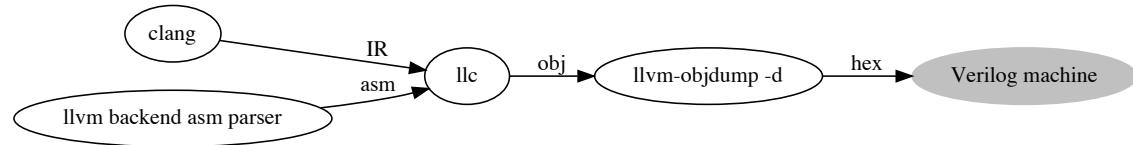


Figure: Cpu0 backend without linker

This chapter will implement Cpu0 instructions by Verilog language as the gray part of above figure. With this Verilog machine, we can run this hex program on the Cpu0 Verilog machine on PC and see the Cpu0 instructions execution result.

### 13.1 Create verilog simulator of Cpu0

Verilog language is an IEEE standard in IC design. There are a lot of books and documents for this language. Free documents exist in Web sites <sup>1</sup> <sup>2</sup> <sup>3</sup> <sup>4</sup> <sup>5</sup>. Verilog also called as Verilog HDL but not VHDL. VHDL is the same purpose language which compete against Verilog. About VHDL reference here <sup>6</sup>. Example code, lbdex/verilog/cpu0.v, is the Cpu0 design in Verilog. In Appendix A, we have downloaded and installed Icarus Verilog tool both on iMac and Linux. The cpu0.v is a simple design with only few hundreds lines of code totally. This implementation hasn't the pipeline features, but through implement the delay slot simulation (SIMULATE\_DELAY\_SLOT part of code), the exact pipeline machine cycles can be calculated.

<sup>1</sup> <http://ccckmit.wikidot.com/ve:main>

<sup>2</sup> <http://www.ece.umd.edu/courses/enee359a/>

<sup>3</sup> [http://www.ece.umd.edu/courses/enee359a/verilog\\_tutorial.pdf](http://www.ece.umd.edu/courses/enee359a/verilog_tutorial.pdf)

<sup>4</sup> [http://d1.amobbs.com/bbs\\_upload782111/files\\_33/ourdev\\_585395BQ8J9A.pdf](http://d1.amobbs.com/bbs_upload782111/files_33/ourdev_585395BQ8J9A.pdf)

<sup>5</sup> <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Verilog>

<sup>6</sup> <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/VHDL>

Verilog is a C like language in syntax and this book is a compiler book, so we list the cpu0.v as well as the building command without explanation as below. We expect readers can understand the Verilog code just with a little patience in reading it. There are two type of I/O according computer architecture. One is memory mapped I/O, the other is instruction I/O. Cpu0 uses memory mapped I/O where memory address 0x80000 as the output port. When meet the instruction “`st $ra, cx($rb)`”, where `cx($rb)` is 0x80000, Cpu0 displays the content as follows,

```
ST : begin
  ...
  if (R[b]+c16 == `IOADDR) begin
    outw(R[a]);
  end
end
```

### Ibdex/verilog/cpu0.v

```
`define SIMULATE_DELAY_SLOT
`define MEMSIZE    'h80000
`define MEMEMPTY   8'hFF
`define NULL       8'h00
`define IOADDR     'h80000 // IO mapping address

// Operand width
`define INT32 2'b11      // 32 bits
`define INT24 2'b10      // 24 bits
`define INT16 2'b01      // 16 bits
`define BYTE   2'b00      // 8  bits

`define EXE 3'b000
`define RESET 3'b001
`define ABORT 3'b010
`define IRQ 3'b011
`define ERROR 3'b100

// Reference web: http://ccckmit.wikidot.com/ocs:cpu0
module cpu0(input clock, reset, input [2:0] itype, output reg [2:0] tick,
            output reg [31:0] ir, pc, mar, mdr, inout [31:0] dbus,
            output reg m_en, m_rw, output reg [1:0] m_size,
            input cfg);
  reg signed [31:0] R [0:15];
  reg signed [31:0] C0R [0:1]; // co-processor 0 register
  // High and Low part of 64 bit result
  reg [7:0] op;
  reg [3:0] a, b, c;
  reg [4:0] c5;
  reg signed [31:0] c12, c16, c24, Ra, Rb, Rc, pc0; // pc0: instruction pc
  reg [31:0] uc16, URa, URb, URc, HI, LO, CF, tmp;
  reg [63:0] cycles;

  // register name
  `define SP    R[13]    // Stack Pointer
  `define LR    R[14]    // Link Register
  `define SW    R[15]    // Status Word

  // C0 register name
  `define PC    C0R[0]   // Program Counter
  `define EPC   C0R[1]   // exception PC value

  // SW Flage
```

```

`define I2    `SW[16] // Hardware Interrupt 1, IO1 interrupt, status,
            // 1: in interrupt
`define I1    `SW[15] // Hardware Interrupt 0, timer interrupt, status,
            // 1: in interrupt
`define IO    `SW[14] // Software interrupt, status, 1: in interrupt
`define I   `SW[13] // Interrupt, 1: in interrupt
`define I2E   `SW[12] // Hardware Interrupt 1, IO1 interrupt, Enable
`define I1E   `SW[11] // Hardware Interrupt 0, timer interrupt, Enable
`define IOE   `SW[10] // Software Interrupt Enable
`define IE    `SW[9] // Interrupt Enable
`define M     `SW[8:6] // Mode bits, itype
`define D     `SW[5] // Debug Trace
`define V     `SW[3] // Overflow
`define C     `SW[2] // Carry
`define Z     `SW[1] // Zero
`define N     `SW[0] // Negative flag

`define LE    CF[0] // Endian bit, Big Endian:0, Little Endian:1
// Instruction Opcode
parameter [7:0] NOP=8'h00, LD=8'h01, ST=8'h02, LB=8'h03, LBu=8'h04, SB=8'h05,
LH=8'h06, LHu=8'h07, SH=8'h08, ADDiu=8'h09, MOVZ=8'h0A, MOVN=8'h0B, ANDi=8'h0C,
ORi=8'h0D, XORi=8'h0E, LUi=8'h0F,
CMP=8'h10,
ADDu=8'h11, SUBu=8'h12, ADD=8'h13, SUB=8'h14, CLZ=8'h15, CLO=8'h16, MUL=8'h17,
AND=8'h18, OR=8'h19, XOR=8'h1A,
ROL=8'h1B, ROR=8'h1C, SRA=8'h1D, SHL=8'h1E, SHR=8'h1F,
SRAV=8'h20, SHLV=8'h21, SHRV=8'h22, ROLV=8'h23, RORV=8'h24,
`ifdef CPU0II
    SLTi=8'h26, SLTiu=8'h27, SLT=8'h28, SLTu=8'h29,
    BEQ=8'h37, BNE=8'h38,
`endif
    JEQ=8'h30, JNE=8'h31, JLT=8'h32, JGT=8'h33, JLE=8'h34, JGE=8'h35,
    JMP=8'h36,
    JALR=8'h39, BAL=8'h3A, JSUB=8'h3B, RET=8'h3C,
    MULT=8'h41, MULTu=8'h42, DIV=8'h43, DIVu=8'h44,
    MFHI=8'h46, MFLO=8'h47, MTHI=8'h48, MTLO=8'h49,
    MFC0=8'h50, MTC0=8'h51, C0MOV=8'h52;

reg [0:0] inExe = 0;
reg [2:0] state, next_state;
reg [2:0] st_taskInt, ns_taskInt;
parameter Reset=3'h0, Fetch=3'h1, Decode=3'h2, Execute=3'h3, MemAccess=3'h4,
        WriteBack=3'h5;
integer i;
`ifndef SIMULATE_DELAY_SLOT
reg [0:0] nextInstIsDelaySlot;
reg [0:0] isDelaySlot;
reg signed [31:0] delaySlotNextPC;
`endif

//transform data from the memory to little-endian form
task changeEndian(input [31:0] value, output [31:0] changeEndian); begin
    changeEndian = {value[7:0], value[15:8], value[23:16], value[31:24]};
end endtask

// Read Memory Word
task memReadStart(input [31:0] addr, input [1:0] size); begin
    mar = addr;      // read(m[addr])

```

```
m_rw = 1;      // Access Mode: read
m_en = 1;      // Enable read
m_size = size;
end endtask

// Read Memory Finish, get data
task memReadEnd(output [31:0] data); begin
    mdr = dbus; // get momory, dbus = m[addr]
    data = mdr; // return to data
    m_en = 0; // read complete
end endtask

// Write memory -- addr: address to write, data: date to write
task memWriteStart(input [31:0] addr, input [31:0] data, input [1:0] size);
begin
    mar = addr; // write(m[addr], data)
    mdr = data;
    m_rw = 0; // access mode: write
    m_en = 1; // Enable write
    m_size = size;
end endtask

task memWriteEnd; begin // Write Memory Finish
    m_en = 0; // write complete
end endtask

task regSet(input [3:0] i, input [31:0] data); begin
    if (i != 0) R[i] = data;
end endtask

task C0regSet(input [3:0] i, input [31:0] data); begin
    if (i < 2) C0R[i] = data;
end endtask

task PCSet(input [31:0] data); begin
`ifdef SIMULATE_DELAY_SLOT
    nextInstIsDelaySlot = 1;
    delaySlotNextPC = data;
`else
    `PC = data;
`endif
end endtask

task retValSet(input [3:0] i, input [31:0] data); begin
    if (i != 0)
`ifdef SIMULATE_DELAY_SLOT
        R[i] = data + 4;
`else
        R[i] = data;
`endif
end endtask

task regHILOSet(input [31:0] data1, input [31:0] data2); begin
    HI = data1;
    LO = data2;
end endtask

// output a word to Output port (equal to display the word to terminal)
```

```

task outw(input [31:0] data); begin
    if (`LE) begin // Little Endian
        changeEndian(data, data);
    end
    if (data[7:0] != 8'h00) begin
        $write("%c", data[7:0]);
        if (data[15:8] != 8'h00)
            $write("%c", data[15:8]);
        if (data[23:16] != 8'h00)
            $write("%c", data[23:16]);
        if (data[31:24] != 8'h00)
            $write("%c", data[31:24]);
    end
end endtask

// output a character (a byte)
task outc(input [7:0] data); begin
    $write("%c", data);
end endtask

task taskInterrupt(input [2:0] iMode); begin
if (inExe == 0) begin
    case (iMode)
        `RESET: begin
            `PC = 0; tick = 0; R[0] = 0; `SW = 0; `LR = -1;
            `IE = 0; `IOE = 1; `I1E = 1; `I2E = 1;
            `I = 0; `IO = 0; `I1 = 0; `I2 = 0; inExe = 1;
            `LE = cfg;
            cycles = 0;
        end
        `ABORT: begin `PC = 4; end
        `IRQ: begin `PC = 8; `IE = 0; inExe = 1; end
        `ERROR: begin `PC = 12; end
    endcase
end
$display("taskInterrupt(%3b)", iMode);
end endtask

task taskExecute; begin
    tick = tick+1;
    case (state)
        Fetch: begin // Tick 1 : instruction fetch, throw PC to address bus,
                    // memory.read(m[PC])
            memReadStart(`PC, `INT32);
            pc0 = `PC;
        `ifdef SIMULATE_DELAY_SLOT
            if (nextInstIsDelaySlot == 1) begin
                isDelaySlot = 1;
                nextInstIsDelaySlot = 0;
                `PC = delaySlotNextPC;
            end
            else begin
                if (isDelaySlot == 1) isDelaySlot = 0;
                `PC = `PC+4;
            end
        `else
            `PC = `PC+4;
        `endif
    end

```

```

next_state = Decode;
end
Decode: begin // Tick 2 : instruction decode, ir = m[PC]
    memReadEnd(ir); // IR = dbus = m[PC]
    {op,a,b,c} = ir[31:12];
    c24 = $signed(ir[23:0]);
    c16 = $signed(ir[15:0]);
    uc16 = ir[15:0];
    c12 = $signed(ir[11:0]);
    c5 = ir[4:0];
    Ra = R[a];
    Rb = R[b];
    Rc = R[c];
    URa = R[a];
    URb = R[b];
    URC = R[c];
    next_state = Execute;
end
Execute: begin // Tick 3 : instruction execution
    case (op)
        NOP: ;
        // load and store instructions
        LD:   memReadStart(Rb+c16, `INT32);           // LD Ra, [Rb+Cx]; Ra<=[Rb+Cx]
        ST:   memWriteStart(Rb+c16, Ra, `INT32);        // ST Ra, [Rb+Cx]; Ra>[Rb+Cx]
        // LB Ra, [Rb+Cx]; Ra<=(byte) [Rb+Cx]
        LB:   memReadStart(Rb+c16, `BYTE);
        // LBu Ra, [Rb+Cx]; Ra<=(byte) [Rb+Cx]
        LBu:  memReadStart(Rb+c16, `BYTE);
        // SB Ra, [Rb+Cx]; Ra=>(byte) [Rb+Cx]
        SB:   memWriteStart(Rb+c16, Ra, `BYTE);
        LH:   memReadStart(Rb+c16, `INT16);           // LH Ra, [Rb+Cx]; Ra<=(2bytes) [Rb+Cx]
        LHu:  memReadStart(Rb+c16, `INT16);           // LHu Ra, [Rb+Cx]; Ra<=(2bytes) [Rb+Cx]
        // SH Ra, [Rb+Cx]; Ra=>(2bytes) [Rb+Cx]
        SH:   memWriteStart(Rb+c16, Ra, `INT16);
        // Conditional move
        MOVZ: if (Rc==0) regSet(a, Rb);             // move if Rc equal to 0
        MOVN: if (Rc!=0) regSet(a, Rb);             // move if Rc not equal to 0
        // Mathematic
        ADDiu: regSet(a, Rb+c16);                  // ADDiu Ra, Rb+Cx; Ra<=Rb+Cx
        CMP:  begin `N=(Rb-Rc<0); `Z=(Rb-Rc==0); end // CMP Rb, Rc; SW=(Rb >= Rc)
        ADDu: regSet(a, Rb+Rc);                    // ADDu Ra,Rb,Rc; Ra<=Rb+Rc
        ADD:  begin regSet(a, Rb+Rc); if (a < Rb) `V = 1; else `V = 0;
              if (`V) begin `I0 = 1; `I = 1; end
        end                                         // ADD Ra,Rb,Rc; Ra<=Rb+Rc
        SUBu: regSet(a, Rb-Rc);                   // SUBu Ra,Rb,Rc; Ra<=Rb-Rc
        SUB:  begin regSet(a, Rb-Rc); if (Rb < 0 && Rc > 0 && a >= 0)
              `V = 1; else `V = 0;
              if (`V) begin `I0 = 1; `I = 1; end
        end                                         // SUB Ra,Rb,Rc; Ra<=Rb-Rc
        CLZ:  begin
              for (i=0; (i<32)&&((Rb&32'h80000000)==32'h00000000); i=i+1) begin
                  Rb=Rb<<1;
              end
              regSet(a, i);
        end
        CLO:  begin
              for (i=0; (i<32)&&((Rb&32'h80000000)==32'h80000000); i=i+1) begin

```

```

        Rb=Rb<<1;
    end
    regSet(a, i);
end
MUL:   regSet(a, Rb*Rc);           // MUL Ra,Rb,Rc;      Ra<=Rb*Rc
DIVu:  regHILOSet(URa%URb, URa/URb); // DIVu URa,URb; HI<=URa%URb;
        // LO<=URa/URb
        // without exception overflow
DIV:   begin regHILOSet(Ra%Rb, Ra/Rb);
        if ((Ra < 0 && Rb < 0) || (Ra == 0)) `V = 1;
        else `V =0; end // DIV Ra,Rb; HI<=Ra%Rb; LO<=Ra/Rb; With overflow
AND:   regSet(a, Rb&Rc);           // AND Ra,Rb,Rc; Ra<=(Rb and Rc)
ANDi:  regSet(a, Rb&uc16);        // ANDi Ra,Rb,c16; Ra<=(Rb and c16)
OR:    regSet(a, Rb|Rc);          // OR Ra,Rb,Rc; Ra<=(Rb or Rc)
ORi:   regSet(a, Rb|uc16);        // ORi Ra,Rb,c16; Ra<=(Rb or c16)
XOR:   regSet(a, Rb^Rc);          // XOR Ra,Rb,Rc; Ra<=(Rb xor Rc)
XORi:  regSet(a, Rb^uc16);        // XORi Ra,Rb,c16; Ra<=(Rb xor c16)
LUI:   regSet(a, uc16<<16);
SHL:   regSet(a, Rb<<c5);        // Shift Left; SHL Ra,Rb,Cx; Ra<=(Rb << Cx)
SRA:   regSet(a, (Rb&'h80000000) | (Rb>>c5));
        // Shift Right with signed bit fill;
        // SHR Ra,Rb,Cx; Ra<=(Rb&0x80000000) | (Rb>>Cx)
SHR:   regSet(a, Rb>>c5);        // Shift Right with 0 fill;
        // SHR Ra,Rb,Cx; Ra<=(Rb >> Cx)
SHLV:  regSet(a, Rb<<Rc);        // Shift Left; SHLV Ra,Rb,Rc; Ra<=(Rb << Rc)
SRAV:  regSet(a, (Rb&'h80000000) | (Rb>>Rc));
        // Shift Right with signed bit fill;
        // SHRV Ra,Rb,Rc; Ra<=(Rb&0x80000000) | (Rb>>Rc)
SHRV:  regSet(a, Rb>>Rc);        // Shift Right with 0 fill;
        // SHRV Ra,Rb,Rc; Ra<=(Rb >> Rc)
ROL:   regSet(a, (Rb<<c5) | (Rb>>(32-c5))); // Rotate Left;
ROR:   regSet(a, (Rb>>c5) | (Rb<<(32-c5))); // Rotate Right;
ROLV:  begin // Can set Rc to -32<=Rc<=32 more efficiently.
        while (Rc < -32) Rc=Rc+32;
        while (Rc > 32) Rc=Rc-32;
        regSet(a, (Rb<<Rc) | (Rb>>(32-Rc))); // Rotate Left;
end
RORV: begin
        while (Rc < -32) Rc=Rc+32;
        while (Rc > 32) Rc=Rc-32;
        regSet(a, (Rb>>Rc) | (Rb<<(32-Rc))); // Rotate Right;
end
MFLO: regSet(a, LO);           // MFLO Ra; Ra<=LO
MFHI: regSet(a, HI);           // MFHI Ra; Ra<=HI
MTLO: LO = Ra;                // MTLO Ra; LO<=Ra
MTHI: HI = Ra;                // MTHI Ra; HI<=Ra
MULT: {HI, LO}=Ra*Rb;          // MULT Ra,Rb; HI<=((Ra*Rb)>>32);
        // LO<=((Ra*Rb) and 0x00000000ffffffffff);
        // with exception overflow
MULTu: {HI, LO}=URa*URb;       // MULT URa,URb; HI<=((URa*URb)>>32);
        // LO<=((URa*URb) and 0x00000000ffffffffff);
        // without exception overflow
MFC0: regSet(a, C0R[b]);        // MFC0 a, b; Ra<=C0R[Rb]
MTC0: C0regSet(a, Rb);         // MTC0 a, b; C0R[a]<=Rb
COMOV: C0regSet(a, C0R[b]);     // COMOV a, b; C0R[a]<=C0R[b]
`ifdef CPU0II
// set
SLT:   if (Rb < Rc) R[a]=1; else R[a]=0;

```

```

SLTu: if (Rb < Rc) R[a]=1; else R[a]=0;
SLTi: if (Rb < c16) R[a]=1; else R[a]=0;
SLTi: if (Rb < c16) R[a]=1; else R[a]=0;
// Branch Instructions
BEQ:   if (Ra==Rb) PCSet(`PC+c16);
BNE:   if (Ra!=Rb) PCSet(`PC+c16);
`endif
// Jump Instructions
JEQ:   if (`Z) PCSet(`PC+c24);           // JEQ Cx; if SW(=) PC PC+Cx
JNE:   if (!`Z) PCSet(`PC+c24);          // JNE Cx; if SW(!=) PC PC+Cx
JLT:   if (`N) PCSet(`PC+c24);          // JLT Cx; if SW(<) PC PC+Cx
JGT:   if (!`N&&!`Z) PCSet(`PC+c24);    // JGT Cx; if SW(>) PC PC+Cx
JLE:   if (`N || `Z) PCSet(`PC+c24);    // JLE Cx; if SW(<=) PC PC+Cx
JGE:   if (!`N || `Z) PCSet(`PC+c24);    // JGE Cx; if SW(>=) PC PC+Cx
JMP:   `PC = `PC+c24;                  // JMP Cx; PC <= PC+Cx
JALR: begin retValSet(a, `PC); PCSet(Rb); end // JALR Ra,Rb; Ra<=PC; PC<=Rb
BAL:   begin `LR = `PC; `PC = `PC+c24; end // BAL Cx; LR<=PC; PC<=PC+Cx
JSUB: begin retValSet(14, `PC); PCSet(`PC+c24); end // JSUB Cx; LR<=PC; PC
`=<PC+Cx
RET:   begin PCSet(Ra); end             // RET; PC <= Ra
default :
$display("%4dns %8x : OP code %8x not support", $stime, pc0, op);
endcase
if (`IE && `I && (`IOE && `IO || `I1E && `I1 || `I2E && `I2)) begin
`EPC = `PC;
next_state = Fetch;
inExe = 0;
end else
next_state = MemAccess;
end
MemAccess: begin
case (op)
ST, SB, SH :
memWriteEnd();                      // write memory complete
endcase
next_state = WriteBack;
end
WriteBack: begin // Read/Write finish, close memory
case (op)
LB, LBu :
memReadEnd(R[a]);                  //read memory complete
LH, LHu :
memReadEnd(R[a]);
LD : begin
memReadEnd(R[a]);
if (`D)
$display("%4dns %8x : %8x m[%-04x+%-04x]=%8x SW=%8x", $stime, pc0,
ir, R[b], c16, R[a], `SW);
end
endcase
case (op)
LB : begin
if (R[a] > 8'h7f) R[a]=R[a]|32'hffff80;
end
LH : begin
if (R[a] > 16'h7fff) R[a]=R[a]|32'hffff8000;
end
endcase

```

```

case (op)
MULT, MULTu, DIV, DIVu, MTHI, MTLO :
    if (`D)
        $display("%4dns %8x : %8x HI=%8x LO=%8x SW=%8x", $stime, pc0, ir, HI,
        LO, `SW);
ST : begin
    if (`D)
        $display("%4dns %8x : %8x m[%-04x+%-04x]=%8x SW=%8x", $stime, pc0,
        ir, R[b], c16, R[a], `SW);
    if (R[b]+c16 == `IOADDR) begin
        outw(R[a]);
    end
end
SB : begin
    if (`D)
        $display("%4dns %8x : %8x m[%-04x+%-04x]=%c SW=%8x, R[a]=%8x",
        $stime, pc0, ir, R[b], c16, R[a][7:0], `SW, R[a]);
    if (R[b]+c16 == `IOADDR) begin
        if (`LE)
            outc(R[a][7:0]);
        else
            outc(R[a][7:0]);
    end
end
MFC0, MTC0 :
    if (`D)
        $display("%4dns %8x : %8x R[%02d]=-8x C0R[%02d]=-8x SW=%8x",
        $stime, pc0, ir, a, R[a], a, C0R[a], `SW);
C0MOV :
    if (`D)
        $display("%4dns %8x : %8x C0R[%02d]=-8x C0R[%02d]=-8x SW=%8x",
        $stime, pc0, ir, a, C0R[a], b, C0R[b], `SW);
default :
    if (`D) // Display the written register content
        $display("%4dns %8x : %8x R[%02d]=-8x SW=%8x", $stime, pc0, ir,
        a, R[a], `SW);
endcase
if (`PC < 0) begin
    $display("total cpu cycles = %-d", cycles);
    $display("RET to PC < 0, finished!");
    $finish;
end
next_state = Fetch;
end
endcase
end endtask

always @(posedge clock) begin
if (inExe == 0 && (state == Fetch) && (`IE && `I) && (`IOE && `IO)) begin
// software int
`M = `IRQ;
taskInterrupt(`IRQ);
m_en = 0;
state = Fetch;
end else if (inExe == 0 && (state == Fetch) && (`IE && `I) &&
(`I1E && `I1) || (`I2E && `I2))) begin
`M = `IRQ;
taskInterrupt(`IRQ);

```

```

m_en = 0;
state = Fetch;
end else if (inExe == 0 && itype == `RESET) begin
// Condition itype == `RESET must after the other `IE condition
taskInterrupt(`RESET);
`M = `RESET;
state = Fetch;
end else begin
`ifdef TRACE
`D = 1; // Trace register content at beginning
`endif
taskExecute();
state = next_state;
end
pc = `PC;
cycles = cycles + 1;
end
endmodule

module memory0(input clock, reset, en, rw, input [1:0] m_size,
               input [31:0] abus, dbus_in, output [31:0] dbus_out,
               output cfg);
reg [31:0] mconfig [0:0];
reg [7:0] m [0:`MEMSIZE-1];
reg [31:0] data;

integer i;

`define LE mconfig[0][0:0] // Endian bit, Big Endian:0, Little Endian:1

initial begin
// erase memory
for (i=0; i < `MEMSIZE; i=i+1) begin
    m[i] = `MEMEMPTY;
end
// load config from file to memory
$readmemh("cpu0.config", mconfig);
// load program from file to memory
$readmemh("cpu0.hex", m);
// display memory contents
`ifdef TRACE
for (i=0; i < `MEMSIZE && (m[i] != `MEMEMPTY || m[i+1] != `MEMEMPTY ||
    m[i+2] != `MEMEMPTY || m[i+3] != `MEMEMPTY); i=i+4) begin
    $display("%8x: %8x", i, {m[i], m[i+1], m[i+2], m[i+3]});
end
`endif
end

always @(clock or abus or en or rw or dbus_in)
begin
if (abus >= 0 && abus <= `MEMSIZE-4) begin
if (en == 1 && rw == 0) begin // r_w==0:write
    data = dbus_in;
    if (`LE) begin // Little Endian
        case (m_size)
`BYTE: {m[abus]} = dbus_in[7:0];
`INT16: {m[abus], m[abus+1]} = {dbus_in[7:0], dbus_in[15:8]};
`INT24: {m[abus], m[abus+1], m[abus+2]} =

```

```

        {dbus_in[7:0], dbus_in[15:8], dbus_in[23:16]};
`INT32: {m[abus], m[abus+1], m[abus+2], m[abus+3]} =
        {dbus_in[7:0], dbus_in[15:8], dbus_in[23:16], dbus_in[31:24]};
      endcase
    end else begin // Big Endian
      case (m_size)
        `BYTE: {m[abus]} = dbus_in[7:0];
        `INT16: {m[abus], m[abus+1]} = dbus_in[15:0];
        `INT24: {m[abus], m[abus+1], m[abus+2]} = dbus_in[23:0];
        `INT32: {m[abus], m[abus+1], m[abus+2], m[abus+3]} = dbus_in;
      endcase
    end
  end else if (en == 1 && rw == 1) begin // r_w==1:read
    if (`LE) begin // Little Endian
      case (m_size)
        `BYTE: data = {8'h00,     8'h00,     8'h00,     m[abus]};
        `INT16: data = {8'h00,     8'h00,     m[abus+1], m[abus]};
        `INT24: data = {8'h00,     m[abus+2], m[abus+1], m[abus]};
        `INT32: data = {m[abus+3], m[abus+2], m[abus+1], m[abus]};
      endcase
    end else begin // Big Endian
      case (m_size)
        `BYTE: data = {8'h00, 8'h00, 8'h00, m[abus]};
        `INT16: data = {8'h00, 8'h00, m[abus], m[abus+1]};
        `INT24: data = {8'h00, m[abus], m[abus+1], m[abus+2]};
        `INT32: data = {m[abus], m[abus+1], m[abus+2], m[abus+3]};
      endcase
    end
  end else
    data = 32'hZZZZZZZZ;
end else
  data = 32'hZZZZZZZZ;
end
assign dbus_out = data;
assign cfg = mconfig[0][0:0];
endmodule

module main;
  reg clock;
  reg [2:0] itype;
  wire [2:0] tick;
  wire [31:0] pc, ir, mar, mdr, dbus;
  wire m_en, m_rw;
  wire [1:0] m_size;
  wire cfg;

  cpu0 cpu(.clock(clock), .itype(itype), .pc(pc), .tick(tick), .ir(ir),
  .mar(mar), .mdr(mdr), .dbus(dbus), .m_en(m_en), .m_rw(m_rw), .m_size(m_size),
  .cfg(cfg));

  memory0 mem(.clock(clock), .reset(reset), .en(m_en), .rw(m_rw),
  .m_size(m_size), .abus(mar), .dbus_in(mdr), .dbus_out(dbus), .cfg(cfg));
initial
begin
  clock = 0;
  itype = `RESET;
  #300000000 $finish;

```

```
end

always #10 clock=clock+1;

endmodule
```

### Ibdex/verilog/Makefile

```
#TRACE=-D TRACE
all:
    iverilog ${TRACE} -o cpu0Is cpu0.v
    iverilog ${TRACE} -D CPU0II -o cpu0IIs cpu0.v

.PHONY: clean
clean:
    rm -rf cpu0.hex cpu0Is cpu0IIs
    rm -f *~ cpu0.config
```

Since Cpu0 Verilog machine supports both big and little endian, the memory and cpu module both have a wire connecting each other. The endian information stored in ROM of memory module, and memory module send the information when it is up according the following code,

### Ibdex/verilog/cpu0.v

```
assign cfg = mconfig[0][0:0];
...
wire cfg;

cpu0 cpu(.clock(clock), .itype(itype), .pc(pc), .tick(tick), .ir(ir),
.mar(mar), .mdr(mdr), .dbus(dbus), .m_en(m_en), .m_rw(m_rw), .m_size(m_size),
.cfg(cfg));

memory0 mem(.clock(clock), .reset(reset), .en(m_en), .rw(m_rw),
.m_size(m_size), .abus(mar), .dbus_in(mdr), .dbus_out(dbus), .cfg(cfg));
```

Instead of setting endian tranfer in memory module, the endian transfer can also be set in CPU module, and memory moudle always return with big endian. I am not an professional engineer in FPGA/CPU hardware design. But according book “Computer Architecture: A Quantitative Approach”, some operations may have no tolerance in time of execution stage. Any endian swap will make the clock cycle time longer and affect the CPU performance. So, I set the endian transfer in memory module. In system with bus, it will be set in bus system I think.

## 13.2 Verify backend

Now let's compile ch\_run\_backend.cpp as below. Since code size grows up from low to high address and stack grows up from high to low address. \$sp is set at 0x7fffc because assuming cpu0.v uses 0x80000 bytes of memory.

**Ibdex/input/start.h**

```
#define SET_SW \
asm("andi $sw, $zero, 0"); \
asm("ori $sw, $sw, 0x1e00"); // enable all interrupts

#define initRegs() \
asm("addiu $1, $zero, 0"); \
asm("addiu $2, $zero, 0"); \
asm("addiu $3, $zero, 0"); \
asm("addiu $4, $zero, 0"); \
asm("addiu $5, $zero, 0"); \
asm("addiu $t9, $zero, 0"); \
asm("addiu $7, $zero, 0"); \
asm("addiu $8, $zero, 0"); \
asm("addiu $9, $zero, 0"); \
asm("addiu $10, $zero, 0"); \
SET_SW; \
asm("addiu $fp, $zero, 0");
```

**Ibdex/input/boot.cpp**

```
#include "start.h"

// boot:
asm("boot:");
// asm("_start:");
asm("jmp 12"); // RESET: jmp RESET_START;
asm("jmp 4"); // ERROR: jmp ERR_HANDLE;
asm("jmp 4"); // IRQ: jmp IRQ_HANDLE;
asm("jmp -4"); // ERR_HANDLE: jmp ERR_HANDLE; (loop forever)

// RESET_START:
initRegs();
asm("addiu $gp, $ZERO, 0");
asm("addiu $lr, $ZERO, -1");

asm("lui $sp, 0x7");
asm("addiu $sp, $sp, 0xffffc");
asm("mfco $3, $pc");
asm("addiu $3, $3, 0x8"); // Assume main() entry point is at the next next
                           // instruction.
asm("jr $3");
asm("nop");
```

**Ibdex/input/print.h**

```
#ifndef _PRINT_H_
#define _PRINT_H_

#define OUT_MEM 0x80000
```

```
void print_char(const char c);
void dump_mem(unsigned char *str, int n);
void print_string(const char *str);
void print_integer(int x);
#endif
```

### Index/input/print.cpp

```
#include "print.h"
#include "itoa.cpp"

// For memory IO
void print_char(const char c)
{
    char *p = (char*)OUT_MEM;
    *p = c;

    return;
}

void print_string(const char *str)
{
    const char *p;

    for (p = str; *p != '\0'; p++)
        print_char(*p);
    print_char(*p);
    print_char('\n');

    return;
}

// For memory IO
void print_integer(int x)
{
    char str[INT_DIGITS + 2];
    itoa(str, x);
    print_string(str);

    return;
}
```

### Index/input/ch\_nolld.h

```
#include "debug.h"
#include "boot.cpp"

#include "print.h"

int test_nolld();
```

**lbdex/input/ch\_nolld.cpp**

```
#define TEST_ROXV
#define RUN_ON_VERILOG

#include "print.cpp"

#include "ch4_1_math.cpp"
#include "ch4_1_rotate.cpp"
#include "ch4_1_mult2.cpp"
#include "ch4_1_mod.cpp"
#include "ch4_1_div.cpp"
#include "ch4_2_logic.cpp"
#include "ch7_1_localpointer.cpp"
#include "ch7_1_char_short.cpp"
#include "ch7_1_bool.cpp"
#include "ch7_1_longlong.cpp"
#include "ch7_1_vector.cpp"
#include "ch8_1_ctrl.cpp"
#include "ch8_2_deluselessjmp.cpp"
#include "ch8_2_select.cpp"
#include "ch9_3_vararg.cpp"
#include "ch9_3_stacksave.cpp"
#include "ch9_3_bswap.cpp"
#include "ch9_3_alloc.cpp"
#include "ch11_2.cpp"

// Test build only for the following files on build-run_backend.sh since it
// needs lld linker support.
// Test in build-slink.sh
#include "ch6_1.cpp"
#include "ch9_1_struct.cpp"
#include "ch9_1_constructor.cpp"
#include "ch9_3_template.cpp"
#include "ch12_inherit.cpp"

void test_asm_build()
{
    #include "ch11_1.cpp"
#ifdef CPU032II
    #include "ch11_1_2.cpp"
#endif
}

int test_rotate()
{
    int a = test_rotate_left1(); // rolv 4, 30 = 1
    int b = test_rotate_left(); // rol 8, 30 = 2
    int c = test_rotate_right(); // rorv 1, 30 = 4

    return (a+b+c);
}

int test_nolld()
{
    bool pass = true;
    int a = 0;
```

```
a = test_math();
print_integer(a); // a = 74
if (a != 74) pass = false;
a = test_rotate();
print_integer(a); // a = 7
if (a != 7) pass = false;
a = test_mult();
print_integer(a); // a = 0
if (a != 0) pass = false;
a = test_mod();
print_integer(a); // a = 0
if (a != 0) pass = false;
a = test_div();
print_integer(a); // a = 253
if (a != 253) pass = false;
a = test_local_pointer();
print_integer(a); // a = 3
if (a != 3) pass = false;
a = (int)test_load_bool();
print_integer(a); // a = 1
if (a != 1) pass = false;
a = test_andorxornot();
print_integer(a); // a = 14
if (a != 14) pass = false;
a = test_setxx();
print_integer(a); // a = 3
if (a != 3) pass = false;
a = test_signed_char();
print_integer(a); // a = -126
if (a != -126) pass = false;
a = test_unsigned_char();
print_integer(a); // a = 130
if (a != 130) pass = false;
a = test_signed_short();
print_integer(a); // a = -32766
if (a != -32766) pass = false;
a = test_unsigned_short();
print_integer(a); // a = 32770
if (a != 32770) pass = false;
long long b = test_longlong();
print_integer((int)(b >> 32)); // 393307
if ((int)(b >> 32) != 393307) pass = false;
print_integer((int)b); // 16777222
if ((int)(b) != 16777222) pass = false;
a = test_cmplt_short();
print_integer(a); // a = 2
if (a != 2) pass = false;
a = test_cmplt_long();
print_integer(a); // a = 4
if (a != 4) pass = false;
a = test_control1();
print_integer(a); // a = 51
if (a != 51) pass = false;
a = test_DelUselessJMP();
print_integer(a); // a = 2
if (a != 2) pass = false;
a = test_movx_1();
print_integer(a); // a = 3
```

```

if (a != 3) pass = false;
a = test_movx_2();
print_integer(a); // a = 1
if (a != 1) pass = false;
print_integer(2147483647); // test mod % (mult) from itoa.cpp
print_integer(-2147483648); // test mod % (multu) from itoa.cpp
a = test_vararg();
print_integer(a); // a = 15
if (a != 15) pass = false;
a = test_stacksaverestore(100);
print_integer(a); // a = 5
if (a != 5) pass = false;
a = test_bswap();
print_integer(a); // a = 0
if (a != 0) pass = false;
a = test_alloc();
print_integer(a); // a = 31
if (a != 31) pass = false;
a = test_inlineasm();
print_integer(a); // a = 49
if (a != 49) pass = false;

return pass;
}

```

**Ibdex/input/ch\_run\_backend.cpp**

```

#include "ch_noll.h"

int main()
{
    bool pass = true;
    pass = test_noll();

    return pass;
}

#include "ch_noll.cpp"

```

**Ibdex/input/functions.sh**

```

prologue() {
    if [ $argNum == 0 ]; then
        echo "usage: bash $sh_name cpu_type endian"
        echo "  cpu_type: cpu032I or cpu032II"
        echo "  endian: be (big endian, default) or le (little endian)"
        echo "for example:"
        echo "  bash build-slinker.sh cpu032I be"
        exit 1;
    fi
    if [ $arg1 != cpu032I ] && [ $arg1 != cpu032II ]; then
        echo "1st argument is cpu032I or cpu032II"
        exit 1
    fi
}

```

```
fi

OS=`uname -s`
echo "OS =" ${OS}

if [ "$OS" == "Linux" ]; then
    TOOLDIR=~/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/bin
else
    TOOLDIR=~/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/Debug/bin
fi

CPU=$arg1
echo "CPU =" "${CPU}"

if [ "$arg2" != "" ] && [ $arg2 != le ] && [ $arg2 != be ]; then
    echo "2nd argument is be (big endian, default) or le (little endian)"
    exit 1
fi
if [ "$arg2" == "" ] || [ $arg2 == be ]; then
    endian=
else
    endian=el
fi
echo "endian =" "${endian}"

bash clean.sh
}

isLittleEndian() {
    echo "endian = " "$endian"
    if [ "$endian" == "LittleEndian" ] ; then
        le="true"
    elif [ "$endian" == "BigEndian" ] ; then
        le="false"
    else
        echo "!endian unknown"
        exit 1
    fi
}

elf2hex() {
    ${TOOLDIR}/llvm-objdump -elf2hex -le=${le} a.out > ../verilog/cpu0.hex
    if [ ${le} == "true" ] ; then
        echo "1 /* 0: big endian, 1: little endian */ > ../verilog/cpu0.config
    else
        echo "0 /* 0: big endian, 1: little endian */ > ../verilog/cpu0.config
    fi
    cat ../verilog/cpu0.config
}

epilogue() {
    endian=`${TOOLDIR}/llvm-readobj -h a.out|grep "DataEncoding"|awk '{print $2}'`'
    isLittleEndian;
    elf2hex;
}
```

**lbdex/input/build-run\_backend.sh**

```

#!/usr/bin/env bash

source functions.sh

sh_name=build-run_backend.sh
argNum=$#
arg1=$1
arg2=$2

DEFFLAGS=""
if [ "$arg1" == "cpu032II" ] ; then
    DEFFLAGS="${DEFFLAGS} -DCPU032II"
fi
echo ${DEFFLAGS}

prologue;

# ch8_2_select_global_pic.cpp just for compile build test only, without running
# on verilog.
clang ${DEFFLAGS} -target mips-unknown-linux-gnu -c ch8_2_select_global_pic.cpp \
-emit-llvm -o ch8_2_select_global_pic.bc
${TOOLDIR}/llc -march=cpu0${endian} -mcpu=${CPU} -relocation-model=pic \
-filetype=obj ch8_2_select_global_pic.bc -o ch8_2_select_global_pic.cpu0.o

clang ${DEFFLAGS} -target mips-unknown-linux-gnu -c ch_run_backend.cpp \
-emit-llvm -o ch_run_backend.bc
echo "${TOOLDIR}/llc -march=cpu0${endian} -mcpu=${CPU} -relocation-model=static \
-filetype=obj -enable-cpu0-tail-calls ch_run_backend.bc -o ch_run_backend.cpu0.o"
${TOOLDIR}/llc -march=cpu0${endian} -mcpu=${CPU} -relocation-model=static \
-filetype=obj -enable-cpu0-tail-calls ch_run_backend.bc -o ch_run_backend.cpu0.o
# print must at the same line, otherwise it will spilt into 2 lines
${TOOLDIR}/llvm-objdump -section=.text -d ch_run_backend.cpu0.o | tail -n +8 | awk \
'{print /* $1 */\t$2 " " $3 " " $4 " " $5 "\t/* $6\t" $7 " " $8 " " $9 " " $10
"\t*/"}' \
> ../verilog/cpu0.hex

if [ "$arg2" == "le" ] ; then
    echo "1 /* 0: big endian, 1: little endian */ > ../verilog/cpu0.config
else
    echo "0 /* 0: big endian, 1: little endian */ > ../verilog/cpu0.config
fi
cat ../verilog/cpu0.config

```

To run program without linker implementation at this point, the boot.cpp must be set at the beginning of code, and the main() of ch\_run\_backend.cpp comes immediately after it. Let's run Chapter11\_2/ with llvm-objdump -d for input file ch\_run\_backend.cpp to generate the hex file via build-run\_bacekend.sh, then feed hex file to cpu0Is Verilog simulator to get the output result as below. Remind ch\_run\_backend.cpp have to be compiled with option clang -target mips-unknown-linux-gnu since the example code ch9\_3\_vararg.cpp which uses the vararg needs to be compiled with this option. Other example codes have no differences between this option and default option.

```

JonathantekiiMac:input Jonathan$ pwd
/Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/lbdex/input
JonathantekiiMac:input Jonathan$ bash build-run_backend.sh cpu032I be
JonathantekiiMac:input Jonathan$ cd ../verilog cd ../verilog
JonathantekiiMac:input Jonathan$ pwd

```

```
/Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/lbdex/verilog
JonathantekiiMac:verilog Jonathan$ make
JonathantekiiMac:verilog Jonathan$ ./cpu0Is
WARNING: cpu0Is.v:386: $readmemh(cpu0.hex): Not enough words in the file for the
taskInterrupt(001)
74
7
0
0
253
3
1
14
3
-126
130
-32766
32770
393307
16777222
2
4
51
2
2147483647
-2147483648
7
120
15
5
0
31
49
total cpu cycles = 50645
RET to PC < 0, finished!

JonathantekiiMac:input Jonathan$ bash build-run_backend.sh cpu032II be
JonathantekiiMac:input Jonathan$ cd ../verilog
JonathantekiiMac:verilog Jonathan$ ./cpu0IIs
...
total cpu cycles = 48335
RET to PC < 0, finished!
```

The “total cpu cycles” is calculated in this verilog simualtor so that the backend compiler and CPU performance can be reviewed. Only the CPU cycles are counted in this implemenation since I/O cycles time is unknown. As explained in chapter “Control flow statements”, cpu032II which uses instructions slt and beq has better performance than cmp and jeq in cpu032I. Instructions “jmp” has no delay slot so it is better used in dynamic linker implementation.

You can trace the memory binary code and destination register changed at every instruction execution by unmark TRACE in Makefile as below,

### Ibdex/verilog/Makefile

```
TRACE=-D TRACE
```

```
JonathantekiiMac:raw Jonathan$ ./cpu0Is
WARNING: cpu0.v:386: $readmemh(cpu0.hex): Not enough words in the file for the
requested range [0:28671].
00000000: 2600000c
00000004: 26000004
00000008: 26000004
0000000c: 26fffffc
00000010: 09100000
00000014: 09200000
...
taskInterrupt(001)
1530ns 00000054 : 02ed002c m[28620+44] = -1           SW=00000000
1610ns 00000058 : 02bd0028 m[28620+40] = 0           SW=00000000
...
RET to PC < 0, finished!
```

As above result, cpu0.v dumps the memory first after reading input file cpu0.hex. Next, it runs instructions from address 0 and print each destination register value in the fourth column. The first column is the nano seconds of timing. The second is instruction address. The third is instruction content. Now, most example codes depicted in the previous chapters are verified by print the variable with print\_integer().

Since the cpu0.v machine is created by Verilog language, suppose it can run on real FPGA device (but I never do it). The real output hardware interface/port is hardware output device dependent, such as RS232, speaker, LED, .... You should implement the I/O interface/port when you want to program FPGA and wire I/O device to the I/O port. Through running the compiled code on Verilog simulator, Cpu0 backend compiled result and CPU cycles are verified and calculated. Currently, this Cpu0 Verilog program is not a pipeline architecture, but according the instruction set it can be implemented as a pipeline model. The cycle time of Cpu0 pipeline model is more than 1/5 of “total cpu cycles” displayed as above since there are dependences exist between instructions. Though the Verilog simulator is slow in running the whole system program and not include the cycles counting in cache and I/O, it is a simple and easy way to verify your idea about CPU design at early stage with small program pattern. The overall system simulator is complex to create. Even wiki web site here<sup>7</sup> include tools for creating the simulator, it needs a lot of effort.

To generate cpu032I as well as little endian code, you can run with the following command. File build-run\_backend.sh write the endian information to ..verilog/cpu0.config as below.

```
JonathantekiiMac:input Jonathan$ bash build-run_backend.sh cpu032I le
```

**..verilog/cpu0.config**

```
1 /* 0: big endian, 1: little endian */
```

The following files test more features.

**lbdex/input/ch\_nolld2.h**

```
#include "debug.h"
#include "boot.cpp"

#include "print.h"

int test_nolld2();
```

<sup>7</sup> [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Computer\\_architecture\\_simulator](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Computer_architecture_simulator)

### Ibdex/input/ch\_nolld2.cpp

```
#include "print.cpp"

#include "ch9_3_alloc.cpp"

int test_nolld2()
{
    bool pass = true;
    int a = 0;

    a = test_alloc();
    print_integer(a); // a = 31
    if (a != 31) pass = false;
    return pass;
}
```

### Ibdex/input/ch\_run\_backend2.cpp

```
#include "ch_nolld2.h"

int main()
{
    bool pass = true;
    pass = test_nolld2();

    return pass;
}

#include "ch_nolld2.cpp"
```

### Ibdex/input/build-run\_backend2.sh

```
#!/usr/bin/env bash

source functions.sh

sh_name=build-run_backend.sh
argNum=$#
arg1=$1
arg2=$2

DEFFLAGS=""
if [ "$arg1" == cpu032II ] ; then
    DEFFLAGS=${DEFFLAGS} "-DCPU032II"
fi
echo ${DEFFLAGS}

prologue;
```

```
clang ${DEFFLAGS} -c ch_run_backend2.cpp \
-emit-llvm -o ch_run_backend2.bc
${TOOLDIR}/llc -march=cpu0${endian} -mcpu=${CPU} -relocation-model=static \
-filetype=obj ch_run_backend2.bc -o ch_run_backend2.cpu0.o
${TOOLDIR}/llvm-objdump -d ch_run_backend2.cpu0.o | tail -n +8 | awk \
'{print /* " $1 " */\t" $2 " " $3 " " $4 " " $5 "\t/* " $6"\t" $7" " $8" \
" $9" " $10 "\t*/"}' > ../verilog/cpu0.hex

if [ "$arg2" == le ] ; then
    echo "1 /* 0: big endian, 1: little endian */" > ../verilog/cpu0.config
else
    echo "0 /* 0: big endian, 1: little endian */" > ../verilog/cpu0.config
fi
cat ../verilog/cpu0.config
```

```
JonathantekiiMac:input Jonathan$ bash build-run_backend.sh cpu032II le
...
JonathantekiiMac:input Jonathan$ cd ../verilog
JonathantekiiMac:verilog Jonathan$ ./cpu0IIs
...
31
...
```

### 13.3 Other llvm based tools for Cpu0 processor

You can find the Cpu0 ELF linker implementation based on lld which is the llvm official linker project, as well as elf2hex which modified from llvm-objdump driver at web: <http://jonathan2251.github.io/lbt/index.html>.



## APPENDIX A: GETTING STARTED: INSTALLING LLVM AND THE CPU0 EXAMPLE CODE

- *Setting Up Your Mac*
  - *Installing Xcode and cmake*
  - *Install Icarus Verilog tool on iMac*
  - *Install other tools on iMac*
  - *Installing clang*
  - *Create LLVM.xcodeproj by terminal cmake command*
  - *Build llvm by Xcode*
  - *Create LLVM.xcodeproj of supporting Cpu0 by terminal cmake command*
- *Setting Up Your Linux Machine*
  - *Install Icarus Verilog tool on Linux*
  - *Install other tools on Linux*
  - *Install LLVM 3.9 release build on Linux*
  - *Install Cpu0 debug build on Linux*

Cpu0 example code, lbdex, can be found at near left bottom of this web site. Or here <http://jonathan2251.github.io/lbd/lbdex.tar.gz>.

In this chapter, we will run through how to set up LLVM using if you are using Mac OS X or Linux. For information on using `cmake` to build LLVM, please refer to the “Building LLVM with CMake”<sup>1</sup> documentation for further information.

We will install two llvm directories in this chapter. One is the directory `~/llvm/release/` which contains the clang and clang++ compiler we will use to translate the C/C++ input file into llvm IR. The other is the directory `~/llvm/test/` which contains our cpu0 backend program without clang and clang++.

This chapter details the installation of related software for this book. If you are know well in llvm/clang installation or think it is too details, you can run the bash script files after you install the Xcode and cmake as follows,

```
118-165-78-111:test Jonathan$ pwd
/Users/Jonathan/test
118-165-78-111:test Jonathan$ cp /Users/Jonathan/Downloads/
lbdex.tar.gz .
```

<sup>1</sup> <http://llvm.org/docs/CMake.html?highlight=cmake>

```
118-165-78-111:test Jonathan$ tar -zxvf lbdex.tar.gz
118-165-78-111:test Jonathan$ cd lbdex/install_llvm
118-165-78-111:install_llvm Jonathan$ ls
build-llvm-lbdex.sh  get-llvm.sh
118-165-78-111:install_llvm Jonathan$ bash get-llvm.sh
...
118-165-78-111:install_llvm Jonathan$ bash build-llvm-lbdex.sh
...
```

The contents of these two script files as follows,

### **lbdex/install\_llvm/get-llvm.sh**

```
#!/usr/bin/env bash

VERSION=3.9.0

# Download address can be gotten from "Copy link location" of right clicking
# mouse on firefox browser on llvm.org download page.
curl -O http://llvm.org/releases/${VERSION}/llvm-${VERSION}.src.tar.xz
curl -O http://llvm.org/releases/${VERSION}/cfe-${VERSION}.src.tar.xz
```

### **lbdex/install\_llvm/build-llvm-lbdex.sh**

```
#!/usr/bin/env bash

VERSION=3.9.0
LLVM_DIR=~/llvm
LLVM_RELEASE_DIR=${LLVM_DIR}/release
LLVM_TEST_DIR=${LLVM_DIR}/test

if ! test -d ${LLVM_DIR}; then
    mkdir ${LLVM_DIR}
fi

if [ -e /proc/cpuinfo ]; then
    export procs=`cat /proc/cpuinfo | grep processor | wc -l`
else
    export procs=1
fi

if ! test -d ${LLVM_RELEASE_DIR}; then
    mkdir ${LLVM_RELEASE_DIR}
    tar -xf llvm-${VERSION}.src.tar.xz -C ${LLVM_RELEASE_DIR}
    mv ${LLVM_RELEASE_DIR}/llvm-${VERSION}.src ${LLVM_RELEASE_DIR}/src
    tar -xf cfe-${VERSION}.src.tar.xz -C ${LLVM_RELEASE_DIR}/src/tools
    mv ${LLVM_RELEASE_DIR}/src/tools/cfe-${VERSION}.src \
        ${LLVM_RELEASE_DIR}/src/tools/clang
    mkdir ${LLVM_RELEASE_DIR}/cmake_release_build
    pushd ${LLVM_RELEASE_DIR}/cmake_release_build
    OS=`uname -s`
    echo "OS =" ${OS}
    if [ "$OS" == "Linux" ]; then
```

```

cmake -DCMAKE_BUILD_TYPE=Release -G "Unix Makefiles" ../src
make -j$procs -l$procs
else [ "$OS" == "Darwin" ];
  cmake -DCMAKE_BUILD_TYPE=Release -G "Xcode" ../src
  xcodebuild -project "LLVM.xcodeproj"
fi
popd
fi

```

## 14.1 Setting Up Your Mac

The Xcode include clang and llvm already. The following three sub-sections are needless. List them just for readers who like to build clang and llvm with cmake GUI interface.

### 14.1.1 Installing Xcode and cmake

---

#### Todo

Fix centering for figure captions.

---

Install Xcode from the Mac App Store. Then install cmake, which can be found here:<sup>3</sup>. Before installing cmake, ensure you can install applications you download from the Internet. Open *System Preferences* → *Security & Privacy*. Click the **lock** to make changes, and under “Allow applications downloaded from:” select the radio button next to “Anywhere.” See Fig. 14.1 below for an illustration. You may want to revert this setting after installing cmake.

Alternatively, you can mount the cmake .dmg image file you downloaded. Untar the latest cmake for Darwin, copy the cmake /Applications/ and set PATH as follows,

```
114-43-208-90:cmake_release_build Jonathan$ cat ~/.profile
export PATH=$PATH:/Applications/CMake.app/Contents/bin
```

### 14.1.2 Install Icarus Verilog tool on iMac

Install Icarus Verilog tool by command `brew install icarus-verilog` as follows,

```
JonathantekiiMac:~ Jonathan$ brew install icarus-verilog
==> Downloading ftp://icarus.com/pub/eda/verilog/v0.9/verilog-0.9.5.tar.gz
# ######################################################################## 100.0%
# ######################################################################## 100.0%
==> ./configure --prefix=/usr/local/Cellar/icarus-verilog/0.9.5
==> make
==> make installdirs
==> make install
/usr/local/Cellar/icarus-verilog/0.9.5: 39 files, 12M, built in 55 seconds
```

<sup>3</sup> <http://www.cmake.org/cmake/resources/software.html>

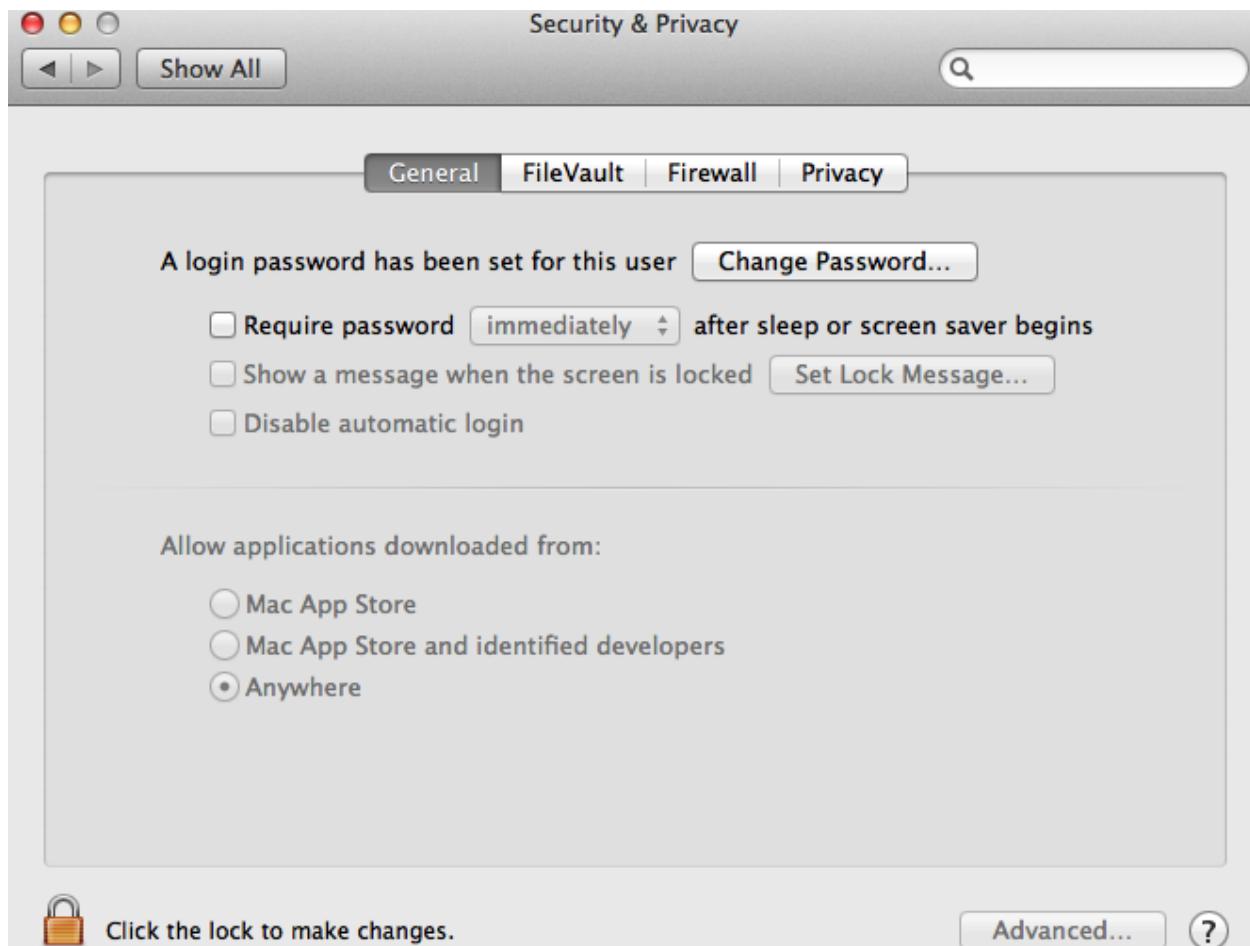


Fig. 14.1: Adjusting Mac OS X security settings to allow cmake installation.

### 14.1.3 Install other tools on iMac

These tools mentioned in this section is for coding and debug. You can work even without these tools. Files compare tools Kdiff3 came from web site<sup>7</sup>. FileMerge is a part of Xcode, you can type FileMerge in Finder – Applications as Fig. 14.2 and drag it into the Dock as Fig. 14.3.

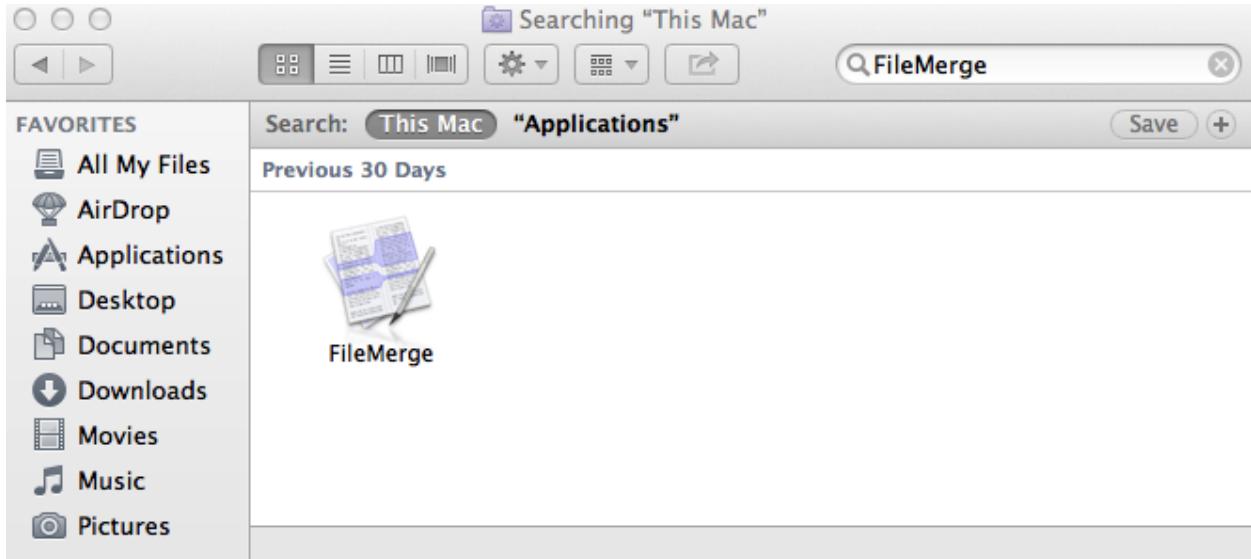


Fig. 14.2: Type FileMerge in Finder – Applications



Fig. 14.3: Drag FileMege into the Dock

Download tool Graphviz for display llvm IR nodes in debugging,<sup>8</sup>. We choose mountainlion as Fig. 14.4 since our iMac is Mountain Lion.

After install Graphviz, please set the path to .profile. For example, we install the Graphviz in directory /Applications/Graphviz.app/Contents/MacOS/, so add this path to /User/Jonathan/.profile as follows,

```
118-165-12-177:input Jonathan$ cat /Users/Jonathan/.profile
export PATH=$PATH:/Applications/Xcode.app/Contents/bin:
/Applications/Graphviz.app/Contents/MacOS:/Users/Jonathan/llvm/release/
cmake_release_build/Debug/bin
```

The Graphviz information for llvm is at section “SelectionDAG Instruction Selection Process” of “The LLVM Target-Independent Code Generator” here<sup>9</sup> and at section “Viewing graphs while debugging code” of “LLVM Programmer’s Manual” here<sup>10</sup>. TextWrangler is for edit file with line number display and dump binary file like the obj file, \*.o, that

<sup>7</sup> <http://kdiff3.sourceforge.net>

<sup>8</sup> [http://www.graphviz.org/Download\\_macos.php](http://www.graphviz.org/Download_macos.php)

<sup>9</sup> <http://llvm.org/docs/CodeGenerator.html#selectiondag-instruction-selection-process>

<sup>10</sup> <http://llvm.org/docs/ProgrammersManual.html#viewing-graphs-while-debugging-code>

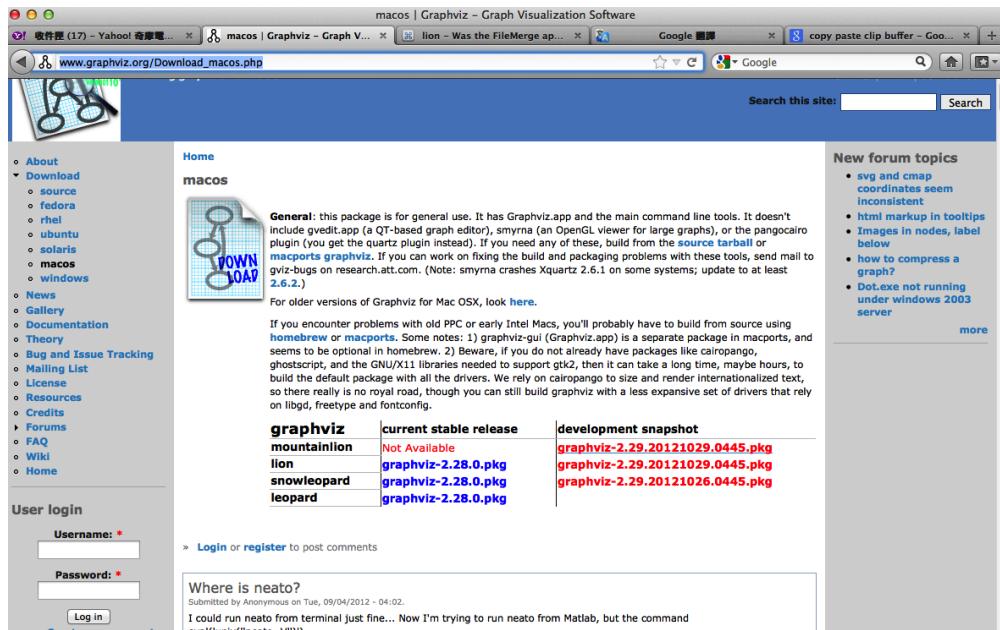


Fig. 14.4: Download graphviz for llvm IR node display

will be generated in chapter of Generating object files if you havn't gobjdum available. You can download from App Store. To dump binary file, first, open the binary file, next, select menu “**File – Hex Front Document**” as Fig. 14.5. Then select “**Front document’s file**” as Fig. 14.6.

Install binutils by command brew install binutils as follows,

```
// get brew by the following ruby command if you don't have installed brew
118-165-77-214:~ Jonathan$ ruby -e "$(curl -fsSL https://raw.githubusercontent.com/
→Homebrew/install/master/install)" < /dev/null 2> /dev/null
118-165-77-214:~ Jonathan$ brew install binutils
==> Downloading http://ftpmirror.gnu.org/binutils/binutils-2.22.tar.gz
#####
100.0%
==> ./configure --program-prefix=g --prefix=/usr/local/Cellar/binutils/2.22
--infodir=/usr/local
==> make
==> make install
/usr/local/Cellar/binutils/2.22: 90 files, 19M, built in 4.7 minutes
118-165-77-214:~ Jonathan$ ls /usr/local/Cellar/binutils/2.22
COPYING      README      lib
ChangeLog     bin        share
INSTALL_RECEIPT.json   include    x86_64-apple-darwin12.2.0
118-165-77-214:binutils-2.23 Jonathan$ ls /usr/local/Cellar/binutils/2.22/bin
gaddr2line  gc++filt  gnm  gobjdum  greadelf  gstrings
gar  gelfedit  gobjcopy  granlib  gsize  gstrip
```

### 14.1.4 Installing clang

Xcode include clang execution file to compile code already, but if the version of Xcode’s clang is not as new as the llvm we want to install later, then we need to install and build the clang with llvm as this sub-section.

Please download LLVM latest release version 3.9 (llvm, clang) from the “**LLVM Download Page**”<sup>2</sup>. Then extract them

<sup>2</sup> <http://llvm.org/releases/download.html#3.9>

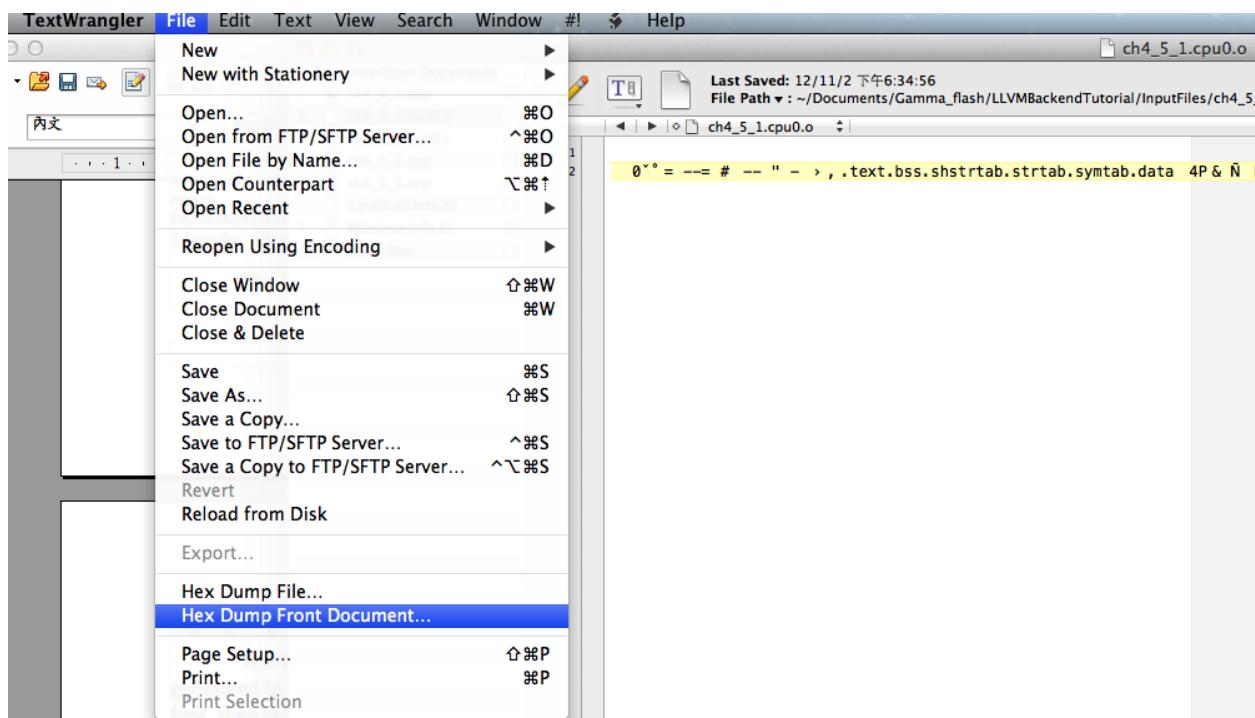


Fig. 14.5: Select Hex Dump menu

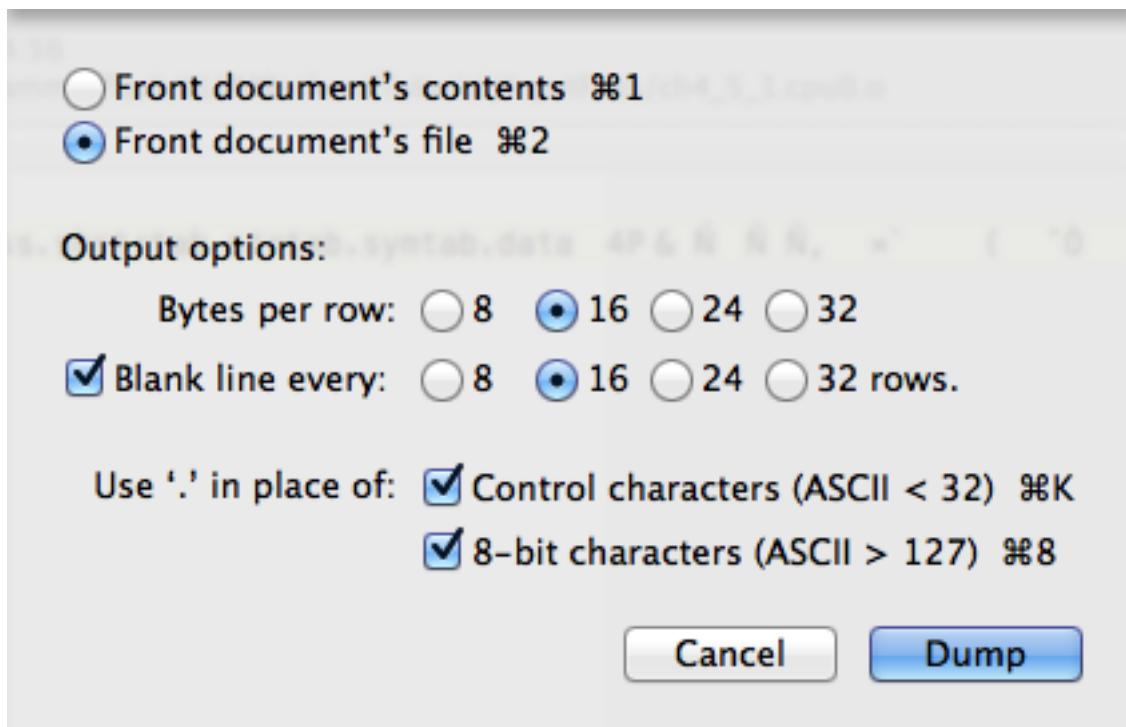


Fig. 14.6: Select Front document's file in TextWrangler

using `tar -xvf {llvm-3.9.0.src.tar.xz, cfe-3.9.0.src.tar.xz}` , and change the llvm source code root directory into src. After that, move the clang source code to src/tools/clang as shown as follows. The compiler-rt should not installed in iMac OS X 10.9 and Xcode 5.x. If you did as clang installation web document, it will has compiler error.

```
118-165-78-111:Downloads Jonathan$ tar -xvf cfe-3.9.0.src.tar.xz
118-165-78-111:Downloads Jonathan$ tar -xvf llvm-3.9.0.src.tar.xz
118-165-78-111:Downloads Jonathan$ mv llvm-3.9.0.src src
118-165-78-111:Downloads Jonathan$ mv cfe-3.9.0.src src/tools/clang
118-165-78-111:Downloads Jonathan$ pwd
/Users/Jonathan/Downloads
118-165-78-111:Downloads Jonathan$ ls
cfe-3.9.0.src.tar.xz      llvm-3.9.0.src.tar.xz
src
118-165-78-111:Downloads Jonathan$ ls src/tools/
CMakeLists.txt  clang      llvm-as      llvm-dis      llvm-mcmarkup
llvm-readobj   llvm-stub   LLVMBuild.txt  gold         llvm-bcanalyzer
llvm-dwarfdump llvm-nm     llvm-rtdyld   lto          Makefile
llc            llvm-config llvm-extract  llvm-objdump  llvm-shlib
macho-dump    bugpoint    lli          llvm-cov      llvm-link
llvm-prof     llvm-size   opt          bugpoint-passes llvm-ar
llvm-diff     llvm-mc    llvm-ranlib   llvm-stress
```

Next, copy the LLVM source to /Users/Jonathan/llvm/release/src by executing the terminal command `cp -rf /Users/Jonathan/Downloads/src /Users/Jonathan/llvm/release/..`.

### 14.1.5 Create LLVM.xcodeproj by terminal cmake command

We installed llvm source code with clang on directory /Users/Jonathan/llvm/release/ in last section. Now, will generate the LLVM.xcodeproj in this chapter.

```
114-43-213-176:release Jonathan$ pwd
/Users/Jonathan/llvm/release
114-43-213-176:release Jonathan$ mkdir cmake_release_build
114-43-213-176:release Jonathan$ cd cmake_release_build
114-43-213-176:cmake_release_build Jonathan$ cmake -DCMAKE_CXX_COMPILER=clang++
-DCMAKE_C_COMPILER=clang -DCMAKE_CXX_FLAGS=-std=c++11 -DCMAKE_BUILD_TYPE=Debug
-G "Xcode" ../src
...
114-43-213-176:cmake_release_build Jonathan$ ls
... LLVM.xcodeproj
```

### 14.1.6 Build llvm by Xcode

Now, LLVM.xcodeproj is created. Open the `cmake_release_build/LLVM.xcodeproj` by Xcode and click menu “**Product – Build**” as Fig. 14.7.

After few minutes of build, the clang, llc, llvm-as, ..., can be found in `cmake_release_build/Debug/bin/` as follows.

```
118-165-78-111:cmake_release_build Jonathan$ cd Debug/bin/
118-165-78-111:bin Jonathan$ pwd
/Users/Jonathan/llvm/release/cmake_release_build/Debug/bin
118-165-78-111:bin Jonathan$ ls
...
clang
```

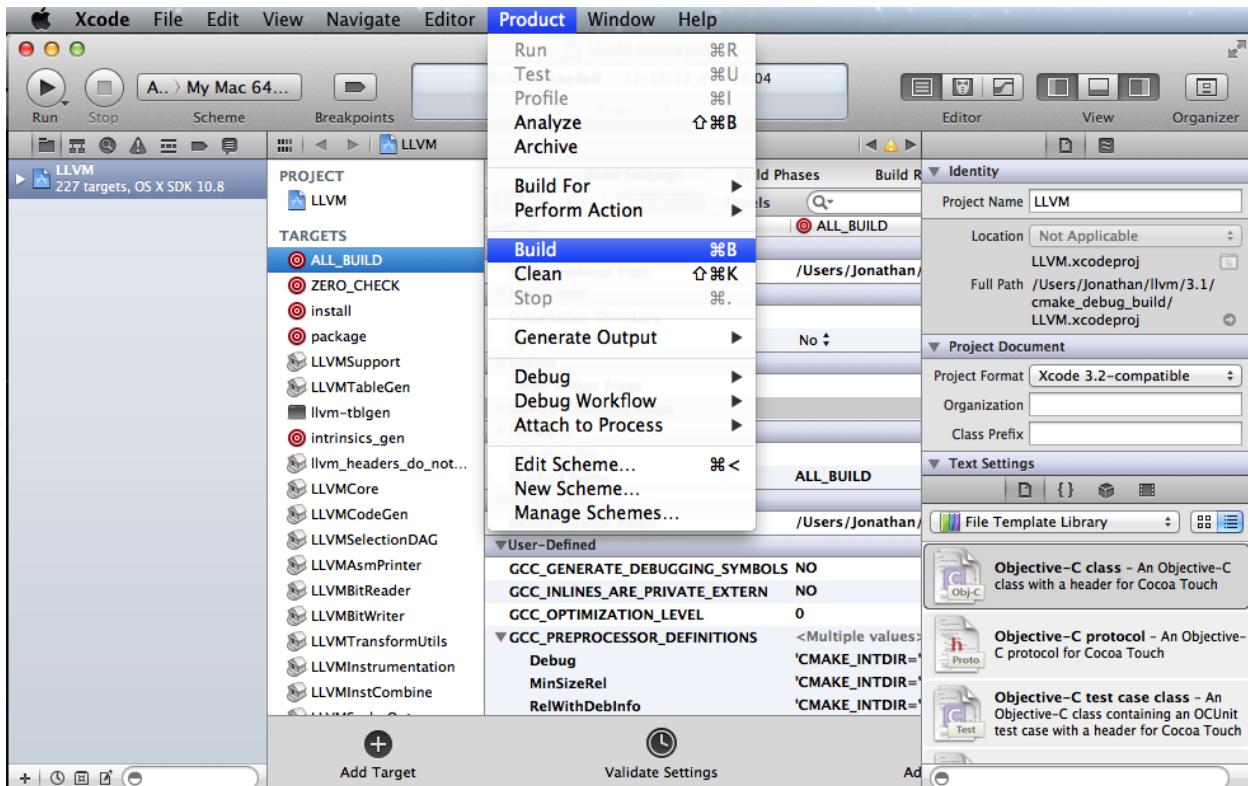


Fig. 14.7: Click Build button to build LLVM.xcodeproj by Xcode

```
...
l1c
...
llvm-as
...
```

To access those execution files, edit .profile (if you .profile not exists, please create file .profile), save .profile to /Users/Jonathan/, and enable \$PATH by command source .profile as follows. Please add path /Applications//Xcode.app/Contents/Developer/usr/bin to .profile if you didn't add it after Xcode download.

```
118-165-65-128:~ Jonathan$ pwd
/Users/Jonathan
118-165-65-128:~ Jonathan$ cat .profile
export PATH=$PATH:/Applications/Xcode.app/Contents/Developer/usr/bin:/Applications/Xcode.app/Contents/Developer/Toolchains/XcodeDefault.xctoolchain/usr/bin:/Applications/Graphviz.app/Contents/MacOS:/Users/Jonathan/llvm/release/cmake_release_build/Debug/bin
export WORKON_HOME=$HOME/.virtualenvs
source /usr/local/bin/virtualenvwrapper.sh # where Homebrew places it
export VIRTUALENVWRAPPER_VIRTUALENV_ARGS='--no-site-packages' # optional
118-165-65-128:~ Jonathan$
```

### 14.1.7 Create LLVM.xcodeproj of supporting Cpu0 by terminal cmake command

We have installed llvm with clang on directory llvm/release/. Now, we want to install llvm with our cpu0 backend code on directory llvm/test/ in this section.

This book is on the process of merging into llvm trunk but not finished yet. The merged llvm trunk version on lbd git hub is LLVM 3.9 released version. The lbd of Cpu0 example code is also based on llvm 3.9. So, please install the llvm 3.9 debug version as the llvm release 3.9 installation, but without clang since the clang will waste time in build the Cpu0 backend tutorial code. Steps as follows,

The details of installing Cpu0 backend example code as follows,

```
118-165-78-111:llvm Jonathan$ mkdir test
118-165-78-111:llvm Jonathan$ cd test
118-165-78-111:test Jonathan$ pwd
/Users/Jonathan/llvm/test
118-165-78-111:test Jonathan$ cp /Users/Jonathan/Downloads/llvm-3.9.0.src.tar.xz .
118-165-78-111:test Jonathan$ tar -xvf llvm-3.9.0.src.tar.xz
118-165-78-111:test Jonathan$ mv llvm-3.9.0.src src
118-165-78-111:test Jonathan$ cp /Users/Jonathan/Downloads/
lbdex.tar.gz .
118-165-78-111:test Jonathan$ tar -zxfv lbdex.tar.gz
118-165-78-111:test Jonathan$ cp -rf lbdex/src/modify/src/* src/.
118-165-78-111:test Jonathan$ grep -R "Cpu0" src/include
...
src/include/llvm/MC/MCEExpr.h:      VK_Cpu0_GPREL,
src/include/llvm/MC/MCEExpr.h:      VK_Cpu0_GOT_CALL,
src/include/llvm/MC/MCEExpr.h:      VK_Cpu0_GOT16,
src/include/llvm/MC/MCEExpr.h:      VK_Cpu0_GOT,
src/include/llvm/MC/MCEExpr.h:      VK_Cpu0_ABS_HI,
src/include/llvm/MC/MCEExpr.h:      VK_Cpu0_ABS_LO,
...
src/lib/MC/MCEExpr.cpp:  case VK_Cpu0_GOT_PAGE: return "GOT_PAGE";
src/lib/MC/MCEExpr.cpp:  case VK_Cpu0_GOT_OFST: return "GOT_OFST";
src/lib/Target/LLVMBuild.txt:subdirectories = ARM CellSPU CppBackend Hexagon
MBLaze MSP430 NVPTX Mips Cpu0 PowerPC Sparc X86 XCore
118-165-78-111:test Jonathan$
```

Next, please copy Cpu0 example code according the following commands,

```
118-165-78-111:test Jonathan$ pwd
/Users/Jonathan/llvm/test
118-165-78-111:test Jonathan$ cp -rf lbdex/Cpu0 src/lib/Target/..
118-165-78-111:test Jonathan$ ls src/lib/Target/Cpu0
CMakeLists.txt          Cpu0InstrInfo.td          Cpu0TargetMachine.cpp
→TargetInfo
...
118-165-80-55:Cpu0 Jonathan$
```

Now, it's ready for building llvm/test/src code by command `cmake` as follows.

```
118-165-78-111:test Jonathan$ pwd
/Users/Jonathan/llvm/test
118-165-78-111:test Jonathan$ ls
src
118-165-78-111:test Jonathan$ mkdir cmake_debug_build
118-165-78-111:test Jonathan$ cd cmake_debug_build/
118-165-78-111:cmake_debug_build Jonathan$ cmake -DCMAKE_CXX_COMPILER=clang++
-DCMAKE_C_COMPILER=clang -DCMAKE_BUILD_TYPE=Debug -DLLVM_TARGETS_TO_BUILD=Cpu0
```

```

-G "Xcode" ../src/
-- The C compiler identification is Clang 5.0
-- The CXX compiler identification is Clang 5.0
-- Check for working C compiler using: Xcode
...
-- Targeting Cpu0
...
-- Performing Test SUPPORTS_GLINE_TABLES_ONLY_FLAG
-- Performing Test SUPPORTS_GLINE_TABLES_ONLY_FLAG - Success
-- Performing Test SUPPORTS_NO_C99_EXTENSIONS_FLAG
-- Performing Test SUPPORTS_NO_C99_EXTENSIONS_FLAG - Success
-- Configuring done
-- Generating done
-- Build files have been written to: /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build
118-165-78-111:cmake_debug_build Jonathan$

```

Now, you can build this llvm build with Cpu0 backend only by Xcode.

On iMac, it also can do cmake and make with `cmake -G "Unix Makefiles"` same as the Linux as the following section.

Since Xcode use clang compiler and lldb instead of gcc and gdb, we can run lldb debug as follows,

```

118-165-65-128:input Jonathan$ pwd
/Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/lbdex/input
118-165-65-128:input Jonathan$ clang -c ch3.cpp -emit-llvm -o ch3.bc
118-165-65-128:input Jonathan$ /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/
cmake_debug_build/Debug/bin/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=asm
ch3.bc -o -
118-165-65-128:input Jonathan$ lldb -- /Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/
cmake_debug_build/Debug/bin/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=
asm ch3.bc -o -
Current executable set to '/Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/bin/
Debug/llc' (x86_64).
(lldb) b Cpu0TargetInfo.cpp:19
breakpoint set --file 'Cpu0TargetInfo.cpp' --line 19
Breakpoint created: 1: file ='Cpu0TargetInfo.cpp', line = 19, locations = 1
(lldb) run
Process 6058 launched: '/Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/Debug/bin/
llc' (x86_64)
Process 6058 stopped
* thread #1: tid = 0x1c03, 0x000000010077f231 llc`LLVMInitializeCpu0TargetInfo
+ 33 at Cpu0TargetInfo.cpp:20, stop reason = breakpoint 1.1
  frame #0: 0x000000010077f231 llc`LLVMInitializeCpu0TargetInfo + 33 at
Cpu0TargetInfo.cpp:20
  16
  17      extern "C" void LLVMInitializeCpu0TargetInfo() {
  18          RegisterTarget<Triple::cpu0,
-> 19              /*HasJIT=*/true> X(TheCpu0Target, "cpu0", "Cpu0");
  [experimental]);
(lldb) print X
(llvm::RegisterTarget<llvm::Triple::ArchType, true>) $0 = {}
(lldb) quit
118-165-65-128:input Jonathan$

```

About the lldb debug command, please reference <sup>4</sup> or lldb portal <sup>5</sup>.

---

<sup>4</sup> <http://lldb.llvm.org/lldb-gdb.html>

<sup>5</sup> <http://lldb.llvm.org/>

## 14.2 Setting Up Your Linux Machine

### 14.2.1 Install Icarus Verilog tool on Linux

Download the snapshot version of Icarus Verilog tool from web site, <ftp://icarus.com/pub/eda/verilog/snapshots> or go to <http://iverilog.icarus.com/> and click snapshot version link. Follow the INSTALL file guide to install it.

### 14.2.2 Install other tools on Linux

Download Graphviz from <sup>11</sup> according your Linux distribution. Files compare tools Kdiff3 came from web site <sup>7</sup>.

### 14.2.3 Install LLVM 3.9 release build on Linux

First, install the llvm release build by,

1. Untar llvm source, rename llvm source with src.
2. Untar clang and move it src/tools/clang.

Next, build with cmake command, `cmake -DCMAKE_BUILD_TYPE=Release -DCLANG_BUILD_EXAMPLES=ON -DLLVM_BUILD_EXAMPLES=ON -G "Unix Makefiles" ..../src/`, as follows.

```
[Gamma@localhost cmake_release_build]$ pwd
/home/cschen/llvm/release/cmake_release_build
[Gamma@localhost cmake_release_build]$ cmake -DCMAKE_BUILD_TYPE=Release
-DCLANG_BUILD_EXAMPLES=ON -DLLVM_BUILD_EXAMPLES=ON -G "Unix Makefiles" ..../src/
-- The C compiler identification is GNU 4.8.2
...
-- Constructing LLVMBuild project information
...
-- Targeting XCore
-- Clang version: 3.9
-- Found Subversion: /usr/bin/svn (found version "1.7.6")
-- Configuring done
-- Generating done
-- Build files have been written to: /home/cschen/llvm/release/cmake_release_build
```

After cmake, run command make , then you can get clang, llc, llvm-as, ..., in cmake\_release\_build/bin/ after a few tens minutes of build. To speed up make process via SMP power, please check your core numbers by the following command then do make the next.

```
[Gamma@localhost cmake_release_build]$ cat /proc/cpuinfo | grep processor | wc -l
8
[Gamma@localhost cmake_release_build]$ make -j8 -l8
```

Next, edit /home/Gamma/.bash\_profile with adding /home/cschen/llvm/release/cmake\_release\_build/ bin to PATH to enable the clang, llc, ..., command search path, as follows,

```
[Gamma@localhost ~]$ pwd
/home/Gamma
[Gamma@localhost ~]$ cat .bash_profile
# .bash_profile
```

---

<sup>11</sup> <http://www.graphviz.org/Download.php>

```
# Get the aliases and functions
if [ -f ~/.bashrc ]; then
  . ~/.bashrc
fi

# User specific environment and startup programs

PATH=$PATH:/usr/local/sphinx/bin:~/llvm/release/cmake_release_build/bin:
...
export PATH
[Gamma@localhost ~]$ source .bash_profile
[Gamma@localhost ~]$ $PATH
bash: /usr/lib64/qt-3.3/bin:/usr/local/bin:/usr/bin:/bin:/usr/local/sbin:
/usr/sbin:/usr/local/sphinx/bin:/home/Gamma/.local/bin:/home/Gamma/bin:
/usr/local/sphinx/bin:/home/cschen/llvm/release/cmake_release_build/bin
```

#### 14.2.4 Install Cpu0 debug build on Linux

This book is on the process of merging into llvm trunk but not finished yet. The merged llvm trunk version on lbd git hub is LLVM 3.9 released version. The Cpu0 example code is also based on llvm 3.9. So, please install the llvm 3.9 debug version as the llvm release 3.9 installation, but without clang since the clang will waste time in build the Cpu0 backend tutorial code. Steps as follows,

The details of installing Cpu0 backend example code according the following list steps, and the corresponding commands shown as below,

1. Enter ~/llvm/test/ and get Cpu0 example code as well as the llvm 3.9.
2. Make dir Cpu0 in src/lib/Target and download example code.
3. Update llvm modified source files to support cpu0 by command cp -rf lbdex/src/modify/src/\* src/..
4. Check step 3 is effective by command , grep -R "Cpu0" . | more` . We add the Cpu0 backend support, so check with grep.
5. Copy Cpu0 bakend code by command, cp -rf lbdex/Cpu0 src/lib/Target/..
6. Remove clang from ~/llvm/test/src/tools/clang, and mkdir test/cmake\_debug\_build. Otherwise you will waste extra time for command make in Cpu0 example code build with clang.

```
[Gamma@localhost llvm]$ mkdir test
[Gamma@localhost llvm]$ cd test
[Gamma@localhost test]$ pwd
/home/Gamma/llvm/test
[Gamma@localhost test]$ cp /home/Gamma/Downloads/llvm-3.9.0.src.tar.xz .
[Gamma@localhost test]$ tar -xvf llvm-3.9.0.src.tar.xz
[Gamma@localhost test]$ mv llvm-3.9.0.src src
[Gamma@localhost test]$ cp /Users/Jonathan/Downloads/
lbdex.tar.gz .
[Gamma@localhost test]$ tar -zxvf lbdex.tar.gz
...
[Gamma@localhost test]$ cp -rf lbdex/src/modify/src/* src/.
[Gamma@localhost test]$ grep -R "cpu0" src/include
src/include//llvm/ADT/Triple.h:      cpu0,      // For Tutorial Backend Cpu0
src/include//llvm/MC/MCE Expr.h:      VK_Cpu0_GPREL,
src/include//llvm/MC/MCE Expr.h:      VK_Cpu0_GOT_CALL,
...
```

```
[Gamma@localhost test]$ cp -rf lbdex/Cpu0 src/lib/Target/.
[Gamma@localhost test]$ ls src/lib/Target/Cpu0
AsmParser
CMakeLists.txt
...
Cpu0RegisterInfoGPROutForAsm.td
Cpu0RegisterInfoGPROutForOther.td
```

Now, create directory `cmake_debug_build` and do `cmake` just like build the `llvm/release`, except we do Debug build with Cpu0 backend only, and use clang as our compiler instead, as follows,

```
[Gamma@localhost test]$ pwd
/home/cschen/llvm/test
[Gamma@localhost test]$ mkdir cmake_debug_build
[Gamma@localhost test]$ cd cmake_debug_build/
[Gamma@localhost cmake_debug_build]$ cmake -DCMAKE_CXX_COMPILER=clang++
-DCMAKE_C_COMPILER=clang -DCMAKE_BUILD_TYPE=Debug -DLLVM_TARGETS_TO_BUILD=Cpu0
-G "Unix Makefiles" ../src/
-- The C compiler identification is Clang 3.9.0
-- The CXX compiler identification is Clang 3.9.0
-- Check for working C compiler: /home/cschen/llvm/release/cmake_release_build/bin/
clang
-- Check for working C compiler: /home/cschen/llvm/release/cmake_release_build/bin/
clang
-- works
-- Detecting C compiler ABI info
-- Detecting C compiler ABI info - done
-- Check for working CXX compiler: /home/cschen/llvm/release/cmake_release_build/
bin/clang++
-- Check for working CXX compiler: /home/cschen/llvm/release/cmake_release_build/
bin/clang++
-- works
...
-- Targeting Cpu0
...
-- Configuring done
-- Generating done
-- Build files have been written to: /home/cschen/llvm/test/cmake_debug_
_build
[Gamma@localhost cmake_debug_build]$
```

Then do make as follows,

```
[Gamma@localhost cmake_debug_build]$ make -j8 -l8
Scanning dependencies of target LLVMStack
[ 0%] Building CXX object lib/Support/CMakeFiles/LLVMSupport.dir/APFloat.cpp.o
[ 0%] Building CXX object lib/Support/CMakeFiles/LLVMSupport.dir/APIInt.cpp.o
[ 0%] Building CXX object lib/Support/CMakeFiles/LLVMSupport.dir/APSInt.cpp.o
[ 0%] Building CXX object lib/Support/CMakeFiles/LLVMSupport.dir/Allocator.cpp.o
[ 1%] Building CXX object lib/Support/CMakeFiles/LLVMSupport.dir/BlockFrequency.
cpp.o ...
Linking CXX static library ../../lib/libgtest.a
[100%] Built target gtest
Scanning dependencies of target gtest_main
[100%] Building CXX object utils/unittest/CMakeFiles/gtest_main.dir/UnitTestsMain
/
TestMain.cpp.o Linking CXX static library ../../lib/libgtest_main.a
[100%] Built target gtest_main
[Gamma@localhost cmake_debug_build]$
```

Since clang invoke the `~/llvm/cmake_release_build/bin/clang` where is built by `cmake -DCMAKE_BUILD_TYPE=Release`, it is 4 times speed up more than `make` (default use 1 thread only). But if you make with debug clang build, it won't speed up too much.

Now, we are ready for the cpu0 backend development. We can run `gdb` debug as follows. If your setting has anything about `gdb` errors, please follow the errors indication (maybe need to download `gdb` again). Finally, try `gdb` as follows.

```
[Gamma@localhost input]$ pwd
/home/Gamma/llvm/test/lbdex/input
[Gamma@localhost input]$ clang -c ch3.cpp -emit-llvm -o ch3.bc
[Gamma@localhost input]$ gdb -args ~/llvm/test/
cmake_debug_build/bin/llc -march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=obj
ch3.bc -o ch3.cpu0.o
GNU gdb (GDB) Fedora (7.4.50.20120120-50.fc17)
Copyright (C) 2012 Free Software Foundation, Inc.
License GPLv3+: GNU GPL version 3 or later <http://gnu.org/licenses/gpl.html>
This is free software: you are free to change and redistribute it.
There is NO WARRANTY, to the extent permitted by law. Type "show copying"
and "show warranty" for details.
This GDB was configured as "x86_64-redhat-linux-gnu".
For bug reporting instructions, please see:
<http://www.gnu.org/software/gdb/bugs/>...
Reading symbols from /home/cschen/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/bin/llc.
..done.
(gdb) break Cpu0TargetInfo.cpp:19
Breakpoint 1 at 0xd54441: file /home/cschen/llvm/test/src/lib/Target/
Cpu0/TargetInfo/Cpu0TargetInfo.cpp, line 19.
(gdb) run
Starting program: /home/cschen/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/bin/llc
-march=cpu0 -relocation-model=pic -filetype=obj ch3.bc -o ch3.cpu0.o
[Thread debugging using libthread_db enabled]
Using host libthread_db library "/lib64/libthread_db.so.1".

Breakpoint 1, LLVMInitializeCpu0TargetInfo ()
  at /home/cschen/llvm/test/src/lib/Target/Cpu0/TargetInfo/Cpu0TargetInfo.cpp:20
19          /*HasJIT=*/true> X(TheCpu0Target, "cpu0", "Cpu0");
(gdb) quit
A debugging session is active.

Inferior 1 [process 10165] will be killed.

Quit anyway? (y or n) y
[Gamma@localhost input]$
```



## APPENDIX B: CPU0 DOCUMENT AND TEST

- *Cpu0 document*
  - *Install sphinx*
  - *Install pip and update Sphinx version*
  - *Generate Cpu0 document*
  - *About Cpu0 document*
- *Cpu0 Regression Test*

### 15.1 Cpu0 document

This section illustrates how to generate Cpu0 backend document.

#### 15.1.1 Install sphinx

LLVM and this book use sphinx to generate html document. This book uses Sphinx to generate pdf and epub format of document further. Sphinx uses restructured text format here <sup>4</sup> <sup>5</sup> <sup>6</sup>. The installation of Sphinx reference <sup>1</sup>. About the code-block in this document, please reference <sup>7</sup> <sup>8</sup>.

On iMac or linux you can install as follows,

```
sudo easy_install sphinx
```

Above installaton can generate html document but not for pdf. To support pdf/latex document generated as follows,

On iMac, install MacTex.pkg from here <sup>2</sup>.

On Linux, install texlive as follows,

```
sudo apt-get install texlive texlive-latex-extra
```

<sup>4</sup> <http://docutils.sourceforge.net/docs/ref/rst/restructuredtext.html>

<sup>5</sup> <http://docutils.sourceforge.net/docs/ref/rst/directives.html>

<sup>6</sup> <http://docutils.sourceforge.net/rst.html>

<sup>1</sup> <http://docs.geoserver.org/latest/en/docguide/install.html>

<sup>7</sup> <http://llvm.org/docs/SphinxQuickstartTemplate.html>

<sup>8</sup> <http://pygments.org/docs/lexers/>

<sup>2</sup> <http://www.tug.org/mactex/>

or

```
sudo yum install texlive texlive-latex-extra
```

On Fedora 17, the texlive-latex-extra is missing. We install the package which include the pdflatex instead. For instance, we install pdfjam on Fedora 17 as follows,

```
[root@localhost lbd]$ yum list pdfjam
Loaded plugins: langpacks, presto, refresh-packagekit
Installed Packages
pdfjam.noarch           2.08-3.fc17          @fedora
[root@localhost lbd]$
```

Do sudo apt-get update -y; sudo apt-get install -y latexmk; if latexmk error in ‘make latexpdf’<sup>3</sup>.

On Fedora 18, the error as follows,

```
[root@localhost lld]$ make latexpdf
...
LaTeX Error: File `titlesec.sty' not found
```

Install all texlive-\* (full) as follows,

```
[root@localhost lld]$ yum install texlive-*
```

After upgrade to iMac OS X 10.11.1, pdflatex link is missing, fix it by set in .profile as follows,

```
114-37-153-62:1bd Jonathan$ ls /usr/local/texlive/2012/bin/universal-darwin/pdflatex
/usr/local/texlive/2012/bin/universal-darwin/pdflatex
114-37-153-62:1bd Jonathan$ cat ~/.profile
export PATH=$PATH:...:/usr/local/texlive/2012/bin/universal-darwin
```

### 15.1.2 Install pip and update Sphinx version

Install pip and upgrade Sphinx to newer version as follows,

```
114-43-186-160:Downloads Jonathan$ curl -O https://bootstrap.pypa.io/get-pip.py
...
114-43-186-160:Downloads Jonathan$ sudo python get-pip.py
...
114-43-186-160:Downloads Jonathan$ sudo pip install Sphinx-1.4.4-py2.py3-none-any.whl
...
```

After make this document, I encounter the following error.

```
114-43-186-160:test-lbt Jonathan$ make html
Makefile:253: warning: overriding commands for target `clean'
Makefile:52: warning: ignoring old commands for target `clean'
sphinx-build -b html -d build/doctrees    source build/html
Running Sphinx v1.4.4
loading pickled environment... not yet created

Exception occurred:
  File "/Library/Python/2.7/site-packages/sphinx/ext/intersphinx.py", line 148,
  in _strip_basic_auth
```

<sup>3</sup> <https://zoomadmin.com/HowToInstall/UbuntuPackage/latexmk>

```

url_parts = parse.urlsplit(url)
AttributeError: 'Module_six_moves_urllib_parse' object has no attribute 'urlsplit'
The full traceback has been saved in /var/folders/rf/
8bgdgt9d6vgf5sn8h8_zycd0000gn/T/sphinx-err-HgctP4.log, if you want to report
the issue to the developers.
Please also report this if it was a user error, so that a better error message
can be provided next time.
A bug report can be filed in the tracker at <https://github.com/sphinx-doc/sphinx/
→issues>. Thanks!
make: *** [html] Error 1

```

After changed `/Library/Python/2.7/site-packages/sphinx/ext/intersphinx.py` according <https://github.com/sphinx-doc/sphinx/commit/7586297d6df6fbbae4b860a604422d4eddc40b32e> I fixed the problem.

### 15.1.3 Generate Cpu0 document

Cpu0 example code is added chapter by chapter. It can be configured to a specific chapter by change CH definition in `Cpu0SetChapter.h`. For example, the following definition configures it to chapter 2.

#### **Ibdex/Cpu0/Cpu0SetChapter.h**

```
#define CH          CH2
```

To make readers easily understand the backend structure step by step, Cpu0 example code can be generated with chapter by chapter through commands as follows,

```

118-165-12-177:lbd Jonathan$ pwd
/home/Jonathan/test/lbd
118-165-12-177:lbd Jonathan$ make genexample
...
118-165-12-177:lbd Jonathan$ ls lbdex/chapters/
Chapter10_1  Chapter2    Chapter3_4  Chapter5_1  Chapter8_2
Chapter11_1  Chapter3_1  Chapter3_5  Chapter6_1  Chapter9_1
Chapter11_2  Chapter3_2  Chapter4_1  Chapter7_1  Chapter9_2
Chapter12_1  Chapter3_3  Chapter4_2  Chapter8_1  Chapter9_3

```

Beside chapters example code, above html and pdf of Cpu0 documents also include files `*.ll` and `*.s` in `lbd/lbdex/output`.

```

JonathantekiiMac:lbd Jonathan$ ls lbdex/output/
ch12_eh.cpu0.s                         ch12_thread_var.cpu0.pic.s      ch12_thread_var.
→11
ch12_eh.ll                            ch12_thread_var.cpu0.static.s   ch4_math.s

```

Then, this book html/pdf can be generated by the following commands.

```

118-165-12-177:lbd Jonathan$ pwd
/home/Jonathan/test/lbd
118-165-12-177:lbd Jonathan$ make html
...
118-165-12-177:lbd Jonathan$ make latexpdf
...

```

### 15.1.4 About Cpu0 document

Since llvm have a new release version about every 6 months and every name of file, function, class, variable, ..., etc, may be changed, the Cpu0 document maintains an effort because it adds the code chapter by chapter. In order to make the document as correct and easily maintain. I use the ”:start-after:” and ”:end-before:” of restructured text format to keep the document update to date. For every new release, when the Cpu0 backend code is changed, the document will reflect the changes in most of the contents of document.

In lbdex/Cpu0, the text begin from ”//@” and ”#ifdef CH > CHxx” are referred by document files \*.rst.

In lbdex/src/modify/src, the \*.rst refer the code by copy them directly. Most of references exist in llvmstructure.rst and elf.rst.

The example C/C++ code in lbdex/input come from my thinking and refer the directory clang/test/CodeGen of clang source code release.

## 15.2 Cpu0 Regression Test

The last chapter can verify Cpu0 backend’s generated code by Verilog simulator for those code without global variable access. The chapter lld in web <https://github.com/Jonathan2251/lbt.git> includes llvm ELF linker implementation and is capable to verify those test items with global variable access. However, LLVM has its test cases (regression test) for each backend to verify your backend compiler<sup>9</sup> without implementing any simulator or real hardware platform. Cpu0 regression test items existed in lbdex.tar.gz example code. Untar it to lbdex/, and:

For both iMac and Linux, copy lbdex/regression-test/Cpu0 to ~/llvm/test/src/test/CodeGen/Cpu0.

Then run as follows for single test case and the whole test cases on iMac.

```
1-160-130-77:Cpu0 Jonathan$ pwd
/Users/Jonathan/llvm/test/src/test/CodeGen/Cpu0
1-160-130-77:Cpu0 Jonathan$ ~/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/Debug/bin/llvm-lit seteq.ll
-- Testing: 1 tests, 1 threads --
PASS: LLVM :: CodeGen/Cpu0/seteq.ll (1 of 1)
Testing Time: 0.08s
    Expected Passes : 1
1-160-130-77:Cpu0 Jonathan$ ~/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/Debug/bin/llvm-lit .
...
PASS: LLVM :: CodeGen/Cpu0/zeroreg.ll
PASS: LLVM :: CodeGen/Cpu0/tailcall.ll
...
```

Run as follows for single test case and the whole test cases on Linux.

```
[Gamma@localhost Cpu0]$ pwd
/home/cschen/llvm/test/src/test/CodeGen/Cpu0
[Gamma@localhost Cpu0]$ ~/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/bin/llvm-lit seteq.ll
-- Testing: 1 tests, 1 threads --
PASS: LLVM :: CodeGen/Cpu0/seteq.ll (1 of 1)
Testing Time: 0.08s
    Expected Passes : 1
[Gamma@localhost Cpu0]$ ~/llvm/test/cmake_debug_build/bin/llvm-lit .
...
PASS: LLVM :: CodeGen/Cpu0/zeroreg.ll
PASS: LLVM :: CodeGen/Cpu0/tailcall.ll
...
```

<sup>9</sup> <http://llvm.org/docs/TestingGuide.html>

Listing the chapters of this book and the related regression test items as follows,

Table 15.1: Chapters

1	about
2	Cpu0 architecture and LLVM structure
3	Backend structure
4	Arithmetic and logic instructions
5	Generating object files
6	Global variables
7	Other data type
8	Control flow statements
9	Function call
10	ELF Support
11	Assembler
12	C++ support
13	Verify backend on verilog simulator

Table 15.2: Regression test items for Cpu0

File	v:pass x:fail	test ir, -> output asm	chapter
2008-06-05-Carry.ll	v		7
2008-07-15-InternalConstant.ll	v		6
2008-07-15-SmallSection.ll	v		6
2008-07-03-SRet.ll	v		9
2008-07-29-icmp.ll	v		8
2008-08-06-Alloca.ll	v		9
2008-08-01-AsmInline.ll	v		11
2008-08-08-ctlz.ll	v		7
2008-08-08-bswap.ll	v	bswap	12
2008-10-13-LegalizerBug.ll	v		8
2010-11-09-Mul.ll	v		4
2010-11-09-CountLeading.ll	v		7
2008-11-10-xint_to_fp.ll	v		7
addc.ll	v	64-bit add	7
addi.ll	v	32-bit add, sub	4
address-mode.ll	v	br, -> BB0_2:	8
alloca.ll	v	alloca i8, i32 %size, dynamic allocation	9
analyzebranch.ll	v	br, -> bne, beq	8
and1.ll	v	and	4
asm-large-immediate.ll	v	inline asm	11
atomic-1.ll	v	atomic	12
atomic-2.ll	v	atomic	12
atomics.ll	v	atomic	12
atomics-index.ll	v	atomic	12
atomics-fence.ll	v	atomic	12
br-jmp.ll	v	br, -> jmp	8

Continued on next page

Table 15.2 – continued from previous page

File	v:pass x:fail	test ir, -> output asm	chapter
brockaddress.ll	v	blockaddress, -> lui, ori	8
cmove.ll	v	select, -> movn, movz	8
cprestore.ll	v	-> .cprestore	9
div.ll	v	sdiv, -> div, mflo	4
divrem.ll	v	sdiv, srem, udiv, urem, -> div, divu	4
div_rem.ll	v	sdiv, srem, -> div, mflo, mfhi	4
divu.ll	v	udiv, -> divu, mflo	4
divu_reml.ll	v	udiv, urem -> div, mflo, mfhi	4
double2int.ll	v	double to int, -> %call16(__fixdfsi)	7
eh-dwraf-cfa.ll	v		9
eh-return32.ll	v	Spill and reload all registers used for exception	9
eh.ll	v	c++ exception handling	12
ex2.ll	v	c++ exception handling	12
fastcc.ll	v	No effect in fastcc but can pass	9
fneg.ll	v	verify Cpu0 don't uses hard float instruction	7
fp-spill-reload.ll	v	-> st \$fp, ld \$fp	9
frame-address.ll	v	addu \$2, \$zero, \$fp	9
global-address.ll	v	global address, global variable	6
global-pointer.ll	v	global register load and re-tore, -> .cpload, .cprestore	9
gprestore.ll	v	global register re-tore, -> .cprestore	9
helloworld.ll	v	global register load and re-tore, -> .cpload, .cprestore	9
hf16_1.ll	v	function call in PIC, -> ld, jalr	9
i32k.ll	v	argument of constant int passing in register	9
i64arg.ll	v	argument of constant 64-bit passing in register	9
imm.ll	v	return constant 32-bit in register	9
indirectcall.ll	v	indirect function call	9
init-array.ll	v	check .init	6
inlineasm_constraint.ll	v	inline asm	11
inlineasm-cnstrnt-reg.ll	v	•	11
inlineasmmemop.ll	v	•	11

Continued on next page

Table 15.2 – continued from previous page

File	v:pass x:fail	test ir, -> output asm	chapter
inlineasm-operand-code.ll	v	•	11
internalfunc.ll	v	internal function	9
jstat.ll	v	switch, -> JTI	8
largefr1.ll	v	large frame	3
largeimm1.ll	v	large immediate (32-bit, not 16-bit), -> lui, addiu	3
largeimprinting.ll	v	large imm passing in register	3
lb1.ll	v	load i8*, sext i8, -> lb	7
lbu1.ll	v	load i8*, zext i8, -> lbu	7
lh1.ll	v	load i16*, sext i16, -> lh	7
lhu1.ll	v	load i16*, zext i16, -> lhu	7
llcarry.ll	v	64-bit add sub	7
longbranch.ll	v		8
machineverifier.ll	v	delay slot, (comment in machineverifier.ll)	8
mipslopat.ll	v	no check output (comment in mipslopat.ll)	6
misha.ll	v	miss alignment half word access	7
module-asm.ll	v	module asm	11
module-asm-cpu032II.ll	v	module asm	11
mul.ll	v	mul	4
mulll.ll	v	64-bit mul	4
mulull.ll	v	64-bit mul	4
not1.ll	v	not 1	4
null.ll	v	ret i32 0, -> ret \$lr	3
o32_cc_byval.ll	v	by value	9
o32_cc_vararg.ll	v	variable argument	9
private.ll	v	private function call	9
rem.ll	v	srem, -> div, mfhi	4
remat-immed-load.ll	v	immediate load	3
remul.ll	v	urem, -> div, mfhi	4
return-vector-float4.ll	v	return vector, -> lui lui ...	3
return-vector.ll	v	return vector, -> ld ld ..., st st ...	3
return_address.ll	v	llvm.returnaddress, -> addu \$2, \$zero, \$lr	9
rotate.ll	v	rotl, rotr, -> rolv, rol, rorv	4
sb1.ll	v	store i8, sb	7
select.ll	v	select, -> movn, movz	8
seleq.ll	v	following for br with different condition	8
seleqk.ll	v	•	8

Continued on next page

Table 15.2 – continued from previous page

File	v:pass x:fail	test ir, -> output asm	chapter
selgek.ll	v	•	8
selgt.ll	v	•	8
selle.ll	v	•	8
selltk.ll	v	•	8
selne.ll	v	•	8
selnek.ll	v	•	8
seteq.ll	v	•	8
seteqz.ll	v	•	8
setge.ll	v	•	8
setgek.ll	v	•	8
setle.ll	v	•	8
setlt.ll	v	•	8
setltk.ll	v	•	8
setne.ll	v	•	8
setuge.ll	v	•	8
setugt.ll	v	•	8

Continued on next page

Table 15.2 – continued from previous page

File	v:pass x:fail	test ir, -> output asm	chapter
setule.ll	v	•	8
setult.ll	v	•	8
setultk.ll	v	•	8
sext_inreg.ll	v	sext i1, -> shl, sra	4
shift-parts.ll	v	64-bit shl, lshr, ash, -> call function	9
shl1.ll	v	shl, -> shl	4
shl2.ll	v	shl, -> shlv	4
shr1.ll	v	shr, -> shr	4
shr2.ll	v	shr, -> shrv	4
sitofp-selectcc-opt.ll	v	comment in sitofp-selectcc-opt.ll	7
small-section-reserve-gp.ll	v	Cpu0 option -cpu0-use-small-section=true	6
sra1.ll	v	ashr, -> sra	4
sra2.ll	v	ashr, -> srav	4
stacksave-restore.ll	v		9
stacksize.ll	v	comment in stacksize.ll	9
stchar.ll	v	load and store i16, i8	7
stdst.ll	v	register sp spill	9
sub1.ll	v	sub, -> addiu	4
sub2.ll	v	sub, -> sub	4
tailcall.ll	v	tail call	9
tls.ll	v	ir thread_local global is for c++ “__thread int b;”	12
tls-alias.ll	v	thread_local global and thread local alias	12
tls-models.ll	v	ir external/internal thread_local global	12
uitofp.ll	v	integer2float, uitofp, -> jsub __floatunisf	9
uli.ll	v	unalignment init, -> sb sb ...	6
unalignedload.ll	v	unalignment init, -> sb sb ...	6
vector-setcc.ll	v		7
weak.ll	v	extern_weak function, -> .weak	9
xor1.ll	v	xor, -> xor	4
zeroreg.ll	v	check register \$zero	4

These supported test cases are in lbdex/regression-test/Cpu0 which can be gotten from `tar -xf lbdex.tar.gz`

The regression test is very useful in two major reasons. First, it provides the llvm input, assembly output and the running command as well as options in the sample input file, so all the first glimpse of documentation needed for end user and programmer are well written in the same test input file. Furthermore, it can be run to check to

provide dynamic running document for users. Second, once programmers change their backend compiler especially for optimization, the regression test cases guard their backend has no side effect or bugs for other parts of backend program. That is the name of “regression test” stands for. The following file include the assembly output pattern of two subtargets for Cpu0 backend. Beside checking opcode, it is capable to check register number. In this case, the destination register of “andi” must be the first source register in the following instruction “xori” once it is specified to T1 at the corresponding registers of these two assembly output.

### Ibdex/regression-test/Cpu0/setule.ll

```
; RUN: llc -march=cpu0 -mcpu=cpu032I -relocation-model=pic -O3 %s -o - | FileCheck
↪ %s -check-prefix=cpu032I
; RUN: llc -march=cpu0 -mcpu=cpu032II -relocation-model=pic -O3 %s -o - | FileCheck
↪ %s -check-prefix=cpu032II

@j = global i32 5, align 4
@k = global i32 10, align 4
@l = global i32 20, align 4
@m = global i32 10, align 4
@r1 = common global i32 0, align 4
@r2 = common global i32 0, align 4
@r3 = common global i32 0, align 4

define void @test() nounwind {
entry:
%0 = load i32, i32* @j, align 4
%1 = load i32, i32* @k, align 4
%cmp = icmp ule i32 %0, %1
%conv = zext i1 %cmp to i32
store i32 %conv, i32* @r1, align 4
; cpu032I: cmp      $sw, ${{{[0-9]}+|t9}}, ${{{[0-9]}+|t9}}
; cpu032I: andi    ${[T1:[0-9]+|t9]}, $sw, 1
; cpu032I: xori    ${{{[0-9]}+|t9}}, ${[[T1]]}, 1
; cpu032II: sltu   ${[T0:[0-9]+|t9]}, ${{{[0-9]}+|t9}}, ${{{[0-9]}+|t9}}
; cpu032II: xori   ${{{[0-9]}+|t9}}, ${[[T0]]}, 1
%2 = load i32, i32* @m, align 4
%cmp1 = icmp ule i32 %2, %1
%conv2 = zext i1 %cmp1 to i32
store i32 %conv2, i32* @r2, align 4
ret void
}
```

## APPENDIX C: THE CONCEPT OF GPU COMPILER

- *3D modeling*
- *3D Rendering*
- *GLSL (GL Shader Language)*
- *OpenGL Shader compiler*
- *Architecture*
- *General purpose GPU*
- *Vulkan and spir-v*

Basically CPU compiler is SISD (Single Instruction Single Data Architecture). The multimedia instructions in CPU are small scaled of SIMD (Single Instruction Multiple Data) for 4 or 16 elements while GPU is a large scaled of SIMD processor coloring millions of pixels of image in few micro seconds. Since the 2D or 3D graphic processing provides large opportunity in parallel data processing, GPU hardware usually composed of thousands of functional units in each core(grid) in N-Vidia processors.

The flow for 3D/2D graphic processing as the following diagram.

The most of time for running OpenGL api is on GPU. Usually, CPU is a function call to GPU's functions. This chapter is giving a concept for the flow above and focuses on shader compiler for GPU. Furthermore, explaining how GPU has taking more applications from CPU through GPGPU concept and related standards emerged.

### 16.1 3D modeling

Through creating 3D model with Triangles or Quads along on skin, the 3D model is created with polygon mesh <sup>1</sup> formed by all the vertices on the first image as follows,

After the next smooth shading <sup>1</sup>, the vertices and edge lines are covered with color (or remove edges), and model looks much more smooth <sup>2</sup>. Further, after texturing (texture mapping), the model looks real more <sup>3</sup>.

To get to know how animation for a 3D modeling, please look video here <sup>4</sup>. In this series of video, you find the 3D modeling tools creating Java instead of C/C++ code calling OpenGL api and shaders. It's because Java can call OpenGL api through a wrapper library <sup>5</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> <https://www.quora.com/Which-one-is-better-for-3D-modeling-Quads-or-Tris>

<sup>2</sup> <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Shading>

<sup>3</sup> [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Texture\\_mapping](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Texture_mapping)

<sup>4</sup> <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=f3Cr8Yx3GGA>

<sup>5</sup> [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Java\\_OpenGL](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Java_OpenGL)

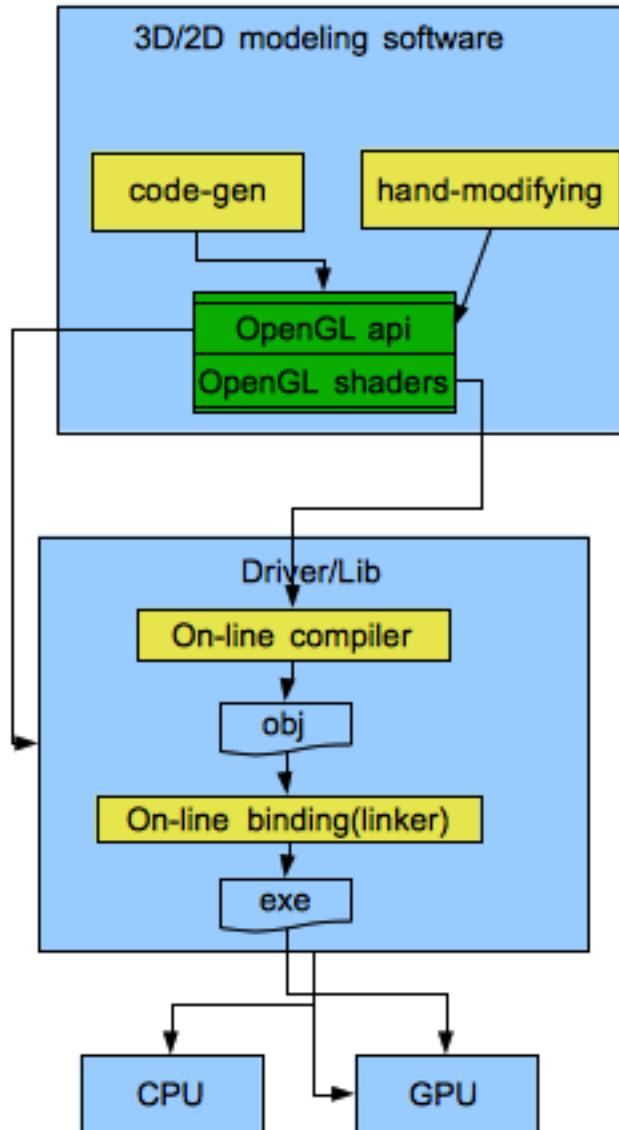


Fig. 16.1: OpenGL flow

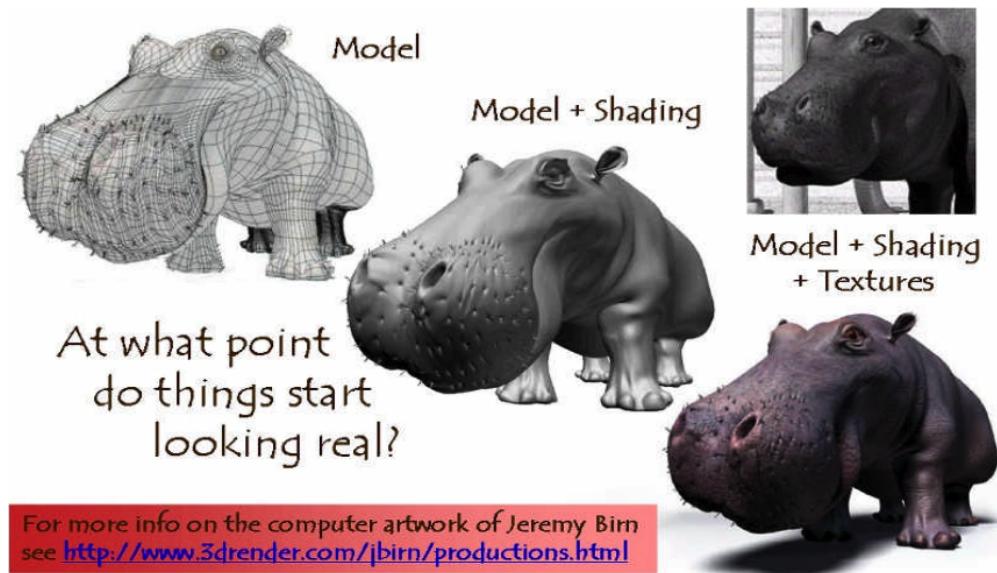


Fig. 16.2: Creating 3D model and texturing

Every CAD software manufacturer such as AutoDesk and Blender has their own proprietary format. To solve the problem of interoperability, neutral or open source formats were invented as intermediate formats for converting between two proprietary formats. Naturally, these formats have become hugely popular now. Two famous examples of neutral formats are STL (with a .STL extension) and COLLADA (with a .DAE extension). Here is the list, where the 3D file formats are marked with their type.

 Table 16.1: 3D file formats<sup>6</sup>

3D file format	Type
STL	Neutral
OBJ	ASCII variant is neutral, binary variant is proprietary
FBX	Proprietary
COLLADA	Neutral
3DS	Proprietary
IGES	Neutral
STEP	Neutral
VRML/X3D	Neutral

## 16.2 3D Rendering

3D rendering is the process of converting 3D models into 2D images on a computer<sup>7</sup>. The steps as the following Figure<sup>8</sup>.

For 2D animation, the model is created by 2D only (1 face only), so it only can be viewed from the same face of model. If you want to display different faces of model, multiple 2D models need to be created and switch these 2D models from face(flame) to face(flame) from time to time<sup>9</sup>.

<sup>6</sup> <https://all3dp.com/3d-file-format-3d-files-3d-printer-3d-cad-vrml-stl-obj/>

<sup>7</sup> [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/3D\\_rendering](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/3D_rendering)

<sup>8</sup> [https://www.khronos.org/opengl/wiki/Rendering\\_Pipeline\\_Overview](https://www.khronos.org/opengl/wiki/Rendering_Pipeline_Overview)

<sup>9</sup> <https://tw.video.search.yahoo.com/search/video?fr=yfp-search-sb&p=2d+animation#id=12&vid=46be09edf57b960ae79e9cd077ee1ea&action=view>

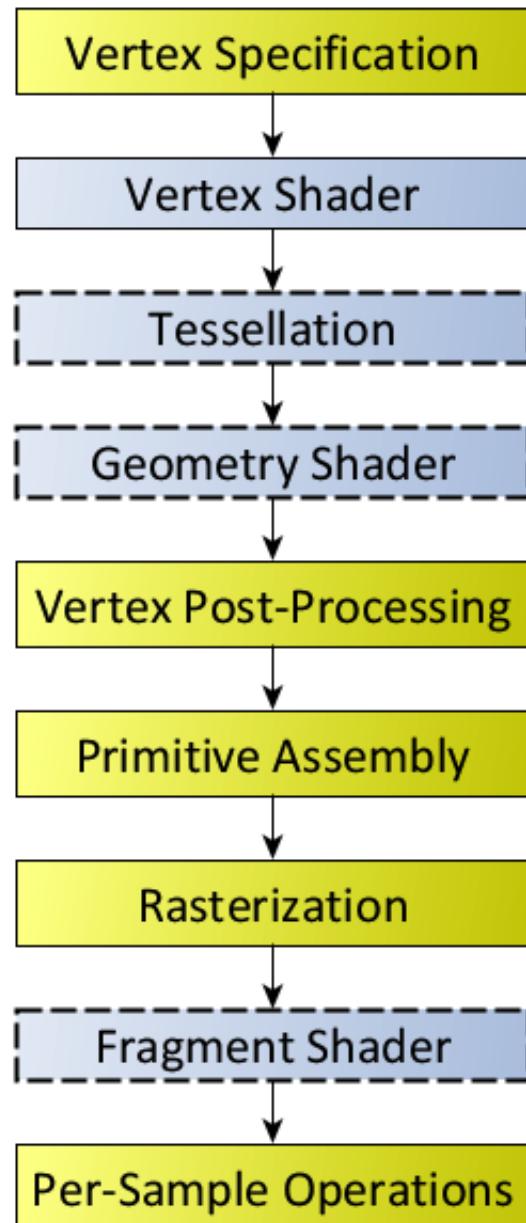


Fig. 16.3: Diagram of the Rendering Pipeline. The blue boxes are programmable shader stages.

## 16.3 GLSL (GL Shader Language)

OpenGL is a standard for designing 2D/3D animation in computer graphic. To do animation well, OpenGL provides a lots of api(functions) call for graphic processing. The 3D model construction tools such as Maya, Blender, ..., etc, only need to call this api to finish the 3D to 2D projecting function in computer. Any GPU hardware dependent code in these api provided by GPU manufacturer. An OpenGL program looks like the following,

```
Vertex shader

#version 330 core
layout (location = 0) in vec3 aPos; // the position variable has attribute position 0

out vec4 vertexColor; // specify a color output to the fragment shader

void main()
{
    gl_Position = vec4(aPos, 1.0); // see how we directly give a vec3 to vec4's
    ↵constructor
    vertexColor = vec4(0.5, 0.0, 0.0, 1.0); // set the output variable to a dark-red
    ↵color
}
Fragment shader

#version 330 core
out vec4 FragColor;

in vec4 vertexColor; // the input variable from the vertex shader (same name and same
    ↵type)

void main()
{
    FragColor = computeColorOfThisPixel(...);

    // openGl user program
    int main(int argc, char ** argv)
    {
        // init window, detect user input and do corresponding animation by calling openengl
        ↵api
        ...
    }
}
```

The last main() is programed by user obviously. Let's explain what the first two main() work for. As you know, the OpenGL is a lots of api to let programmer display the 3D object into 2D computer screen explained from book of concept of computer graphic. 3D graphic model can set light and object texture by user firstly, and calculating the postion of each vertex secondly, then color for each pixel automatically by 3D software and GPU thirdly, finally display the color of each pixel in computer screen. But in order to let user/programmer add some special effect or decoration in coordinate for each vertex or in color for each pixel, OpenGL provides these two functions to do it. OpenGL uses fragment shader instead of pixel is : “Fragment shaders are a more accurate name for the same functionality as Pixel shaders. They aren’t pixels yet, since the output still has to pass several tests (depth, alpha, stencil) as well as the fact that one may be using antialiasing, which renders one-fragment-to-one-pixel non-true<sup>10</sup>. Programmer is allowed to add their converting functions that compiler translate them into GPU instructions running on GPU processor. With these two shaders, new features have been added to allow for increased flexibility in the rendering pipeline at the vertex

<sup>10</sup> <https://community.khronos.org/t/pixel-vs-fragment-shader/52838>

and fragment level <sup>11</sup>. Unlike the shaders example here <sup>12</sup>, some converting functions for coordinate in vertex shader or for color in fragment shade are more complicated according the scenes of animation. Here is an example <sup>13</sup>. In wiki shading page <sup>2</sup>, Gouraud and Phong shading methods make the surface of object more smooth by glsl. Example glsl code of Gouraud and Phong shading on OpenGL api are here <sup>14</sup>. Since the hardware of graphic card and software graphic driver can be replaced, the compiler is run on-line meaning driver will compile the shaders program when it is run at first time and kept in cache after compilation.

The shaders program is C-like syntax and can be compiled in few mini-seconds, add up this few mini-seconds of on-line compilation time in running OpenGL program is a good choice for dealing the cases of driver software or gpu hardware replacement <sup>15</sup>.

In addition, OpenGL provides vertex buffer object (VBO) allowing vertex array data to be stored in high-performance graphics memory on the server side and promotes efficient data transfer <sup>17</sup> <sup>16</sup>.

## 16.4 OpenGL Shader compiler

OpenGL standard is here <sup>18</sup>. The OpenGL is for desktop computer or server while the OpenGL ES is for embedded system <sup>19</sup>. Though shaders are only a small part of the whole OpenGL software/hardware system. It is still a large effort to finish the compiler implementation since there are lots of api need to be implemented. For example, the number of texture related texture api has 80 <sup>20</sup>. This implementation can be done by generating llvm extended intrinsic functions from shader parser of frontend compiler as well as llvm backend converting those intrinsic to gpu instructions as follows,

```
#version 320 es
uniform sampler2D x;
out vec4 FragColor;

void main()
{
    FragColor = texture(x, uv_2d, bias);
}

...
!1 = !{"sampler_2d"}
!2 = !{i32 SAMPLER_2D} : SAMPLER_2D is integer value for sampler2D, for example:0x0f02
; A named metadata.
!x_meta = !{!1, !2}

define void @main() #0 {
    ...
    %1 = @llvm.gpu0.texture(metadata !x_meta, %1, %2, %3); // %1: %sampler_2d, %2: %uv_2d, %3: %bias
    ...
}
```

<sup>11</sup> [https://en.m.wikipedia.org/wiki/OpenGL\\_Shading\\_Language](https://en.m.wikipedia.org/wiki/OpenGL_Shading_Language)

<sup>12</sup> <https://learnopengl.com/Getting-started/Shaders>

<sup>13</sup> <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=LyoSSoYyfVU> at 5:25 from beginning: combine different textures.

<sup>14</sup> <https://github.com/rangle/Gouraud-Shading-and-Phong-Shading>

<sup>15</sup> <https://community.khronos.org/t/offline-glsl-compilation/61784>

<sup>16</sup> [http://www.songho.ca/opengl/gl\\_vbo.html](http://www.songho.ca/opengl/gl_vbo.html)

<sup>17</sup> If your models will be rigid, meaning you will not change each vertex individually, and you will render many frames with the same model, you will achieve the best performance not by storing the models in your class, but in vertex buffer objects (VBOs) <https://gamedev.stackexchange.com/questions/19560/what-is-the-best-way-to-store-meshes-or-3d-models-in-a-class>

<sup>18</sup> <https://www.khronos.org/registry/OpenGL-Refpages/>

<sup>19</sup> [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/OpenGL\\_ES](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/OpenGL_ES)

<sup>20</sup> All the api listed in section 8.9 of [https://www.khronos.org/registry/OpenGL/specs/es/3.2/GLSL\\_ES\\_Specification\\_3.20.html#texture-functions](https://www.khronos.org/registry/OpenGL/specs/es/3.2/GLSL_ES_Specification_3.20.html#texture-functions)

```

}

...
// gpu machine code
sample2d_inst $1, $2, $3 // $1: %x, $2: %uv_2d, $3: %bias

```

About llvm intrinsic extended function, please refer this book here<sup>21</sup>.

```
gvec4 texture(gsampler2D sampler, vec2 P, [float bias]);
```

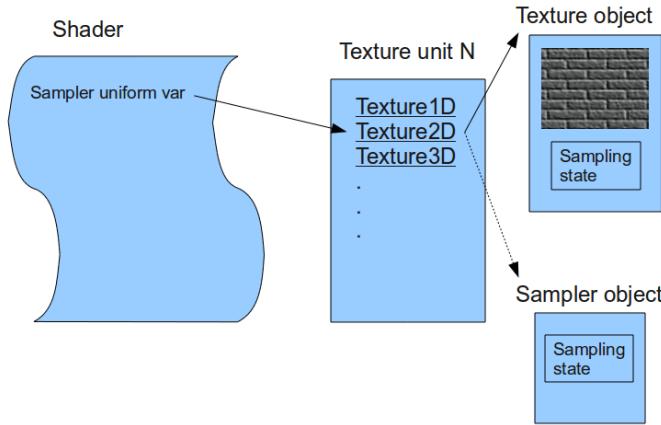


Fig. 16.4: Relationships between the texturing concept<sup>22</sup>.

The Fig. 16.4 as above. The texture object is not bound directly into the shader (where the actual sampling takes place). Instead, it is bound to a ‘texture unit’ whose index is passed to the shader. So the shader reaches the texture object by going through the texture unit. There are usually multiple texture units available and the exact number depends on the capability of your graphic card<sup>22</sup>. A texture unit, also called a texture mapping unit (TMU) or a texture processing unit (TPU), is a hardware component in a GPU that does sampling operation. The argument sampler in texture function as above is sampler\_2d index from ‘texuture unit’ for texture object<sup>22</sup>.

‘sampler uniform variable’:

There is a group of special uniform variables for that, according to the texture target: ‘sampler1D’, ‘sampler2D’, ‘sampler3D’, ‘samplerCube’, etc. You can create as many ‘sampler uniform variables’ as you want and assign the value of a texture unit to each one from the application. Whenever you call a sampling function on a ‘sampler uniform variable’ the corresponding texture unit (and texture object) will be used<sup>22</sup>. As Fig. 16.5, the Java api gl.bindTexture binding ‘Texture Object’ to ‘Texture Unit’. The gl.getUniformLocation and gl.uniform1i associate ‘Texture Unit’ to ‘sampler uniform variables’.

gl.uniform1i(xLoc, 1): where 1 is ‘Texture Unit 1’, 2 is ‘Texture Unit 2’, ..., etc<sup>23</sup>.

The following figure depicts how driver read metadata from compiled glsl obj, OpenGL api associate ‘Sample Variable’ and gpu executing texture instruction.

Explaining the detail steps for figure above as the following.

<sup>21</sup> <http://jonathan2251.github.io/lbd/funccall.html#add-specific-backend-intrinsic-function>

<sup>22</sup> <http://ogldev.atspace.co.uk/www/tutorial16/tutorial16.html>

<sup>23</sup> <http://math.hws.edu/graphicsbook/c6/s4.html>

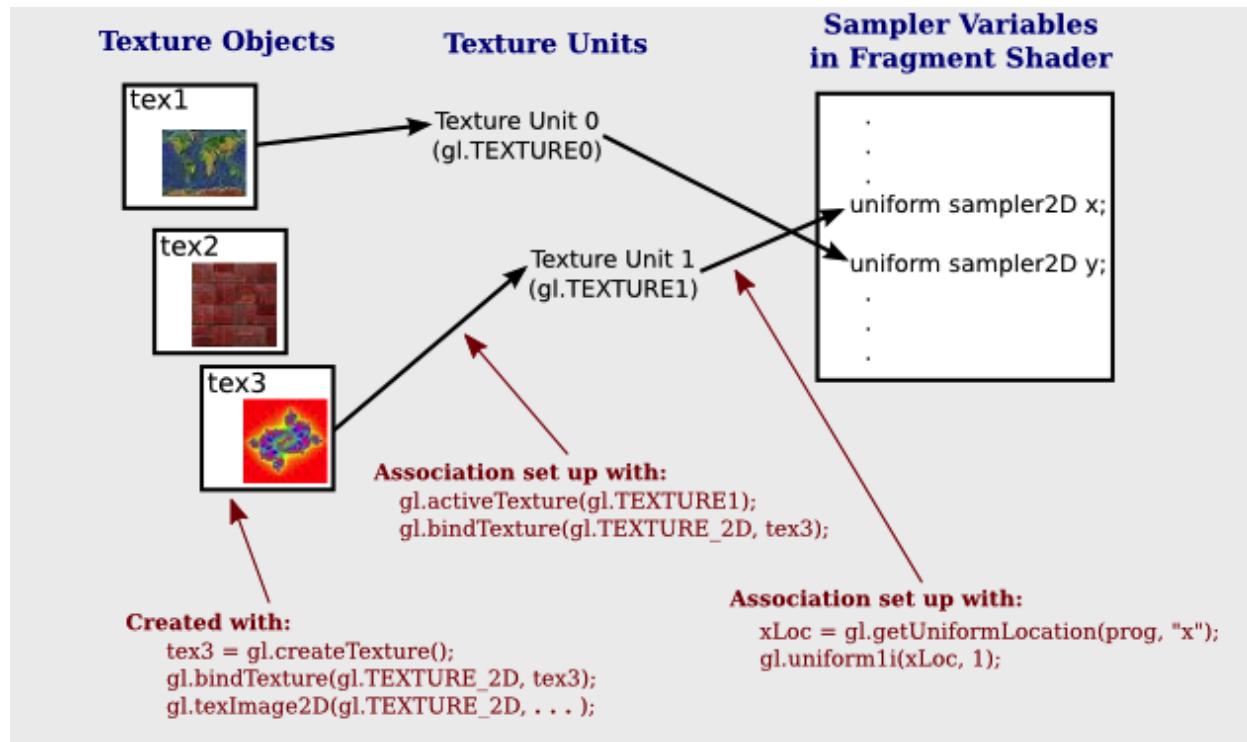


Fig. 16.5: Binding sampler variables <sup>23</sup>.

1. In order to let the ‘texture unit’ binding by driver, frontend compiler must pass the metadata of ‘sampler uniform variable’ (sampler\_2d\_var in this example) <sup>26</sup> to backend, and backend must allocate the metadata of ‘sampler uniform variable’ in the compiled binary file <sup>24</sup>.

2. After gpu driver executing glsl on-line compiling, driver read this metadata from compiled binary file and maintain a table of {name, SamplerType} for each ‘sampler uniform variable’.

3. Api,

```
xLoc = gl.getUniformLocation(prog, "x"); // prog: glsl program, xLoc
```

will get the location from the table for ‘sampler uniform variable’ x that driver created and set the memory address xSlot to xLoc.

SAMPLER\_2D: is integer value for Sampler2D type.

4. Api,

```
gl.uniform1i( xLoc, 1 );
```

will binding xLoc of ‘sampler uniform variable’ x to ‘Texture Unit 1’ by writing 1 to the glsl binary metadata location of ‘sampler uniform variable’ x as follows,

```
{xLoc, 1} : 1 is 'Texture Unit 1', xLoc is the location(memory address) of 'sampler_
↳uniform variable' x
```

<sup>26</sup> The type of ‘sampler uniform variable’ called “sampler variables”. <http://math.hws.edu/graphicsbook/c6/s4.html>

<sup>24</sup> This can be done by llvm metadata. <http://llvm.org/docs/LangRef.html#namedmetadatadatastructure> <http://llvm.org/docs/LangRef.html#metadata>

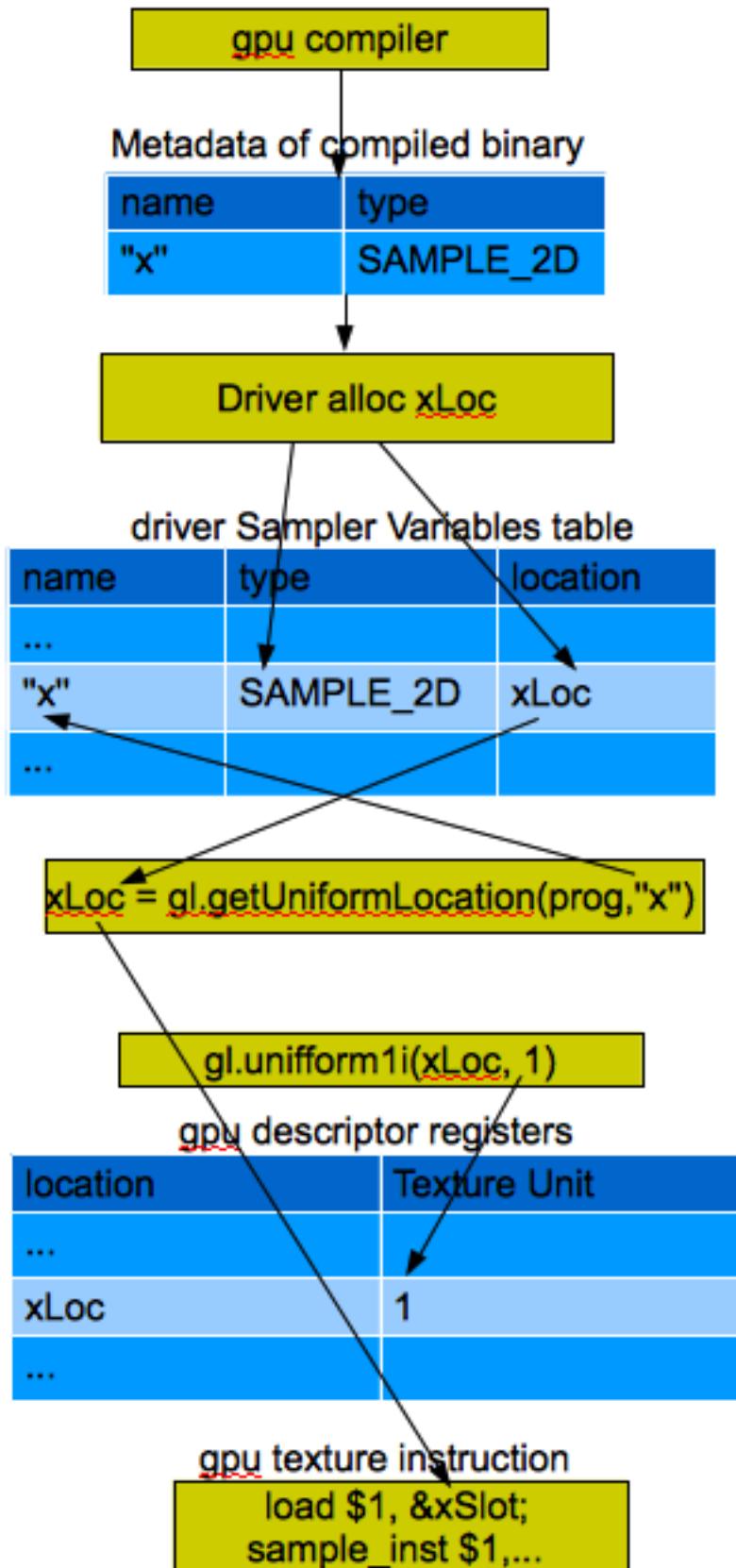


Fig. 16.6: Associating Sampler Variables and gpu executing texture instruction

This api will set the descriptor register of gpu with this {xLoc, 1} information<sup>27</sup>.

5. When executing the texture instructions from glsl binary file on gpu,

```
// gpu machine code
load $1, &xSlot;
sample2d_inst $1, $2, $3 // $1: %x, $2: %uv_2d, $3: %bias
```

the corresponding ‘Texture Unit 1’ on gpu will be executed through descriptor register of gpu {xLoc, 1} in this example since memory address xSlot includes the value of xLoc.

For instance, Nvidia texture instruction as follow,

```
tex.3d.v4.s32.s32 {r1,r2,r3,r4}, [tex_a, {f1,f2,f3,f4}];
```

Where tex\_a is the texture memory address for ‘sampler uniform variable’ x, and the pixel of coordinates (x,y,z) is given by (f1,f2,f3) user input. The f4 is skipped for 3D texture.

Above tex.3d texture instruction load the calculated color of pixel (x,y,z) from texture image into GPRs (r1,r2,r3,r4)=(R,G,B,A). And fragment shader can re-calculate the color of this pixel with the color of this pixel at texture image<sup>25</sup>.

If it is 1d texture instruction, the tex.1d as follows,

```
tex.1d.v4.s32.f32 {r1,r2,r3,r4}, [tex_a, {f1}];
```

Since ‘Texture Unit’ is limited hardware accelerator on gpu, OpenGL providing api to user program for binding ‘Texture Unit’ to ‘Sampler Variables’. As a result, user program is allowed doing load balance in using ‘Texture Unit’ through OpenGL api without recompiling glsl. Fast texture sampling is one of the key requirements for good GPU performance<sup>23</sup>.

In addition to api for binding texture, OpenGL provides glTexParameterI api to do Texture Wrapping<sup>28</sup>. Furthermore the texture instruction for some gpu may include S# T# values in operands. Same with associating ‘Sampler Variables’ to ‘Texture Unit’, S# and T# are location of memory associated to Texture Wrapping descriptor registers allowing user program to change Wrapping option without re-compiling glsl.

Even glsl frontend compiler always expanding function call into inline function as well as llvm intrinsic extended function providing an easy way to do code generation through llvm td (Target Description) file written, GPU backend compiler is still a little complex than CPU backend. (But when considering the effort in frontend compiler such as clang, or other toolchain such as linker and gdb/lldb, of course, CPU compiler is not easier than GPU compiler.)

Here is the software stack of 3D graphic system for OpenGL in linux<sup>29</sup>. And mesa open source website is here<sup>30</sup>.

## 16.5 Architecture

The leading GPU architecture of Nvidia’s gpu is as the following figures.

<sup>27</sup> When performing a texture fetch, the addresses to read pixel data from are computed by reading the GPRs that hold the texture descriptor and the GPRs that hold the texture coordinates. It’s mostly just general purpose memory fetching. <https://www.gamedev.net/forums/topic/681503-texture-units/>

<sup>25</sup> page 84: tex instruction, p24: texture memory [https://www.nvidia.com/content/CUDA-ptx\\_isa\\_1.4.pdf](https://www.nvidia.com/content/CUDA-ptx_isa_1.4.pdf)

<sup>28</sup> <https://learnopengl.com/Getting-started/Textures>

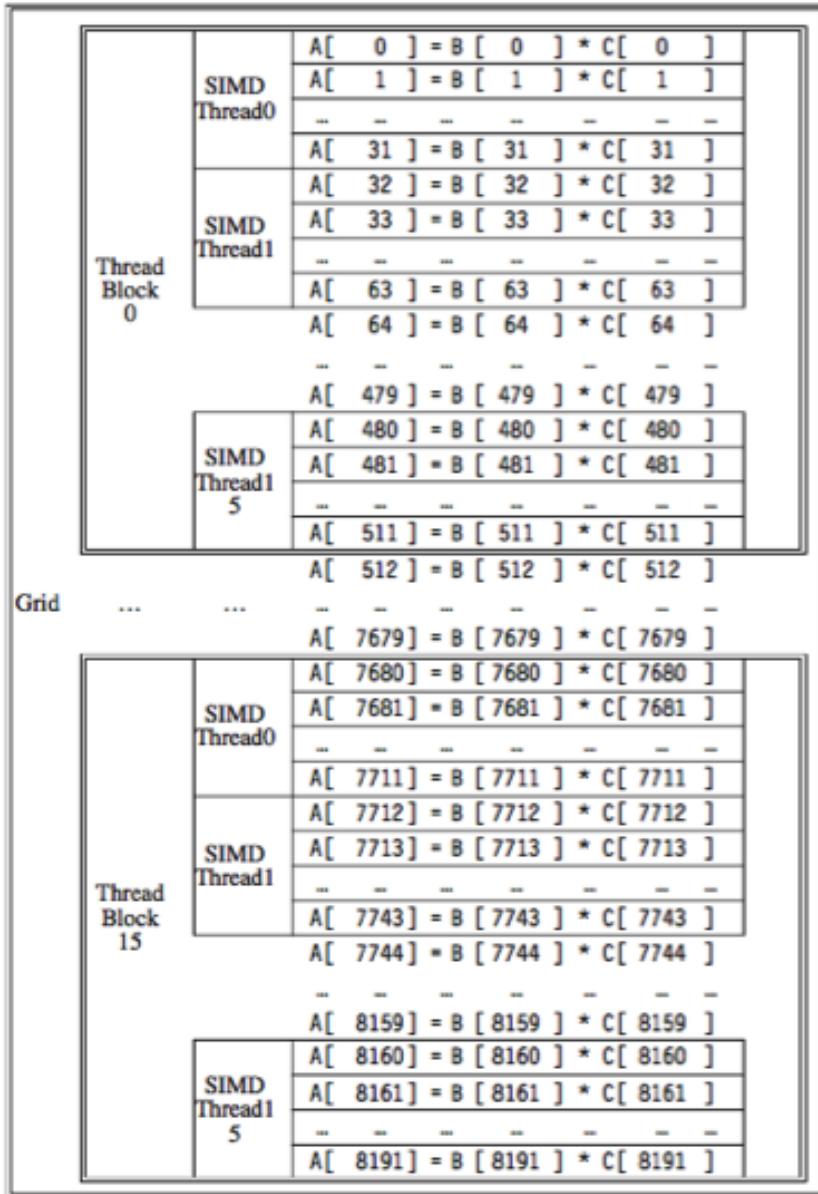
<sup>29</sup> [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Mesa\\_\(computer\\_graphics\)](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Mesa_(computer_graphics))

<sup>30</sup> <https://www.mesa3d.org/>

<sup>31</sup> Book Figure 4.13 of Computer Architecture: A Quantitative Approach 5th edition (The Morgan Kaufmann Series in Computer Architecture and Design)

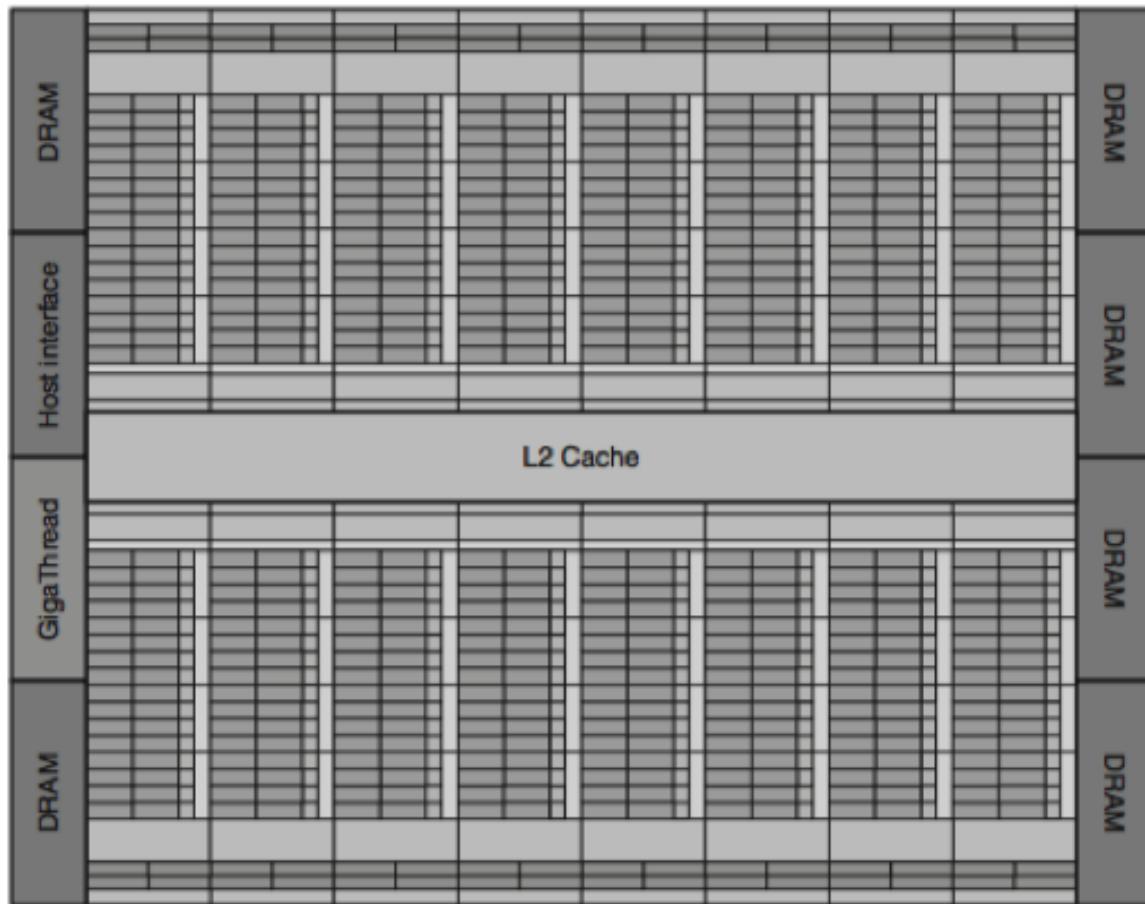
<sup>32</sup> Book Figure 4.15 of Computer Architecture: A Quantitative Approach 5th edition (The Morgan Kaufmann Series in Computer Architecture and Design)

<sup>33</sup> The SIMD Thread Scheduler includes a scoreboard that lets it know which threads of SIMD instructions are ready to run, and then it sends them off to a dispatch unit to be run on the multithreaded SIMD Processor. It is identical to a hardware thread scheduler in a traditional multithreaded



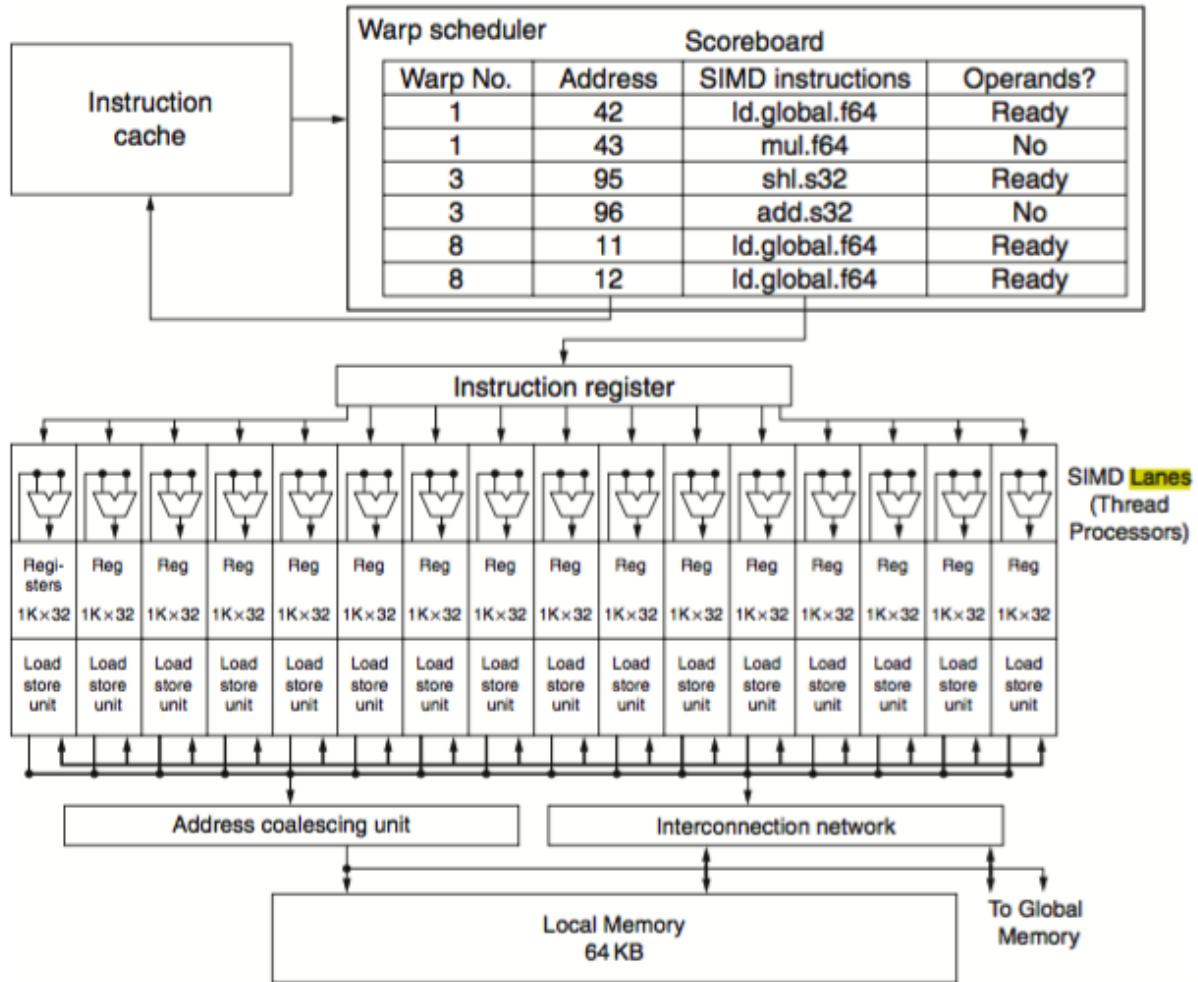
**Figure 4.13** The mapping of a Grid (vectorizable loop), Thread Blocks (SIMD basic blocks), and threads of SIMD instructions to a vector–vector multiply, with each vector being 8192 elements long. Each thread of SIMD instructions calculates 32 elements per instruction, and in this example each Thread Block contains 16 threads of SIMD instructions and the Grid contains 16 Thread Blocks. The hardware Thread Block Scheduler assigns Thread Blocks to multithreaded SIMD Processors and the hardware Thread Scheduler picks which thread of SIMD instructions to run each clock cycle within a SIMD Processor. Only SIMD Threads in the same Thread Block can communicate via Local Memory. (The maximum number of SIMD Threads that can execute simultaneously per Thread Block is 16 for Tesla-generation GPUs and 32 for the later Fermi-generation GPUs.)

Fig. 16.7: core(grid) in Nvidia gpu (figure from book<sup>31</sup>)



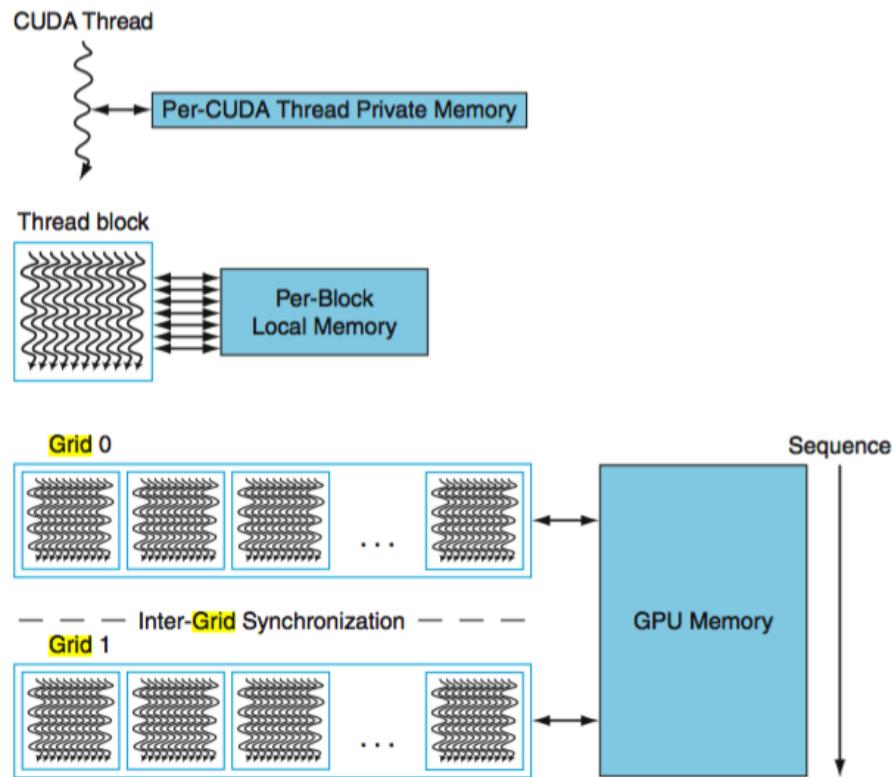
**Figure 4.15 Floor plan of the Fermi GTX 480 GPU.** This diagram shows 16 multi-threaded SIMD Processors. The Thread Block Scheduler is highlighted on the left. The GTX 480 has 6 GDDR5 ports, each 64 bits wide, supporting up to 6 GB of capacity. The Host Interface is PCI Express 2.0 x 16. Giga Thread is the name of the scheduler that distributes thread blocks to Multiprocessors, each of which has its own SIMD Thread Scheduler.

Fig. 16.8: SIMD processors (figure from book <sup>32</sup>)



**Figure 4.14 Simplified block diagram of a Multithreaded SIMD Processor.** It has 16 SIMD lanes. The SIMD Thread Scheduler has, say, 48 independent threads of SIMD instructions that it schedules with a table of 48 PCs.

Fig. 16.9: threads and lanes in gpu (figure from book<sup>33</sup>)



**Figure 4.18 GPU Memory structures.** GPU Memory is shared by all **Grids** (vectorized loops), Local Memory is shared by all threads of SIMD instructions within a thread block (body of a vectorized loop), and Private Memory is private to a single CUDA Thread.

Fig. 16.10: core(grid) in Nvidia's gpu (figure from book<sup>34</sup>)

- Grid is Vectorizable Loop<sup>35</sup>.
- Each multithreaded SIMD Processor is assigned 512 elements of the vectors to work on. As Fig. 16.7: The hardware Thread Block Scheduler assigns Thread Blocks to multithreaded SIMD Processors. Thread Block <-> SIMD Processor.
- SIMD Processors are full processors with separate PCs and are programmed using threads<sup>36</sup>. As Fig. 16.8, it assigns 16 Thread blocks to 16 SIMD Processors.
- As Fig. 16.7, the maximum number of SIMD Threads that can execute simultaneously per Thread Block (SIMD Processor) is 32 for the later Fermi-generation GPUs. Each SIMD Thread has 32 elements run as Fig. 16.9 on 16 SIMD lanes (number of functional units just same as in vector processor). So it takes 2 clock cycles to complete<sup>37</sup>.

## 16.6 General purpose GPU

Since GLSL shaders provide a general way for writing C code in them, if applying a software frame work instead of OpenGL api, then the system can run some data parallel computation on GPU for speeding up and even get CPU and GPU executing simultaneously. Furthmore, any language that allows the code running on the CPU to poll a GPU shader for return values, can create a GPGPU framework<sup>38</sup>. The following is a CUDA example to run large data in array on GPU<sup>39</sup> as follows,

```
__global__
void saxpy(int n, float a, float * x, float * y)
{
    int i = blockIdx.x*blockDim.x + threadIdx.x;
    if (i < n) y[i] = a*x[i] + y[i];
}

int main(void)
{
    ...
    cudaMemcpy(d_x, x, N*sizeof(float), cudaMemcpyHostToDevice);
    cudaMemcpy(d_y, y, N*sizeof(float), cudaMemcpyHostToDevice);
    ...
    cudaMemcpy(y, d_y, N*sizeof(float), cudaMemcpyDeviceToHost);
    ...
}
```

In the programming example saxpy() above,

- blockIdx is index of ThreadBlock

processor (see Chapter 3), just that it is scheduling threads of SIMD instructions. Thus, GPU hardware has two levels of hardware schedulers: (1) the Thread Block Scheduler that assigns Thread Blocks (bodies of vectorized loops) to multi-threaded SIMD Processors, which ensures that thread blocks are assigned to the processors whose local memories have the corresponding data, and (2) the SIMD Thread Scheduler within a SIMD Processor, which schedules when threads of SIMD instructions should run. Book Figure 4.14 of Computer Architecture: A Quantitative Approach 5th edition (The Morgan Kaufmann Series in Computer Architecture and Design)

<sup>34</sup> Book Figure 4.17 of Computer Architecture: A Quantitative Approach 5th edition (The Morgan Kaufmann Series in Computer Architecture and Design)

<sup>35</sup> Book Figure 4.12 of Computer Architecture: A Quantitative Approach 5th edition (The Morgan Kaufmann Series in Computer Architecture and Design)

<sup>36</sup> search these words from section 4.4 of A Quantitative Approach 5th edition (The Morgan Kaufmann Series in Computer Architecture and Design)

<sup>37</sup> “With Fermi, each 32-wide thread of SIMD instructions is mapped to 16 physical SIMD Lanes, so each SIMD instruction in a thread of SIMD instructions takes two clock cycles to complete” search these words from Page 296 of Computer Architecture: A Quantitative Approach 5th edition (The Morgan Kaufmann Series in Computer Architecture and Design).

<sup>38</sup> [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/General-purpose\\_computing\\_on\\_graphics\\_processing\\_units](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/General-purpose_computing_on_graphics_processing_units)

<sup>39</sup> <https://devblogs.nvidia.com/easy-introduction-cuda-c-and-c/>

- threadIdx is index of SIMD Thread
- blockDim is the number of total Thread Blocks in a Grid

The main() run on CPU while the saxpy() run on GPU. Through cudaMemcpyHostToDevice and cudaMemcpyDeviceToHost, CPU can pass data in x and in y array to GPU and get result from GPU to y array. Since both of these memory transfers trigger the DMA functions without CPU operation, it may speed up by running both CPU/GPU with their data in their own cache respectively. After DMA memcpy from cpu's memory to gpu's, gpu operate the whole loop of matrix operation for "y[] = a\*x[]+y[];" instructions with one Grid. Furthermore like vector processor, gpu provides Vector Mask Registers to Handling IF Statements in Vector Loops as the following code <sup>40</sup>,

```
for(i=0;i<64; i=i+1)
    if (X[i] != 0)
        X[i] = X[i] - Y[i];
```

```
LV V1,Rx           ;load vector X into V1
LV V2,Ry           ;load vector Y
L.D F0,#0          ;load FP zero into F0
SNEVS.D V1,F0      ;sets VM(i) to 1 if V1(i) !=F0
SUBVV.D V1,V1,V2   ;subtract under vector mask
SV V1,Rx           ;store the result in X
```

GPU has smaller L1 cache than cpu for each core. DMA memcpy map the data in cpu memory to each l1 cache of core on gpu memory. Many gpu provides operations scatter and gather to access DRAM data for stream processing <sup>41</sup> <sub>38 42</sub>.

When the GPU function is dense computation in array such as MPEG4 encoder or deep learning for tuning weights, it may get much speed up <sup>43</sup>. However when GPU function is matrix addition and CPU will idle for waiting GPU's result. It may slow down than doing matrix addition by CPU only. Arithmetic intensity is defined as the number of operations performed per word of memory transferred. It is important for GPGPU applications to have high arithmetic intensity else the memory access latency will limit computational speedup <sup>38</sup>.

Wiki here <sup>44</sup> includes speedup applications for gpu as follows:

General Purpose Computing on GPU, has found its way into fields as diverse as machine learning, oil exploration, scientific image processing, linear algebra, statistics, 3D reconstruction and even stock options pricing determination. In addition, section "GPU accelerated video decoding and encoding" for video compressing <sup>44</sup> gives the more applications for GPU acceleration.

## 16.7 Vulkan and spir-v

Though OpenGL api existed in higher level with many advantages from sections above, sometimes it cannot compete in efficiency with direct3D providing lower levels api for operating memory by user program <sup>45</sup>. Vulkan api is lower level's C/C++ api to fill the gap allowing user program to do these things in OpenGL to compete against Microsoft direct3D. Here is an example <sup>46</sup>. Meanwhile glsl is C-like language. The vulkan infrastructure provides tool to compile

<sup>40</sup> subsection Vector Mask Registers: Handling IF Statements in Vector Loops of Computer Architecture: A Quantitative Approach 5th edition (The Morgan Kaufmann Series in Computer Architecture and Design)

<sup>41</sup> Reference "Gather-Scatter: Handling Sparse Matrices in Vector Architectures": section 4.2 Vector Architecture of A Quantitative Approach 5th edition (The Morgan Kaufmann Series in Computer Architecture and Design)

<sup>42</sup> The whole chip shares a single L2 cache, but the different units will have individual L1 caches. <https://computergraphics.stackexchange.com/questions/355/how-does-texture-cache-work-considering-multiple-shader-units>

<sup>43</sup> <https://www.manchestervideo.com/2016/06/11/speed-h-264-encoding-budget-gpu/>

<sup>44</sup> [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Graphics\\_processing\\_unit](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Graphics_processing_unit)

<sup>45</sup> Vulkan offers lower overhead, more direct control over the GPU, and lower CPU usage... By allowing shader pre-compilation, application initialization speed is improved... A Vulkan driver only needs to do GPU specific optimization and code generation, resulting in easier driver maintenance... [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Vulkan\\_\(API\)](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Vulkan_(API))

<sup>46</sup> <https://github.com/SaschaWillems/Vulkan/blob/master/examples/triangle/triangle.cpp>

glsl into an Intermediate Representation Form (IR) called spir-v<sup>47</sup> off-line. As a result, it saves part of compilation time from glsl to gpu instructions on-line since spir-v is an IR of level closing to llvm IR<sup>48</sup>. In addition, vulkan api reduces gpu drivers efforts in optimization and code generation<sup>45</sup>. These standards provide user programmer option to using vulkan/spir-v instead of OpenGL/glsl, and allow them pre-compiling glsl into spir-v off-line to saving part of on-line compilation time.

With vulkan and spir-v standard, the gpu can be used in OpenCL for Parallel Programming of Heterogeneous Systems<sup>49 50</sup>. Similar with Cuda, a OpenCL example for fast Fourier transform (FFT) is here<sup>51</sup>. Once OpenCL grows into a popular standard when more computer languages or framework supporting OpenCL language, GPU will take more jobs from CPU<sup>52</sup>.

Now, you find llvm IR expanding from cpu to gpu becoming influentially more and more. And actually, llvm IR expanding from version 3.1 util now as I can feel.

---

<sup>47</sup> glslangValidator is the tool used to compile GLSL shaders into SPIR-V, Vulkan's shader format. [https://vulkan.lunarg.com/doc/view/1.0.39.1/windows/spirv\\_toolchain.html](https://vulkan.lunarg.com/doc/view/1.0.39.1/windows/spirv_toolchain.html)

<sup>48</sup> SPIR 2.0: LLVM IR version 3.4. SPIR-V 1.X: 100% Khronos defined Round-trip lossless conversion to llvm. [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Standard\\_Portable\\_Intermediate\\_Representation](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Standard_Portable_Intermediate_Representation)

<sup>49</sup> <https://www.khronos.org/opencl/>

<sup>50</sup> [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Compute\\_kernel](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Compute_kernel)

<sup>51</sup> <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/OpenCL>

<sup>52</sup> The OpenCL standard defines host APIs for C and C++; third-party APIs exist for other programming languages and platforms such as Python,[14] Java, Perl[15] and .NET.[11]:15 <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/OpenCL>



---

CHAPTER  
**SEVENTEEN**

---

**TODO LIST**

---

**Todo**

Fix centering for figure captions.

---

(The original entry is located in /Users/Jonathan/git/lbd/source/install.rst, line 62.)



---

CHAPTER  
**EIGHTEEN**

---

## **BOOK EXAMPLE CODE**

The example code `lbdex.tar.gz` is available in:

<http://jonathan2251.github.io/lbd/lbdex.tar.gz>



---

**CHAPTER  
NINETEEN**

---

## **ALTERNATE FORMATS**

The book is also available in the following formats:



---

CHAPTER  
**TWENTY**

---

**PRESENTATION FILES**



---

CHAPTER  
**TWENTYONE**

---

**SEARCH THIS WEBSITE**

- search